PROPERTY OF UNIVERSITY
OF WASHINGTON LIBRARIES
GRADUATE READING ROOM
NON-CIRCULATING

Hamilton, Locke and Clark Series.

# THE

# ANABASIS OF XENOPHON;

WITH AN

## INTERLINEAR TRANSLATION,

FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE LEARNERS,

ON THE

HAMILTONIAN SYSTEM,

AS IMPROVED BY

THOMAS CLARK,
Editor of the Latin and Greek Interlinear Classics.

DAVID McKAY COMPANY, INC.
NEW YORK

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1859, by

CHARLES DE SILVER,

in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Eastern District of Pennsylvania

Copyright,
CHARLES DE SILVER & SONS.
1887.

*Printed in the United States of America*

# PREFACE.

THIS interlinear edition of the Anabasis of Xenophon has been carefully translated by the editor of the Latin and Greek series of interlinear classics. His plan is somewhat peculiar, being intermediate between the systems of Hamilton and Locke. The uncouth and frequently unintelligible sentences of Hamilton are avoided, while on the other hand the verbal and grammatical meanings are given with an accuracy fully equal to his, if not surpassing it. By this plan the sense of the text is also conveyed more precisely than is done either by the plan of Hamilton or that of Locke—every idiomatic and grammatical difficulty being completely overcome.

The work will be found of great service to the student of the Greek language, as it removes many of the difficulties so perplexing in its study.

The use of a few signs and characters, explained on another page, has, in a measure, enabled the author to accomplish what he has above set forth.

THOMAS CLARK.

# EXPLANATIONS

THE union of two or more words by hyphens denotes, that they together express the meaning of one Greek word; as,

γίγνονται.
are-born.

When two or more words, employed to express a Greek word, are separated by one or more words placed between them, such interposition is denoted by a figure ' prefixed to the word next preceding that interposed, and another figure ' placed before the next succeeding word; as,

οὕτω διατιθεὶς πάντας.
'having so 'disposed all.

An English word or sentence included within parentheses ( ) is an indication that such word or sentence is not expressed in Greek; as

ἀφικνεῖτο πρὸς αὐτὸν τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως.
used-to-come to him of-the (persons sent) from (the) king.

When a word placed in parentheses is italicized, it shows that the word above it is either superfluous or not to be expressed in English; as,

ἐβούλετο τὼ ἀμφοτέρω παῖδε.
he-desired (*the*) both (his) sons.

A dash directs the word above it to be omitted in the translation; as,

ὁ Κῦρος.
— Cyrus.

Where an italicized word or sentence within parentheses is followed by another word or sentence, also in parentheses, but not in italics, the latter forms the proper reading; as,

ἐτύγχανε παρὼν.
happened (*being-present*) (to-be-present).

When a word or sentence is put in brackets [ ] it serves as an explanation, in the nature of a note; but when the reading thus enclosed is to be used instead of the literal translation, a vertical line ( | ) is placed at the beginning of the reading that is to be changed; as,

ἔχοιεν.
| might-have (themselves) [might be].

# TESTIMONIALS

AS TO

THE MERITS OF

# The Interlinear Translation of the Classics.

---

*Testimony of celebrated men in favour of the interlineary system of translations, as being best adapted for learning a language.*

MILTON. — We do amiss to spend seven or eight years merely in scraping together as much Latin and Greek as might be learned easily and delightfully in one year.

If, after some preparatory grounds of speech by their certain forms got into memory, they were led to the *praxis* thereof in some chosen short book *lessoned thoroughly to them*, [that is, read and translated to them], which would bring the whole language quickly into their power. This I take to be the most natural and most profitable way of learning languages.

[Children] should begin with the chief and necessary rules of some good grammar, either that now used, or any better; and while this is doing, their speech is to be fashioned to a distinct and clear pronunciation, as near as may be to the Italian, especially in the vowels. Next, to make them expert in the usefullest points of grammar, some easy and delightful book should be read to them.

[By this, Milton means that the teacher should read some easy Latin book to his pupils, and translate and explain it repeatedly, until they understand such Latin book, and can themselves translate it.]

JOHN LOCKE, author of the "Essay on the Human Understanding." — When I consider what ado is made about a little Latin and Greek, how many years are spent in it, and what a noise and business it makes to no purpose, I can hardly forbear thinking that the parents of children still live in fear of the schoolmaster's rod, which they look on as the only instrument of education; as a language or two to be his whole business. How else is it possible that a child should be chained to the oar, seven, eight, or ten of the best years of his life, to get a language or two, which, I think, might be had at a great deal cheaper rate of pains and time, and be learned almost in playing.

[The first project of Locke] is to trouble the child with no grammar at all, but to have Latin as English has been, without the perplexity of rules, talked into him, for, if you will consider it, Latin is no more unknown to a child, when he comes into the world, than English; and yet he learns English without a master, rule, or grammar; and so might he Latin, too, as Tully did, if he had somebody always to talk to him in this language. And when we so often see a French woman teach an English girl to speak and read French perfectly in a year or two, without any rule of grammar, or anything else but prattling to her I cannot but wonder how gentlemen have overseen this way for their sons. If, therefore, a man could be got, who, himself speaking good Latin, would always be about your son, talk constantly to him, and suffer him to speak and read nothing else, this would be the true and genuine way, and that which I would propose, not only as the easiest and best, wherein a child might, without pains or chiding, get a language which others are wont to be whipt for at school six or seven years together; but also as that wherein, at the same time, he might have his mind and manners formed, and be instructed in all other parts of knowledge of things that fall under the senses, and require little more than memory. But if such a man cannot be got who speaks good Latin, the next best thing is to have him taught as near this way as may be, which is by taking some easy and pleasant book, such as Æsop's Fables, and writing the English translation (made as literal as can be) in one line, and the Latin words which answer each of them, just over it in another. These let him read every day over and over again, till he perfectly understands the Latin; and then go on to another Fable

till he is also perfect in that, not omitting what he is already perfect in, but sometimes reviewing that to keep it in his memory.

The formation of the verb first, and afterwards the declensions of the nouns and pronouns, perfectly learned by heart, facilitate his acquaintance with the genius and manner of the Latin tongue, which varies the signification of verbs and nouns not as the modern languages do, by particles prefixed, but by changing the last syllable. More than this of grammar, I think, ne need not have, till he can read himself Sanctii Minerva.

As he advances in acquiring a knowledge of words, he must advance, *pari pasu*, in obtaining a thorough and critical knowledge of grammar. When by this way of interlining Latin and English one with another, he has got a moderate knowledge of the Latin tongue, he may then be advanced a little farther, to the reading of some other easy Latin book, such as Justin, or Eutropius; and, to make the reading and understanding of it the less tedious and difficult to him, let him help himself with the English translation. Nor let the objection, that he will then know it only by rote, fright any one. This, when well considered, is not of any moment against, but plainly for, this way of learning a language. For languages are only to be learned by rote; and a man who does not speak English and Latin perfectly by rote, so that having thought of the thing he would speak of, his tongue, of course without thought of rule or grammar, falls into the proper expression and idiom of that language, does not speak it well, nor is master of it. Languages were made, not by rules of art, but by accident, and the common use of the people; and he that speaks them well has no other rule but that, nor anything to trust to but his memory, and the habit of speaking after the fashion learned from those that are allowed to speak properly, which, in other words, is only to speak by rote.

Sydney Smith. — The Hamiltonian system, on the other hand, 1st. Teaches an unknown tongue by the closest interlinear translations, instead of leaving a boy to explore his way by the lexicon or dictionary. 2d. It postpones the study of grammar till a considerable progress has been made in the language, and a great degree of practical grammar has been acquired. 3d. It substitutes the cheerfulness and competition of the Lancasterian

system for the dull solitude of the dictionary. By these means a boy finds he is making a progress, and learning something from the very beginning. He is not overwhelmed with the first appearance of insuperable difficulties; he receives some little pay from the first moment of his apprenticeship, and is not compelled to wait for remuneration till he is out of his time. The student, having acquired the great art of understanding the sense of what is written in another tongue, may go into the study of the language as deeply and as extensively as he pleases The old system aims at beginning with a depth and accuracy which many men never will want, which disgusts many from arriving even at moderate attainments, and is a less easy, and not more certain road to a profound skill in a language, than if attention to grammar had been deferred to a later period.

In fine, we are strongly persuaded that, the time being given, this system will make better scholars; and, the degree of scholarship being given, a much shorter time will be needed. If there is any truth in this, it will make Mr. Hamilton one of the most useful men of his age; for, if there is anything which fills reflecting men with melancholy and regret, it is the waste of mortal time, parental money, and puerile happiness, in the present method of pursuing Latin and Greek.

THE

# ANABASIS OF XENOPHON

## BOOK I.

### CHAPTER I.

Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος γίγνονται δύο παῖδες,
Of Darius and Parysatis are-born two sons,

πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, δὲ νεώτερος
(the) elder (*indeed*) Artaxerxes, (*but*) (the) younger

Κῦρος. Ἐπεὶ δὲ Δαρεῖος ἠσθένει καὶ ὑπώπτευε
Cyrus. After — Darius was-sick, and suspected (the)

τελευτὴν τοῦ βίου, ἐβούλετο τὼ ἀμφοτέρω
end (*of-the*) (his) life, he-desired (*the*) both (his)

παῖδε παρεῖναι. Ὁ πρεσβύτερος μὲν
sons to-be-present (with him). The elder indeed

οὖν ἐτύγχανε παρών· δὲ μεταπέμ-
(*therefore*) happened | (*being-present*) (to be present); but he-sends

πεται Κῦρον ἀπὸ τῆς ἀρχῆς, ἧς ἐποίησε
for Cyrus from the government, of-which [1]he (had) [1]made

αὐτὸν σατράπην καὶ ἀπέδειξε αὐτὸν δὲ
him satrap, and [1]he (had) [1]appointed him also

στρατηγὸν πάντων, ὅσοι ἀθροίζονται εἰς
commander of-all (the forces), as-many-as muster in

πεδίον Καστωλοῦ. Ὁ Κῦρος οὖν ἀναβαίνει
(the) plain of-Castolus. — Cyrus therefore goes-up

λαβὼν Τισσαφέρνην ὡς φίλον,
(to his father) having-taken (with him) Tissaphernes as (a) friend.

καὶ ἀνέβη ἔχων δὲ τριακοσίους ὁπλίτας
and he-went-up having also (with him) three-hundred heavy-armed-men

τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ἄρχοντα δὲ αὐτῶν Ξενίαν
of-the Greeks, (and) (the) commander also of-them Xenias

Παῤῥάσιον.
(the) Parrhasian.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ Λαρεῖος ἐτελεύτησε, καὶ Ἀρταξέρξης
After — Darius died, and Artaxerxes

κατέστη εἰς τὴν βασιλείαν, Τισσαφέρνης δια-
was-established in the kingdom, Tissaphernes ca-

βάλλει τὸν Κῦρον πρὸς τὸν ἀδελφόν, ὡς
lumniates — Cyrus to (*the*) (his) brother, as-how-that

ἐπιβουλεύοι αὐτῷ. Ὁ δὲ πείθεται
he-might-be-plotting against-him. — (Artaxerxes) indeed believes

τε καὶ συλλαμβάνει Κῦρον ὡς ἀποκτενῶν·
(this) and also he-arrests Cyrus | as-if about-killing;

[with the intention of putting him to death;] δὲ ἡ μήτηρ
but (*the*) (his) mother

ἐξαιτησαμένη αὐτὸν, ἀποπέμπει
having-entreated-for-her-own-sake (pardon for) him sends

πάλιν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν. Ὁ δ' ὡς ἀπῆλθε,
(him) back to — (his) government. — But when he-departed,

κινδυνεύσας καὶ ἀτιμασθείς, βουλεύεται
(after) having-been-in-danger and disgraced, he-deliberates

ὅπως μήποτε ἔσται ἔτι ἐπὶ τῷ
how [1]he-shall never [2]be hereafter (dependent) on — (his)

ἀδελφῷ, ἀλλ' ἢν δύνηται βασιλεύσει ἀντ'
brother, but if he-could he-would-reign instead

ἐκείνου. Παρύσατις μὲν δὴ ἡ μητηρ ὑπῆρχη τῷ
of-him. Parysatis indeed — the mother went-for —

Κύρῳ, φιλοῦσα αὐτὸν μᾶλλον ἢ τὸν βασιλεύοντα
Cyrus, loving him more than the reigning

Ἀρταξέρξην. Ὅστις δ' ἀφικνεῖτο πρὸς αὐτον
Artaxerxes. Whoever indeed used-to-come to him

τῶν παρὰ βασιλέως, οὕτω διατιθεὶς
of-the (persons sent) from (the) king, | [1]having so [2]disposed

πάντας, ὥστε ἀπεπέμ
all, [having so disposed all towards himself,] that he-used-to-

πετο εἶναι φίλους αὐτῷ
'send (them) 'away-from-him (inclined) to-be friends to-himself

μᾶλλον ἢ βασιλεῖ. Καὶ δὲ ἐπεμελεῖτο τῶν
more than 'to (the) 'king. And also he-took-care of-the

βαρβάρων παρ' ἑαυτῷ, ὡς τε εἴησαν ἱκανοὶ
barbarians with him, in-order-that not-only they-might-be fit

πολεμεῖν καὶ ἔχοιεν εὐνοϊκῶς
to-wage-war but-also | might-have (themselves) [might be] well-disposed

αὐτῷ. Δὲ ἤθροιζε τὴν Ἑλληνικὴν δύναμιν
to-him. But he-collected the Greek force

ἐπικρυπτόμενος ὡς μάλιστα ἐδύνατο, ὅπως ὅτι
concealing (this) as most he-could, in-order that

λάβοι βασιλέα ἀπαρασκευότατον. Ὧδε οὖν
he-might-take the-king the-most-unprepared. Thus therefore

ἐποιεῖτο τὴν συλλογήν. Ὁπόσας φυλακὰς
did-he-make the collection (of troops). As-'many garrisons 'as

εἶχε ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι, παρήγγειλε τοῖς ἑκάστοις
he-had in the cities, he-sent-instructions — to-each

φρουράρχοις λαμβάνειν Πελοποννησίους ἄνδρας ὅτι
commander-of-them to-take Peloponnesian men as

πλείστους καὶ βελτίστους, ὡς
many-as (they could) and (the) best (soldiers), inasmuch-as

Τισσαφέρνους ἐπιβουλεύοντος ταῖς πόλεσι. Καὶ
Tissaphernes is-plotting-against the cities. —

γὰρ αἱ Ἰωνικαὶ πόλεις ἦσαν τὸ ἀρχαῖον
For the Ionian cities were — formerly (under the

Τισσαφέρνους, δεδομέναι ἐκ
government) of-Tissaphernes, (they) having-been-given (to him) by

βασιλέως, τότε δ' ἀφεστήκεσαν πρὸς Κῦρον
(the) king, afterwards they-had-revolted to Cyrus

πᾶσαι πλὴν Μιλήτου. Δὲ Τισσαφέρνης προαισ-
all (of them) except Miletus. But Tissaphernes having-be-

θόμενος ἐν Μιλήτῳ βουλευομέ-
forehand-perceived (that certain persons) in Miletus are-plan

νους ἐα αὐτὰ ταῦτα ἀποστῆναι πρὸς
ning — these very-same (things) | to-have-revolted [to revolt] to

Κῦρον, τοὺς μὲν αὐτῶν ἀπέκτεινε, τοὺς δ'
Cyrus, | the indeed [some indeed] of-them he-killed, | the but

ἐξέβαλεν. Ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὑπολαβὼν τοὺς
[but others] he-banished. — But Cyrus having-received | (*the*

φεύγοντας συλλέξας στράτευμα
*fleeing*) (the exiles) (and) having-collected (an) army

ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ
he-besieged Miletus both by land and by

θάλατταν, καὶ ἐπειρᾶτο κατάγειν τοὺς ἐκπεπ-
sea, and he-endeavoured to-bring-back | (*the having-*

τωκότας. Καὶ αὖ ἦν αὕτη ἄλλη
(*been*)-*driven-out*) (the exiles). And again there-was this other

πρόφασις αὐτῷ τοῦ ἀθροίζειν στράτευμα.
pretext for-him | (*of-the to-collect*) (for assembling) (an) army.

Δὲ πέμπων πρὸς βασιλέα ἠξίου ὢν
For sending to (the) king he-requested (that) being (a)

ἀδελφὸς αὐτοῦ, ταύτας τὰς πόλεις δοθῆναι
brother of-him, those — cities (ought) to-have-been-given

αὑ μᾶλλον ἢ Τισσαφέρνην ἄρχειν
to-himself rather than (that) Tissaphernes (should) rule

αὐτῶν, καὶ ἡ μήτηρ συνέπραττεν αὐτῷ
them, and — (his) mother supported him (in)

ταῦτα· ὥστε βασιλεὺς οὐκ μὲν ᾔσθάνετο
this; therefore (the) king [1]did not indeed [1]perceive

τῆς ἐπιβουλῆς πρὸς ἑαυτὸν, δὲ ἐνόμιζε αὐτὸν
the plot against himself, but he-thought he (Cyrus)

πολεμοῦντα Τισσαφέρνει δαπανᾶν ἀμφὶ
fighting with-Tissaphernes spends (his means) upon

τὰ στρατεύματα· ὥστε οὐδὲν ἧχθετο
| (*the*) (his) armies; | therefore [1]it-was not [1]hated

αὐτῶν πολεμούντων.
of-them fighting [therefore he was not displeased with their

Καὶ γὰρ ὁ Κῦρος ἀπέπεμπε βασιλεῖ
being at war]. For — Cyrus remitted [1]to (the) [1]king

τοὺς δασμοὺς γιγνομένους ἐκ τῶν πόλεων, ὧν
the tributes arising from the cities, which

Τισσαφέρνης ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων.
Tissaphernes | happened having [had].

Δ' ἄλλο στράτευμα συνελέγετο αὐτῷ ἐν
But another army was-collected for-him in

Χερρονήσῳ τῇ καταντιπέρας Ἀβύδου, τόνδε
Chersonesus (*in the*) right-over-against Abydos, this (was)

τὸν τρόπον. Κλέαρχος Λακεδαιμόνιος ἦν
the manner (thereof.) Clearchus (a) Lacedæmonian was (an

φυγὰς· ὁ Κῦρος συγγενόμενος τούτῳ
exile; — Cyrus having-become-acquainted with-this (man,

τε ἠγάσθη αὐτὸν καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ
not-only was struck-with-admiration (for) him, but-also gives him

μυρίους δαρεικούς. Ὁ δὲ λαβὼν τὸ χρυσίον
ten-thousand darics. — But having-taken the gold

συνέλεξε στράτευμα ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν χρημάτων,
he-collected (an) army | from these — things

καὶ ὁρμώμενος ἐκ Χερρονήσου
[by means thereof], and making-irruptions from (the) Chersonesus

ἐπολέμει τοῖς Θραξί, τοῖς οἰκοῦσι ὑπὲρ
he-waged-war against (the) Thracians, — (who) dwell above (the)

Ἑλλήσποντον, καὶ ὠφέλει τοὺς Ἕλληνας· καὶ
Hellespont, and he-was-of-service to-the Greeks; and

ὥστε αἱ Ἑλλεσποντιακαὶ πόλεις ἑκοῦσαι συνεβάλ-
so-that the Hellespontian towns willingly contri-

λοντο χρήματα αὐτῷ εἰς τὴν τροφὴν τῶν
buted (the necessary) things to-him for the nourishment of-the

στρατιωτῶν. Τοῦτο δ' αὖ αὕτω τὸ στράτευμα
soldiers. | This indeed again (was) thus — (an) army

τρεφόμενον ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ.
being-maintained secreted for-him [thus again an army was secretly maintained for him].

Ἀρίστιππος δὲ ὁ Θετταλὸς
— Aristippus — the Thessalian

ὢν ἐτύγγανεν αὐτῷ ξένος,
being happened to-him (a) guest-friend [happened to be his

καὶ πιεζόμενος ὑπὸ τῶν
guest bound by the ties of hospitality], and being-pressed by the
ἀντιστασιωτῶν οἴκοι ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Κῦρον, καὶ
opposite-faction at-home he-goes to — Cyrus, and
αἰτεῖ αὐτὸν εἰς δισχιλίους ξένους καὶ μισθόν
requests (of) him — two-thousand mercenaries, and pay
τριῶν μηνῶν, ὡς οὕτω ἂν περιγε-
(for them for) three months, as thus | he might have-been
νόμενος τῶν ἀντιστασιωτῶν.
superior [so that he might be superior to] the opposite-faction.

Ὁ δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσιν αὐτῷ εἰς τετρα-
— But Cyrus gives him to (the number of) four-
κισχιλίους καὶ μισθὸν ἓξ μηνῶν, καὶ δεῖται
thousand and pay (for) six months, and he-requests
αὐτοῦ μὴ πρόσθεν καταλῦσαι πρὸς
of-him he-would not first terminate (the strife) against
τοὺς ἀντιστασιώτας πρὶν ἂν συμβουλεύσηται
the opposite-faction before (that) — he-should-consult
αὐτῷ. Οὕτω δὲ αὖ τὸ στράτευμα τρε-
with-him [Cyrus]. | Thus — again — (an) army being
φόμενον ἐλάνθανεν αὐτῷ
maintained secreted for-him [thus again an army was secretly
ἐν Θετταλίᾳ. Ἐκέλευσε Πρόξενον
maintained for him] in Thessaly. He-ordered Proxenus
δὲ τὸν Βοιώτιον ὄντα ξένον αὐτῷ
— the Bœotian | being (a) guest (of) him [who was in the ties
λαβόντα πλείστους
of hospitality with him] (that) | having-taken [having collected] as-many
ἄνδρας ὅτι παραγενέσθαι, ὡς βουλόμενος
men as-possible to-come-to (him), as-if he-were-wishing
στρατεύεσθαι εἰς Πισίδας, ὡς, τῶν
to-lead-an-army against (the) Pisidians, in-as-much-as, the
Πισιδῶν παρεχόντων πράγματα τῇ χώρᾳ ἑαυτοῦ.
Pisidians being-pretending thing in-the province of-himself

Ἐκέλευσε δὲ Σοφαίνετον
[for the Pisidians infested his territories]. He-ordered also Sophænetus

τον Στυμφάλιον καὶ Σωκράτην τὸν Ἀχαιόν, τούτους
the Stymphalian and Socrates the Achaian, these

καὶ ὄντας ξένους, λαβόντας
also being (his) guest-friends, (that) | having-taken [having collected]

πλείστους ἄνδρας ὅτι ἐλθεῖν, ὡς
as many men as-possible | to-have-come [to come to him], as

πολεμήσων Τισσαφέρνει σὺν τοῖς φυγάσι
he-was-about-waging-war against-Tissaphernes with the exiles

τῶν Μιλησίων. Καὶ οὗτοι ἐποίουν οὕτως.
of-the Milesians. And they did so.

## CHAPTER II.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐδόκει αὐτῷ ἤδη πορεύεσθαι
AFTER indeed it-seemed to-him already (time) | to-go

ἄνω, μὲν ἐποιεῖτο
up, [to march into the interior against his brother], — he-made

τὴν πρόφασιν ὡς βουλόμενος ἐκβαλεῖν
(the) (this) pretext, that (*he-wishing*) (he was desirous) to-expel

Πισίδας παντάπασιν ἐκ τῆς χώρας· καὶ ἀθροίζει
(the) Pisidians entirely from the territory; and he-collects

ἐνταῦθα ὡς ἐπὶ τούτους τό τε βαρβαρικὸν
there, as-if against these (Pisidians), the — barbarian

καὶ τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν στράτευμα, καὶ παραγγέλλει τε
and the Grecian army, and he-sends-word not-only

τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ἥκειν λαβόντι ὅσον στράτευμα
— to-Clearchus to-come (to him) | taking whatever army

ἦν αὐτῷ καὶ τῷ Ἀρισ-
there-was to-him [bringing all the forces he had] but-also — Aris-

τίππῳ, συναλλαγέντι πρὸς τοὺς
ippus, (that) having-been-reconciled with — (those opposed

οἴκοι ἀποπέμψαι πρὸς ἑαυτὸν
to him) at-home | (*to-have-sent*) (to send) to himself (the

στράτευμα ὃ εἶχε· καὶ παραγγέλλει Ξενίᾳ τῷ
army which he-had; and he-sent-word to-Xenias the

Ἀρκάδι, ὃς προεστήκει τοῦ ξενικοῦ ἐν ταῖς
Arcadian, who had-been-commander-over the mercenaries in the
πόλεσι αὐτῷ, ἥκειν λαβόντα τοὺς ἄνδρας,
towns for-him, to-come | taking [bringing] (all) the men,
πλὴν ὁπόσοι ἦσαν ἱκανοὶ φυλάττειν τὰς ἀκροπόλεις
except as-many-as were sufficient to-guard the citadels
Ἐκάλεσε δὲ καὶ τοὺς πολιορκοῦντας Μίλητον
He-called-for — also — (those) besieging Miletus
καὶ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς φυγάδας στρατεύεσθαι σὺν αὐτῷ
and he-exhorted the exiles to-serve-as-soldiers with him,
ὑποσχόμενος αὐτοῖς, εἰ καλῶς καταπράξειεν,
having-promised to-them, if he-should successfully accomplish
ἐφ' ἃ ἐστρατεύετο, μὴ πρόσθεν παύσασθαι
(the objects) for which he-took-the-field, ‖not (*first*) to-cease
πρὶν καταγάγοι αὐτοὺς οἴκαδε.
before he-might-have-led them home [he would not cease before
Οἱ δὲ ἡδέως ἐπείθοντο· γὰρ
he led them home]. — — They cheerfully obeyed (him); for
ἐπίστευον αὐτῷ· καὶ λαβόντες τὰ ὅπλα
they-believed him; and having-taken — (their) arms
παρῆσαν εἰς Σάρδεις. Ξενίας μὲν δὴ
| were-present at [joined him at] Sardis. Xenias also —
παρεγένετο εἰς Σάρδεις λαβὼν τοὺς
came to Sardis having-taken (with him) the (soldiers)
ἐκ τῶν πόλεων, ὁπλίτας εἰς τετρα-
from the towns, (being) heavy-armed-men to-the-number-of four-
κισχιλίους· Πρόξενος δὲ παρῆν ἔχων ὁπλί-
thousand; Proxenus — | was-present [came] having heavy-
τας μὲν εἰς πεντακοσίους καὶ χιλίους,
armed-men — to-the-number-of five-hundred and a-thousand,
δὲ πεντακοσίους γυμνῆτας· Σοφαίνετος δὲ ὁ
also five-hundred light-armed; Sophænetus likewise, the
Στυμφάλιος ἔχων χιλίους ὁπλίτας· Σωκράτης
Stymphalian having a-thousand heavy-armed-men; Socrates
δὲ ὁ Ἀχαιὸς ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους ὁπλίτας
also the Achaian having about five-hundred heavy-armed-men

Πασίων ὁ Μεγαρεὺς δὲ παρεγένετο ἔχων μὲν
Pasion the Megarean also came having —

εἰς τριακοσίους ὁπλίτας, δὲ τριακοσίους
to-the-number-of three-hundred heavy-armed-men, and three-hundred

πελταστὰς· καὶ δὲ οὗτος ἦν καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης
peltastæ, both he was and (also) — Socrates

τῶν στρατευομένων ἀμφὶ Μίλητον.
(among) — (those) serving-in-the-army at Miletus

Οὗτοι μὲν ἀφίκοντο αὐτῷ εἰς Σάρδεις.
These indeed | arrived-at to-him [joined him] at Sardis.

Τισσαφέρνης δε κατανοήσας ταῦτα, καὶ ἡγησάμενος
Tissaphernes - having-observed these-things, and having-considered

τὴν παρασκευὴν εἶναι μείζονα ἢ ὡς ἐπὶ
the preparation to-be greater than as-if against (the)

Πισίδας, πορεύεται ὡς βασιλέα τάχιστα ἧ
Pisidians, he-set-out to (the) king as-speedily as

ἐδύνατο, ἔχων ὡς πεντακοσίους ἱππέας. Καὶ
he-could, having about five-hundred cavalry. And (the)

βασιλεὺς μὲν δὴ, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε παρὰ Τισσαφέρνους
king — therefore, after he-heard from Tissaphernes

τὸν στόλον Κύρου ἀντιπαρεσκευάζετο.
(of) the military-expedition of-Cyrus began-to-prepare-himself-against-it.

Κῦρος δὲ, ἔχων οὓς εἴρηκα ὡρμᾶ-
Cyrus —, | having which I-have-said [as I said] put-himself-in-

το ἀπὸ Σάδεων· καὶ ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυδίας
motion from Sardis; (*and*) he-advances through — Lydia

τρεῖς σταθμούς, εἴκοσι
| three stations [three days' march], (being a distance of) twenty

καὶ δὺο παρασάγγας, ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν Μαίανδρον.
and two parasangs, to the river Mæander.

Τὸ εὖρος τούτου δύο πλέθρα·
The breadth of-this (river was) two plethra; [about 200 feet]; (a,

γέφυρα δε ἐπῆν ἐζευγμένη ἑπτά πλοίοις.
bridge — was-over (it) connected-together by-seven boats.

Διαβὰς τοῦτοι ἐξελαύνει διὰ Φρυγίας
Having-crossed-over this river) he-advances through Phrygia

ἕνα σταθμὸν ὀκτὼ παρασάγγας, εἰς
one station [one day's march] (being) eight parasangs, to

Κολοσσάς οἰκουμένην πόλιν, εὐδαίμονα καὶ
Colossa, (an) inhabited town, wealthy and

μεγάλην. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινεν ἑπτά ἡμέρας· καὶ
large. Here he-remained seven days; and

Μένων ὁ Θετταλὸς ἦκε ἔχων χιλίους
Menon the Thessalian came (to him) having (a) thousand

ὁπλίτας καὶ τετρακοσίους πελταστάς,
heavy-armed-men and five-hundred peltastæ [targetiers],

Δόλοπας καὶ Αἰνιᾶνας καὶ Ὀλυνθίους.
(they being) Dolopians and Æneans and Olynthians.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει τρεῖς σταθμοὺς
Hence he-advances three stations [three days' march]

εἴκοσιν παρασάγγας εἰς Κελαινὰς οἰκουμένην
(making) twenty parasangs to Celænæ (an) inhabited

πόλιν τῆς Φρυγίας, μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα.
town of-the Phrygians, large and wealthy

Ἐνταῦθα ἦν βασίλεια Κύρῳ
| Here there-was (a) palace for-Cyrus, [here Cyrus had a pa-

καὶ μέγας παράδεισος, πλήρης ἀγρίων θηρίων,
lace] and (a) large park, full of-wild beasts,

ἃ ἐκεῖνος ἐθήρευεν ἀπὸ ἵππου, ὁπότε
which he used-to-hunt | from horse, [on horseback], | when

βούλοιτο γυμνάσαι ἑαυτόν
he-might-wish to-have-exercised [when he wished to exercise] himself

τε καὶ τοὺς ἵππους. Ὁ ποταμὸς Μαίανδρος ῥεῖ
— and the horses. The river Mæander flows

διὰ μέσου δὲ τοῦ παραδείσου· δὲ αἱ πηγαὶ
through (the) middle — of-the park; | and the springs

αὐτοῦ εἰσιν ἐκ τῶν βασιλείων·
of-it are from the palace; [and its springs issue from

δὲ καὶ ῥεῖ διὰ τῆς πόλεως Κελαινῶν.
the palace]; and also it flows through the city of-Celænæ.

Ἔστι δὲ καὶ ἐρυμνὰ βασίλεια μεγάλου
There-is also — (a) fortified palace (of the) great

Βασιλέως ἐν Κελαιναῖς, ἐπι ταῖς
king [the king of Persia] in Celænæ, (situated) at the

πηγαῖς τοῦ ποταμοῦ Μαρσύου, ὑπὸ τῇ ἀκροπόλει
sources of-the river Marsyas, under the citadel;

οὗτος δὲ καὶ ῥεῖ διὰ τῆς πόλεως, καὶ
this (river) also — flows through the city, and

ἐμβάλλει εἰς τὸν Μαίανδρον· τὸ δὲ εὖρος τοῦ
empties into the Mæander; the — breadth of-the

Μαρσύου ἐστιν εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε ποδῶν.
Marsyas is twenty and five | of-feet [feet]

Ἐνταῦθα Ἀπόλλων λέγεται ἐκδεῖρα Μαρσύαν.
Here Apollo is-said to-have-flayed Marsyas,

νικήσας ἐρίζοντά οἱ περὶ
having-conquered (him) | contending — (they contending) about

σοφίας, καὶ κρεμάσαι τὸ δέρμα ἐν τῷ ἄντρῳ
music, and to-have-hung-up the skin in the cave

ὅθεν αἱ πηγαί· διὰ τοῦτο δὲ ὁ ποταμὸς
whence the springs (rise); from this indeed the river

καλεῖται Μαρσύας. Ἐνταῦθα Ξέρξης, ὅτε ἀπεχώρει
is-called Marsyas. Here Xerxes, when he-departed

ἐκ τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἡττηθεὶς τῇ μάχῃ, λέγεται
from — Greece having-been-defeated in-the battle, is-said

οἰκοδομῆσαι τε ταὐτά τα βασίλεια καὶ τὴν
to-have-built also this — palace and the

ἀκρόπολιν Κελαινῶν. Ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος ἔμεινε
citadel of-Celænæ. Here Cyrus remained

τριάκοντα ἡμέρας καὶ Κλέαρχος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος
thirty days and Clearchus the Lacedæmonian

φυγὰς ἦκε, ἔχων χιλίους ὁπλίτας, καὶ
exile came (to him), having a-thousand heavy-armed-men, and

ὀκτακοσίους Θρᾷκας πελταστάς, καὶ διακοσίους
eight-hundred Thracian targetiers, and two-hundred

Κρῆτας τοξότας. Δὲ καὶ ἅμα Σωκράτης ὁ
Cretan archers. And also at-the-same-time Socrates the

Συρακόσιος παρῆν ἔχων τριακοσίους
Syracusian | was-present [arrived] having three-hundred

ὁπλίτας, καὶ Σοφαίνετος ὁ Ἀρκὰς, ἔχων χιλίους
heavy-armed-men, and Sophænetus the Arcadian, having a-thousand

ὁπλίτας. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος ἐποίησεν
heavy-armed-men. And here Cyrus made (an)

ἀριθμὸν καὶ ἐξέτασιν τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐν τῷ
enumeration and (had a) review of-the Greeks in the

παραδείσῳ, καὶ ἐγενοντο οἱ σύμπαντες, μὲν
park, and they-were — all-together, (*indeed*)

μύριοι καὶ χίλιοι ὁπλῖται, δὲ ἀμφὶ τοὺς
ten-thousand and a-thousand heavy-armed-men, but about —

δισχιλίους πελτασταὶ.
two-thousand peltastæ [light-armed men and targetiers].

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει δύο σταθμοὺς,
Hence he-advances two stations [two days' march],

δέκα παρασάγγας εἰς Πέλτας, οἰκουμένην
(making) ten parasangs to Peltæ, (a) peopled

πόλιν. Ἐνταῦθ' ἔμεινε τρεῖς ἡμέρας· ἐν αἷς
city. Here he-remained three days; in which (days)

Ξενίας ὁ Ἀρκας ἔθυσε τὰ Λύκαια καὶ ἔθηκε
Xenias the Arcadian celebrated the Lycæan-rites, and instituted (a)

ἀγῶνα· τὰ δὲ ἆθλα ἦσαν χρυσαῖ
contest; [public games]; the — prizes were golden

στλεγγίδες· καὶ δὲ Κῦρος ἐθεώρει τὸν ἀγῶνα.
strigils; and also Cyrus viewed the public-games.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει δύο σταθμοὺς, δώδεκα
Hence he-marches-forth two stations, (making) twelve

παρασάγγας εἰς ἀγοράν Κεραμῶν,
parasangs to (the) market-place of (the) Ceramians, (an)

οἰκουμένην πόλιν, ἐσχάτην
inhabited city, (the) last (on the road to Mysia) (and)

πρὸς τῇ Μυσίᾳ χώρᾳ. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει τρεῖς
next-to the Mysian territory. Hence he-advances three

σταθμοὺς, τριάκοντα παρασάγγας,
stations, [days' march], (making) thirty parasangs,

εἰς πεδίον Καϋστρου, οἰκουμένην πόλιν. Ἐνταῦθ'
to (the) plain of-Caÿstrus, (an) inhabited city. Here

ἐμεινε πέντε ἡμέρας· καὶ μισθός ὠφείλετο τοῖς
ne-remained five days; and pay was-due to-the

στρατιώταις πλέον ἢ τριῶν μηνῶν, καὶ ἰόντες
soldiers (for) more than three months, and going

πολλάκις ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας ἀπῄτουν.
often | to the gates [to his quarters] they-demanded (it)

Δὲ ὁ λέγων ἐλπίδας διῆγε
But — Cyrus | saying hopes [giving hopes] | passed-the-time [put

καὶ ἦν δῆλος ἀνιώμενος· γὰρ ἦν οὐ
them off], and he-was manifestly distressed; for it-was not

πρὸς τρόπου τοῦ Κύρου μὴ ἀποδιδόναι
of the-nature — of-Cyrus not to-pay

ἔχοντα.
ne-having (wherewith so to do).

Ἐνταῦθα Ἐπύαξα ἡ γυνὴ Συεννέσιος τοῦ
Here Epyaxa the wife of-Syennesis the

βασιλέως Κιλίκων ἀφικνεῖται, παρὰ
king [1]of (the) [1]Cilicians arrives, (on a visit) to

Κῦρον· καὶ ἐλέγετο δοῦναι Κύρῳ πολλά χρήματα.
Cyrus; and she-was-said to-have-given Cyrus much money.

Κῦρος δ' οὖν τότε ἀπέδωκε τῇ στρατιᾷ μισθὸν
Cyrus — therefore then paid the army (their) wages

τεττάρων μενῶν. [6]Ἡ Κίλισσα δὲ καὶ εἶχε
for-four months. The Cilician (queen) also — had (a)

φύλακας περὶ αὐτὴν Κίλικας καὶ [3]Ἀσπεν-
guard with her (composed of) Cilicians and Aspen-

δίους· καὶ δὲ ἐλέγετο Κῦρον συγγενέσθαι τῇ
dians; and also it-was-said (that) Cyrus had-connexion with-the

Κιλίσσῃ. [3]Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐξελαύνει δύο σταθμούς,
Cilician (queen). Hence — he-marches-forth two stations,

δέκα παρασάγγας εἰς Θύμβριον, οἰκουμένην
(making) ten parasangs to Thymbrium, (a) peopled

πόλιν. [3]Ἐνταῦθα ἦν παρὰ τὴν ὁδὸν κρήνη
town. Here there-was, by the road (side) (a) fountain

ἡ καλουμένη Μίδου τοῦ βασιλέως
which was-called (the fountain of) Midas, the king

Φρυγων, ἐφ' ἧ Μίδας λέγεται θηρεῦσαι τὸν
of-Phrygia, at which, Midas is-said to-have-captured the

Σάτυρον, κεράσας αὐτὴν οἴνῳ. Ἐντεῦθεν
Satyr, having-mixed it [the fountain] with-wine. Hence

ἐξελαύνει δύο σταθμοὺς δέκα παρασάγγας,
he-marches-forth two stations (making) ten parasangs,

εἰς Τυριαῖον οἰκουμένην πόλιν. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε
to Tyriæum (an) inhabited town. Here he-remained

τρεῖς ἡμέρας, καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα λέγεται δεηθῆναι
three days, and the Cilician (queen) is-said to-have-requested

Κύρου ἐπιδεῖξαι τὸ στράτευμα αὐτῇ.
of-Cyrus | to-have-shown [to show] | (*the*) (his) army to-her.

Οὖν βουλόμενος ἐπιδεῖξαι, ποιεῖται
He therefore willing | to-have-shown [to show it], makes (a)

ἐξέτασιν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν
review in the plains of-the Greeks and of-the

βαρβάρων. Ἐκέλευσε δὲ τοὺς Ἕλληνας οὕτω
barbarians. He-orders — the Greeks | so

ταχθῆναι ὡς νόμος αὐτοῖς
to-have-been-arranged [so to be marshalled] as (was the) custom for-them

εἰς μάχην καὶ στῆναι, δὲ ἕκαστον
in battle, and to-stand (in such order), but (that) each

συντάξαι τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ.
(commander) was-to-arrange | the of-himself [his own men]. | They-

Οὖν ἐτάχθησαν ἐπὶ τεττάρων.
were therefore arranged in fours; [they were drawn up

Μένων μὲν δὲ, καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ εἶχε
four deep]; Menon indeed — and | (*the*) (those) with him had

τὸ δεξιὸν, δὲ Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἐκείνου
the right, but Clearchus | and the of-him [and his men]

τὸ εὐώνυμον, οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ δὲ τὸ μέσον.
the left, the other commanders — the centre.

Ὁ Κῦρος οὖν μὲν πρῶτον ἐθεώρει τοὺς βαρβάρους.
— Cyrus therefore — first reviewed the barbarians

οἱ δὲ παρήλαυνον τεταγμένοι κατὰ ἴλας καὶ
— and they-marched-past-him drawn-up in troops and

κατὰ τάξεις, δὲ εἶτα τοὺς Ἕλληνας
in companies, and afterwards (he reviewed) the Greeks

παρελαύνων ἐφ' ἅρματος καὶ ἡ Κίλισσα ἐφ'
riding-by-them in (his) chariot, and the Cilician (queen) in

ἁρμαμάξης. Πάντες δὲ εἶχον χαλκᾶ κράνη, καὶ
(a) covered-carriage. All — had brazen helmets, and

φοινικοῦς χιτῶνας, καὶ κνημῖδας, καὶ τὰς ἀσπίδας
scarlet tunics, and greaves, and the shields

ἐκκεκαθαρμένας. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ παρήλασε πάντας,
burnished. After — he-had-ridden-past all,

στήσας τὸ ἅρμα πρὸ τῆς φάλαγγος,
having-stopped — (his) chariot in-front-of the phalanx, (and)

πέμψας Πίγρητα τὸν ἑρμηνέα παρὰ τοὺς στρατη-
having-sent Pigres the interpreter to the comman-

γοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐκέλευσε προβαλέσθαι
ders of-the Greeks he-commanded (them) to-thrust-forward

τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ ἐπιχωρῆσαι τὴν
— (their) arms, and | to-have-moved-forward [to move forward] the

ὅλην φάλαγγα. Οἱ δὲ προεῖπον ταῦτα
entire phalanx. The (commanders) — announced these

τοῖς στρατιώταις· καὶ ἐπεὶ ἐσάλ-
(things) to-the soldiers; and after it-was-sounded-with-the

πιγξε, προβαλλόμενοι τα ὅπλα, ἐπῇεσαν.
trumpet, putting-forward — (their) arms, they-advanced.

Δὲ ἐκ τούτου προϊόντων θᾶσσον σὺν κραυγῇ
And from this going-on more-quickly with (a) shout, | (a)

δρόμος ἐγένετο τοῖς στρατιώταις
running happened to-the soldiers [the soldiers commenced ran-

ἀπὸ τοῦ αὐτομάτου ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνάς. Καὶ δὲ
ning] of — their-own-accord to the tents. And also

πολὺς φόβος ἄλλοις τῶν βαρβάρων, καὶ
(there was) (a) great fear to-others of-the barbarians, and

τε ἡ Κίλισσα ἔφυγεν ἐκ τῆς ἁρμαμάξης, καὶ
— the Cilician (queen) fled from the Persian-carriage, and

οἱ ἐκ τῆς ἀγορᾶς ἔφυγον καταλιπόντες τὰ
(those) in the markets fled having-left-behind the

ὤνια· δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἦλθον ἐπὶ τας
things-exposed-to-sale; but the Greeks went to the

σκηνὰς σὺν γέλωτι. Δὲ ἡ Κίλισσα ἰδοῦσα
tents with laughter. (*But*) the Cilician (queen) having-seen

τὴν λαμπρότητα καὶ τὴν τάξιν τοῦ στρατεύματος
the splendour and the discipline of-the army

ἐθαύμασε. Δὲ Κῦρος ἥσθη ἰδὼν τὸν
was-struck-with-admiration. (*But*) Cyrus was-delighted seeing the

φόβον ἐκ τῶν Ἑλλήνων εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους.
fear (inspired) by the Greeks into the barbarians

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει τρεῖς σταθμοὺς, εἴκοσι
Hence he-marches-forth three stations, (making) twenty

παρασάγγας, εἰς Ἰκόνιον, ἐσχάτην πόλιν τῆς
parasangs, to Iconium, (the) last town —

Φρυγίας. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμεινε τρεῖς ἡμέρας.
of-Phrygia. Here he-remained three days.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Λυκαονίας πέντε
Hence he-marches-forth through — Lycaonia five

σταθμοὺς, τριάκοντα παρασάγγας. Ἐπέτρεψε
stations, (making) thirty parasangs. He-permitted

τοῖς Ἕλλησι διαρπάσαι τὴν ταύτην
the Greeks | (*to-have-plundered*) (to plunder) — this

χώραν, ὡς οὖσαν πολεμίαν. Ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος
country, as being hostile. Hence Cyrus

ἀποπέμπει τὴν Κίλισσαν τὴν ταχίστην
sends-away the Cilician (queen) by-the | quickest [shortest]

ὁδὸν εἰς τὴν Κιλικίαν· καὶ συμέπεμψεν αὐτῇ
road into — Cilicia; and he-sent-with her (the)

στρατιώτας, οὓς Μένων εἶχε, καὶ αὐτόν.
soldiers, that Menon had, and (Menon) himself.

Κῦρος δὲ μετὰ τῶν ἄλλων ἐξελαύνει διὰ Καπ-
Cyrus indeed with the others marches-forth through Cap-

παδοκίας τέτταρας σταθμοὺς, εἴκοσι καὶ πέντε
padocia four stations, (making) twenty and five

παρασάγγας, πρὸς Δάναν οἰκουμένην πόλιν,
parasangs, to Dana (a) peopled town

μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα. Ἐνταῦθα ἐμειναν τρεῖς
large and wealthy. Here they-remained three

ἡμέρας· ἐν ᾧ Κῦρος ἀπέκτεινε Πέρσην
days; during which (time) Cyrus put-to-death (a) Persian

ἄνδρα Μεγαφέρνην, βασίλειον φοινικιστήν,
(*man*) Megaphernes (by name), (a) royal purple-wearer

καὶ τινα ἕτερόν δυνάστην τῶν ὑπάρχων
(*and*) a-certain other powerful-person of-the officers-high-in-command

αἰτιασάμενος ἐπιβουλεύειν αὐτῷ.
having-accused (him) | to-conspire to-him [of conspiring against

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειρῶντο εἰσβάλλειν εἰς τὴν
him]. Hence they-endeavoured to-throw-themselves into —

Κιλικίαν· ἡ δὲ εἰσβολὴ ἦν ὁδὸς
Cilicia; but the entrance was (a) road (only broad enough for a

ἁμαξιτὸς, ἰσχυρῶς ὀρθία, καὶ ἀμήχανος
single) wagon-way, very steep, and impracticable ‘for (an)

στρατεύματι εἰσελθεῖν, εἴ τις ἐκώλυε. Καὶ δὲ
‘army to-enter, if any-one opposed And also

Συέννεσις ἐλέγετο εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων, φυλάττων
Syennesis was-said to-be on the heights, guarding

τὴν εἰσβολήν· δι' ὃ ἐμεινεν ἡμεραν ἐν
the entrance; for which (reason) he-remained (a) day on

τῷ πεδίῳ. Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἄγγελος ἦκε λέγων
the plain. But on-the next-day (a) messenger came saying

ὅτι Συέννεσις εἴη λελοιπὼς τὰ ἄκρα, ἐπεὶ
that Syennesis | might-be having-left [had left] the heights, after

ᾔσθετο ὅτι τὸ στράτευμα Μένωνος ἦν ἤδη ἐν
he-perceived that the army of-Menon was already in

Κιλικίᾳ, εἴσω τῶν ὀρέων, καὶ ὅτι ἤκουε
Cilicia, within the mountains, and because he-heard (that)

Ταμῶν ἔχοντα τριήρεις τὰς Λακε-
Tamos having galleys (namely) — (those) ‘of (the) ‘Lace-

δαιμονίων καὶ Κύρου αὐτοῦ, περιπλε-
dæmonians and of-Cyrus himself, (and that) ‘he (Tamos) ‘was-sail-

ούσας ἀπ' Ἰωνίας εἰς Κιλικίαν. Κῦρος δ' οὖν
ing-round from Ionia into Cilicia. Cyrus — therefore

ἀνέβη επι τὰ ὄρη, οὐδενὸς κωλύοντος, καὶ εἶδε
ascended (*on*) the mountains, no-one opposing, and he-saw

τὰς σκηνάς, οὗ οἱ Κίλικες ἐφύλαττον. Ἐντεῦθεν
the tents, where the Cilicians kept-guard Hence

δὲ κατέβαινεν εἰς μέγα καὶ καλόν πεδίον,
— he-descended into (a) large and beautiful plain,

ἐπιῤῥυτον, καὶ ἔμπλεων παντοδαπῶν δενδρων καὶ
well-watered, and (*being*)-full of-all-kinds of-trees and

ἀμπέλων· καὶ δὲ φέρει πολὺ σήσαμον καὶ μελίνην,
vines; and also it-bears much sesamum, and panic,

καὶ κέγχρον καὶ πυροὺς καὶ κριθας. Ὄρος δ'
and millet, and wheat, and barley. (A) mountain (chain) —

ὀχυρὸν καὶ ὑψηλὸν περιέχει αὐτὸ
strong (by nature and art) and high surrounds it

πάντη ἐκ θαλάττης εἰς θάλατταν.
on-all-sides from sea to sea.

Καταβὰς δὲ διὰ τοῦτου τοῦ πεδίου ἤλασε
Descending — through this — plain he-proceeds

τέτταρας σταθμούς, πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι παρα-
four days' march, (making) five and twenty para-

σάγγας, εἰς Ταρσούς μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα πόλιν
sangs, to Tarsus (a) large and wealthy city

τῆς Κιλικίας. Ἔνταῦθα ἦσαν τὰ βασίλεια
— of-Cilicia. Here were the palaces

Συεννέσιος τοῦ βασιλέως Κιλίκων· δὲ δια
of-Syennesis the king of (the) Cilicians; and through (the)

μέσης τῆς πόλεως ῥεῖ ποταμός ὄνομα
middle of-the city runs (a) river (the) name (of which is)

Κύδνος, εὖρος δύο πλέθρον. Οἱ
Cydnus, (the) breadth (of which is) two plethra. — (Those)

ἐνοικοῦντες τὴν ταύτην πόλιν ἐξέλιπον μετὰ
inhabiting — this city deserted (it) together-with

Συεννέσιος εἰς ὀχυρὸν χωρίον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη, πλὴν
Syennesis for (a) fortified place on the mountains, except

οἱ ἔχοντες τὰ καπηλεῖα· καὶ δὲ οἱ οἰκοῦντες
— (those) having — shops; and also — (those) dwelling

ἀγρὰ τὴν θάλατταν ἐν Σόλοις καὶ ἐν Ἰσσοῖς.
near the sea at Soli and at Issus.

Ἐπύνθα δὲ, ἡ γυνὴ Συεννέσιος ἀφίκετο εἰς Ταρσοὺς
Epyaxa also, the wife of-Syennesis arrived at Tarsus

πέντε ἡμέρας προτερα Κύρου· δὲ ἐν τῇ ὑπερβολῇ
five days before Cyrus; but in the crossing-over

τῶν ὀρῶν, τῶν εἰς τὸ πεδίον,
of-the mountains, — (namely, those which descend) to the plain,

δύο λόχοι στρατεύματος τοῦ Μένωνος
two companies of (the) army — of-Menon

ἀπώλοντο. Οἱ μὲν ἔφασαν ἁρπάζοντάς
perished. — (Some) indeed said | (that while) plundering

τι κατακοπῆναι
something to-have-been-cut-to-pieces [that they had been cut to pieces

ὑπὸ τῶν Κιλίκων· δὲ οἱ
while plundering] by the Cilicians; but — (others) (that)

ὑπολειφθέντας, καὶ οὐ δυναμένους εὑρεῖν τὸ ἄλλο
being-left-behind, and not being-able to-find the rest (of the)

στράτευμα οὐδὲ τὰς ὁδούς εἶτα πλανωμένους
army nor the roads after wandering-about

ἀπολέσθαι· οὗτοι δὲ οὖν ἦσαν ἑκατὸν ὁπλῖται.
to-have-perished; these — therefore were a-hundred heavy-armed-men.

Δ' οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπεὶ ἦκον, ὀργιζόμενοι
But the rest (of Menon's command) after they-arrived, enraged

διὰ τὸν ὄλεθρον τῶν συστρατιωτῶν διήρπασαν
at the destruction — (of their) fellow-soldiers plundered

τήν τε πόλιν τοὺς Ταρσοὺς, καὶ τὰ βασίλεια τὰ ἐν
the — city — Tarsus, and the palaces — in

αὐτῇ. Κῦρος δὲ ἐπεὶ εἰσήλασεν εἰς τὴν πόλιν,
it. Cyrus indeed after he-entered into the city,

μετεπέμπετο τον Συέννεσιν πρὸς ἑαυτόν· ὁ
sent-for — Syennesis (to come) to him; —

δ' ἔφη οὔτε πω πρότερον ἐλθεῖν εἰς χεῖρας
but he-said | never yet before-this to-have-come into hands

οὐδενι
[that never yet before this had he put himself in the power of] any-person

κρείττονι ἑαυτοῦ, οὐτε ἤθελε τοτε ἰέναι
superior-in-power (to) himself, neither would-he then | (*to-go*) (go)

Κύρῳ, πρὶν ἡ γυνὴ ἔπεισε αὐτὸν, καὶ ἔλαβε
to-Cyrus, before — (his) wife [1]brought him [1]to-it, and he-received

πίστεις. Μετα δὲ ταῦτα, ἐπεὶ συνεγένοντο
assurances (of safety). After — these-things, when they-met

ἀλλήλοις, Συέννεσις μὲν ἔδωκε Κύρῳ πολλὰ χρήματα
one-another, Syennesis (*indeed*) gave Cyrus many things

εἰς την στρατιὰν, δὲ Κῦρος ἐκείνῳ δῶρα, ἃ
for — (his) army, and Cyrus (gave) to-him gifts, which

νομίζεται τίμια παρὰ βασιλεῖ
are-accustomed-to-be-held as-valuable by (a) king (namely) (a)

ἵππον χρυσοχάλινον, καὶ χρυσοῦν στρεπτὸν, καὶ
horse having-a-golden-bridle, and a-golden twisted-collar, and

ψέλλια, καὶ χρυσοῦν ἀκινάκην, καὶ Περσικὴν στολὴν,
bracelets, and a-golden scimitar, and a-Persian robe,

καὶ τὴν χώραν μηκέτι ἁφαρπάζεσθαι·
and (he agreed that) the country (was) not-hereafter to-be-plundered;

δὲ ἀπολαμβάνειν τὰ ἡρπασμένα ἀνδράποδα,
and (that they were) to-receive-back the captured slaves,

ἤν που ἐντυγχάνωσι.
if any-where they-meet-with-them.

## CHAPTER III.

Ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος καὶ ἡ στρατια ἔμεινε εἴκοσιν
HERE Cyrus and the army remained twenty

ἡμέρας· γὰρ οἱ στρατιῶται ἔφασαν οὐκ ἰέναι τοῦ
days; | for the soldiers said not to-go —

πρόσω. Γὰρ ἤδη
farther [for the soldiers refused to go any farther]. For already

ὑπώπτευον ἰέναι ἐπὶ βασιλέα·
they-suspected | to-go against (the) king; [that they were going

δὲ ἔφασαν οὐ
against the king of Persia]: and they-said (that they) [1]were not

ωσθωθῆναι ἐπὶ τούτῳ. Κλέαρχος δὲ πρῶτος
hired for this (purpose) Clearchus — first

ἐβιάζετο τοὺς στρατιώτας αὐτοῦ
endeavoured-to-compel | the soldiers of-him [his soldiers]

ἰέναι· οἱ δέ τε ἔβαλλον αὐτόν
to-go; — but — (his men) began-to-pelt him (with stones)

καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια τὰ ἐκείνου,
and (also) the beasts-of-burden | the of-him, [belonging to him],

ἐπεὶ ἤρξατο προϊέναι. Κλέαρχος δὲ μὲν τότε
after he-began to-advance. Clearchus indeed — then

μικρὸν ἐξέφυγε μὴ τὸ καταπετρωθῆναι·
narrowly escaped | lest the to-have-been-stoned; [stoning to death];

ὑστερον δ', ἐπεὶ ἔγνω ὅτι οὐ δυνήσεται
at-length —, after he-knew that he-would not be-able

βιάσασθαι, συνήγαγεν ἐκκλησίαν τῶν στρατιωτῶν
to-use-force, he-brought-together (a) meeting | of-the soldiers

αὐτοῦ. Καὶ μὲν πρῶτον ἑστὼς
of-him [of his soldiers]. And — at-first standing (before them)

ἐδάκρυε πολὺν χρόνον· δὲ οἱ ὁρῶντες
he-shed-tears (for a) long time; but — (they) seeing-this

ἐθαύμαζον καὶ ἐσιώπων· εἶτα δὲ ἔλεξε
wondered and were-silent; afterwards — he-spoke-to-them

τοιάδε.
thus.

Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὴ θαυμάζετε ὅτι χαλε-
Men soldiers, do not wonder that I griev-

πῶς φέρω τοῖς παροῦσι πράγμασι. Γὰρ
ously bear the present (state of) things. | For

Κῦρος ἐγένετο ξένος ἐμοὶ
Cyrus became (a) guest-friend to-me [for Cyrus bound himself to

καὶ ἐτίμησε με, φεύγοντα
me by the ties of hospitality] and he-honoured me, (an) exile

ἐκ τῆς πατρίδος, τε τὰ ἄλλα,
from — (my) country, | and the others, [and also in other

καὶ ἔδωκε μυρίους δαρεικούς
things], and (in particular) he-gave (me) ten-thousand darics

οὓς ἐγὼ λαβών, οὐ κατεδέμην ἐμοὶ εἰς τὸ
which I having-taken, 'did not 'put-by for-myself for —(my)

ἴδιον, ἀλλ' οὐδὲ καθηδυπάθησα, ἀλλ' ἐδαπάνων
own-private (use), — neither did-I-spend-it-in-luxury, but I-spent-it

εἰς ὑμᾶς. Καὶ πρῶτον μὲν ἐπολέμησα πρὸς τοὺς
for you. For first — I-made-war against the

Θρᾷκας, καὶ μεθ' ὑμῶν ἐτιμωρούμην ὑπὲρ
Thracians, and together-with you I-took-vengeance (on them) for

τῆς Ἑλλάδος, ἐξελαύνων αὐτοὺς ἐκ τῆς Χερρονήσου,
-- Greece, expelling them from the Chersonesus,

βουλομένους ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τὴν γῆν τοὺς
(they) desiring to-take-away the land (of) the

Ἕλληνας ἐνοικοῦντας. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ Κῦρος ἐκάλει
Greeks dwelling-there. After — Cyrus called-me

ἐπορευόμην, λαβὼν ὑμᾶς, ἵνα εἴ τι
I-went, taking you (with me), in-order-that if —

δέοιτο ὠφελοίην αὐτὸν ἀνθ'
he-might-need (my assistance) I-might-help him | for (those things)

ὧν ἔπαθον εὖ ὑπ' ἐκείνου.
of-which I-was-affected beneficially by him [in return for the bene-

fits I have received from him]. Since however you wish not

συμπορεύεσθαι, ἀνάγκε δή μοι
to-accompany (him), | the-necessity — (is) to-me [I am constrained]

ἢ προδόντα ὑμᾶς χρῆσθαι τῇ φιλίᾳ Κύρου,
either (by) deserting you | to-use the friendship of-Cyrus,

ἢ ψευσάμενον
[to preserve the friendship of Cyrus], or having-deceived (him by being

πρὸς ἐκεῖνον ἰέναι μεθ' ὑμῶν. Εἰ μὲν δὴ
false) towards him to-go with you. | If indeed —

ποιήσω δίκαια οἶδα οὐκ
I-shall-make just-things I-know not [whether indeed I shall act cor

αἱρήσομαι δ' οὖν ὑμᾶς, καὶ συν
rectly, I know not] I-shall-hold — therefore (to) you, and with

ὑμῖν πείσομαι ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ. Καὶ οὐδείς
you will-submit-to what — may be-necessary. | And no-one

οὔποτε ἐρεῖ, ὡς ἐγὼ
shall never ¹have-said, [and no one shall ever say], that I

ἀγαγὼν Ἕλληνας εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους, προδοὺς
having-led Greeks among the barbarians, deserting

τοὺς Ἕλληνας εἱλόμεν τὴν φιλίαν τῶν βαρ-
the Greeks took-in-preference the friendship of-the bar-

βάρων. Ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ὑμεῖς οὐ θέλετε πείθεσθαι
barians. But since you ¹do not ¹desire to-obey

ἐμοὶ οὐδὲ ἕπεσθαι, ἐγὼ ἕψομαι σὺν ὑμῖν, καὶ
me nor to-follow (me), I will-follow (*with*) you, and

πείσομαι ὅ τι ἂν δέῃ. Γὰρ νομίζω
will-submit-to what — may be-necessary. For I-consider

ὑμᾶς εἶναι ἐμοὶ καὶ πατρίδα καὶ φίλους καὶ
you to-be to-me (*and*) (my) country, and (my) friends and (my)

συμμάχους, καὶ ἂν μὲν οἶμαι σὺν ὑμῖν
fellow-soldiers, and ¹I may indeed ¹think (that) with you (I am)

εἶναι τίμιος ὅπου ἂν ὦ, δὲ ὢν ἔρημος ὑμῶν,
to-be honoured wherever ¹I may ¹be, but being destitute of-you,

ἂν οἶμαι οὐκ εἶναι ἱκανὸς οὔτ' ἂν ὠφελῆσαι
I may ¹think (myself) not to-be competent either — to-help

φίλον, οὔτ' ἂν ἀλέξασθαι ἐχθρόν. Ὡς οὖν
(a) friend, or — repel (an) enemy. That therefore

ἐμοῦ ἰόντος, ὅπη καὶ ὑμεῖς ἂν, οὕτω ἔχετε
I am-going, where also you may (be going), then hold-to

τὴν γνώμην. Ταῦτα
— (this) opinion (that I am determined to go with you). | These-things

εἶπε· δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται, οἵ τε
he-said [thus did he speak]; and the soldiers, | — as-well

ἐκείνου αὐτοῦ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι,
of-those of-himself, [as well those of his own command], as the others,

ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα, ὅτι φαίη οὐ
hearing these-things, that he-should-say (that he was) not

πορεύεσθαι παρα βασιλέα, ἐπῄνεσαν· πλείους ἢ
to-march-forth against (the) king, they-applauded; more than

δισχίλιοι παρὰ δὲ Ξενίου καὶ Πασίωνος,
two-thousand (soldiers) from — Xenias and Pasion,

λαβόντες τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τὰ σκευοφόρα ἐστρα-
taking — (their) arms and — (their) baggage en-

τοπεδεύσαντο παρὰ Κλεάρχῳ. Κῦρος δὲ ἀπορῶν
camped with Clearchus. Cyrus — being-perplexed

τε καὶ λυπούμενος τούτοις, μετεπέμπετο τὸν Κλέ-
and also distressed at-these-things, sent-for — Cle-

αρχον· ὁ δὲ ἤθελε οὐ μὲν ἰέναι, λάθρα δὲ
archus; who however would not — go, unknown however (to)

τῶν στρατιωτῶν πέμπων ἄγγελον αὐτῷ ἔλεγε
the soldiers, sending (a) messenger to-him, he-told (him)

θαρρεῖν, ὡς τούτων καταστησομένων εἰς τὸ
to-be-of-good-courage | as these-things being-arranged in the

δέον· δὲ
required-manner; [as those affairs would be satisfactorily arranged]; also

μεταπέμπεσθαι ἐκέλευεν αὐτόν·
(he requested Cyrus) to-send (and again) request him

δ' αὐτὸς ἔφη
(to come to him); but he (after being sent for again) said (that he

οὐκ ἰέναι. Μετὰ δὲ ταῦτα συναγαγὼν τοὺς
would) not go. After — this assembling | the

δὲ στρατιώτας ἑαυτοῦ, καὶ τοὺς
— soldiers of-himself, [his soldiers] and — (those)

προσελθόντας αὐτῷ, καὶ τὸν βουλόμενον τῶν
having-joined him, and the desirous of-the

ἄλλων, ἔλεξε τοιάδε.
other (soldiers to be present), he-spoke thus (to them.)

Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μὲν δὴ δῆλον ὅτι τὰ
Men soldiers, (it is) indeed — evident that | the (affairs)

Κύρου ἔχει οὕτως πρὸς ἡμᾶς, ὥσπερ τὰ
of-Cyrus hold (themselves) so to us, as —

ἡμέτερα πρὸς ἐκεῖνον·
our (affairs do) to him; [the affairs of Cyrus are in the

γὰρ οὔτε ἡμεῖς ἔτι
same relation to us, that ours are to him]; for neither (are) we now

στρατιῶται ἐκείνου γε ἐπεί οὐ
! (the) soldiers of-him [his soldiers] at-least after we-do not

συνεπόμεθα αὐτῷ, οὐτε ἐκεῖνος ἔτι μισθοδότης
'follow him, nor (is) he now paymaster

ἡμῖν. Ὅτι μήντοι νομίζει ἀδικεῖσθαι ὑφ
to-us. That however he-thinks (himself) injured by

ἡμῶν οἶδα· καὶ ὥστε ωὐτοῦ μεταπεμτομένου
us I-know; and so-that he sending-for (me)

ἐθέλω οὐκ ἐλθεῖν, μὲν τὸ μέγιστον,
I-will not have-gone, [go], indeed (what is) the greatest,

αἰσχυνόμενος, ὅτι σύνοιδα ἐμαυτῷ
being-ashamed, because I-am-conscious to-myself (of)

ἐψευσμένος αὐτόν πάντα, καὶ δὲ ἔπειτα
having-deceived him in-all (this), and indeed then-also

δεδιὼς, μή, λαβών με ἐπιθῇ
having-feared, lest, having-seized me | he-may-have-inflicted [he may

δίκην, ὧν νομίζει
inflict] punishment, (for the things) | of-which [in which] he-thinks (him-

ἠδικῆσθαι ὑπ' ἐμοῦ. Οὖν δοκεῖ ἐμοὶ
self) to-have-been-injured by me. Therefore (this) seems to-me

εἶναι οὐχ ὥρα ἡμῖν καθεύδειν, οὐδ' ἀμελεῖν ἡμῶν
to-be no time for-us to-sleep, nor to-neglect our

αὐτῶν ἀλλὰ βουλεύεσθαι ὅ, τι χρὴ ποιεῖν
selves but to-deliberate — what is-necessary to-do

ἐκ τούτων. Καὶ ἕως τε μένομεν αὐτοῦ,
[from these [next]. And as (long) indeed (as) we-remain here,

δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι σκεπτέον, ὅπως μενοῦμεν
it-seems to-me to-be necessary-to-be-considered, how 'we (may) 'remain

ἀσφαλέστατα, εἴ τε ἤδη δοκεῖ ἀπιέναι, ὅπως
the-most-securely, if also (it) now seems (best) to-depart, how

ἄπιμεν ἀσφαλέστατα, καὶ ὅπως ἕξομεν τὰ
we-may-depart the-most-safely, and how we-shall-have the

ἐπιτήδεια· γὰρ ἄνευ τούτων οὐδέν
necessaries-of-life; for without these (necessaries) | (there is) no

ὄφελος οὔτε στρατηγοῦ οὔτε
advantage | neither [either] (to the) commander | nor [or] (to the)

ἰδιώτου.
private-soldier [the commander and private soldier are alike inefficient].

Δ' ὁ ἀνὴρ μὲν φίλος ἄξιος πολλοῦ
But the man (is) indeed (a) friend worthy of-much (estimation)

ᾧ ἂν ᾖ φίλος, δὲ χαλεπώτατος ἐχθρὸς,
to-whom 'he may 'be (a) friend, but (a) most-bitter enemy,

ᾧ ἂν ᾖ πολέμιος· ἔχει δὲ καὶ δύναμιν
to whom 'he may 'be (an) enemy; he-has — also (a) force

καὶ πεζὴν καὶ ἱππικὴν καὶ ναυτικήν, ἣν
both foot and cavalry, also (a) naval (one), which 'we

πάντες ὁμίως ὁρῶμέν τε καὶ ἐπιστάμεθα· καὶ
all alike 'see and also know; and (this is

γὰρ δοκοῦμέν μοι καθῆσθαι οὐδὲ
not strange) for we-seem to-me | to-sit [to be encamped] not-indeed

πόῤῥο αὐτοῦ· ὥστε ὥρα λέγειν ὅ τι τις
far-from him; wherefore (it is) time to-say what — any-one

γιγνώσκει εἶναι ἄριστον. Εἰπὼν ταῦτα ἐπαύσατο.
knows to-be better. Saying this he-finished.

Ἐκ τούτου δ' ἀνίσταντο, οἱ μὲν ἐκ
Upon this then (several) rose (to speak), — (some) indeed —

τοῦ αὐτομάτου, λέξοντες ἃ ἐγίγ-
— of-their-own-accord, | (*about*)-saying [intending to say] what they-

νωσκον, καὶ οἱ δὲ ἐγκέλευστοι ὑπ'
thought (of affairs) and — (others) indeed ordered by

ἐκείνου ἐπιδεικνύντες οἷα εἴη ἡ ἀπορία
him [Clearchus] pointing-out what might-be the difficulty

ἄνευ τῆς γνώμης Κύρου καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀπιέναι.
without the consent of-Cyrus both to-remain and to-go.

Δὲ εἷς δὴ προσποιούμενος σπεύδειν
And one namely (of those instructed) pretending earnestly-to-desire

πορεύεσθαι ὡς τάχιστα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα,
to-proceed as speedily-as-possible to — Greece,

εἶπε, ἄλλους στρατηγοὺς μὲν ἑλέσθαι
said, (that) other commanders — | to-have-been-chosen

ὡς τάχιστα, εἰ Κλέαρχος μὴ
[were to be chosen] as speedily-as-possible, if Clearchus 'is not

βούλεται ἀπάγειν· δὲ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
'willing to-lead-them-back; (that) also the necessaries-of-life

ἀγοράζεσθαι, δ' ἦν ἡ ἀγορὰ ἐν τῷ βαρβαρικῷ
are-to-be-bought, for there-was — (a) market in the barbarian

στρατεύματι, καὶ συσκευάζεσθαι· δ'
army, and-also (the) baggage-is-to-be-packed-up; and

ἐλθόντας Κῦρον αἰτεῖν πλοῖα, ὡς
(that they), going to-Cyrus, to-ask-for ships, in-order-that

ἀποπλέοιεν· ἐὰν δὲ μὴ διδῷ ταῦτα, αἰτεῖν
they-may-set-sail; if however he-[1]do not [1]give these, to-ask

Κῦρον ἡγεμόνα, ὅσπις ἀπάξει διὰ τῆς φιλίας
Cyrus (for a) leader, who will-lead (them) through the friendly

χώρας. [2]Ἐὰν δὲ μηδὲ διδῷ ἡγεμόνα
countries. If however he-[1]does not-even give (a) leader (they are)

συντάττεσθαι τὴν ταχίστην, καὶ
to-form-themselves-in-order-of-battle — as-speedily-as-possible, and

δὲ πέμψαι προκαταληψομένους τὰ ἄκρα,
also | to-have-sent hereafter preoccupying the heights, [and also

ὅπως μήτε
to send men to take possession of the heights in advance], so-that neither

Κῦρος νήτε οἱ Κίλικες μὴ καταλαβόντες
Cyrus nor the Cilicians | [1]may not having-seized-upon

φθάσωσι
[1]have-occupied, [may not have anticipated us, in taking possession of these

ὧν ἔχομεν πολλοὺς καὶ πολλὰ
heights], of-whom [the Cilicians] we-have many-men and much

χρήματα ἀνηρπακότες Οὕτος μὲν δὴ
property having-taken-them-away-from-them. Thus indeed — (in)

τοιαῦτα εἶπε· δὲ μετὰ τοῦτον Κλέαρχος
this (manner) he-spoke; but after this Clearchus

εἶπε τοσοῦτον.
spoke just-so-much.

Μηδεὶς ὑμῶν λεγέτω ὡς μὲν ἐμὲ στρατη-
[1]Let no-one of-you [1]say that — | I (am) about-lead-

γήσοντα ταύτην τὴν στρατηγίαν·
ing-the-army (in) this the command (thereof); [that I

γὰρ ἑνορῶ πολλά,
will accept the office of commander]; for I-perceive many-things,

δι' ἃ τοῦτο οὐ ποιητέον ἐμοί· δ'
on-account-of which this 'must not 'be-done by-me; but (let him

ὡς πείσομαι ᾗ μάλιστα δυνατόν, τῷ ἀνδρὶ
say) that I-shall-obey in-as much-as possible, the man,

ᾧ ἂν ἕλησθε, ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὅτι καὶ ἐπίσταμαι
whom 'you may 'choose, that you-may-see, that also I-know-how

ἄρχεσθαι καὶ ὡς τις μάλιστα ἄλλος
to-be-commanded, | and even-thus — as-much-as (any) other

ἀνθρώπων. Μετὰ τοῦτων ἄλλος
of-men [as well as any other man]. After this another

ἀνέστη ἐπιδεικνὺς μὲν τὴν εὐήθειαν τοῦ
arose (to speak) pointing-out — the simplicity — (of him)

κελεύοντος αἰτεῖν τὰ πλοῖα, ὥσπερ Κύρου
advising to-ask — (for) ships, as-if Cyrus 'would

μὴ ποιουμένου τὸν στόλον πάλιν,
not 'hereafter | be-making the fleet return, [order the fleet to re-

δ' ἐπιδεικνὺς ὡς εἴη δεες εἴη αἰτεῖν
turn], also showing how foolish (a thing) it-would-be to-ask-for (a)

ἡγεμόνα παρὰ τούτου ᾧ λυμαινόμεθα
leader from this (very person) whom we-are-frustrating

τὴν πρᾶξιν. Καὶ δὲ εἰ πιστεύσομεν τῷ
(in) — (his) undertaking. And also if we-shall-confide in-the

ἡγεμόνι ᾧ Κῦρος ἂν διδῷ, τί κωλύει Κῦρον
leader, whom Cyrus may give, what hinders (that) Cyrus 'may

καὶ κελεύειν τὰ ἄκρα προκαταλαμβάνειν ἡμῖν;
also 'order the heights | to-preoccupy for us?

Γὰρ ἐγὼ μὲν ὀκνοίην ἂν
[to be preoccupied for us]? For I indeed shall-be-reluctant —

ἐμβαίνειν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα, ἃ δοίη ἡμίν,
to-embark on (board) the vessels, which he-might-give us,

μὴ καταδύσῃ ἡμᾶς αὐταῖς ταῖς τριήρεσι·
lest he-should-submerge us (together) with-'these — galleys

ἂν δὲ φοβοίμην ἕπεσθαι τῷ ἡγεμόνι
themselves; 'I should indeed 'be-afraid to-follow the guide

ᾧ δοίη, μὴ ἀγάγῃ ἡμᾶς ὅθεν
whom he-may-give, lest he-might-lead us (to a place) whence it-'will'

οὐχ ἔσται οἷόν τε ἐξελθεῖν· βουλοίμην δ' ἂν
not 'be possible — to-escape; I-would-wish — —

ἀπιών. Κύρου ἄκοντος, ἀπελθὼν λαθεῖν
departing. Cyrus (being) unwilling, depart to-have-concealed

αὐτόν·
him [I would rather, if departing against the will of Cyrus, depart

ὃ ἐστιν οὐ δυνατόν. Ἀλλ' ἐγώ
without his knowledge]; which is not possible. But I

φημι ταῦτα μὲν εἶναι φλυαρίας. δέ μοι
say (that) these (things) indeed are absurdities; but to-me

δοκεῖ ἄνδρας, οἵτινες ἐπιτήδειοι, ἐλθόντας
it seems (that) men, who (are) fit, having-gone

πρὸς Κῦρον σὺν Κλεάρχῳ ἐρωτᾶν ἐκεῖνον τι
to Cyrus with Clearchus to-ask him (for) what

βούλεται χρῆσθαι ἡμῖν· καὶ ἐὰν μὲν ἡ
(purpose) he-wished to-use us; and if indeed the

πρᾶξις ᾖ παραπλησία οἵαπερ καὶ
undertaking be similar (to that) in-which-kind 'he also

τρόσθεν ἐχρῆτο τοῖς ξένοις, καὶ ἡμᾶς
before 'employed — foreign-troops, and (that) we (should)

ἕπεσθαι, καὶ μὴ εἶναι κακίους
follow (him), and (that we might) not be worse (than)

τῶν πρόσθεν συναναβάντων τοῦτῳ·
— (those) before going-up with-him; [who before

ἐὰν δὲ ἡ πρᾶξις φαίνηται μείζων
went up with him]; but if the undertaking may-seem greater (than)

τῆς πρόσθεν, καὶ ἐπιπονωτέρα, καὶ ἐπικινδυνοτέρα,
the former, and more-difficult, and more-dangerous,

ἀξιοῦν ἢ πείσαντα ἄγειν
(then that we) request either (that) having-persuaded (us) to-lead

ἡμᾶς, ἢ πεισθέντα
us (with him), or having-been-persuaded (by us) (he would allow us

ἀφιέναι πρὸς φιλίαν· γὰρ οὕτω καὶ
to-depart to (a) friendly (country); for thus also

ἑπόμενοι αὐτῷ φίλοι, καὶ ἂν ἑποίμεθα
accompanying him (as) friends, 'we also may 'accompany (him)

πρόθυμοι καὶ ἀπιόντες ἂν ἀπίοιμεν
zealous (in his cause), and leaving (him) we may leave-him

ἀσφαλῶς· δεῦρο ἀναγγεῖλαι ὅ
safely; (that) here | they-have-announced [they report] —

τι δ' ἂν λεγῃ πρὸς ταῦτα· δ' ἡμᾶς
what (he) — may say to these (things); and we

ἀκούσαντας βουλεύεσθαι πρὸς ταῦτα.
having-heard (it) to-deliberate upon these (things)

Ἔδοξε ταῦτα,
It-seemed-good (respecting) these-things, [these propositions were ap-

καὶ ἐλόμενοι ἄνδρας πέμπουσι σὺν Κλε-
proved], and having-chosen men they-send (them) with Cle-

άρχῳ, οἳ ἠρώτων Κῦρον τὰ δόξαντα
archus, who asked Cyrus | (respecting) the (things) were-seeming

τῇ στρατιᾷ. Ὁ
(good) to-the army [the questions agreed on by the army]. Who

δ' ἀπεκρίνατο, ὅτι ἀκούει Ἀβροκόναν ἄνδρα
— answered, that he-hears (that) Abrocomas (a) man

ἐχθρὸν εἶναι ἐπὶ τῷ ποταμῷ Εὐφράτῃ,
inimical (to him) is on the river Euphrates,

ἀπέχοντα δώδεκα σταθμούς· ἔφη οὖν βού-
being-distant twelve days'-march; he-said (that) therefore he-

λεσθαι ἐλθεῖν πρὸς τοῦτον· κἂν μὲν ᾖ
desires to-go against this (Abrocomas); and-if — he-were

ἐκεῖ ἔφη χρήζειν ἐπιθεῖναι τὴν δίκην
there he-said (that) he-longed to-have-inflicted — punishment

αὐτῷ δ' ἢν φεύγῃ, ἡμεῖς ἐκεῖ βουλευσόμεθα προς
on-him but if he-retreat, we there will-deliberate about

ταῦτα. Οἱ αἱρετοὶ ἀκούσαντες δὲ ταῦτα
these-things. The deputies having-heard — these-things

ἀγγέλλουσι τοῖς στρατιώταις· δὲ τοῖς
announce (them) to-the soldiers; but — (to them)

μὲν ἦν ὑποψία ὅτι ἄγει πρός
indeed there-was suspicion that he-is-leading (them) against (the)

βασιλέα, δὲ ὅμως ἐδόκει ἕπεσθαι.
king, but however it-seemed (to them best) to-accompany (him)

Προραιτοῦσι δὲ μισθὸν· ὁ δὲ Κῦρος ὑπισχνεῖται
They-ask-for-more — wages; — — Cyrus promised

δώσειν πᾶσι ἡμιόλιον οὗ ἔφερον
to-give-hereafter to-all the-half-more (than that) which they-had-received

πρότερον, ἀντὶ δαρεικοῦ τρία ἡμιδαρεικα
before, (that is) in-place-of (a) daric three half-darics

τοῖ μηνὸς τῷ στρατιώτῃ· δὲ ὅτι ἄγοι
the month — to (each) soldier; but that he-might-be-leading

ἐπὶ βασιλέα, οὐδεὶς ἤκουσεν οὐδὲ ἐνταῦθα
(them) against (the) king, no-one heard, not-even there,

γε ἐν τῷ φανερῷ.
(at least) indeed in — public.

## CHAPTER IV.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει δύο σταθμοὺς δέκα
Hence (Cyrus) proceeds two days'-march (making) ten

παρασάγγας, ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν Ψάρον, τὸ εὖρος
parasangs, to the river Psarus, the breadth

οὗ ἦν τρία πλέθρα. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει ἕνα
of-which was three plethra. Thence he-proceeds one

σταθμὸν πέντε παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμον
days'-march (making) five parasangs to the river

Πύραμον, τὸ εὖρος οὗ στάδιον. Ἐνταῦθεν
Pyramus, the breadth of-which (is a) stadium. Thence

ἐξελαύνει δύο σταθμοὺς πεντεκαίδεκα παρα-
he-proceeds two days'-march (making) fifteen para-

σάγγας εἰς Ἰσσούς ἐσχάτην πόλιν τῆς Κιλικίας,
sangs to Issus, the-last town — in-Cilicia,

ἐπι τῇ θαλάττῃ, οἰκουμένην, μεγάλην καὶ
(situated) on the sea (coast), peopled, large and

εὐδαίμονα. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας· καὶ
wealthy. Here they-remained three days; and

αἱ τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε νῆες ἐκ Πελοποννήσου
the thirty and five ships from Peloponnesus

παρῆσαν Κύρῳ, καὶ ναύ-
{were-present (for) Cyrus, [arrived at Cyrus's camp], and (the) ad-

αρχος ἐπ' αὐταῖς Πυθαγόρας Λακεδαιμόνιος.
miral over them (was) Pythagoras (the) Lacedæmonian

Δὲ Ταμὼς Αἰγύπτιος ἡγεῖτο αὐτῶν ἐξ Ἐφέσου·
But Tamos (an) Egyptian conducted them from Ephesus

χων πέντε καὶ εἴκοσιν ἑτέρας ναῦς
having (with him) five and twenty other ships (belonging to)

Κύρου, αἷς ἐπολιόρκει Μίλητον ὅτε ἦν φίλη
Cyrus, with-which he-(had)-besieged Miletus when it-was friendly

Τισσαφέρνει, καὶ συνεπολέμει Κύρῳ πρὸς αὐτόν.
to-Tissapheines, and he-fought-with Cyrus against him.

Καὶ δὲ Χειρίσοφος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος παρῆν ἐπὶ
And also Cheirisophos the Lacedæmonian was-present on (board)

τῶν νεῶν, μετάπεμπτος ὑπὸ Κύρου, ἔχων ἑπτακοσίους
the ships, having-been-sent-for by Cyrus, he-having seven-hundred

ὁπλίτας, ὧν ἐστρατήγει παρὰ Κύρῳ.
heavy-armed (soldiers), of-whom he-was-commander for Cyrus.

Αἱ δὲ νῆες ὥρμουν κατὰ τὴν σκηνὴν Κύρου.
The — ships moored opposite the tent of-Cyrus.

Ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες μισθοφόροι παρ'
Here also the Greek mercenaries, (who were) with

Ἀβροκόμᾳ ἀποστάντες ἦλθον παρὰ Κῦρον,
Abrocomas, deserting-him went to Cyrus, (in number)

τετρακόσιοι ὁπλῖται, καὶ συνεστρατεύοντο
four-hundred heavy-armed-men, and accompanied-the-expedition

ἐπὶ βασιλέα. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει ἕνα σταθ-
against (the) king. Hence he-proceeds one days'-

μὸν, πέντε παρασάγγας ἐπὶ πύλας
march, (making) five parasangs to (the) gates [passes]

τῆς Κιλικίας καὶ τῆς Συρίας. Ταῦτα δ' ἦσαν
— of-Cilicia and — of-Syria. These — were

δύο τείχη, καὶ τὸ μὲν ἐσωθεν τὸ πρὸ
two walls, and (of) the — internal (one) — (that) before

τῆς Κιλικίας Συέννεσις καὶ φυλακὴ Κιλίκων
Cilicia. Syennesis and (a) guard of-Cilicians

εἶχε· τὸ δὲ ἔξω, τὸ πρὸ τῆς Συρίας,
had (charge); but the external (one), — (that) before — Syria,

ἐλέγετο φυλακὴ βασιλέως φυλάττειν.
it-was-said (that a) guard 'of (the) 'king's (soldiers) guarded-it.

Διὰ μέσου δὲ τούτων ποταμὸς
Through (the) middle — of-these [between these two walls] (a) river

Κάρσος ὄνομα ῥεῖ, εὖρος πλέθρου.
Carsus (by) name flows, (the) breadth (being a) plethrum.

Δὲ ἅπαν τὸ μέσον τῶν τειχῶν ἦσαν
But the-whole — middle (space between) the walls were

τρεῖς στάδιοι· καὶ παρελθεῖν βίᾳ ἦν οὐ·
three stadia; and to-have-passed by-force was not (possible);

γὰρ ἡ πάροδος ἦν στενὴ καὶ τὰ τείχη καθήκοντα
for the passage was narrow, and the walls reaching

εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, ὕπερθεν δ' ἦσαν ἠλίβατοι
to the sea, above also were impassable

πέτραι· δὲ πύλαι ἐφειστήκεσαν ἐπὶ ἀμφοτέροις
rocks; and (the) passes (had) stood-by (at) each

τοῖς τείχεσιν. Ἕνεκα ταύτης τῆς
(of) the walls. (It was) on-account-of this —

παρόδου Κῦρος μετεπέμψατο τὰς ναῦς, ὅπως
passage (that) Cyrus sent-for the fleet, so-that

ἀποβιβάσειεν ὁπλίτας εἴσω καὶ ἔξω τῶν πυλῶν,
he-might-land heavy-armed-men within and without the passes,

καὶ βιασάμενοι παρέλθοιεν τοὺς πολε-
and (who) having-forced (a passage) might-pass-through the ene-

μίους, εἴ φυλάττοιεν ἐπὶ ταῖς Συρίαις
my, if they-'might (yet) 'guard — the Syrian

πύλαις ὅπερ ὁ Κῦρος ᾤετο ποιήσειν, τὸν Ἀβρο-
passes which — Cyrus thought would-be-done, — Abro-

κόμαν ἔχοντα πολὺ στράτευμα. Δ' Ἀβροκόμας
comas having (a) great army. But Abrocomas

οὐκ ἐποίησε τοῦτ', ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἤκουσε Κῦρον
'did not 'do this, but after he-heard (of) Cyrus

ὄντα ἐν Κιλικίᾳ ἀναστρέψας ἐκ Φοινίκης ἀπήλαυνε
being in Cilicia having-returned from Phœnicia ne-departed

παρὰ βασιλέα ἔχων ὡς ἐλέγετο τριακοντα
to (the) king having as it-was-said | thirty

μυριάδας στρατιας.
ten-thousands [three hundred thousand) military.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ Συρίας ἕνα σταθ-
Hence (Cyrus) proceeds through Syria one days'.

μον πέντε παρασάγγας, εἰς Μυριάνδρον,
march, (making) five parasangs, to Myriandrus, (a)

πόλιν ἐπὶ τῇ θαλλάττῃ οἰκουμενην ὑπὸ
town on the sea (or east) peopled by

Φοινίκων. Ἦν δ' ἐμπόριον τὸ χωρίον,
Phœnicians. It-was also (a) mart (for that district of) the country,

καὶ πολλαί ὁλκάδες ὥρμουν αὐτόθι. Ἐνταῦθ'
and many ships-of-burden arrived there. Here

ἔμειναν ἑπτά ἡμέρας· καὶ Ξενίας, ὁ Ἀρκὰς
he-remained seven days; and (here) Xenias, the Arcadian

στρατηγός, καὶ Πασίων ὁ Μεγαρεύς, ἐμβάντες
commander, and Pasion the Megarian, having-embarked

εἰς πλοῖον, καὶ ἐνθέμενοι τὰ ἄξια
in (a) vessel, and having-placed-on-board — (their) effects

πλείστου, ἀπέπλευσαν, ὡς μὲν τοῖς πλείστοις
of-the-greatest (value), they-sailed-away, as indeed to-the most

ἐδόκουν φιλοτιμηθέντες
they-thought having-been-made-jealous-of-their-honour [the most thought,

ὅτι Κῦρος εἶα τὸν
that they were influenced by jealousy] because Cyrus allowed —

Κλεαρχον ἔχειν τοὺς στρατιώτας αὐτῶν,
Clearchus to-have | the soldiers of-them, [their soldiers],

τοὺς ἀπελθόντας παρὰ Κλέαρχον, ὡς
(namely) — (those) deserting to Clearchus, | as

ἀπιόντας πάλιν εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα
departing back to — Greece [when they intended to

καὶ οὐ πρὸς βασιλέα. Ἐπεὶ
return to Greece] and not (march) against (the) king. | After

δ' ἦσαν ἀφανεῖς λόγος
— they-were invisible [after their disappearance] (a) rumour

διῆλθε ὅτι Κῦρος διώκοι αὐτοὺς
went-through (the army) that Cyrus might-follow them [1]with (the)

τριήρεσι· καὶ οἱ μὲν εὔχοντο αὐτοὺς
[1]galleys; and —(some) indeed prayed (that) they (might)

ληφθῆναι ὡς ὄντας δολίους, οἱ δ'
be-taken as being perfidious (men), — (others) indeed

ᾤκτειρον εἰ ἁλώσοιντο. Δὲ Κῦρος
pitied (them) if they-should-be-captured. But Cyrus

συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς εἶπε· Ξενίας καὶ
having-called-together the commanders said; Xenias and

Πασίωι ἀπολελοίπασιν ἡμᾶς· ἀλλὰ γε
Pasion have-left us; but [1]let-them at-least [1]be

εὖ μέντοι ἐπιστάσθωσαν, ὅτι οὔτε ἀποδε-
well indeed [1]assured, that they-[1]have neither [1]fled-

δράκασι, γὰρ οἶδα ὅπη οἴχονται, οὔτε
away (clandestinely), for I-know where they-are-going, nor

ἀποπέφευγασι, γὰρ ἔχω τριήρεις ὥστε ἑλεῖν
have-they-escaped, for I-have galleys | in-order-to have-seized

τὸ πλοῖον ἐκείνων. [3]Ἀλλά, μὰ
the ship of-them [to capture their ship]. But, by

τοὺς θεοὺς οὐκ ἔγωγε διώξω αὐτούς· οὐδ'
the gods not even-I will-follow them; nor (shall)

οὐδείς ἐρεῖ, ὡς ἐγώ ἕως μὲν τις ἂν παρῇ
any-one say, that I, as-long-as indeed any-one might stay-with

χρῶμαι, δ' ἐπειδὰν βούληται ἀπι-
(me), make-use (of their services), but after he-may-wish to-

έναι συλλαβὼν αὐτοὺς καὶ κακῶς ποιῶ καὶ
leave (me) having-seized them [1]I both ill [1]treat (them) and

ἀποσυλῶ τὰ χρήματα. [3]Ἀλλὰ ἰόντων,
despoil (them of their) — goods. But let-them-go,

εἰδότες ὅτι εἰσὶ κακίους
[1]they-having-known [they being conscious] that they-are worse

περὶ ἡμᾶς ἢ ἡμεῖς περὶ ἐκείνους. Καίτοι γε
towards us than we towards them. Although [1]I indeed

ἔχω καὶ τέκνα καὶ γυναῖκας αὐτῶν φρουρούμενα
[1]have both (the) children and wives of-them guarded

ἐν Τράλλεσι· ἀλλ' οὐδὲ στερήσονται
at Tralles; but they-shall not-even be-deprived

τούτων, ἀλλ' ἀπολήψονται ἕνεκα τῆς
of-these, but they-shall-receive (them) on-account-of — (their)

ἀρετῆς περὶ ἐμὲ πρόσθεν. Καὶ ὁ μὲν εἶπε
good-conduct towards me formerly. And — | he indeed said

ταῦτα· δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες, εἴ τις καὶ
these; [thus did he speak]; and the Greeks, if any (one) in-fine

ἦν ἀδυμότερος πρὸς τὴν ἀνάβασιν ἀκούοντες
was disinclined towards the ascent [expedition] hearing

τὴν ἀρετὴν Κύρου, συνεπορεύοντο ἥδιον
the noble-conduct of-Cyrus, accompanied (him) with-great-pleasure

καὶ προθυμότερον.
and with-greater-alacrity-of-mind.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Κῦρος ἐξελαύνει τέτταρας
After these (things) Cyrus proceeds four

σταθμοὺς εἴκοσιν παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὸν
days'-march (making) twenty parasangs to the

ποταμόν Χάλον, ὄντα τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου,
river Chalus, (it) being the breadth of (a) plethrum,

δὲ πλήρη μεγάλων καὶ τραέων ἰχθύων, οἷς οἱ
and full of-large and tame fish, which the

Σύροι ἐνόμιζον θεούς, καὶ οὐκ εἴων
Syrians considered (to be) gods, and did not permit (any one)

ἀδικεῖν οὐδὲ τὰς περιστεράς. Αἱ δὲ
to-injure (neither them) nor the pigeons. The —

κῶμαι ἐν αἷς ἐσκήνουν ἦσαν Παρυσάτιδος
villages in which they-encamped | were of-Parysatis [belonged

δεδομέναι εἰς ζώνην.
to Parysatis] having-been-given (her) | for (her) girdle [for pin-money]

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει πέντε σταθμοὺς τριάκοντα
Thence he-proceeds five days'-march, (making) thirty

παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ ποταμοῦ
parasangs to | the springs [sources] of-the river

Δάρδητος τὸ εὖρος οὗ πλέθρου.
Dardes the breadth of-which (is that) of (a) plethrum

Ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν τὰ βασίλεια Βελέσυος τοῦ
Here were the palaces of-Belesys | the
ἄρξαντος Συρίας, καὶ παράδεισος, πάνυ
having-ruled-over [the ruler] of-Syria, and (a) park, very
μέγας καὶ καλός, ἔχων πάντα ὅσα ὧρα
large and beautiful, having all, how-much-so-ever (the) seasons
φύουσι. Δὲ Κῦρος αὐτὸν ἐξέκοψε καὶ κατέκαυσε
produce. But Cyrus 'cut it 'down and burned
τὰ βασίλεια.
the palaces.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει τρεῖς σταθμοὺς πεντε-
Thence he-proceeds three days'-march (making) fif-
καίδεκα παρασάγγας, ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν Εὐφράτην
teen parasangs, to the river Euphrates
ὄντα το εὖρος τεττάρων σταδίων· καὶ
[it) being (there) the breadth of-four stadia; and (there
πόλις αὐτόθι Θάψακος ὀνόματι ᾠκεῖτο
was a) city there Thapsacus by-name (which) was-inhabited,
μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων. Ἐνταῦθα
(and which was) large and wealthy. There
ἔμειναν πέντε ἡμέρας· καὶ Κῦρος μεταπεμψάμενος
they-remained five days; and Cyrus having-sent-for
τοὺς στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων, ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἡ
the commanders of-the Greeks, said that the
ὁδὸς ἔσοιτο εἰς Βαβυλῶνα πρὸς μέγαν
road might-hereafter-be to Babylon against (the) great
βασιλέα· καὶ κελεύει αὐτοὺς λέγειν ταῦτα
king; and he-requests them to-tell these (things
τοῖς στρατιώταις, καὶ ἀναπείθειν ἕπεσθαι.
to-the soldiers, and to-persuade (them) to-follow (him);

Δ' οἱ ποιήσαντες ἐκκλησίαν
And who | having-made [having called] (an) assembly (of the soldiers)
ἀπήγγελλον ταῦτα. Δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται
communicated these (things to them). But the soldiers
ἐχαλέπαινον τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, καὶ ἔφασαν αὐτοὺς
were-angry with-the commanders, and told them

πάλαι εἰδόντας ταῦτα
(that) having already-before known these-things, (that they)

κρύπτειν· καὶ ἔφασαν
conceal (them from the soldiers); and they-said (that they would)

οὐκ ἰέναι, ἐὰν μή τις διδῷ χρήματα αὐτοῖς
not go, unless some-one should-give money to-them

ὥσπερ καὶ τοῖς προτέροις ἀνα-
as also (had been given) to-the former (soldiers) having-

βᾶσι μετὰ Κύρου
gone-up with Cyrus, [in like manner as had been given to the soldiers,

παρὰ τὸν πατέρα τοῦ
who had formerly accompanied Cyrus] to the father —

Κύρου, καὶ ταῦτα οὐκ ἰόντων ἐπὶ μάχην, ἀλλὰ
of-Cyrus, and this not going to battle, but

τοῦ πατρὸς καλοῦντος Κῦρον. Οἱ στρατηγοὶ
the father (merely) sending-for Cyrus. The commanders

ἀπήγγελλον ταῦτα Κύρῳ· δ' ὁ ὑπέσχετο
reported these (things) to-Cyrus; and who promised

δώσειν πέντε μνᾶς ἀργυρίου ἑκάστῳ ἀνδρὶ, ἐπὰν
to-give five minæ of-silver to-each man, when

ἥκωσι εἰς Βαβυλῶνα, καὶ τὸν ἐντελῆ μισθὸν
they-arrived at Babylon, and — (their) entire pay

μέχρι ἂν καταστήσῃ τοὺς Ἕλληνας πάλιν
until he should place the Greeks back-again

εἰς Ἰωνίαν. Τὸ πολὺ μὲν δὴ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ
in Ionia. The most indeed — of-the Greek

οὕτως ἐπείσθη.
(force) was thus persuaded (to accompany him).

Δὲ Μένων, πρὶν εἶναι δῆλον τί οἱ ἄλλοι
But Menon, before | to-be [it is] evident what the other

στρατιῶται ποιήσουσι, πότερον ἕψονται Κύρῳ
soldiers will-do, whether they-will-follow Cyrus

ἢ οὔ, συνέλλεξε τὸ στράτευμα αὑτοῦ χωρὶς
or not, assembled | the army of-himself [his army] apart

τῶν ἄλλων, καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε. Ἄνδρες
from-the others, and spoke | these (things) [thus]. Men

ἐάν πεισθῆτε μοι, προτιμήσεσθε ὑπὸ Κύρου
if you-might-be-persuaded by-me, you-will-be-honoured by Cyrus

πλέον τῶν ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν οὔτε
more (than) the other soldiers (and this) having neither

κινδυνεύσαντες, οὔτε πονήσαντες. Τί οὖν
incurred-danger, nor having-laboured. What therefore

κελεύω ποιῆσαι: Κῦρος νῦν δεῖται
do-I-request (of you) | to-have-done? [to do]? Cyrus now wants

τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἕπεσθαι ἐπὶ βασιλέα·
the Greeks to-accompany (him) against (the) king;

ἐγὼ οὖν φημι ὑμᾶς χρῆναι
I therefore say | (that) you to-behove [that it behoves you]

διαβῆναι τον ποταμόν Εὐφράτην, πρὶν εἶναι
to-have-crossed the river Euphrates, before | to-be [it is]

δῆλον ὅ τι οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες ἀποκρινοῦνται
manifest — what the other Greeks will-answer

Κύρῳ. Γὰρ ἢν μὲν ψηφίσωνται ἕπεσθαι,
Cyrus. For if indeed they-should-determine-by-ballot to-follow,

ὑμεῖς δόξετε εἶναι αἴτιοι, ἄρξαντες τοῦ
(then) you will-appear to-be (the) cause, | having-begun of-the

διαβαίνειν, καὶ ὑμῖν
crossing-over, [as having first crossed over the river], and to-you

ὡς οὖσι προθυμοτάτοις Κῦρος εἴσεται
as being most-prompt, Cyrus perceive (and acknowledge

χάριν, καὶ ἀποδώσει· δ' ἐπίσταται
the) favour, and will-repay (it); | but he-knows (how to do this)

εἴ καὶ τις ἄλλος·
if even-also any other (does); [but he knows how to reward a favour,

δ' ἢν οἱ ἄλλοι ἀποψηφίσωνται,
as well as any other man]; but if the others should-ballot-against-it,

ἅπαντες μὲν ἄπιμεν εἰς τοὐμπαλιν·
(we) all-together indeed | depart to the-contrary; [return back

δὲ ὑμῖν, ὡς μόνοις πειθομένοις πιστο-
again]; but you, as alone being-persuaded (and as being) most

τάτοις χρήσεται καὶ εἰς φρούρια καὶ
faithful he-will-use (and employ) both in garrisons and

εἰς λοχαγίας, καὶ οἶδα ὅτι ὡς φίλοι Κύροι
for captaincies, and-also I-know that as friends of-Cyrus

τεύξεσθε οὗτινος ἄλλου ἂν δέησθε.
you-will-obtain whatever else ¹you may ²require. (The soldiers)

³Ἀκουσαντες ταῦτα, ἐπείθοντο, καὶ διέβησαν
having-heard these (things), were-persuaded, and crossed-over

πρὶν τοὺς ἄλλους ἀποκρίνασθαι. Δὲ ἐπεὶ
before (that) the others answered. But when

Κῦρος ᾔσθετο διαβεβηκότας, τε
Cyrus perceived (them) having-crossed-over (the river), ¹he not-only

ᾔσθη, καὶ πέμψας Γλοῦν τῷ στρατεύματι
was-pleased, but-also having-sent Glus to-the army

εἶπεν, Ἐγὼ μέν ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη ἐπαινῶ
of Menon) said, I indeed O men, now praise

ὑμᾶς· δὲ μελήσει ἐμοὶ ὅπως καὶ ὑμεῖς
you; | but it-shall-be-a-care to-me how also you

ἐπαινέσητε ἐμὲ,
might-praise me, [but I will take care, that you also shall praise me],

ἢ μηκέτι νομίξετε με Κῦρον. Οἱ στρατιῶται
or no-longer think me Cyrus. The soldiers

ὄντες δὴ μὲν ἐν μεγάλαις ἐλπίσι εὐχοντο αὐτον
being now indeed in great hopes | wished him

εὐτυχῆσαι· δὲ καὶ ἐλέγετο
to-have-been-fortunate; [prayed for his success]; and also he-was-said

πέμψαι μεγαλοπρεπῶς δῶρα Μένωνι. Δὲ,
to-have-sent in-a-magnificent-manner presents to-Menon. And,

ποιήσας ταῦτα, διέβαινε· δὲ καὶ
having-done these (things), he-crossed-over (the river); and also

ἅπαν τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα συνείπετο αὐτῷ. Καὶ
all the other army followed him. And

οὐδεὶς τῶν διαβαινόντων τὸν ποταμὸν
no-one — (of those) crossing the river

ἐβρέχθη ἀνωτέρω τῶν μαστῶν ὑπὸ τοῦ
was-wetted higher (than) the breasts by the

ποταμοῦ. Δὲ οἱ Θαψακηνοὶ ἔλεγον, ὅτι οὗτος
river. But the Thapsaceni said that this

ὁ ποταμὸς οὐ πώποτε γένοιτο διαβατος πεζῇ
(*the*) river never at-any-time might-be passable on-foot

εἰ μὴ τότε, ἀλλὰ πλοίοις· ἃ Ἀβρο-
if not [except] then, but (always) in-boats; which Abro-

κόμας προϊων τότε κατέκαυσεν, ἵνα Κῦρος
comas going-before 'had then 'burnt, that Cyrus

μὴ διαβῇ. Δὴ ἐδόκει εἶναι
'might not 'cross-over (the river). (This) then seemed to-be (a)

θεῖον. καὶ τὸν ποταμὸν σαφῶς ὑπο-
divine (interposition), and (that) the river manifestly re-

χωρῆσαι Κύρῳ ὡς βασιλεύσοντι. Ἐντεῦθεν
ceded for-Cyrus as about-reigning. Hence

ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Συρίας ἐννέα σταθμοὺς,
he-advances through — Syria nine days'-march, (making)

πεντήκοντα παρασάγγας, καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς
fifty parasangs, and they-came to

τὸν ποταμόν Ἀράξην. Ἐνταῦθα ἦσαν πολλαὶ
the river Araxes. Here there-were many

κῶμαι μεσταὶ σίτου καὶ οἴνου. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν
villages full of-corn and wine. Here they-remained

τρεῖς ἡμέρας, καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.
three days, and provisioned (the army).

## CHAPTER V.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Ἀραβίας, ἔχων
THENCE he-marches through — Arabia, having

τὸν ποταμὸν Εὐφράτην ἐν δεξιᾷ, πέντε
the river Euphrates on (the) right, (making) five

ἐρήμους σταθμούς,
desert stations, [five days' march through the desert], (and)

τριάκοντα καὶ πέντε παρασάγγας. Δὲ ἐν τούτῳ
thirty and five parasangs. But in this

τῷ τόπῳ ἡ γῆ ἦν μὲν πεδίον, ἅπαν
— district-of-country the ground was indeed (a) plain, entirely

ὁμαλὸν ὥσπερ θάλαττα, δὲ πλῆρες ἀψινθίου,
level as (the) sea, and full of-wormwood,

εἰ δὲ καὶ τι ἄλλο ὕλης ἢ καλάμου
if indeed also any other (kind) of-underwood or of-reed

ἐνῆν, ἅπαντα ἦσαν εὐώδη ὥσπερ ἀρώματα·
was-on-it, all were (as) odoriferous as perfumes;

δ' οὐδὲν δένδρον ἐνῆν. Δὲ παντοῖα
but no tree was-thereon. But (here there were) various

θηρία, πλεῖστοι μὲν ἄγριοι ὄνοι, δὲ
wild-animals, the-most (numerous) indeed (were) wild asses, also

πολλοὶ στρουθοὶ οἱ μεγάλοι· δὲ καὶ ὠτίδες
many | sparrows the large [ostriches]; and also bustard

καὶ δορκάδες ἐνῆσαν· δὲ οἱ ἱππεῖς ἐνίοτε
and antelopes were-thereon; and the horsemen sometimes

ἐδίωκον ταῦτα τὰ θηρία. Καὶ μὲν οἱ ὄνοι
pursued these — wild-animals. And indeed the wild-asses

ἐπεὶ τις διώκοι, προδραμόντες
when any-one might-pursue (them), having-run-before (some distance)

ἔστασαν· γὰρ ἔτρεχον πολὺ θᾶττον τῶν
stood-still; for they-ran much (more) quickly (than) the

ἵππων· καὶ πάλιν ἐπεὶ οἱ ἵπποι πλησιάζοιεν
horses; and again when the horses might-approach

ἐποίουν ταὐτόν. καὶ ἦν οὐ λαβεῖν
they-did the-same (thing); and it-was not (possible) to-take

εἰ μὴ οἱ ἱππεῖς διαστάντες
(them) | if not [unless] the horsemen stationed-at-intervals

θηρῷεν διαδεχόμενοι τοῖς
should-hunt (them), (also) succeeding (one another) with (fresh) —

ἵπποις. Δὲ τὰ κρέα τῶν ἁλισκομένων ἦν
horses. And the flesh of — (those) caught was

παραπλήσια τοῖς ἐλαφείοις, δὲ ἁπαλώτερα.
like the stags' (flesh), but more-tender

Δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔλαβε Στρουθόν: δὲ οἱ τῶν
But no-one took (an) ostrich; | and — (those) of-the

ἱππέων διώξαντες ταχὺ
horsemen having-pursued [and those horsemen that pursued them] quickly

ἐπαύοντο· γὰρ ἀπεσπᾶτο πολυ
desisted; | for it-withdrew-itself much [for it outstripped the horse-

φεύγουσα, δρόμῳ μὲν τοῖς
men] fleeing (away from them), in-running (using) — — (its)

ποσὶ, δε ταῖς πτέρυξιν αἴρουσα, ὥσπερ
feet, and — (its) wings raising (these), as

χρωμενη ἱστίῳ. Δὲ ἐστι λαμβάνειν τὰς
using (a) sail. But it-is (possible) to-take the

ὠτίδας, ἄν τις ἀνιστῇ ταχὺ· γὰρ
bustards, if any-one should-'start (them) 'up quickly; for

πέτονται βραχύ ὥσπερ πέρδικες, καὶ
they-fly (a) short (distance) like-as partridges, and

ταχυ ἀπαγορεύουσι. Δὲ τὰ κρέα αὐτῶν ἦν
speedily tire. But the flesh of-them was

ἥδιστα.
very-delicious.

Πορευόμενοι δὲ διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας ἅφι
Marching — through this — country they

κοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν Μάσκαν, τὸ εὖρος
come to the river Mascas, the breadth

πλεθριαῖον. Ἐνταῦθα ἦν μεγάλη
(of which is a) plethrum. Here there-was (a) large

ἐρήμη πόλις, δ' ὄνομα αὐτῇ Κορσωτή·
deserted city, but (the) name (*to-it*) (of it was) Corsote;

δ' αὕτη περιεῤῥεῖτο ὑπὸ τοῦ Μάσκα
|and this (city) was-flowed-round by the Mascas 'in (a)

κίκλῳ. Ἐνταῦθ'
'circle [the river Mascas flowed round about this city]. Here

ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.
they-remained three days and provisioned (the army).

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει τρεῖς καὶ δέκα
Thence he (Cyrus) 'proceeds | three and ten [thirteen

ἐρήμους σταθμοὺς ἐνενήκοντα
desert stations (or days' march) (making) ninety

παρασάγγας, ἔχων τὸν ποταμὸν Εὐφράτην ἐν
parasangs, having the river Euphrates on (the)

δεξιᾷ, καὶ ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ Πύλας. Ἐν τούτοις
right, and he-arrives at (the) Gates. In these

τοῖς σταθμοῖς πολλὰ τῶν ὑποζυγίων ἀπώλετο
— stations many of-the beasts-of-burden perished

ὑπὸ λιμοῦ· γὰρ ἦν οὐ χόρτος οὐδὲ οὐδὲν
of hunger; for there-was no grass nor any

ἄλλο δένδρον, ἀλλὰ ἡ ἅπασα χώρα ἦν
(other) (kind of) tree, but the entire country was

ψιλή· οἱ δὲ ἐνοικοῦντες
bare (being destitute of vegetation); | the — inhabiting [the

ὀρύττοντες καὶ τοιοῦντες
inhabitants of this desert district] quarrying and fashioning

ἁλέτας ὄνους παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν, ἦγον
grinding upper-stones [millstones] near the river, carried

εἰς Βαβυλῶνα καὶ ἐπώλουν, καὶ ἀντα-
(them) to Babylon and sold (them), and buying-

γοράζοντες σῖτον ἔζων. Ὁ δὲ σῖτος ἐπέλιπε
in-return corn lived (thereon). — Also corn failed

τὸ στράτευμα, καὶ ἦν οὐ πρίασθαι
the army, and it-was not (possible) to-buy (any)

εἰ μὴ ἐν τῇ Λυδίᾳ ἀγορᾷ ἐν τῷ βαρ-
if not [unless] in the Lydian market among the bar

βαρικῷ Κύρου, τὴν καπίθην ἀλεύρων ἡ
barian (forces) of-Cyrus, the capithe of-wheat-flour or

ἀλφίτων τεττάρων σίγλων. Ὁ δὲ σίγλος
barley-meal (being sold for) four sigli. The — siglus

δύναται ἑπτὰ Ἀττικοὺς ὀβολοὺς καὶ ἡμιοβόλιον·
is-worth seven Attic oboli and (a) half-obolus;

δὲ ἡ καπίθη ἐχώρει δύο Ἀττικὰς χοίνικας.
and the capithe contained two Attic chœnices.

Οὖν οἱ στρατιῶται διεγίγνοντο ἐσθίοντες κρέα
Therefore the soldiers continued eating flesh

Ἦν δὲ
[therefore the soldiers lived entirely on flesh]. There-were also (some)

τούτων τῶν σταθμῶν, οὓς ἤλαυνε
of-these — days'-marches, which he-urged-on (so as to make them)

πάνυ μακροὺς, ὁπότε βούλοιτο διατελεσαι
very long, whenever he-might-wish | to-finish-the-road [to ar-

ἢ πρὸς ὕδωρ, ἢ πρὸς χιλόν. Καὶ δή
rive] either at water, or at forage. And indeed

ποτε στενοχωρίας καὶ πηλοῦ φανέντος δυσπο-
once-when | narrow-place and mud having-appeared difficult-

ρεύτου ταῖς ἁμάξαις,
of passage for-the wagons, [a narrow and muddy road appeared,

ὁ Κῦρος ἐπέστη
which was of difficult passage for wagons], — Cyrus stood

συν τοῖς ἀρίστοις καὶ εὐδαιμονεστάτοις περὶ
with the most-distinguished and most-wealthy about

αὐτὸν, καὶ ἐταξε Γλοῦν καὶ Πίγρητα,
him, and ordered Glus and Pigres, (that)

λαβόντας τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ στρατοῦ, συνεκ-
having-taken (a part) of-the barbarian army, to-extri-

βιβάζειν τὰς ἁμάξας. Δ' ἐπεὶ ἐδόκουν αὐτῷ
cate the wagons. But when they-seemed to-him

ποιεῖν σχολαίως, ὥσπερ ὀργῇ ἐκέλευσε τοὺς
to-do (this) tardily, as-if in-anger he-ordered the

κρατίστους Πέρσας περὶ αὐτὸν συνεπισ-
most-distinguished Persians about him | together-to-have-acce-

πεῦσαι τὰς ἁμάξας. Ἔνθα δὴ ἦν θεάσασ-
lerated [to hasten] the wagons. There then was to-be-

θαι τι μέρος τῆς εὐταξίας. Γὰρ
seen some portion (of) — good-order (and discipline). For

ῥίψαντες τοὺς πορφυροῦς κάνδυς, ὅπου ἕκαστος
having-thrown-off — (their) purple cloaks, where each

ἔτυχεν ἑστηκώς ἵεν-
happened having-been-standing [happened to have stood] | they-sent-

το, ὥσπερ τις ἂν δράμοι
themselves, [they rushed], as-if | any-one might run [on a race]

περὶ νίκης, καὶ κατὰ μάλα πρανοῦς γηλόφου,
for victory, and down (a) very steep hill,

ἔχοντες τε τούτους τοὺς πολυτελεῖς χιτῶνας,
having also (on) those — rich tunics,

καὶ τὰς ποικίλας ἀναξυρίδας, δὲ καὶ ἔνιοι
and — variegated trowsers, and also some (having)

στρεπτοὺς περὶ τοῖς τραχήλοις, καὶ ψέλλια
chains about — (their) necks, and bracelets

περὶ ταῖς χερσίν· εὐθὺς δὲ εἰσπηδήσαντες
about — (their) | hands; [wrists]; directly also having-leaped

σὺν τούτοις εἰς τὸν πηλὸν ἐξεκόμισαι
with these (ornaments) into the mud they-brought-out

τὰς ἁμάξας μετεώρους θᾶττον ἢ ὡς τις
the wagons lifted-up quicker than (*even-thus*) any-one

ἂν ᾠήθη. Δε τὸ σύμπαν Κῦρος ἦν δῆλος
might have-thought. And (on) the whole | Cyrus was evident

σπεύδων πασαν τὴν ὁδὸν
hastening all the road, [Cyrus was evidently hastening

καὶ οὐ διατρίβων, μὴ ὅπου ἐκαθέζετο
the march], and not delaying, unless where he-halted

ἕνεκα ἐπισιτισμοῦ ἤ τινος ἄλλου ἀναγκαίου,
on-account-of provisions or of-some other necessary

νομίζων ὅσῳ μὲν θᾶττον ἔλθοι
(thing), thinking (that) by-how-much — the-more-speedily he-might-go

τοσούτῳ ἀπαρασκευαστοτέρῳ μαχεῖσθαι
by-so-much the-more-unprepared (he might come) to-fight

βασιλεῖ, δὲ ὅσῳ σχολαιότερον
(the) king, and by-how-much the-more-tardily (he might march)

τοσούτῳ πλέον στράτευμα συναγείρεσθαι
by-so-much the-more (numerous) army is-to-be-collected

βασιλεῖ. Καὶ δ' ἦν συνιδεῖν τῷ προσέ-
'for (the) 'king. | And also it-was to-perceive to-the direct-

χοντι τὸν νοῦν
ing the mind [and it might readily be perceived by any one

ἡ ἀρχὴ βασιλέως οὖσα
directing his attention to it] | the empire 'of (the) 'king (as) being

ἰσχυρὰ μὲν
strong indeed [that the empire of the king was indeed strong] 'from

πλήθει χώρας καὶ ἀνθρώπων,
(the) 'multitude (and extent of) territory and (the number) of-men

δὲ ἀσθενὴς τοῖς μήκεσι τῶν ὁδῶν καὶ τῷ
but weak by-the lengths of-the roads and | in-the

διεσπάσθαι τὰς δυνάμεις, εἴ τις
to-have-separated [in the dispersion] (of) — (its) forces, if any-one

ἐποιεῖτο τὸν πόλεμον διὰ ταχέων.
made — war (against it) by quick (movements).

Δὲ πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ Εὐφράτου, κατὰ
But beyond the river Euphrates, through (the opposite)

τοὺς ἐρήμους σταθμούς ἦν
— | desert stations [marches through the desert] there-was

εὐδαίμων καὶ μεγάλη πόλις, δὲ ὄνομα
(an) opulent and large city, and (its) name (was)

Χαρμάνδη. Ἐκ ταύτης οἱ στρατιῶται ἠγόραζον
Charmande. From this (city) the soldiers brought

τὰ ἐπιτήδεια διαβαίνοντες σχεδίας ὧδε·
the necessaries-of-life crossing-over on-temporary-rafts (made) thus;

ἐπίμπλασαν κούφου χόρτου διφθέρας ἃς
they-filled with | light grass [hay] (the) skins, which

εἶχον στεγάσματα, εἶτα συνῆγον
they-had (as) covering (for their tents), then they-united-together

καὶ συνέσπων ὡς τὸ
(the edges) and | drew (them) together [sewed them] so-that the

ὕδωρ μὴ ἅπτεσθαι τῆς χάρφης· ἐπὶ τούτ ν
water (could) not (to)-touch the hay; on t ese

διέβαινον, καὶ ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, τέ
they-crossed-over, and procured the necessaries, not only

οἶνον πεποιημένον ἐκ τῆς βαλάνου τῆς ὑπὸ
wine made of the fruit — from

τοῦ φοίνικος, καὶ σῖτον μελίνης· γὰρ τοῦτο ἦν
the palm-tree, but-also corn of-pannic; for this was

πλεῖστον ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ.
most-plentiful in — (this) country.

Δὲ ἐνταῦθα τῶν στρατιωτῶν τε τοῦ Μένωνος
And here the soldiers not-only — of-Menon

καὶ τῶν τοῦ Κλεάρχου ἀμφιλεξάντων
but-also — (those) of-Clearchus having-been-disputing-about

τι, ὁ Κλέαρχος κρίνας τὸν τοῦ
something, — Clearchus | having-judged [judging] the (soldier) —

Μένωνος ἀδικεῖν ἐνέβαλε πληγάς·
of-Menon | to-do-wrong [to be in the wrong] inflicted blows (on him);

δὲ ὁ ἐλθὼν πρὸς τὸ στράτευμα ἑαυτοῦ
but who having-gone | to the army of-himself [to the

ἔλεγε· δ' οἱ
army, to which he belonged] told [what had befallen him]; but the

στρατιῶται ἀκούσαντες ἰσχυρῶς ἐχαλε-
soldiers having-heard (this) 'were vehemently 'irri

παινον, καὶ ὠργίζοντο τῷ Κλεάρχῳ. Δὲ τῇ
tated, and enraged — (at) Clearchus. And the

αὐτῇ ἡμέρᾳ Κλέαρχος, ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν
same day Clearchus, having-gone to the crossing

τοῦ ποταμοῦ, καὶ ἐκεῖ κατασκεψάμενος τὴν ἀγοράν,
of-the river, and here having-inspected the market

ἀφιππεύει ἔπὶ τὴν σκηνὴν ἑαυτοῦ
he-rides-away | to the tent of-himself [to his own ten'

διὰ τοῦ στρατεύματος Μένωνος, σὺν ὀλίγοις
through the army of-Menon, | with (a) few

τοῖς περὶ αὐτόν· δὲ Κῦρος
(followers, namely) (*the*) (those) about him; but Cyrus 'had

οὔτω ἥκεν, ἀλλ' ἔτι προσήλαυνε· δὲ τις
not-yet 'come, but still proceeded (on his march); but some-one

τῶν στρατιωτῶν Μένωνος σχίζων ξύλα, ὡς
of-the soldiers of-Menon (who was) splitting wood, as

εἶδε τὸν Κλέαρχον διελαύνοντα, ἵησι
he-saw — Clearchus riding-through (the camp), throws (at him)

τῇ ἀξίνῃ· καὶ αὐτος μὲν ἥμαρτεν
'with — (his) 'axe; and this (soldier) indeed missed

αὐτοῦ· δ' ἄλλος λίθῳ καὶ ἄλλος,
him, but another (throws) 'with (a) 'stone and-also another,

εἶτα πολλοί, κραυγῆς γενομενης.
then many, (a) shout (at the same time) having-occurred.

Δε ὁ καταφεύγει εἰς τὸ στράτευμα ἑαυτοῦ,
But — (Clearchus) takes-refuge | in the army of-himself

καὶ εὐθὺς παραγγέλλει εἰς
[in his own camp], and immediately calls [his men] to

τὰ ὅπλα· καὶ ἐκελευσε τοὺς μὲν ὁπλίτας
— arms; and he-ordered | the — heavy-armed-men

οὗτοῦ μεῖναι θέν-
of-him [his heavy-armed men] | to-have-remained [to remain] having-

τας τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ γόνατα· δὲ αὐτὸς
placed — (their) shields against — (their) knees; but he

λαβὼν τοὺς Θρᾷκας καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας,
having-taken [taking] the Thracians and the horsemen,

οἳ ἦσαν αὐτῷ ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι πλείους ἢ
that were with-him in the army more than

τετταράκοντα, δὲ οἱ πλεῖστοι τούτων
forty (in number), but the most of-these (were)

Θρᾷκες, ἤλαυνεν ἐπὶ τοὺς Μένωνος, ὥστ'
Thracians, proceeded-out against the (troops) of-Menon, so (that)

ἐκείνους ἐκπεπλῆχθαι καὶ Μένωνα
they were-struck (with astonishment, as was) also Menon

αὐτὸν, καὶ τρέχειν ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα. Δὲ
himself, and (so that they) run to — arms. But

καὶ οἱ ἔστασαν ἀποροῦντες τῷ πράγ-
also — (some) stood hesitating (about) the af-

ματι.
fair (not knowing what to make of it).

Ὁ δὲ Πρόξενος, γὰρ ἔτυχε προσιὼν ὕστερος,
— But Proxenus, | for he-happened approaching last

καὶ τάξις τῶν ὁπλι-
(in order), [who brought up the rear], and (a) division of-the heavy

τῶν ἑπομένη αὐτῷ, ἄγων οὖν
armed-men following him, leading therefore (his soldiers)

εὐθὺς εἰς τὸ μέσον ἀμφοτέρου
immediately | into the middle of-both [into the space be

ἔθετο τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ ἐδεῖτο τοῦ Κλε-
tween both] stood (under) — arms, and required of — Cle

άρχου μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. Δὲ ὁ
archus not to-do these (things). But — (Clearchus

ἐχαλέπαινεν, ὅτι αὐτοῦ δεήσαντος ὀλίγου κατα-
was-irritated, because he having-wanted little to-have

λευσθῆναι, πράως λέγοι τὸ πάθος
been-stoned, (that he, Proxenus,) 'should mildly 'mention | the suffering

αὐτοῦ ἐκέλευέ τε αὐτὸν ἐξίστασθαι
of-him [his ill treatment] he-ordered — him (then) to-stand-out

ἐκ τοῦ μέσου. Ὁ δὲ Κῦρος καὶ ἐν τούτῳ ἐπῄει,
from the middle. But Cyrus also at this came-up,

καὶ ἐπύθετο τὸ πρᾶγμα· ὁ δ' εὐθὺς ἐλαβε
and inquired-into the affair; — (then) 'he immediately 'took

τα παλτὰ εἰς τὰς χεῖρας, καὶ σὺν τοῖς
— javelins in — (his) hands, and with — (those)

παροῦσι τῶν πιστῶν, ἦκεν ἐλαύνων εἰς τὸ
present of — (his) faithful-attendants, came hastening to the

μέσον, καὶ λέγει τάδε. Κλέαρχε καὶ
midst (of them), and speaks thus. O-Clearchus and

Πρόξενε, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες οἱ παρόντες,
Proxenus, and (you) the other Greeks who are-present,

ἴστε οὐκ ὅ τι ποιεῖτε. Γὰρ εἰ συνάψετε
you-know not what you-are-doing. For if you-shall-join-in

τινα μάχην ἀλλήλοις, νομίζετε ἐμέ
any battle with-one-another, | think [be assured] (that) I

τε κατακεκόψεσθαι ἐν τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, καὶ
not-only will-instantly-be-cut-off in this (*the*) (very) day, but-also

ὑμᾶς οὐ πολὺ ὕστερον ἐμοῦ· γὰρ τῶν ἡμετέρων
you not long after me; | for — our-affairs

ἐχόντων κακῶς πάντες οὗτοι
having badly [for if our affairs go ill] all these

βάρβαροι, οὓς ὁρᾶτε ἔσονται πολεμιώτεροι ἡμῖν
barbarians, that you-see will-be more-hostile to-us

τῶν ὄντων παρὰ βασιλεῖ
than) — (those barbarians) | being [who are] with (the) king.

Ὁ Κλέαρχος ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἐγένετο ἐν
— Clearchus hearing these (things) | became in

ἑαυτῷ· καὶ ἀμφότεροι παυσά-
himself; [recovered self-possession]; and both (parties) having

μενοι ἔθεντο τὰ ὅπλα κατὰ
ceased (from strife) placed — (their) arms in (their appropriate)

χώραν.
place.

## CHAPTER VI.

Προϊόντων ἐντεῦθεν ἴχνια καὶ κόπρος ἵππων
Proceeding thence (the) footsteps and dung of-horses

ἐφαίνετο· ὁ στίβος δ' εἰκάζετο εἶναι ὡς
appeared; the track indeed was-conjectured to-be about (that)

δισχιλίων ἵππων. Οὗτοι προϊόντες ἔκαιον καὶ
of-two-thousand horses. These going-before burned both (the)

χιλὸν καὶ τι ἄλλο εἴ ἦν χρήσιμον. Ὀρόντης
fodder and any-thing else, if (it) was useful. Orontes

δὲ, Πέρσης ἀνὴρ τε προσήκων γένει
indeed, (a) Persian man not-only being-related by-birth (to the)

βασιλεῖ, καὶ τὰ πολέμια λεγόμενος
king, but-also (as respects) — warlike-affairs being-considered

ἐν τοῖς ἀρίστοις Περσῶν, ἐπιβουλεύει
among the most-distinguished (of the) Persians, plots-against

Κύρῳ, καὶ πρόσθεν πολενήσας
Cyrus, and (with whom) he-had formerly been-at-war,

δὲ καταλλαγείς. Οὗτος εἶπε Κύρῳ εἰ
but had-become-reconciled. This (person) said to-Cyrus, if

δοίη αὐτῷ χιλίους ἱππέας, ὅτι ἐνεδρεύσας
he-would-give him a-thousand horsemen, that having-lain-in-ambush

ἂν ἢ κατακάνοι τοὺς ἱππέας προκατα-
he would either destroy the horsemen burning-down-every-

καίοντας ἢ ἕλοι πολλοὺς αὐτῶν ζῶντας, καὶ
thing-before-them, or might-take many of-them alive, | and

κωλύσειε ἐπιόντας τοῦ καίειν,
would-hinder (them) going-against of-the to-burn, [and would hinder

καὶ ποιήσειεν,
them from going and burning everything], | and would-make, [and would

ὥστε αὐτοὺς ἰδόντας τὸ στράτευμα Κύρου
cause], that they having-seen the army of-Cyrus

μήποτε δύνασθαι διαγγεῖλαι
would never ¹be-able | to-have-told [to tell] (it) ¹to (the

βασιλεῖ. Δὲ τῷ Κύρῳ ἀκούσαντι ταῦτα
¹king | But to — Cyrus hearing these (things,

ἔδόκει εἶναι ὠφέλιμα,
it-seemed to-be advantageous, [but Cyrus hearing these propositions

καὶ ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν
approved of them as being advantageous], and he-ordered him

λαμβάνειν μέρος παρ' ἑκάστου τῶν ἡγε-
to-take (a) part (of the troops) from each of-the com-

μόνων. Ὁ δ' Ὀρόντης, νομίσας τοὺς ἱππέας
manders. — But Orontes, having-thought the horsemen

εἶναι ἑτοίμους αὐτῷ, γράφει ἐπιστολὴν παρὰ
to-be ready for-him, writes (a) letter to (the)

βασιλέα, ὅτι ἥξοι ἔχων πλείστους ἱππέας
king, that he-would-come having the-most horsemen

ὡς ἂν δύνηται·
that ¹he might ¹be-able (to obtain); [that he would come to him with

ἀλλὰ ἐκέλευε
the greatest number of horsemen he could obtain]; but he-requested

φράσαι τοῖς ἱππεῦσιν ἑαυτοῦ
(him) | to-have-told the horsemen of-him [to tell his horsemen]

ὑποδέχεσθαι αὐτὸν ὡς φίλιον. Καὶ ἐνῆν
to-receive him as (a) friend. And there | was [were]

ἐν τῇ ἐπιστολῇ δὲ ὑπομνήματα πρόσθεν φιλίας
in the letter not-only reminiscences of-former friendships

καὶ πίστεως. Δίδωσι ταύτην τὴν ἐπιστολὴν
but-also of-fidelity (to him). He-gave this the letter

πιστῷ ἀνδρί, ὡς ᾤετο. δὲ ὁ λαβὼν
to (a) ¹faithful man, as he-thought; but — (he) taking (the letter)

δίδωσι Κύρῳ. Δὲ ὁ Κῦρος ἀναγνοὺς αὐτὴν
gave (it) to-Cyrus. But — Cyrus having-read it

συλλαμβάνει Ὀρόντην, καὶ συγκαλεῖ εἰς τὴν
arrests Orontes, and he-convokes | in the

τκηνὴν ἑαυτοῦ τους ἑπτά ἀριστους
tent of-himself [in his own tent] the seven most-distinguished

Περσῶν τῶν περὶ αὐτὸν· καὶ ἐκέλευε τους
[1]of (the) [2]Persians — about him; and he-ordered the

στρατηγοὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἀγαγεῖν ὁπλίτας,
commanders of-the Greeks to-bring-up heavy-armed-men,

δὲ θέσθαι τούτους τὰ ὅπλα περὶ
and | to-have-placed [to place] these — (in) arms around

τὴν σκηνὴν αὐτοῦ. Δὲ οἱ ἐποιήσαν
|the tent of-him [his tent]. And — (they) did

ταῦτα ἀγαγόντες ὡς τρισχιλίους ὁπλίτας.
these (things) bringing about three-thousand heavy-armed-men.

Δὲ καὶ παρεκάλεσε εἴσω Κλέαρχον σύμβουλον,
And also he-called within Clearchus (as) counsellor,

ὅς γε ἐδόκει καὶ αὐτῷ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις
who at-least seemed both to-himself and the others [1]to-be

μάλιστα προτιμηθῆναι τῶν Ἑλλήνων. Δ' ἐπεὶ
the-most [1]honoured of-the Greeks. But after

ἐξῆλθεν ἐξήγγειλε τοῖς φίλοις τὴν κρίσιν τοῦ
he-came-out he-related to — (his) friends the trial —

Ορόντου, ὡς ἐγενετο· γὰρ ἦν οὐκ
of-Orontes, how it-was (conducted); for there-was no

ἀπόῤῥητον. Ἔφη δὲ Κῦρον ἄρχειν
secrecy (enjoined), He-said — (that) Cyrus began

ιοῦ λόγου ὧδε·
the subject thus;

Παρεκάλεσα ὑμᾶς ἄνδρες φίλοι, ὅπως βου-
I-have-invited you (*O-men*) (my) friends, that de-

λευόμενος σὺν ὑμῖν πράξω περὶ τουτουί Ὁρόντου
liberating with you I-will-do respecting this Orontes

τοῦτο ὅ τι δίκαιόν ἐστι καὶ πρὸς θεῶν
| that whatever just is [that which is just] both before gods

καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων. Γὰρ πρῶτον μὲν ὁ ἐμὸς
and before men. For first indeed — my

πατὴρ ἔδωκε τοῦτον εἶναι ὑπήκοον ἐμοί. Δ
father gave this (man) to-be obedient to-me. And

ἐπει ταχθείς, ὡς αὐτός ἔφη, ὑπὸ τοῦ ἐμοῦ
when having-been-ordered, as 'he himself 'said, by (the) my

ἀδελφοῦ, οὗτος ἐπολέμησεν ἐμοὶ ἔχων
brother, this (Orontes) made-war-against me (he) having

τὴν ἀκρόπολιν ἐν Σάρδεσι καὶ ἐγω προσπολεμῶν
the citadel in Sardis, and I making-war-against

αὐτὸν ἐποίησα ὥστε δόξαι
him | made (it so) [carried it on so] that (it) seemed (best)

τούτῳ παύσασθαι τοῦ πολέμου πρὸς
to-this (person) to-have-put-an-end (to) the war against

ἐμέ, καὶ ἔλαβον δεξιὰν καὶ ἔδωκα.
me, and I-took (his) right-hand and gave (him mine in

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἔφη, ὦ Ὀρόντα ἔστιν
friendship). After these he-said, O Orontes is-there

ὅ τι ἠδίκησα σε; Ἀπεκρίνατο
|what any [any thing in which] I-have-wronged you? He-answered

ὅτι οὔ. Δὲ ὁ Κύρος πάλιν ἠρώτα·
that (there-is) not. But — Cyrus again inquired; (did you)

οὐκοῦν ὕστερον, ὡς σὺ αὐτὸς ὁμολογεῖς, ἀποστὰς
not-then afterwards, as you yourself confess, having-gone-over

εἰς Μυσούς ἀδικούμενος οὐδὲν ὑπ' ἐμοῦ
to (the) Mysians, being-injured (in) no (manner) by me,

ἐποίεις κακῶς τὴν ἐμὴν χώραν, ὅ τι
act ill (against) — my territory, | what any-thing

ἐδύνω; Ὁ Ὀρόντης ἔφη.
[in whatever] you-could? — Orontes said (that he did).

Οὐκοῦν ἔφη ὁ Κῦρος ὁπότ' αὖ ἔγνως
(Did you) not-then said — Cyrus | when again you-knew

τὴν δύναμιν σεαυτοῦ
the strength of-yourself, [when you were aware of the little s trength

ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸν βωμὸν τῆς
you possessed against me], coming to the altar —

Ἀρτέμιδος, ἔφησθα τε μεταμέλειν σοι,
of-Diana, you-said (that it) not-only repented you

καὶ, πείσας ἐμέ πάλιν ἔδωκάς μοι
but-also, having-persuaded me, 'you again 'gave me

πιστὰ, καὶ ἔλαβες παρ' ἐμοῦ; Καὶ
pledges (of good faith), and received (the same) from me? And

ὁ Ὀρόντης ὡμολόγει ταῦτα Τί οὖν, ἔφη
— Orontes confessed these (things). (In) what then, said

ὁ Κῦρος, ἀδικηθεὶς ὑπ' ἐμοῦ,
— Cyrus, having-been-injured by me, [hast thou been injured by

νῦν τὸ τρίτον γέγονας φανερὸς
me], (that) now (for) the third (time) you-have-been manifestly

ἐπιβουλεύων μοι; Δὲ τοῦ Ὀρόντου εἰπόντος ὅτι
plotting-against me? But — Orontes saying, that

ἀδικηθεὶς οὐδέν. Ὁ Κῦρος ἠρώτησεν
having-been-injured (in) nothing (he did so). — Cyrus asked

αὐτόν· Ὁμολογεῖς οὖν γεγενῆσθαι ἄδικος περὶ
him; You-confess therefore to-have-been unjust towards

ἐμέ; Γὰρ ἦ ἀνάγκη, ἔφη ὁ
me? (I confess it) for certainly (there is a) necessity, said —

Ὀρόντης. Ἐκ τούτο ὁ Κῦρος πάλιν ἠρώτησεν·
Orontes. After this — Cyrus again asked;

Ἂν ἔτι οὖν γένοιο πολέμιος τῷ ἐμῷ ἀδελφῷ,
Would you yet then become hostile — to-my brother,

δὲ φίλος καὶ πιστός ἐμοὶ; Ὁ δὲ ἀπεκρίνατο
but friendly and faithful to-me? — And he-answered,

ὅτι οὐδ' εἰ γενοίμην, ὦ Κῦρε, ἄν ἔτι
that neither if I-should-become (so), O Cyrus, would-it yet-ever

δόξαιμι, σοὶ γε ποτε. Πρὸς ταῦτα Κῦρος
seem-so, to-you at-least never. On this Cyrus

εἶπε τοῖς παροῦσιν. Ὁ ἀνὴρ μὲν
said — (to those) present. — (This) man indeed has

μὲν πεποίηκε τοιαῦτα δὲ λέγει τοιαῦτα. Δὲ
certainly done such-things and he-acknowledges the-same. And

ὑμῶν σὺ ὦ Κλέαρχε πρῶτος ἀπόφηνα
of-you (present) do you O Clearchus first declar

γνώμην, ὅ τι δοκεῖ σοι. Δὲ Κλέαρχος
(your) opinion, whatever seems (right) to-you. And Clearchus

εἶπε τάδε· Ἐγὼ συμβουλεύω τον τοῦτον ἄνδρα
spoke thus; I advise (that) — this man

ποιεῖσθαι ἐκποδὼν ὡς τάχιστα, ὡς
be-put out-of-the-way as quickly (as possible), that it-may

μηκετι δέη φυλάττεσθαι τοῦτον,
no-longer be-necessary to-guard-against this (person),

ἀλλὰ ᾖ σχολὴ ἡμῖν, κατὰ τὸ εἶναι
but (that) there-may-be leisure to-us, | concerning the to-be

τοῦτον ποιεῖν εὖ τούτους
this-one [so far as relates to this man] to-do good (to) those

τοὺς ἐθελοντὰς φίλους. Δὲ ἔφη ταύτῃ
— willing (to be) friends. And he-said (that) in-this

τῇ γνώμῃ καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους προσθέσθαι. Μετὰ
— opinion also the others concurred. After

ταῦτα, Κύρου κελεύοντος, ἅπαντες καὶ οἱ
these (things), Cyrus ordering (it), all even the

συγγενεῖς ἀναστάντες ἔλαβον τὸν Ὀρόντην
relations (of Orontes) rising-up took — Orontes

τῆς ζώνης ἐπὶ θανάτῳ·
(by) the girdle | as-to death; [in token of his being condemned

δὲ εἶτα οἷς προσετάχθη ἐξῆγον
to death]; but then (those) to-whom it-was-commanded, led

αὐτόν. Δ' ἐπεὶ εἶδον αὐτὸν οἵπερ πρόσθεν
him (out). But when (those) saw him who formerly

προσεκύνουν, καὶ τότε προσεκύνησαν,
used-to-bow-down (before him), and then (also) they-bowed-down

καίπερ εἰδότες, ὅτι ἄγοιτο ἐπι θανατον.
(before him) although knowing, that he-might-be-led to death.

Δὲ ἐπεὶ εἰσηνέχθη τὴν σκηνὴν Ἀρταπάτου, τοῦ
And then he-was-led to-the tent of-Artapatas, the

πιστοτάτου τῶν σκηπτούχων Κύρου,
most-faithful (and trusted) of-the | sceptre-bearers [ushers] of-Cyrus,

μετὰ ταῦτα οὐδεὶς πώποτε εἶδε Ὀρόντην οὔτε
after this no-one ever saw Orontes, neither

ζῶντα οὔτε τεθνηκότα, οὐδέ οὐδεὶς εἰδως
living nor having died, | nor any-one having-known

ἔλεγεν ὅπως ἀπέθανε
was-said [nor would any one of his own knowledge say] how he died

δ' ἄλλοι εἰκαζον ἄλλως.
[and others conjectured otherwise [some conjectured this, and

Δὲ οὐδεὶς τάφος αὐτοῦ τώποτε
others that]. But no tomb of-him ¹was ever

ἐφανη.
¹seen.

## CHAPTER VII.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐξελαύνει διὰ τῆς Βαβυλωνίας
HENCE he-proceeds through the Babylonian (province)

τρεῖς σταθμοὺς δώδεκα παρασάγγας. Δ' ἐν
three days'-march (making) twelve parasangs. And on

τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ Κῦρος ποιεῖται, περὶ μέσας
the third day's march Cyrus makes, about (the) middle

νύκτας, ἐξέτασιν τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ τῶν Βαρβάρων,
of-night, a-review of-the Greeks and of-the Barbarians,

ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ· γὰρ ἐδόκει βασιλέα ἥξειν
on the plain; for he-thought (that the) king would-arrive

εἰς τὴν ἕω ἐπιοῦσαν σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι
on the morning coming with the army (and)

μαχούμενον· καὶ μὲν ἐκέλευε Κλέαρχον ἡγεῖσθα.
offering-battle; and — he-ordered Clearchus to-take-command

τοῦ δεξιοῦ κέρως, δὲ Μένωνα τὸν Θετταλὸν τοῦ
of-the right wing, and Menon the Thessalian of-the

εὐωνύμου δὲ αὐτὸς διέταξε τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ.
left; but he-himself drew-up-in-order-of-battle [the of-himself

Δὲ μετὰ τὴν ἐξέτασιν ἅμα
[his own troops]. But after the review [at-the-same-time

τῃ ἐπιούσῃ ἡμερᾳ, αὐτόμολοι ἥκοντες
with-the coming day, [at dawn of day], deserters coming

παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως ἀπήγγελλον Κύρῳ
from (the) great king informed Cyrus

περι τῆς στρατιᾶς βασιλέως. Δὲ Κῦρος,
about (the state) of-the army ¹of (the) ¹king. — Cyrus,

συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς τῶν
having-assembled the generals and captains of-the

Ἑλλήνων, συνεβουλεύετό τε, πῶς ἂν
Greeks, consulted (with them) not-only, how ²he migh

ποιοῖτο τὴν μάχην, καὶ αὐτὸς
¹make the battle, [conduct the engagement], but-also he

θαῤῥύνων τοιάδε παρήνει. Ὦ Ἕλληνες ἄνδρες,
encouraging thus exhorted (them). O Grecian men,

οὐκ ἀπορῶν βαρβάρων ἀνδρῶπων
(it is) not (for) being-in-want of-barbarian men (that)

ἄγω ὑμᾶς συμμάχους, ἀλλὰ νομίζων
I-lead you (with me as) auxiliaries, but thinking

ὑμᾶς εἶναι ἀμείνονας καὶ κρείττους πολλῶν
you to-be more-efficient and better (than) many

βαρβάρων, διὰ τοῦτο
(or a great multitude of) barbarians, ¹I for this (reason alone)

προσέλαβον. Οὖν ὅπως ἔσεσθε ἄνδρες
¹take-you-with (me). (See) then that you-will-be men

ἄξιοι τῆς ἐλευθερίας ἧς κέκτησθε καὶ ὑπὲρ
worthy of-the liberty which you-have-acquired and for

ἧς ἐγὼ εὐδαιμονίζω ὑμᾶς. Γὰρ εὖ ἴστε,
which I ¹esteem you ¹fortunate. For ¹you well ¹know,

ὅτι ἂν ἐλοίμην τὴν ἐλευθερίαν ἀντὶ πάντων
that ¹I would ¹prefer — liberty before all

ὧν ἔχω καὶ ἄλλων πολλαπλασίων.
(that) which I-have, and other (things) numerous

Δὲ καὶ ὅπως εἰδῆτε εἰς
(and greater). But also in-order-that ¹you (may) ²know to

οἷον ἀγῶνα ἔρχεσθε, ἐγὼ εἰδὼς
what (kind of) contest you-come, [I having-known [I knowing

διδάξω ὑμᾶς. Γὰρ τὸ πλῆθος μὲν πολύ
well] will-inform you. For the multitude (is) indeed large,

καὶ ἐπίασι πολλῇ κραυγῇ· δ' ἂν ἀνάσ-
and they-come-on ¹with (a) ²great shout; but should you-

χησθε ταῦτα, καὶ τὰ ἄλλα
save-sustained this, and (as respects) the other (things

δοκῶ μοι αἰσχύνεσθαι γνώσεσθε οἵους τοὺς
I-seem to-myself to-be-ashamed (that) you-will-know what the

ἀνθρώτους ὄντας ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ ἡμῖν.
men | being [born] in — (this) country (are of use) to-us

Δὲ ὑμῶν ὄντων ἀνδρων, και
(as soldiers). But you being men (of courage), and

γενομένων εὐτόλμων,
having-become bold (and spirited), (so as to conquer in the ap-

ἐγὼ μὲν ποιήσω τὸν ὑμῶν
proaching engagement), I indeed will-make (*the*) (those) of-you

βουλόμενον ἀπιέναι οἴκαδε ἀπελθεῖν ζηλωτὸν
desiring to-go home | to-have-departed [to-return] envied

τοῖς οἴκοι· δὲ οἶμαι ποιήσειν πολλοὺς
— (by those) at-home; but I-think to-'make many 'hereafter

ἑλέσθαι τὰ
| to-have-taken-for-yourselves [to prefer] the (things to be obtained)

παρ' ἐμοὶ ἀντὶ τῶν οἴκοι.
with me before — (those that may be obtained) at-home.

Ἐνταῦθα Γαυλίτης Σάμιος φυγάς, δέ
Then Gaulites (a) Samian exile, but (a)

πιστος Κύρῳ παρών εἶπε· καὶ μήν ὦ
faithful (adherent of) Cyrus being-present said; and yet, O

Κῦρε τινες λέγουσι, ὅτι νῦν ὑπισχνῇ πολλὰ
Cyrus, some say, that now you-promise many (things)

διὰ τὸ εἶνα ἐν τοιούτῳ τοῦ προ-
on-account-of | the to-be [being] in such (a state) of — ap-

σιόντος κινδύνου· δὲ ἄν τι γένηται εὖ,
proaching danger; but should any-thing happen well, [but

φασὶ σε οὐ μεμ-
should success attend you], they-say | (that) you 'would not 'have-

νῆσθαι·
remembered; [that you would not hereafter remember your promises]

δ' ἔνιοι οὐδ' εἰ μεμνῷό τε καὶ βούλοιο
— some (also say that) neither if you-remember and also may-wish

δύνασθαι ἂν ἀποδοῦναι ὅσα ὑπισχνῇ. Ὁ Κῦρος
will-you-be-able — to-give what you-promise. — Cyrus

ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἐλεξεν· Ἀλλ' ἐστι ἡμῖν ὦ ἀνδρες
hearing this said; But there-is to-us, O men,

ἡ ἀρχὴ ἡ πατρῴα,
the empire the paternal, [the empire, that belonged to my father],

μεν μεχρι πρὸς μεσημβρίαν οὗ
(which) indeed (extends) so-far to (the) south where

ἄνθρωποι οὐ δύνανται οἰκεῖν διὰ καῦμα,
men are not able to-dwell by-reason-of heat,

δε μεχρι πρὸς ἄρκτον οὖ διὰ
and so-far to (the) north where (they cannot live) for

χειμῶνα· δὲ οἱ φίλοι τοῦ ἐμοῦ ἀδελφοῦ σατρα-
cold; but the friends of — my brother govern-as-

πεύουσι πάντα τα ἐν μέσῳ τούτων.
satraps all (the countries situated) — in (the) middle of-these

Δὲ ἢν νικήσωμεν δεῖ ἡνᾶς
(northern and southern limits). But if we-conquer it-becomes us

ποιῆσαι τοὺς ἡμετέρους φίλους ἐγκρατεῖς τούτων.
to-make — our friends masters of-those

Ὥστε οὐ δέδοικα τοῦτο μὴ ἔχω
(countries). So-that I-have not feared this, lest I-have

οὔκ τι ὃ δῶ ἑκάστῳ τῶν φίλων,
not any-thing which I-might-give to-each — of (my) friends,

ἂν γένηται εὖ, ἀλλὰ, μὴ ἔχω
should it-happen well, [should we be successful], but lest I-have

οὔκ ἱκανοὺς, οἷς δῶ. Δὲ
not (friends) enough, to-whom I-might-give. But I-will

καὶ δώσω ἑκάστῳ ὑμῶν Ἑλλήνων χρυσοῦν
also give to-each of-you Greeks (a) golden

στέφανον. Δὲ οἱ ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα,
crown. But the (Greeks present) hearing these (things),

αὐτοί ἦσαν τε πολὺ προθυμότεροι,
they were not-only much more (encouraged and) prompt-for-action,

καὶ ἐξήγγελλον τοῖς ἄλλοις.
but-also they-reported (what they had heard) to-the others (of the

Δὲ τε οἱ στρατηγοὶ παρ' αὐτῶν, καὶ τινες
Greeks). And not-only the commanders about in but-also some

τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων εἰσήεσαν ἀξιοῦντες
of-the other Greeks entered (his tent) desiring

εἰδέναι τι ἔσται σφίσιν, ἐὰν κρατήσωσι.
to-know what (reward) shall-be to-them, if they-should-conquer.

Δὲ ὁ ἐμπιπλὰς τὴν γνώμην ἁπάντων,
But — (he) having-satisfied the minds of-all,

ἀπέπεμπε· Δὲ πάντες ὅσοιπερ διελέγοντο
sent (them) away. And all whoever conversed

παρεκελεύοντο αὐτῷ, μὴ μάχεσθαι,
(with him) exhorted him, not to-fight (personally),

ἀλλ' τάττεσθαι ὄπισθεν ἑαυτῶν.
but to-place-himself behind (the line of battle) of-themselves.

Ἐν δε τῷ τούτῳ καιρῷ Κλέαρχος ἤρετο τον Κῦρον
At — — this time Clearchus inquired-of — Cyrus

πως ὧδε· Οἰει γάρ σοι ὦ Κῦρε τὸν
some-how thus; Do-you-think then (*to-you*), O Cyrus, (that) — (your

ἀδελφόν μαχεῖσθαι; Νὴ Δί ἐφη ὁ Κῦρος
brother will-fight? Yes, by-Jupiter, said — Cyrus

εἴπερ γε ἐστί παῖς Δαρείου καὶ Παρυσάτιδος
if indeed he-is (the) son of-Darius and Parysatis,

δὲ ἐμὸς ἀδελφός, ἐγὼ οὐ λήψομαι
and my brother, I shall not take (possession of

ταῦτ' ἀμαχεί.
these (dominions) without-a-fight.

Ἐνταῦθα δή ἐν τῇ ἐξοπλισίᾳ
There indeed (of those) (*in*) — under-arms (the

ἀριθμὸς ἐγένετο τῶν μὲν Ἑλλήνων μυρία καὶ
number was of-the — Greeks ten-thousand and

τετρακοσία ἀσπὶς, δὲ δισχίλιοι καὶ πέντα-
four-hundred heavy-armed-men, and two-thousand and five-

κόσιοι πελτασταὶ, δὲ τῶν βαρβάρων
hundred targetiers, and (the number) of-the barbarians

μετὰ Κῦρου δέκα μυριάδες, καὶ
with Cyrus (was) | ten ten-thousands, [one hundred thousand], and

ἀμφὶ τὰ εἰκοσι δρεπανηφόρα ἅρματα. Δὲ
about — twenty scythe-bearing chariots. And (the number)

τῶν πολεμίων ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἑκατὸν καὶ εἴκοσι
of-the enemy was-said to-be | a-hundred and twenty

μυριάδες, καὶ διακόσια δρεπανηφόρα
ten-thousands, [1,200,000], and two-hundred scythe-bearing

ἅρματα. Δὲ ἦσαν ἑξακισχίλιοι ἄλλοι ἱππεῖς,
chariots. And there-were six-thousand other horsemen,

ὧν Ἀρταγέρσης ἦρχεν· οὗτοι ἦσαν
of-whom Artagerses had-the-command; these (horsemen) were

τεταγμένοι πρὸ βασιλεως αὐτοῦ. Δὲ
drawn-up before (the) king himself. But 'of (the)

στρατεύματος τοῦ βασιλέως ἦσαν τέτταρες
'army of-the king there-were four (being)

ἄρχοντες καὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ ἡγεμόνες, ἕκαστος
commanders and generals and leaders, each

τριάκοντα μυριάδων
(having under his command) | thirty ten-thousands, [300,000],

Ἀβροκόμας, Τισσαφέρνης, Γωβρύας,
(their names were) Abrocomas, Tissaphernes, Gobruas,

Ἀρβάκης. Δὲ τούτων παρεγένοντο ἐν τῇ μάχῃ
Arbaces. But of-these there-were-present in the battle

ἐνενήκοντα μυριάδες, καὶ ἑκατὸν καὶ
| nine-hundred ten-thousands, [900,000], and a-hundred and

πεντήκοντα δρεπανηφόρα ἅρματα· γὰρ Ἀβροκόμας
fifty scythe-bearing chariots; for Abrocomas

ἐλαύνων ἐκ Φοινίκης ὑστέρησε τῆς μάχης πέντε
marching from Phœnicia arrived-after the battle five

ἡμέρας. Δὲ οἱ αὐτομολήσαντες ἐκ τῶν
days. And — (those) having-deserted from the

πολεμίων παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως
enemy (that were) with (the) great king

ἤγγελλον ταῦτα πρὸς Κῦρον προ τῆς μάχης·
announced these (things) to Cyrus before the battle;

καὶ, μετὰ τὴν μάχην, οἱ ὕστερον
and, after the battle, — (those that) thereafter

ἐλήφθησαν ἤγγελλον ταῦτα.
were-taken-prisoners reported the-same (things).

Δὲ ἐντεῦθεν Κῦρος ἐξελαίνει ἕνα σταθμὸν
And thence Cyrus proceeds one days'-march,

τρεῖς παρασάγγας παντὶ τῷ στρατεύματι,
(making) three parasangs, with-all the army,

καὶ τῷ Ἑλληνικῷ καὶ τῷ βαρβαρικῷ συντε-
both the Greek and the barbarian, drawn-up-in-

ταγμένῳ· γὰρ ᾤετο βασιλέα μαχεῖσθαι
order-of-battle; for he-thought (that the) king would-offer-battle

ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ· γὰρ κατὰ μέσον τὸν
(on) that — (same) day; for about (the) middle (of) the

σταθμὸν ἦν τάφρος ὀρυκτή βαθεῖα, τὸ
days'-march there-was (found) a-ditch dug deep, the

εὖρος μὲν πέντε ὀργυιαί, δὲ τὸ βάθος τρεῖς
breadth indeed (was) five fathoms, and the depth three

ὀργυιαί. Δὲ ἡ τάφρος παρετέτατο ἄνω διὰ τοῦ
fathoms. And the ditch was-extended up through the

πεδίου ἐπὶ δώδεκα παρασάγγας, μέχρι τείχους
plain to twelve parasangs, just-to (the) walls

τοῦ Μηδίας. Ἔνθα δή εἰσιν αἱ διώρυχες ῥέουσαι
— of-Media. Here — are the canals flowing

ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ Τίγρητος· δὲ εἰσὶ τέτταρες,
from the river Tigris; and there-are four (of them),

τὸ μὲν εὖρος πλεθριαῖαι, δὲ ἰσχυρῶς
the — breadth (of each is) of-the-size-of-a-plethrum, and very

βαθεῖαι, καὶ σιταγωγὰ πλοῖα πλεῖ ἐν αὐταῖς·
deep, and corn-carrying vessels sail on them;

δὲ εἰσβάλλουσι εἰς τὸν Εὐφράτην, δὲ δια-
and they-discharge-their-water into the Euphrates, and they-

λείπουσι ἑκάστη παρασάγγην, γέφυραι δ'
leave (between) each a-parasang, bridges also

ἔπεισιν. Ἦν δὲ στενὴ πάροδος
are (thrown) over (them). There-was — (a) narrow passage

παρὰ τὸν Εὐφράτην, μεταξὺ τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ
along the Euphrates, between the river and

τῆς τάφρου ὡς τὸ εὖρος εἴκοσι ποδῶν. Ταύτην
the trench about the breadth of-twenty feet. This

δε τὴν τάφρον μέγας βασιλεὺς ποιεῖ ἀντι
— — trench (the) great king makes for (a)

ἐρύματος, ἐπειδὴ πυνθάνεται Κῦρον προσελαύνοντα.
defence, after he-heard-of Cyrus marching-against

Ταύτην τὴν πάροδον δὴ τε Κῦρός καὶ
(him). This — passage indeed not-only Cyrus but-also

ἡ στρατιὰ παρῆλθε, καὶ ἐγένοντο εἴσω τῆς
the army went-through, and (so) became within the

τάφρου. Βασιλεύς μὲν οὐκ οὖν ἐμαχέσατο
trench. (The) king indeed did not therefore offer-battle

ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, ἀλλὰ πολλὰ ἴχνη καὶ ἵππων
on-that — day, but many tracks both of-horses

καὶ ἀνθρώπων ὑποχωρούντων ἦσαν φανερά.
and of-men retreating were visible.

Ἐνταῦθα Κῦρος καλέσας Σιλανὸν τὸν Ἀμβρα-
There Cyrus having-called Silanus the Ambra-

κιώτην μάντιν, ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ τρισχιλίους δαρεικούς,
cian soothsayer, gave him three-thousand darics,

ὅτι πρότερον τῇ ἑνδεκάτῃ ἀπ' ἐκείνης τῆς
because previously on-the eleventh (day) from that —

ἡμέρας θυόμενος, εἶπεν αὐτῷ ὅτι βασιλεὺς
day (while) sacrificing, he-said to-him that (the) king

οὐ μαχεῖται δέκα ἡμερῶν· Κῦρος δ'
would not fight (for) ten days; Cyrus then

εἶπεν, οὐκ ἄρα ἔτι μαχεῖται, εἰ οὐ
said, he-will not then thereafter fight, if he-will not

μαχεῖται ἐν ταύταις ταῖς ἡμεραῖς· δ' ἐὰν ἀλη-
fight in these — days; but if you-speak-

θεύσῃς, ὑπισχνοῦμαί σοι δέκα τάλαντα. Τοῦτο
the-truth, I-promise you ten talents. This

τὸ χρυσιόν τότε ἀπέδωκεν, ἐπεὶ αἱ δέκα ἡμέραι
— gold he then paid, when the ten days

παρῆλθον. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἐπὶ τῇ τάφρῳ, βασιλεὺς
elapsed. After indeed, at the trench, (the) king

ἐκώλυε τὸ στράτευμα Κύρου διαβαίνειν,
prevent the army of-Cyrus to-go-through (it)

ἔδοξε καὶ Κύρῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις ἀπεγνωκέναι
ne-seemed both to-Cyrus and to-the others to-have-given-up

τοῦ μάχεσθαι· ὥστε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Κῦρος
the (design) to-fight; so-that on-the following (day) Cyrus

ἐπορεύετο μᾶλλον ἠμελημένως. Δὲ
proceeded (on his march) more negligently. But

τῇ τρίτῃ ἐποιεῖτο τὴν πορείαν τε καθήμενος
on-the third (day) he-made the march not-only being-seated

ἐπὶ τοῦ ἅρματος, καὶ ἔχων πρὸ αὐτου
in — (his) chariot, but-also having before him

ὀλίγους ἐν τάξει· δὲ τὸ πολὺ
few (men, drawn up) in order; but the greater (part of

αὐτῷ ἐπορεύετο ἀνατεταραγμένον,
the army) for-him proceeded-on | having-been-put-in-disorder, [without

καὶ πολλὰ τῶν ὅπλων τοῖς στρα-
observing any order], and many of-the arms for-the sol-

τιώταις ἤγοντο ἐπὶ ἁμαξῶν καὶ ὑποζυγίων.
diers were-carried on wagons and beasts-of-burden.

## CHAPTER VIII.

Καὶ ἦν ἤδη τε ἀμφὶ πλήθουσαν ἀγοράν,
And it-was now not-only about full market (time),

καὶ ὁ σταθμός ἦν πλησίον ἔνθα ἔμελλε κατα-
but-also the station was near where he-was-about to-ter-

λύειν ἡνίκα Παταγύας Πέρσης ἀνὴρ,
minate (the day's march) when Pataguas (a) Persian man,

τῶν πιστῶν ἀμφὶ Κῦρον προφαίνεται
of-the faithful (adherents) about Cyrus appears

ἐλαύνων ἀνὰ κράτος τῷ ἵππῳ ἱδροῦντι·
riding at full-speed — (with his) horse sweating,

καὶ εὐθὺς ἐβόα πᾶσιν, οἷς ἐνετύγχανε,
and immediately he-called-out to-all, whom he-met,

καὶ βαρβαρικῶς καὶ Ἑλληνικῶς, ὅτι
both | in-barbarian [in Persian] and in-Greek, that (the

βασιλεὺς προσέρχεται σὺν πολλῷ στρατεύματι,
king approaches with (a) large army,

παρεσκευασμένος ὡς εἰς μάχην. Ἔνθα δὴ ἐγέ-
prepared as for battle. Then indeed there-

νετο πολὺς τάραχος· γὰρ οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ δὲ
was great confusion; for the Greeks and also

πάντες ἐδόκουν αὐτίκα ἐπιπε-
all thought (that) [he (the king) [would suddenly [fall

σεῖσθαι σφίσιν ἀτάκτοις· Κῦρός τε, καταπηδήσας
on them in-disorder; Cyrus not-only, having-leaped-down

ἀπὸ τοῦ ἅρματος, ἐνέδυ τὸν θώρακα, καὶ
from the chariot, put-on — (his) breast-plate, but-also

ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον ἔλαβε τὰ παλτὰ
mounting on — (his) horse he-took — (his) javelins

εἰς τὰς χεῖρας, τε παρήγγελλε πᾶσι τοῖς
in — (his) hands, (and) not-only did-he-order all the

ἄλλοις ἐξοπλίζεσθαι, καὶ ἕκαστον καθίστασθαι
rest to-arm-themselves, but-also each-one | to-place-himself

εἰς τὴν τάξιν ἑαυτοῦ.
in the rank of-himself [to station himself in his own rank].

Ἔνθα δὴ καθίσταντο σὺν
There indeed (in their proper stations) they-placed-themselves with

πολλῇ σπουδῇ, Κλέαρχος μὲν ἔχων τὰ δεξιὰ
great haste, Clearchus indeed having the right

τοῦ κέρατος πρὸς τῷ ποταμῷ Εὐφράτῃ, δὲ
of-the (right) wing near the river Euphrates, but

Πρόξενος ἐχόμενος δ' οἱ ἄλλοι
Proxenus having (his station next to him) and the others

μετὰ τοῦτον. Δὲ Μένων καὶ τὸ
after this (in order). But Menon and — (his)

στράτευμα ἔσχε τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρας τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ.
army had the left wing of-the Greek

(army). Δὲ τοῦ βαρβαρικοῦ ἱππεῖς μὲν Παφλα-
But of-the barbarian (force) horsemen namely (the) Paphla-

γόνες εἰς χιλίους ἔστησαν παρὰ Κλέαρχον
gonian about a-thousand stood near Clearchus

καὶ το Ἑλληνικὸν πελταστικὸν ἐν τῷ δεξιῷ·
and the Greek peltastic (force) on the right,

δὲ ἐν τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τε Ἀριαῖος ὁ ὕπαρχος
but on the left (was) not-only Ariæus the lieutenant

Κύρου, καὶ τὸ ἄλλο βαρβαρικόν· Κῦρος δὲ
of-Cyrus, but-also the other barbarian (force); Cyrus also

καὶ ἱππεῖς μετ' αὐτοῦ ὅσον ἑξακόσιοι,
and (the) horsemen with him about six-hundred (were in the

αὐτοὶ μὲν ὡπλισμένοι θώραξι καὶ
centre), they indeed having-been-armed with-breastplates and

παραμηριδίοις, καὶ πάντες κράνεσι πλὴν Κύρου·
armour-for-the-thighs, and all with-helmets, except Cyrus;

Κῦρος δὲ καθίστατο εἰς τὴν μάχην ἔχων
Cyrus indeed stationed-himself in the battle having

τὴν κεφαλὴν ψιλὴν· δὲ καὶ λέγεται
— (his) head bare; and (it is) also said (that)

τοὺς ἄλλους Πέρσας διακινδυνεύειν ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ
the other Persians expose-themselves in — battle

ταῖς ψιλαῖς κεφαλαῖς. Δὲ πάντες οἱ ἵπποι,
— with-bare heads. Also all the horses, (namely)

οἱ μετα Κύρου, εἶχον καὶ προμετω-
— (those) with Cyrus, had both defensive-armour-on-their-

πίδια καὶ προστερνίδια· δὲ οἱ ἱππεῖς καὶ
foreheads and defensive-armour-for-the-breast; and the horsemen also

εἶχον Ἑλληνικάς μαχαίρας.
had Grecian swords.

Καὶ ἦν ἤδη τε μέσον ἡμέρας,
And it-was now not-only (the) middle 'of (the) 'day,

καὶ οὔπω ἦσαν οἱ πολέμοι καταφανεῖς· δὲ
but-also not-yet were the enemy visible; but

ἡνίκα ἐγίγνετο δείλη κονιορτός ἐφάνη, ὥσπερ
when it-was early-afternoon a-dust appeared, like-as

λευκή νεφέλε, δὲ οὐ συχνῷ χρόνῳ ὕστερον
(a) white cloud, but 'in no 'much time after,

τις ὥσπερ μελανία ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ ἐπὶ
something like blackness (appeared) on the plain on

πολύ. Ὡς δὲ ὅτε ἐγίγνοντο ἐγγύτερον,
much [much extended]. But when they-became nearer,

καὶ δὴ τάχα τις χαλκὸς ἤστραπτε, καὶ
and — thereupon something (like) brass gleamed-forth, and

αἱ λόγχαι καὶ αἱ τάξεις ἐγίγνοντο καταφανεῖς.
the spears and the ranks became visible

Καὶ ἦσαν ἱππεῖς μὲν λευκοθώρακες ἐπὶ
And there-were horsemen — (having) white-corselets on

τοῦ εὐωνύμου τῶν πολεμίων, Τισσαφέρνης ἐλέγετο
the left of-the enemy, Tissaphernes was-said

ἄρχειν τούτων· ἐχόμενοι δὲ τουτων
to-command these; next then (to) these (were the)

γερροφόροι· ἐχόμενοι δὲ ὁπλῖται
wicker-shield-bearers; next also (to these were) heavy-armed-men

σὺν ξυλίναις ἀσπίσι ποδήρεσι· οὗτοι ἐλέγοντο
with wooden shields reaching-to-the-feet; and these were-said

εἶναι Αἰγύπτιοι· ὃ δ' ἄλλοι ἱππεῖς
to-be Egyptians; and (next followed) other horsemen (next)

ἄλλοι τοξόται. Πάντες δ' οὗτοι
other bowmen. All — these (marched together)

κατὰ ἔθνη, ἕκαστον τὸ ἔθνος ἐπορεύετο
according-to (their) nation, each — nation marched-on

ἐν πλαισίῳ πλήρει ἀνθρώπων. Ὃε
in (an) oblong full of-men [in solid column]. And

πρὸ αὐτῶν ἅρματα διαλείποντα συχνὸν
before them (were) chariots leaving (a) considerable (space)

ἀπ' ἀλλήλων, τὰ δὴ καλούμενα δρεπανη-
between one-another, — (these) indeed were-called scythe

φόρα· εἶχον δὲ τὰ δρέπανα ἀποτεταμένα ἐκ
chariots; they-had — the scythes extended from

τῶν ἀξόνων εἰς πλάγιον, καὶ ὑπὸ
the axles in (an) oblique (direction), and (others) under

τοῖς δίφροις βλέποντα εἰς γῆν ὡς
the seats-of-the-drivers looking towards (the) ground so-as

διακόπτειν ὅτῳ ἐντυγχάνοιεν. Ὃὲ ἡ γνώμη
to-cut-through whatever they-might-meet. And the design

ἦν ὡς ἐλῶντων καὶ διακοψόντων εἰς
(of them) was that hereafter-driving-into, and cutting-through into
τὰς τάξεις τῶν Ἑλλήνων.
the ranks of-the Greeks. [The design of these chariots
Ὁ Κῦρος
was to drive into, and cut through the ranks of the Greeks.] What Cyrus
μέντοι εἶπεν ὅτε καλέσας παρεκελεύετο
however said when having-called (the men) he-exhorted
τοῖς Ἕλλησι ἀνέχεσθαι τὴν κραυγὴν τῶν βαρ-
the Greeks to-sustain the shout of-the bar-
βάρων, τούτῳ ἐψεύσθη· γὰρ προσήεσαν οὐ
barians, in-this he-was-deceived; for they-approached not 'with (a)
κραυγῇ, ἀλλὰ σιγῇ, ὡς ἀνυστόν,
'shout, but 'in (as much) 'silence, as (it was) possible,
καὶ ἡσυχῇ, ἐν ἴσῳ καὶ βραδέως. Καὶ ἐν
and quietly, in (an) even (step) and slowly. And at
τούτῳ Κῦρος, παρελαύνων αὐτὸς σὺν Πίγρητι.
this (time) Cyrus, riding-by himself with Pigres,
τῷ ἑρμηνεῖ, καὶ τρισὶν ἢ τέτταρσι ἄλλοις, ἐβόα
the interpreter, and three or four others, he-called-out
τῷ Κλέαρχῳ ἄγειν τὸ στράτευμα κατὰ τὸ
— to-Clearchus to-lead — (his) army against the
μέσον τῶν πολεμίων, ὅτι βασιλεὺς εἴη ἐκεῖ·
centre of-the enemy, that (the) king might-be there;
κἂν ἔφη νικῶμεν τοῦτο πάντα πεποίηται
and-if, said-he, we-conquer (in) this (quarter) all has-been-done
ἡμῖν. Δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος ὁρῶν τὸ μέσον στῖφος,
for-us. But — Clearchus seeing — (that) middle dense-body
καὶ ἀκούων Κύρου βασιλέα ὄντα
(of soldiers), and hearing from-Cyrus (of the) king being
ἔξω τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ εὐωνύμου, γὰρ βασιλεύς
beyond the Grecian left, for (the) king
περιῆν τοσοῦτον πλήθει, ὥστε ἔχων τὸ μέσον
excelled so-much in-multitude, so-that having the middle
ἑαυτοῦ ἦν
of-himself [so that, stationed in the centre of his army,] he-was (even)

οὐκ ἤθελεν ἀποσπάσαι τὸ δεξιὸν κέρας ἀπὸ
'did not 'wish to-draw-off the right wing from

τοῦ ποταμοῦ, φοβούμενος μὴ κυκλωθείη ἑκατέ-
the river, fearing lest he-might-be-surrounded on-both-

ρωθεν, δὲ τῷ Κύρῳ ἀπεκρίνατο, ὅτι μέλοι
sides, but — to-Cyrus he-replied, | that it-would-be-a-care

αὐτῷ ὅπως ἔχοι καλῶς.
to him that it-may-have (itself) well [that he would take care,

that everything should terminate well].

Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ τῷ καιρῷ τὸ μὲν βαρβαρικὸν
And during this — time the — barbarian

στράτευμα προήει ὁμαλῶς, δὲ τὸ Ἑλλη-
army advanced steadily (and equally), and the Gre-

νικόν ἔτι μένον ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ, συνε-
cian (army) still remaining in the same (place), was-formed-

τάττετο ἐκ τῶν ἔτι προσιόντων. Καὶ Κῦρος
in-order-of-battle from — (those) still coming-up. And — Cyrus

παρελαύνων οὐ πάνυ πρὸς αὐτῷ τῷ
riding-past not very near to-this (his) —

στρατεύματι, κατεθεᾶτο ἀποβλέπων ἑκατέρωσε,
army, surveyed (the armies) looking-at each-side,

τε εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους καὶ τοὺς
not-only towards the enemy but-also (towards) — (his)

φίλους. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος ἰδὼν αὐτὸι
friends. But Xenophon (an) Athenian seeing him

ἀπο τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ, ὑπελάσας ὡς συναν
from the Grecian (line), having-ridden-up as-if to-have

τῆσαι, ἤρετο εἴ τι παραγγέλλοι
met (him), asked if he-may-'have any-thing 'to-order

ὁ δ' ἐπιστήσας εἶπε, καὶ ἐκέλευε
who — having-stopped (his horse) said, and-also ordered (him)

λέγειν πᾶσιν, ὅτι καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ καὶ τὰ σφάγια
to-tell all, that both the sacrifices and the victims (were)

καλα. Λέγων δὲ ταῦτα ἤκουσε θορύβου ἰόντος
favourable. Saying — this he-heard (a) noise going

διὰ τῶν τάξεων, καὶ ἤρετο τίς ὁ θόρυβος
through the ranks, and he-inquired what the noise

εἴη. Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν, ὅτι τὸ σύνθημα
might-be. — And Xenophon said, that the watch-word is

ἤδη παρέρχεται δεύτερον. Καὶ
now passing (through the ranks) for-the-second-time. And

ὃς ἐθαύμασε τίς παραγγέλλει, καὶ
(who) (Cyrus) wondered what-person gives-out (the word), and

ἤρετο ὅ τι τὸ σύνθημα εἴη. Ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο,
he-asked what the watch-word might-be. — And he-replied,

ὅτι Ζεὺς σωτὴρ καὶ νίκη. Ὁ δὲ Κῦρος
that (it was) Jupiter (the) preserver and victory. — And Cyrus

ἀκούσας, ἔφη, ἀλλὰ τε δέχομαι καὶ ἔστω
having-heard (it), said, but I not-only receive (it) but-also let-it-be

τοῦτο. Δὲ εἰπών ταῦτα ἀπήλαυνε εἰς τὴν
so. And having-said this he-rode-away to | to-the

χώραν ἑαυτοῦ· καὶ τὼ φάλ-
place of-himself; [to his own station in the line;] and the-two ar-

λαγγε διειχέτην ἀπ' ἀλλήλων οὐκέτι τρία ἢ
mies were-apart from one-another not-more-than three or

τέτταρα στάδια, ἡνίκα οἱ Ἕλληνες τε ἐπαιάνιζον,
four stadia, when the Greeks not-only sang-the-pæan,

καὶ ἤρχοντο ἰέναι ἀντίοι τοῖς πολεμίοις. Δὲ
but-also began to-go against the enemy. But

ὡς πορευομένων τι τῆς φάλαγγος ἐξεκύ-
as (they) were-proceeding some (part) of-the phalanx fluctu-

μαινε τὸ ἐπιλειπόμενον ἤρξατο
ated (from the rest) the (part) left-behind began

θεῖν δρόμῳ· καὶ πάντες ἅμα ἐφθέγξαντο
to-run with-speed; and (they) all together made-a-noise

οἱόνπερ ἐλελίζουσι τῷ Ἐνυαλίῳ, καὶ δὲ πάντες
like-as they-shout to — Mars, and also all

ἔθεον. Δὲ τινες λέγουσι, ὡς καὶ ἐδούπησαν
ran. And some say, that they also sounded

ταῖς ἀσπίσι πρὸς τὰ δόρατα, ποιοῦντες
— ¹with (their) ²shields against the spears, causing

φόβον τοῖς ἵπποις. Δὲ πρὶν τόξευμα
fear to-the horses. But before (that) (an) arrow

ἐξικνεῖσθαι, οἱ βάρβαροι ἐκκλίνουσι, καὶ
reaches (them), the barbarians give-way, and

φεύγουσι. Καὶ δὴ ἐνταῦθα μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες
flee And also there indeed the Greeks

ἐδίωκον κατὰ κράτος, δὲ ἐβόων ἀλλήλοις
followed with (all their) might, and calling-out to-one-another

μὴ θεῖν δρόμῳ, ἀλλὰ ἕπεσθαι ἐν τάξει. Δὲ
not to-run with-speed, but to-follow in order. But

τὰ ἅρματα, κενὰ ἡνιόχων, ἐφέροντο τὰ μὲν
the chariots, void of-drivers, were-born — (some) indeed

διὰ τῶν πολεμίων αὐτῶν, δὲ τὰ
through (the ranks) of-the enemy themselves, but — (others)

καὶ διὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων. Δὲ οἱ,
also through (the ranks) of-the Greeks. But — (they),

ἐπεὶ προίδοιεν, διίσταντο.
when they-could see (them coming) | they-stood-apart [they opened their

δ' ἔστι ὅστις καὶ κατελήφθη,
ranks]; but there-was some-one-person (who) also was-caught,

ὥσπερ ἐν ἱπποδρόμῳ, ἐκπλαγείς· καὶ
as in (a) race-course, he-having-been-struck-with-fear; and

ἔφασαν μέντοι οὐδὲ τοῦτον παθεῖν οὐδέν·
they-said however (that) neither ¹did this-person ²suffer | nothing;

οὐδ' οὐδεὶς ἄλλος δὲ
[in any thing]; | neither ¹did no-one other indeed [nor did any one

τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔπαθεν οὐδέν ἐν
else] of-the Greeks | suffer nothing [suffer any thing] in

ταύτῃ τῇ μάχῃ, πλὴν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ τις
this — battle, except on the left, some-one

ἐλέγετο τοξευθῆναι.
was said to-have-been-shot-with-an-arrow.

Δὲ Κῦρος ὁρῶν τοὺς Ἕλληνας νικῶντα, καὶ
But Cyrus seeing the Greeks conquering and

διώκοντας τὸ καθ' αὐτοὺς, ἡδόμενος
pursuing the (part of the army) opposed-to them, being-pleased,

καὶ προσκυνούμενος ἤδη ὡς βασιλεὺς ὑπὸ τῶν
and being-saluted now as king by — (those)

ἀμφ' αὐτόν, οὐδ' ὡς ἐξήχθη διώκειν,
about him, nor (yet) was-he thus led-away to-pursue (the enemy),

ἀλλὰ ἔχων συνεσπειραυμένην τὴν τάξιν τῶν
but keeping drawn-up-in-close-order the band of-the

ἑξακοσίων ἱππέων σὺν ἑαυτῷ, ἐπεμελεῖτο ὅ τι
six-hundred horsemen with himself, he-carefully-watched what

βασιλεύς ποιήσει· γὰρ καὶ ἤδει αὐτόν
(the) king would-do; for he well knew (*him*)

ὅτι ἔχοι μέσον τοῦ Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος.
that he-kept the-centre of-the Persian army.

Καὶ δὲ πάντες οἱ ἄρχοντες τῶν βαρβάρων
And also all the commanders of-the barbarians

ἔχοντες τὸ μέσον αὐτῶν ἡγοῦντο,
occupying the centre of-their (command) led (them thus

νομίζοντες οὕτω καὶ εἶναι ἐν ἀσφαλεστάτῳ
into action) thinking thus also to-be — the-most-secure

ἢν ἡ ἰσχὺς αὐτῶν ᾖ ἑκατέρωθεν,
if | the strength of-them [their strength] should-be on-either-side,

καὶ εἴ χρήζοιεν παραγγεῖλαί τι, τὸ
and, if they-should-want to-order any-thing, (that) the

στράτευμα ἂν αἰσθάνεσθαι ἡμίσει χρόνῳ. Καὶ
army may perceive in-half (the) time. And

δὴ βασιλεὺς ἔχων τότε μέσον τῆς
even-indeed (the) king having then (the) centre of-the

στρατιᾶς αὐτοῦ ἐγένετο ὅμως ἔξω
| army of-him [of his army] was nevertheless beyond (the)

εὐωνύμου κέρατος τοῦ Κύρου. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδεὶς
left wing — of-Cyrus. When indeed no-one

ἐμάχετο ἐκ τοῦ ἀντίου αὐτῷ οὐδὲ
fought from the opposite (part) (either) against-himself (*nor*) (or)

τοῖς τεταγμένοις ἔμπροσθεν αὐτοῦ,
(those of his own troops) drawn-up before him.

ἐπέκαμπτεν ὡς εἰς κυκλωσιν.
he-commenced-wheeling-round as for-the-purpose-of surrounding

Ἔνθα δὴ Κῦρος δείσας μὴ γενόμενος ὄπισθεν
Then indeed Cyrus, fearing lest having-got in-the-rear

κατακόψῃ τὸ Ἑλληνικόν ἐλαύνει ἀντίος·
he-might-cut-to-pieces the Grecian (forces), moves-on against

καὶ ἐμβαλὼν σὺν τοῖς ἑξακοσίοις
[him); and having-charged with the six-hundred (horsemen with

νικᾷ τοὺς τεταγμένους πρὸ βασιλέως,
him), conquers — (those) drawn-up before (the) king,

καὶ ἔτρεψε εἰς φυγὴν τοὺς ἑξακισχιλίους,
and turns into flight the six-thousand (horsemen

καὶ αὐτὸς λέγεται ἀποκτεῖναι
guarding the king), and he (Cyrus) is-said to-have-killed

τῇ χειρὶ ἑαυτοῦ Ἀρταγέρσην
[with-the hand of-himself [with his own hand] Artagerses

τὸν ἄρχοντα αὐτῶν. Δὲ ὡς ἡ τροπὴ ἐγένετο,
the commander of-them. But as the rout occurred,

καὶ οἱ ἑξακόσιοι Κύρου, διασπείρονται
also the six-hundred (horsemen) of-Cyrus, are-dispersed

ὁρμήσαντες εἰς τὸ διώκειν· πλὴν πάνυ
having-rushed-on [to the pursuing; [in pursuit]; except (a) very

ὀλίγοι κατελείφθησαν ἀμφ' αὐτὸν,
few, (that) were-left about him, (and who were)

σχεδὸν οἱ καλούμενοι ὁμοτράπεζοι. Ὢν
nearly-all — (those who) are-called table-companions. Being

δὲ σὺν τούτοις, καθορᾷ βασιλέα καὶ τὸ
therefore with these, he-sees (the) king and the

στῖφος ἀμφ' ἐκεῖνον, καὶ εὐθὺς οὐκ
dense-body-guard around him, and immediately he-did not

ἠνέσχετο ἀλλ' εἰπών, ὁρῶ τὸν ἄνδρα, ἵετο ἐπ'
restrain-himself, but saying, I-see the man, he-rushed on

αὐτὸν· καὶ παίει κατὰ τὸ στέρνον, καὶ
him, and strikes at — (his) breast, and

τιτρώσκει διὰ τοῦ θώρακος, ὡς Κτησίας ὁ
wounds (him) through the breast-plate, as Ctesias the

ἰατρός φησί, καὶ αὐτὸς φησί ἰᾶσθαι
physician says, and (moreover) he-himself says (that) he-healed

τὸ τραῦμα. Δὲ τις παίοντα
the wound. But some-one, (while he was) striking (at the king)

ἀκοντίζει αὐτὸν βιαίως παλτῷ ὑπὸ τὸν
hits him violently with (a) javelin under the

ὀφθαλμόν· καὶ ἐνταῦθα καὶ βασιλεὺς
eye; and there (then were) both (the) king

καὶ Κῦρος μαχόμενοι, καὶ οἱ ἀμφ᾽
and Cyrus fighting, and — (those likewise) about

αὐτοὺς ὑπὲρ ἑκατέρου·
them (were fighting), for each (of their own chiefs);

ὁπόσοι μὲν τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα ἀπέθνησκον
how-many indeed — (of those) about (the) king died

Κτησίας λέγει· γὰρ ἦν παρ᾽ ἐκείνῳ·
(in battle) Ctesias tells (us); for he-was about him;

δὲ τε Κῦρος αὐτός
[for he attended the king's person]; and not-only Cyrus himself

ἀπέθανε, καὶ ὀκτὼ, οἱ ἄριστοι τῶν
died, but-also eight, the most-distinguished (persons) —

περὶ αὐτὸν, ἔκειντο ἐπ᾽ αὐτῷ. Δὲ
(of those) about him, lay (dead) on him. But

Ἀρταπάτης, ὁ πιστότατος αὐτῷ τῶν σκηπ
Artapates, the most-faithful to-him — (of his) sceptre-

τούχων θεράπων, λέγεται, ἐπειδὴ εἶδε Κῦρον
bearing servants, is-said, after he-saw Cyrus

πεπτωκότα, καταπηδήσας ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου
fallen, (that) having-leaped from — (his) horse

περιπεσεῖν αὐτῷ. Καὶ οἱ μὲν φασι
to-have-thrown (himself) on-him. And — (some) indeed say (that)

βασιλέα κελεῦσαί τινα ἐπισφάξαι
(the) king ordered some one to-have-killed [to kill]

αὐτον Κύρῳ, οἱ δὲ σπασάμενον
him (lying) on-Cyrus, — but (others say, that) having-drawn

τὸν ἀκινάκην, ἐπισφάξασθαι ἑαυτὸν· γὰρ
— (his) scimitar, he-killed himself; for

εἶχε χρυσοῦν· δὲ καὶ ἐφόρει στρεπτὸν, καὶ
he-had (a) golden-one; and also he-wore (a) chain, and

ψέλλια, καὶ τἄλλα, ὅσπερ οἱ ἄριστοι
bracelets, and (such) other (ornaments), as the most-distinguished

Περσῶν· γὰρ ἐτετίμητο
¹of (the) ²Persians (are accustomed to wear); for he-had-been-honoured

ὑπὸ Κύρου τε δι' εὔνοιαν καὶ
by Cyrus not-only for (his) good-will-and-affection, but-also (for his)

πιστότητα.
very-great-fidelity.

## CHAPTER IX.

Οὕτως οὖν μὲν ἐτελευτησε Κῦρος, ἀνὴρ ὢν
Thus now indeed died Cyrus, (a) man being

τε τῶν Περσῶν γενομένων μετὰ Κῦρον·
not-only ¹of (all) ²the Persians existing since Cyrus

τὸν ἀρχαῖον, βασιλικώτατος, καὶ ἀξιώτατος
the elder, princely, but-also the-most-worthy

ἄρχειν, ὡς ὁμολογεῖται παρὰ πάντων τῶν
to-reign, as is-agreed-to by all — | (those

δοκούντων γενέσθαι ἐν πείρᾳ Κύρου.
appearing to-have-been in (the) experience of-Cyrus [those intimately acquainted with Cyrus]. For indeed

Γὰρ μὲν πρῶτον, ὢν ἔτι
first, being yet (a)

παῖς, ὅτε ἐπαιδεύετο καὶ σὺν τῷ ἀδελφῷ
boy, when he-was-educated both with — (his) brother

καὶ σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις παισί, ἐνομίζετο κράτιστος
and with the other boys, he-was-thought (to be) the-best

πάντων πάντα. Γὰρ πάντες οἱ παῖδες
of-all in-all-things. For all the sons

Περσῶν τῶν ἀρίστων παιδεύονται ἐπὶ ταῖς
of-Persians — eminent-in-rank, are-educated | at the

θύραις βασιλέως· ἔνθα τις ἄν
gates ²of (the) ³king; [in the royal palace]; there one may

καταμάθοι μὲν πολλὴν σωφροσύ-
learn indeed much (of the) wisdom-of-temperance-and-

νην, δ' ἔστι οὔτ' ἀκοῦσαι οὔτ' ἰδεῖν
modesty, but it-is (possible) neither to-hear nor to-see

οὐδὲν αἰσχρόν. Δ' οἱ παῖδες καὶ θεῶνται τοὺς
any-thing base. But the boys both see — (those)

τιμωμένους ὑπὸ βασιλέως καὶ ἀκούουσι,
honoured by (the) king and hear (thereof),

καὶ ἄλλους ἀτιμαζομένους· ὥστε εὐθὺς
and (in like manner of) others being-disgraced; so-that straightway

ὄντες παῖδες μανθάνουσι τε ἄρχειν καὶ
being (yet) boys they-learn not-only to-govern but-also

ἄρχεσθαι. Ἔνθα Κῦρος μὲν ἐδόκει πρῶτον
to-be-governed. There Cyrus indeed seemed first (of all)

εἶναι αἰδημονέστατος τῶν ἡλικιωτῶν, τε
to-be the-most-modest — (of his) equals-in-age, (and) not-only

πείθεσθαι τοῖς πρεσβυτέροις καὶ μᾶλλον
to-obey the elders but-also much-more (readily than)

τῶν ὑποδεεστέρον ἑαυτοῦ· δ' ἔπειτα
— (those) more-inferior (to) him (in rank); and next-then

φιλιππότατος, καὶ χρῆσθαι τοῖς
he-was-most-fond-of-horses, and (was able) to-use (or manage) the

ἵπποις ἄριστα. Δ' ἔκρινον αὐτὸν
horses (in the) best (manner). And they-discerned him

εἶναι καὶ φιλομαθέστατον καὶ μελετηρότα-
to-be also the-most-desirous-in-learning, and most-diligent and-indefa

τον τῶν ἔργων εἰς τὸν πόλεμον,
tigable (in) the operations for — war, [in warlike exercises],

τε τοξικῆς καὶ ἀκοντίσεως. Ἐπεὶ
not-only (those) of-archery but-also (those) of-throwing-the-dart. When

δὲ ἔπρεπε τῇ ἡλικίᾳ, ἦν καὶ φιλοθηρότατος,
indeed it-became — (his) age, he-was both most-fond-of-hunting,

καὶ μέντοι φιλοκινδυνότατος πρὸς
and even most-fond-of-danger-and-adventure (in encounters) against

τὰ θηρία. Καὶ ποτὲ οὐκ ἔτρεσεν ἄρκτου
— wild-beasts And once he-did not fear (a) she-bear

ἐπιφερομένην, ἀλλὰ συμπεσὼν
(when) attacking (him), | but falling-together [but in the at-

κατεσπάσθη ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου,
tack and conflict] he-was-dragged from — (his) horse,

καὶ μὲν ἔπαθε τὰ καὶ, τὰς
[and indeed he-suffered the [he received some wounds] and, the

ὠτειλὰς ὧν εἶχε φανερὰς, δὲ τέλος
scars of-which he-had visible (on his body), but at-last

κατέκανε, καὶ μέντοι ἐποίησε τὸν πρῶτοι
he-killed (the bear), and indeed he-made the (person) first

βοηθήσαντα μακαριστὸν πολλοῖς.
coming-to-assist (him) to-be-considered-very-happy by-many.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ κατεπέμφθη ὑπὸ τοῦ πατρὸς
When indeed he-was-sent-down by — (his) father (as

σατράπης Λυδίας τε καὶ τῆς μεγάλης Φρυγίας
satrap of-Lydia and also of-the Great Phrygia

καὶ Καππαδοκίας, δὲ καὶ ἀπεδείχθη στρατηγὸς
and Cappadocia, and likewise appointed commander

πάντων, οἷς καθήκει ἀθροίζεσθαι εἰς πεδίον
of-all, to-whom it-appertains to-be-assembled in (the) plain

Καστωλοῦ, πρῶτων μὲν ἐπέδειξεν αὑτὸν ὅτι
of-Castolus, first indeed he-showed himself | that

ποιοῖτο περὶ πλείστου,
he-made (it) for himself very-much, [that he held it of the great-

εἴ σπείσαιτο τῳ καὶ
est importance to himself], if he-made-a-treaty — (with any one), and

εἴ σύνθοιτο τῳ καὶ εἴ τῳ
if he-made-an-agreement — (with any one), and if — (to any one)

ὑπόσχοιτό τι ψεύδεσθαι μηδὲν. Καὶ γαρ
he-promised any-thing, to-deceive (in) nothing. And —

οὖν μὲν αἱ πόλεις ἐπιτρεπόμεναι αὐτῷ ἐπίστευον
therefore indeed the cities entrusting-themselves to-him, confided

δ' οἱ ἄνδρες ἐπίστευον·
(in him) as-also (in like manner did private) — men confide

καὶ εἴ τις ἐγένετο πολέμιος, Κύροι
(in him); and if any-one became hostile, Cyrus

σπεισαμένου ἐπίστευε ἂν
having-made-a-treaty (with him) he-was-confident (that) ⁴he would (have to)

παθεῖν μηδὲν παρὰ τὰς σπονδάς. Τοιγαροῦν ἐπεὶ
suffer nothing contrary to-the treaty. Therefore when

³ἐπολέμησε Τισσαφέρνει, πᾶσαι αἱ πόλεις
he-waged-(war (against) Tissaphernes, all the towns

ἑκοῦσαι εἵλοντο Κῦρον ἀντὶ Τισσαφέρνους πλὴν
voluntarily chose Cyrus before Tissaphernes except (the)

Μιλησίων· δὲ οὗτοι ἐφοβοῦντο αὐτόν ὅτι οὐκ
Milesians, but they feared him, because he-⁴did not

ἤθελε προέσθαι τοὺς φεύγοντας. Γὰρ
⁴wish to-abandon | — (those) fleeing [the exiles] For

καὶ ἐπεδείκνυντο ἔργῳ, καὶ ἔλεγεν, ὅτι
⁴he also ⁴showed ⁴by (his) ⁴deeds, and said, that

ἂν οὐ ποτε προοῖτο ἐπεὶ ἅπαξ ἐγένετο
⁴he would not ever ³desert (them), when once he-became (a)

φίλος αὐτοῖς, οὐδ' εἰ μὲν γένοιντο ἔτι μείους
friend to-them, nor if indeed they-should-become yet less

δὲ πράξειαν ἔτι κάκιον.
(in number), and should-suffer (a) yet worse (condition than they

Καὶ εἴ τίς ποιήσειεν αὐτόν τι ἀγαθὸν
were in). And if any-one should-do him any-thing good

ἢ κακόν, ἦν δὲ φανερὸς πειρώμενος
or bad, it-was indeed evident (that he was) striving

νικᾶν· καὶ δὲ τινες ἐξέφερον
to-conquer (in these respects); and also some used-to-mention (a)

εὐχὴν αὐτοῦ, ὡς εὔχοιτο ζῆν τοσοῦτον χρόνον,
wish of-him, that he-desired to-live so-long (a) time,

ἔστε ἀλεξόμενος, νικῴη καὶ τοὺς
until ⁴he, requiting (them), ⁴might-excel both — (those)

ποιοῦντας εὖ καὶ τοὺς κακῶς.
acting well and — (those acting) ill (to him)

Καὶ γὰρ οὖν δὴ πλεῖστοι ἐπεθύμησαν
And — therefore truly the-most (of men) desired

προέσθαι αὐτῷ ἑνί ἀνδρί γε τῶν ἐφ' ἡμῶν
to-commit to-him (the) one (only) man at-least — in our (time)

καὶ χρήματα καὶ πόλεις καὶ τὰ σώματα
— (their) property, — (their) towns, | and the bodies

ἑαυτῶν.
of-them [and their persons].

Οὐ μὲν δὴ ἄν τις εἴποι οὐδὲ τοῦτ', ὡς εἶα τοὺς
Nor indeed — can any-one say — this, that he-let the

κακούργους καὶ ἀδίκους καταγελᾶν, ἀλλ'
evildoers and unjust deride (his authority), but

ἀφειδέστατα πάντων εἰτιμωρεῖτο. Δ'
most-unsparingly of-all (men) he-punished (transgressors). | And

ἦν πολλάκις ἰδεῖν, παρὰ
it-was often to-see, [and there were often to be seen], | on

τὰς στειβομένας ὁδούς, ἀνθρώπους
the trodden roads [on the frequented roads] men

στερομένους καὶ ποδῶν, καὶ χειρῶν καὶ
deprived — of-feet, — (or) of-hands, — (or)

ὀφθαλμῶν· ὥστε ἐν τῇ ἀρχῇ Κύρου ἐγένετο
of-eyes, so-that in the dominion of-Cyrus it-was

καὶ Ἕλλησι καὶ βαρβάρῳ, μηδὲν
(possible) for both Greek and barbarian, doing nothing

ἀδικοῦντι, πορεύεσθαι ἀδεῶς, ὅποι τις ἤθελεν,
wrong, to-travel fearlessly, withersoever one wished,

ἔχοντι ὅ τι προχωροίη.
(and) having (with him) whatever he-might-proceed-with (that suited

Ὡμολόγητο γε μέντοι
his convenience). It-has-been-acknowledged — indeed (that)

τιμᾶν διαφερόντως τούς ἀγαθοὺς εἰς πόλεμον.
he-honoured very-much | — (those) good for war

Καὶ
[those having a disposition for, and skilled in, military affairs]. And

μὲν πόλεμος ἦν αὐτῷ πρῶτον
indeed | (a) war was to-him first [his first war was]

πρὸς Πισίδας καὶ Μυσούς· καὶ οὖν αὐτὸς
against (the) Pisidians and Mysians; and therefore himself

στρατευόμενος εἰς ταύτας τὰς χώρας, οὓς
leading-an-army into these — places, (those) whom

ἑώρα ἐθελοντας κινδυμεύειν τούτους
he-saw willing to-encounter-danger (in his service) the-same

καὶ ἐποίει ἄρχοντας χώρας ἧς κατεστρέφετο,
(also) he-made rulers (of the) places which he-subjugated,

δε ἔπειτα καὶ ἐτίμα δώροις ἄλλῃ.
and moreover he also honoured (them) with-rewards in-another (manner).

Ὥστε μὲν τοὺς ἀγαθοὺς φαίνεσθαι
So (that) indeed the good [brave men] appear

εὐδαιμονεστάτους, δὲ τοὺς κακοὺς
(to be) the-most-fortunate, but (that) the bad [cowards]

ἀξιοῦσθαι εἶναι δούλους τούτων.
were-considered-worthy (only) to-be (the) slaves of-these (brave men).

Τοιγαροῦν ἦν πολλὴ ἀφθονία αὐτῷ
Therefore there-was (a) great abundance to-him

τῶν θελόντων κινδυνεύειν, ὅπου τις
[Cyrus] of-those willing to-encounter-danger, when any-one

οἴοιτο Κῦρον αἰσθήσεσθαι.
might-think (that) Cyrus would-perceive (him).

Μὲν γε εἰς δικαιοσύνην, εἴ τις γένοιτο
In-truth — as-regards justice, if any-one might-become

φανερὸς αὐτῷ βουλόμενος ἐπιδείκνυσθαι,
apparent to-him (as) desiring to-show (this virtue in himself),

περὶ παντὸς ἐποιεῖτο ποιεῖν τούτους
above all, he-caused to-make such

πλουσιωτέρους τῶν φιλοκερδούντων
(persons) richer (than) — (those) seeking-gain

ἐκ τοῦ ἀδίκου. Καὶ γὰρ οὖν τε πολλὰ ἄλλα
by — injustice. And therefore — not-only many other

διεχειρίζετό δικαίως αὐτῷ, καὶ ἐχρήσατο
(things) were-administered justly for-him, but-also he-had-the-use-of

ἀληθινῷ στρατεύματι. Γὰρ
(a) real army, (and one worthy of the name). For

καὶ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἔπλευσαν πρὸς ἐκεῖνον
also generals and captains [came to him from other countries] sailed to him

οὐ ἕνεκα χρημάτων,
not on-account of-money,

ἀλλ' ἐπει ἔγνωσαν εἶναι κερδαλεώτερον πειθαρχεῖν
but after they-knew (it) to-be more-profitable to-obey

Κύρῳ καλῶς, ἢ τὸ κέρδος κατὰ μῆνα.
(and serve) Cyrus well, | than the gain for (a) month

[than their monthly wages]. Ἀλλὰ μὲν εἴ τίς γέ, αὐτῷ
But indeed if any-one at-least, he

προστάξαντι τι, ὑπηρετήσειεν καλῶς
having-commanded any-thing, should-have-assisted-to-do (it) well

οὐδενὶ πώποτε εἴασε τὴν προθυμίαν
to-no-one (acting thus) did-he ever permit — (his) alacrity

ἀχάριστον. Τοιγαροῦν δὴ κράτιστοι ὑπηρέ-
(to go) unrewarded. Therefore truly | the-best servants-and-

ται παντὸς ἔργου ἐλέχθησαν γενέσθαι
officers of-every work (or undertaking) were-said to-be

Κύρῳ.
to-Cyrus [the best talents for all affairs were at the command of Cyrus].

Εἰ δὲ ὁρῴη τινα ὄντα δεινὸν οἰκονόμον ἐκ τοῦ
If also he-saw any-one (*being*) (a) skilful manager | from —

δικαίου, καὶ κατασκευάζοντά, τε
justice, [consistent with justice], and improving-the-land, not-only

χώρας, ἧς ἄρχοι, καὶ ποιούντα προσ-
of (the) country, which he-governed, but-also making (an) increased-

όδους ἂν πώποτε ἀφείλετο οὐδένα
produce (therefrom) he would never take-away any-thing (from

ἀλλ' ἀεὶ προσεδίδου πλείω· ὥστε
such a person), but always (rather) he-added more; so-that

καὶ ἐπόνουν ἡδέως, καὶ ἐκτῶντο θαῤῥαλέως,
— (men) laboured cheerfully, and acquired (property) confidently,

καὶ αὖ ὅ τις ἐπέπατο ἥκιστα ἔκρυπτε
and moreover what any-one had-acquired the-least did-he-conceal (it)

Κῦρον· γὰρ ἐφαίνετο οὐ φθονῶν
from-Cyrus; | for he-was-manifestly not envying [for he manifestly

τοῖς φανερῶς πλουτοῦσιν, ἀλλὰ
did not envy] — (those who) openly acquire-riches, but

πειρώμενος χρῆσθαι τοῖς χρήμασι
was-endeavouring to-use (or put into circulation) the wealth

τῶν ἀποκρυπτομένων. Ὅσους φίλους γε μὴν
of-those concealing (it). As-many friends as — indeed

ποιήσαιτο, καὶ γνοίη ὄντας εὐνους,
he-might-make, and knew (them as) being well-disposed (to him-

καὶ κρίνειε εἶναι ἱκανοὺς συνεργούς,
self), and might-judge (them) to-be fit co-operators,

ὅ τι βουλόμενος τυγχάνοι κατεργάζεσθαι,
in-whatever wishing he-might-happen to-accomplish, [in

ὁμολογεῖται
whatever he might happen to wish to accomplish], he-is-acknowledged

πρὸς πάντων γενέσθαι δὴ κράτιστος
by all to-have-been certainly the-best (and most skilful)

θεραπεύειν. Γὰρ
to-cherish such friends, and attach them to himself). For

καὶ αὐτὸ τοῦτο ἕνεκα οὗπερ αὐτὸς
also (for) this same (reason) on-account of-which he-himself

ᾤετο δεῖσθαι φίλων ὡς ἔχοι συνερ-
thought (that) he-needed friends (namely) that he-might-have co-ope-

γούς, καὶ αὐτὸς ἐπειρᾶτο εἶναι κράτιστος συνεργός
rators, and he-himself endeavoured to-be the-best assistant

τοῖς φίλοις ὅτου τούτου αἰσθάνοιτο
to — (his) friends (in) whatever that he-might-perceive

ἕκαστον ἐπιθυμοῦντα.
each-one (was) desiring (to effect).

Δὲ μὲν οἶμαι γε ὢν εἷς ἀνὴρ
And indeed I-think | (that) he at-least being one man [that he

ἐλάμβανε πλεῖστα δῶρα
of any one man at least] received the-most presents, (and this)

διὰ πολλά· δὲ ταῦτα διεδίδου τοῖς
for many (reasons); but these (presents) he-distributed to —

φίλοις μάλιστα δὴ
(his) friends very-much (excelling) certainly (in this respect)

πάντων, σκοπῶν πρὸς τοὺς τρόπους ἑκάστου,
all (men), looking to the manners of-each,

καὶ ὅτου ὁρῴη ἕκαστον μάλιστα δεόμενον
and (to that) of which he-saw each-one the-most needed

Καὶ ὅσα τις πέμποι κόσμον
And whatever (present) any-one might-send (him as a.) ornament

τῷ τώματι αὐτοῦ, ἢ ὡς εἰς
| for the body of-him, [for his person], either as-if for (use in

πόλεμον, ἢ ὡς εἰς καλλωπισμόν, καὶ
war, or as-if for (use in personal) ornament, and

περὶ τούτων ἔφασαν λέγειν, ὅτι μεν
about these (presents) they-affirmed (that) he-said, | that indeed

τὸ σῶμα ἑαυτοῦ ἂν οὐ δύναιτο κοσμηθῆναι
the body of-himself could not be-able to-have-been-adorned

πᾶσι τούτοις,
[that his own person could not be adorned] with-all these (presents),

δε νομίζοι φίλους καλῶς κεκοσμημένους
but he-might-think (that) friends (*having-been*) handsomely adorned

μέγιστον κόσμον ἀνδρὶ. Καὶ μὲν τὸ
(to be) the-greatest ornament to (a) man. | And indeed the

νικᾶν τὰ μεγάλα
to-surpass [the surpassing] the great [greatly] [and indeed that

τοὺς φίλους ποιοῦντα εὖ
he should greatly surpass] — (his) friends (in) doing good (is)

οὐδὲν θαυμαστόν, ἐπειδή γε ἦν καὶ δυνατώτερος·
nothing wonderful, since at-least he-was also the-most-able;

δὲ τὸ περιεῖναι τῶν φίλων
| but the to-be-superior [but that he should excel] — (his) friends

τῇ ἐπιμελείᾳ, καὶ τῷ προθυμεῖσθαι
— in-kind-attention, and | the to-be-eager [his eagerness]

χαρίζεσθαι, ταῦτα ἔμοιγε δοκεῖ εἶναι
to-gratify (and oblige), these, to-me-at-least, seem to-be

μᾶλλον ἀγαστά. Γὰρ Κῦρος πολλάκις ἔπεμπε
more admirable. For Cyrus often sent

ἡμιδεεῖς βίκους οἴνου, ὁπότε λάβοι πάνυ
half-empty jars of-wine, whenever he-might-receive (any) very

ἡδὺν, λέγων, ὅτι οὔπω δή πολλοῦ
sweet (and fine-flavoured), saying, that never-yet truly for (a) long

χρόνου ἐπιτύχοι ἡδίονι οἴνῳ τούτου·
time did-he meet with-finer-flavoured wine (than) this

οὖν ἔπεμψε τοῦτον σοί, καὶ δεῖταί σου ἐκπιεῖν
therefore he-sent this to-you, and he-requests of-you to-drink

τοῦτον τήμερον σὺν οἷς φιλεῖς μάλιστα.
this to-day with those-whom you-love most.

Πολλάκις δὲ ἤπεμπε ἡμιβρώτους χῆνας,
Often indeed he-sent | half-eaten geese [parts of geese],

καὶ ἡμίσεα ἄρτων, καὶ ἄλλα τοιαῦτα, κελεύων
and halves of-loaves, and other such (things), ordering

τὸν φέροντα ἐπιλέγειν· Κῦρος
the bearer to-say (when he presented them); Cyrus

ἥσθη τούτοις. οὖν βούλεται καὶ σὲ γεύσασθαι
was-delighted with-these; therefore he-wishes also you to-taste

τούτων. Ὅπου δὲ χιλὸς εἴη πάνυ σπάνιος,
of-these (same). Whenever indeed fodder was very scarce,

δ' αὐτὸς ἐδύνατο παρασκευάσασθαι διὰ τὸ ἔχειν
and he was-able to-procure-it | through the to-have

πολλοὺς ὑπηρέτας καὶ διὰ τὴν ἐτιμέλειαν,
[by having] many servants and through — (his) care,

διαπέμπων τοὺς φίλοις ἐκέλευε
sending-it-about (among) — (his) friends he-ordered (them)

ἐμβάλλειν τοῦτον τὸν χιλὸν τοῖς ἵπποις ἄγουσ
to-throw this — fodder to-the horses | carrying

τὰ σώματα ἑαυτῶν ὡς
the bodies of-them [carrying their persons], so-that (the horses)

μὴ ἄγωσι τοὺς φίλους ἑαυτοῦ πεινῶντες. Εἰ
'may not 'carry the friends of-himself hungering. If

δὲ δή ποτε πορεύοιτο, καὶ πλεῖστοι
— indeed at-any-time he-might-proceed (anywhere), and many

μέλλοιεν ὄψεσθαι, προσκαλῶν τοὺς φίλους
might-be-about to-see (him), calling-to — (his) friends

ἐσπουδαιολογεῖτο, ὡς δηλοίη οἷς
he-held-earnest-conversation-with-them, that he-might-show (those) whom

τιμᾷ. Ὥστε ἔγωγε ἐξ ὧν ἀκούω κρίνω
he-honoured. So-that I-at-least from (that) which I-hear judge

οὐδένα οὔτε Ἑλλήνων οὔτε βαρβάρων
(that) no-one either 'of (the) 'Greeks or 'of (the) 'barbarians

πεφιλῆσθαι ὑπὸ πλειόνων. Δὲ καὶ τόδε
to-have-been-loved by more (persons). And also this

τεκμήριον τούτου, οὐδεὶς μὲν ἀπῆει
(is a) proof of-this-same (thing), no-one indeed deserted

πρὸς βασιλέα παρὰ Κύρου, ὄντος
to (the) king from Cyrus, he-being (as a subject no

δούλου· πλὴν Ὁρόντας
better than a) slave (of the king); except Orontes (who)

ἐπεχείρησε· καὶ δὴ οὗτος ταχὺ εὗρε αὐτὸν
attempted (it); and truly this (Orontes) speedily found him,

ὃν ᾤετο εἶναι πιστόν οἱ φιλαίτερον Κύρῳ
whom he-thought to-be faithful to-himself, more-friendly to-Cyrus

ἢ ἑαυτῷ· δὲ πολλοὶ ἀπῆλθον παρὰ βασιλέως
than to-himself; but many deserted from (the) king

πρὸς Κῦρον, ἐπειδὴ ἐγένοντο πολέμιοι ἀλλήλοις,
to Cyrus, after they-became hostile to-one-another,

καὶ οὗτοι μέντοι οἱ μάλιστα ἀγαπώμενοι
and these indeed — (persons) the-most beloved

ὑπ' αὐτοῦ, νομίζοντες ὄντες ἀγαθοὶ
by him (the king), thinking (that) being brave (men)

παρὰ Κύρῳ, ἂν τυγχάνειν ἀξιωτέρας τιμῆς
under Cyrus, — to-obtain more-worthy honour (and reward)

ἢ παρὰ βασιλεῖ. Δὲ καὶ τὸ γενόμενον
than from (the) king. And also — (that) happening

αὐτῷ ἐν τῇ τελευτῇ τοῦ βίου μέγα
to-him at the end — of (his) life (is a) great

τεκμήριον, ὅτι καὶ αὐτὸς ἦν ἀγαθός, καὶ ἐδύνατο
proof, that — he was brave, and could

ὀρθῶς κρίνειν τοὺς πιστοὺς καὶ εὖνους
rightly judge — (those) faithful (to him), and well-disposed,

καὶ βεβαίους. Γὰρ αὐτοῦ ἀποθνήσκοντος, πάντες
and steadfast. For he dying, all

οἱ φίλοι καὶ συντράπεζοι παρ' αὐτὸν ἀπέθανον
— (his) friends and table-companions with him died

μαχόμενοι ὑπὲρ Κύρου, πλὴν Ἀριαίου· οὗτος
fighting over Cyrus, except Ariæus; this (person

δὲ τεταγμένος ἐτύγχανεν ἐπὶ
indeed | stationed happened [happened to be stationed] on
τῷ εὐωνύμῳ, ἄρχων τοῦ ἱππικοῦ· δ' ὡς ἤσθετο
the left, commanding the cavalry; but when he-learned
Κῦρον πεπτωκότα ἔφυγεν ἔχων καὶ
(of) Cyrus having-fallen he-fled having also (with him)
τὸ πᾶν στράτευμα οὗ ἡγεῖτο.
the entire army which he-commanded.

## CHAPTER X.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἡ κεφαλὴ Κύρου ἀποτέμνεται
There indeed the head of-Cyrus is-cut-off,
καὶ ἡ δεξιὰ χεὶρ. Δὲ βασιλεὺς, καὶ οἱ
and-also the right hand. But (the) king, and — (those)
σὺν αὐτῷ, διώκων εἰςπίπτει εἰς τὸ Κυρεῖον
with him, pursuing falls | on the Cyrean
στρατόπεδον· καὶ μὲν οἱ
camp, [on the camp of Cyrus]; and indeed — (those soldiers)
μετὰ Ἀριαίου οὐκέτι ἵστανται ἀλλὰ φεύγουσι
with Ariæus no-longer stand but flee
διὰ τοῦ στρατοπέδου αὐτῶν εἰς τὸν
through | the camp of-them [their camp] to the
σταθμὸν. ἔνθεν ὥρμηντο· δ' ἐλεγοντο εἶναι
station, whence they-had-started (last); | and there-were-said to-be
τέτταρες παρασάγγαι τῆς ὁδοῦ.
four parasangs of-the road [and which was said to be
four parasangs distant]. Δὲ βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ σὺν
But (the) king and — (those) with
αὐτῷ τε διαρπάζουσι τὰ ἄλλα
him not-only plunder — other (things, which were)
πολλὰ, καὶ λαμβάνει τὴν Φωκαΐδα τὴν
many, but-also he-takes the Phocæan (woman), the
παλλακίδα Κύρου καὶ λεγομένην εἶναι, τὴν
concubine of-Cyrus, and (who) was-said to-be, —

σοφὴν καὶ καλήν. Δὲ ἡ νεωτέρα ἡ Μιλησία,
wise and beautiful. But the younger (concubine) the Milesian

ληφθεῖσα ὑπὸ τῶν ἀμφὶ βασιλέα
(woman), having-been-taken by — (those) about (the) king

ἐκφεύγει γυμνὴ πρὸς τῶν
escapes | naked [in her under garments] to (those of) the

Ἑλλήνων, οἳ ἔχοντες ὅπλα ἔτυχον ἐν
Greeks, who having arms happened (to be stationed) among

τοῖς σκευοφόροις· καὶ ἀντιταχθέντες
the baggage-train, and having-been-drawn-up-against (the Persians)

ἀπέκτειναν πολλοὺς μὲν τῶν ἁρπαζόντων, δὲ
they-killed many indeed of — (those) plundering, but

οἱ καὶ αὐτῶν ἀπέθανον· γε μὴν
— (some) also of-themselves died; at-least indeed they-did

οὐκ ἔφυγον, ἀλλὰ καὶ ἔσωσαν ταύτην, καὶ
not flee, but also saved this (woman), and

ἄλλα, ὁπόσα ἐγένοντο ἐντὸς αὐτῶν
other (things), whatever were within (the lines) of-them,

καὶ χρήματα καὶ ἄνθρωποι, πάντα ἔσωσαν.
both property and men, all were-saved.

Ἐνταῦθα τε βασιλεὺς καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες
There not-only (the) king, but-also the Greeks

διέσχον ἀλλήλων ὡς τριάκοντα στάδια, οἱ
were-distant from-one-another about thirty stadia, the

μὲν διώκοντες τοὺς καθ' αὑτούς,
(Greeks) indeed pursuing — (those opposed) against themselves,

ὡς νικῶντες πάντας, δ' οἱ ἁρπάζοντες, ὡς
as conquering all, but the (Persians) plundering, as

ἤδη νικῶντες πάντες. Δ' ἐπεὶ μέν οἱ Ἕλληνες
now conquering all. But when indeed the Greeks

ᾔσθοντο, ὅτι βασιλεὺς σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι
perceived, that (the) king with — (his) army

εἴη ἐν τοῖς σκευοφόροις, δὲ βασιλεὺς
might-be among — (their) baggage-train, and (the) king

αὖ ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους, ὅτι οἱ Ἕλληνες
on-the-other-hand heard from-Tissaphernes, that the Greeks

νικῷεν τὰ καθ' αὑτοὺς, καὶ διώκοντες
might-be-conquering the (army) opposed to-them, and pursuing,

οἴχονται εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν, ἐνταῦθα δὴ
they-advance to — (a distance) forward, there truly (the

βασιλεὺς μὲν τε ἀθροίζει τοὺς ἑαυτοῦ,
the) king indeed not-only | collects — (those) of-himself,

καὶ συντάττεται· δὲ ὁ
[collects together his forces], but-also draws-them-up-in-line; but —

Κλέαρχος καλέσας Πρόξενον, γὰρ ἦν πλησιαίτατος,
Clearchus having-called Proxenus, for he-was the-nearest,

ἐβουλεύετο, εἰ πέμποιέν τινας, ἢ
consulted (with him), if they-should-send some (of the troops), or

πάντες ἴοιεν ἀρήξοντες ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.
all should-go | about-helping [to relieve] (*to*) the camp.

Ἐν τούτῳ καὶ βασιλεὺς ἦν πάλιν
During this (time) also (the) king was again

δῆλος προσιών, ὡς ἐδόκει ὄπισθεν. Καὶ μὲν οἱ
evidently approaching, as it-seemed from-behind. And indeed the

Ἕλληνες στραφέντες παρεσκευάζοντο ὡς
Greeks having-faced-about prepared-themselves, as-if (the king

προσιόντος καὶ δεξόμενοι ταύτῃ· δὲ ὁ
were-advancing and-also receiving (him) in-that (direction); but the

βασιλεὺς μὲν οὐκ ἦγε ταύτῃ,
king indeed did not lead (his troops) in-that (direction),

δὲ ᾗ παρῆλθεν ἔξω τοῦ εὐωνύμου
but (by the way) in-which he-had-passed beyond — (their) left

κέρατος, ταύτῃ καὶ ἀπήγαγεν, ἀναλαβὼν
wing, by-the-same (way) also he-led-back (his forces), taking-with

καὶ τοὺς ἐν τῇ μάχῃ αὐτομολήσαντας
(him) both — (those) in the battle, having-deserted

κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας, καὶ Τισσαφέρνην, καὶ τοὺς
to the Greeks, and Tissaphernes, and —

σὺν αὐτῷ. Γὰρ ὁ Τισσαφέρνης οὐκ
(those) with him. For — Tissaphernes did not

ἔφυγεν ἐν τῇ πρώτῃ συνόδῳ, ἀλλὰ διήλασε κατὰ
flee in the first encounter, but charged straight

τους Ἕλληνας πελταστάς παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν·
the Greek targeteers along the river·

δὲ διελαύνων μεν κατέκαυνε οὐδενα.
but charging-through (the ranks) ¹he indeed ¹killed no-one

δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες διαστάντες ἔπαιον
but the Greeks standing-apart (and making a passage) struck

καὶ ἠκόντιζον αὐτοὺς·
(them with their swords) and threw (their javelins) at-them;

Ἐπισθένης δὲ Ἀμφιπολίτης ἦρχε τῶν πελ-
Episthenes — (the) Amphipolite commanded the tar-

ταστῶν, καὶ ἐλέγετο γενέσθαι φρόνιμος.
geteers, and was-said to-be (a) prudent (and able com

Δ' ὁ Τισσαφέρνης οὖν, ὡς ἔχων μεῖον,
mander). But — Tissaphernes therefore, as having | less

ἀπηλλάγη, μὲν οὐκ ἀναστρέφει
[the worst], was-forced-to-depart, indeed he-¹does not ¹return

πάλιν, δὲ ἀφικόμενος εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον τὸ τῶι
again, but having-arrived at the camp — of-the

Ἑλλήνων, ἐκεῖ συντυγχάνει βασιλεῖ, καὶ δὴ
Greeks, there he-meets-with (the) king, and —

συνταξάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο ὁμοῦ πάλιν.
(then) having-drawn-up-their-forces they-marched together back (again

Δ' ἐπεὶ ἦσαν κατὰ τὸ εὐώνυμον κέρας τῶι
But when they-were opposite the left wing of-the

Ἑλλήνων, οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔδεισαν, μὴ προσάγοιεν
Greeks, the Greeks feared, | lest they-might-lead

πρὸς τὸ κέρας καὶ
against — (that) wing [lest they would attack that wing] and

περιπτύξαντες ἀμφοτέρωθεν κατακόψειαν
surrounding (them) on-both-sides they-might-¹cut

αὐτοὺς· καὶ ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς ἀναπτύσσειν τὸ
them ¹off; and it-seemed (best) to-them to-fold-back the

κέρας, καὶ ποιήσασθαι τὸν ποταμὸν ὄπισθεν.
wing and to-place the river in-the-rear.

Ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα ἐβουλεύοντο,
In (the time) in-which indeed (*that*) they-were-planning (this manœuvre)

καὶ δὴ βασιλεὺς παραμειψάμενος
and now-indeed (the) king having-changed (his line)

εἰς τὸ αὐτὸ σχῆμα κατέστησεν ἀντίαν τὴν
into the same form (that) he-placed (it) fronting the

φάλαγγα, ὥσπερ τὸ πρῶτον συνήει μαχού-
phalanx, | just-as — (at) first he-might-have-come fight-

μενος. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὡς οἱ
ing [just as he came at first to offer battle]. But as the

Ἕλληνες εἶδον ὄντας τε ἐγγύς καὶ παρα-
Greeks saw (them) being not-only near and-also drawn-

τεταγμένους, αὖθις παιανίσαντες ἐπήεσαν ἔτι
up-in-order-of-battle, again singing-the-pæan they-advanced yet

πολὺ προθυμότερον ἢ τὸ πρόσθεν. Δ'
much more-eagerly (and spirited) than — before. But

αὖ οἱ βάρβαροι οὐκ ἐδέχοντο, ἀλλ'
again the barbarians did not receive (their attack), but

ἔφευγον ἐκ πλέονος ἢ τὸ
they-fled from a-greater (distance from them) | than (they did) —

πρόσθεν· δ' οἱ ἐπεδίωκον μέχρι τινός
before; but — (the Greeks) pursued (them) to a-certain

κώμης· δ' ἐνταῦθα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔστησαν. Γὰρ
village, but there the Greeks halted. For

ἦν γήλοφος ὑπὲρ τῆς κώμης, ἐφ' οὗ οἱ
there-was (a) hill above the village, upon which — (those)

ἀμφὶ βασιλεά, ἀνεστράφησαν, μὲν
about (the) king, stood-faced-about, (there-were) indeed

οὐκέτι πεζοί, δὲ ὁ λόφος ἐνεπλήσθη
no-longer (any) foot-soldiers (there), but the hill was-filled

τῶν ἱππέων, ὥστε μὴ γιγνώσκειν τὸ
with-the cavalry, | so-that they-did not know the (thing

ποιούμενον.
that) was-doing [so that they knew not what the infantry might

be doing]. Καὶ ἔφασαν ὁρᾶν τὸ βασίλειον
And they-said (that) they-saw the reve

σημεῖον τινα χρυσοῦν ἀετόν ἀνατεταμένον ἐπὶ
standard a-certain golden eagle elevated on

πέλτης.
(a) shield.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐχώρουν ἐνταῦθ',
When indeed also the Greeks proceeded thither,

οἱ ἱππεῖς δὴ καὶ λείπουσι τὸν λόφον, οὐ μὴν ἔτι
the horsemen indeed also leave the hill, not however as

ἀθρόοι, ἀλλ' ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν,
collected-in-a-body, | but others in-other-direction, [but dispersed in

δ' ὁ λόφος ἐψιλοῦτο τῶν
different directions], and the hill [1]was (gradually) [1]thinned of-the

ἱππέων. δὲ τέλος καὶ πάντες ἀπεχώρησαν. Ὁ
horsemen; but at-last also all departed. —

Κλέαρχος οὖν οὐκ ἀνεβίβαζεν ἐπὶ τὸν
Clearchus therefore [1]did not [1]march on (to) the

λόφον, ἀλλ' στήσας ὑπὸ αὐτὸν πέμπει
hill, but having-halted | under [at the foot of] it he-sends

Λύκιον τὸν Συρακόσιον καὶ ἄλλον ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον,
Lycius the Syracusian and another on the hill,

καὶ κελεύει κατιδόντας τὰ ὑπὲρ τοῦ
and he-orders (them) having-viewed the (things) on the

λόφου ἀπαγγεῖλαι τί ἐστι. Καὶ ὁ Λύκιος
hill to-report what is (there). And — Lycius

ἤλασε τε καὶ ἰδὼν ἀπαγ-
rode-on — (to the hill) and seeing (the state of affairs) brings

γέλλει ὅτι φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος. Δὲ
word that they-flee to the-utmost-of-their-ability. And

σχεδὸν ὅτε ταῦτα ἦν ἥλιος καὶ
nearly when these (things) | were [happened] (the) sun also

ἐδύετο. Δ' ἐνταῦθα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔστησαν, καὶ
set. And there the Greeks halted, and

θεμενοι τὰ ὅπλα ἀνεπαύοντο· καὶ ἅμα
placing — (their) arms rested; and at-the-same-time

μὲν ἐθαύμαζον ὅτι Κῦρος οὐδαμοῦ φαίνοιτο
indeed they-were-surprised that Cyrus no-where appeared

οὐδ' ἄλλος οὐδεὶς παρείη αὐτοῦ. Γὰρ
nor 'did (any) other one 'come from-him. For

ᾔδεσαν οὐ αὐτὸν τεθνηκότα, ἀλλ' εἰκαζον
they-knew not (that) he was-dead, but they-supposed (him)

ἢ οἴχεσθαι διώκοντα ἢ προεληλακέναι
either to-go-away pursuing (the enemy) or to-have-pushed-on-before

καταληψόμενον τι. Καὶ αὐτοὶ ἐβουλεύοντο
about-to-seize some (post). And they deliberated

εἰ μείναντες αὐτοῦ ἄγοιντο ἐνταῦθα τὰ σκευο-
if remaining there they-should-bring thither the baggage

φόρα, ἢ ἀπίοιεν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον· ἔδοξεν
train, or return to the camp; it-seemed

αὐτοις οὖν ἀπιέναι· καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ
to-them therefore (best) to-return; and they-arrived at

τὰς σκηνάς ἀμφὶ δόρπηστον. Τοῦτο ἐγένετο τὸ
the tents about supper-time. Such was the

τέλος μὲν ταύτης τῆς ἡμέρας. Δὲ καταλαμβά-
end indeed of-this — day. But they

νουσι τε τὰ πλεῖστα τῶν ἄλλων χρημάτων
find not-only the most of — (their) other things

διηρπασμένα, καὶ τι σιτίον ἢ ποτὸν
plundered (or destroyed), but-also whatever food or drink

εἴ ἦν· καὶ τὰς ἁμάξας μεστὰς ἀλεύρων καὶ
there may-be; and the wagons full-of wheat-flour and

οἴνου, ἃς Κῦρος παρεσκευάσατο, ἵνα εἴ ποτε
wine, which Cyrus provided, that if ever

σφοδρὰ ἔνδεια λάβοι τὸ στράτευμα, διαδοίη
vehement want should-seize the camp, he-might-distribute

τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, αὗται ἅμαξαι δ' ἦσαν
(them) to-the Greeks, these wagons — were

τετρακόσιαι ὡς ἐλέγοντο, καὶ ταύτας τότε
four-hundred as they-said, and these then

οἱ σὺν Βασιλεῖ διήρπασαν. Ὥστε οἱ πλεῖστοι
— (those) with (the) king plundered. So-that the most

τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἦσαν ἄδειπνοι· δὲ καὶ ἦσαν
of-the Greeks were supperless; but also they-were

ἀνάριστοι· γαρ δὴ πρὶν τὸ στράτευμα
without-dinner; for indeed before the army

καταλῦσαι πρὸς ἄριστον βασιλεὺς ἐφάνη.
halted for dinner (the) king appeared.

Οὕτως οὖν μὲν διεγένοντο ταύτην τὴν
Thus therefore indeed did-they-pass that --

νύκτα.
night.

# BOOK II.

## CHAPTER I.

Ὡς μὲν οὖν τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ἠθροίσθη
How — therefore the Grecian (force) was-collected

Κύρῳ, ὅτε ἐστρατεύετο ἐπὶ τὸν ἀδελφὸν
for-Cyrus, when he-led-an-army against — (his) brother

Ἀρταξέρξην, καὶ ὅσα ἐπάχθη ἐν τῇ ἀνόδῳ,
Artaxerxes, and what was-done in the upward-march,

καὶ ὡς ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο, καὶ ὡς Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησε,
and how — (a) battle took-place, and how Cyrus died,

καὶ ὡς οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐλθόντες ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον
and how the Greeks having-come to the camp

ἐκοιμήθησαν, οἰόμενοι νικᾶν τὰ πάντα,
went-to-rest, | thinking to-conquer — all, [believing that

καὶ Κῦρον ζῆν,
they were completely victorious], and (that) Cyrus lived, (all this)

δεδήλωται ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ. Δὲ
has-been-indicated in the preceding discourse (or book) But

ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ οἱ στρατηγοὶ
| at-the-same-time with-the day [at dawn of day] the generals

συνελθόντες ἐθαύμαζον, ὅτι Κῦρος οὔτε πέμποι
having-come-together were-surprised, that Cyrus 'had neither 'sent

ἄλλον σημανοῦντα ὅ τι χρὴ ποιεῖν, οὔτε
any-one-else signifying what is-necessary to-do, nor

αὐτὸς φαίνοιτο. Ἔδοξεν οὖν αὐτοῖς
did-'he himself 'appear. It-seemed therefore (best) to-them

συσκευασαμένοις ἃ εἶχον, καὶ ἐξοπλισαμένοις,
having-packed-up what they-had, and having-armed-themselves,

προιέναι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν ἕως συμμίξειαν
to-march in the forward [to advance] until they-formed-a-junction

Κύρῳ. Δὲ ἤδη ὄντων ὁρμῇ, ἅμα ἀνίσ
with-Cyrus. But now being in-motion, at-the-same-time with-the-

χοντι ἡλίῳ ἦλθε Προκλῆς ὁ ἄρχων Τευθρανίας
rising sun, came Procles the governor-of Teuthrania

γεγονὼς ἀπὸ Δημαράτου τοῦ Λάκωνος, καὶ
having-descended from Damaratus the Lacedæmonian, and

Γλοῦς ὁ Ταμώ. Οὗτοι ἔλεγον ὅτι Κῦρος
Glus the (son of) Tamos. These informed (them) that Cyrus

μὲν τέθνηκε, δὲ Ἀριαῖος πεφευγὼς εἴη μετα
indeed was-dead, and (that) Ariæus having-fled was, with

τῶν ἄλλων βαρβάρων ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ ὅθεν
the other barbarians, at the station whence

ὡρμῶντο τῇ προτεραίᾳ, καὶ λέγοι, ὅτι ἂν μὲν
they-started on-the day-before, and he-said, that he might indeed

περιμείνειεν αὐτούς ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν, εἰ μέλ-
wait-for them that-same — day, if they-

λοιεν ἥκειν, δὲ φαίη ἀπιέναι τῇ
might-intend to-come, — (for) he-said (he was about) to-depart on the

ἄλλῃ ἐπὶ Ἰωνίας, ὅθενπερ ἦλθε.
next (day) for Ionia, whence he-had-come.

Οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα καὶ οἱ
The generals hearing these (things), and the

ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες πυνθανόμενοι
other Greeks hearing (them from the generals)

ἔφερον βαρέως. Δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπε τάδε· Ὤφελε
bore-it grievously. But Clearchus spoke thus: Would

ἀλλὰ μὲν Κῦρος ζῆν· δὲ ἐπεὶ τετελεύτηκεν,
then indeed (that) Cyrus lived; but since he-has-died,

ἀπαγγέλλετε Ἀριαίῳ, ὅτι ἡμεῖς νικῶμέν τε
announce to-Ariæus, that we are-victorious not-only (over

βασιλέα, καὶ ὡς ὁρᾶτε, οὐδεὶς ἔτι μάχεται
the) king, and as you-see, no-one any-longer offers

ἡμῖν, καὶ εἰ μὴ ἦλθετε ὑμεῖς, ἂν
us battle, but-also if you-had not come to-us, we would

ἐπορυόμεθα ἐπὶ βασιλέα. Ἐπαγγελλόμεθα δὲ
have-marched against (the) king. We-promise also

Ἀριαίῳ, ἐὰν ἔλθῃ ἐνθάδε, καθίσειν
Ariæus, if he-come here, (that we are ready) to-place

αὐτόν εἰς τὸν θρόνον τὸν βασίλειον. γὰρ
him on the throne, the royal (throne); for

τῶν νικώντων μάχῃ καὶ ἐστί τὸ ἄρχειν.
— (those) conquering in-battle also (to them) | is the to-rule

Εἰπὼν ταῦτ' ἀποστέλλει τοὺς
[it belongs to rule]. Saying these (things) he-sends-away the

ἀγγέλους, καὶ σὺν αὐτοῖς Χειρίσοφον τὸν Λάκονα
messengers, and with them Cheirisophus the Lacedæmonian

καὶ Μένωνα τὸν Θετταλόν· γὰρ καὶ Μένων
and Menon the Thessalian; for indeed Menon

αὐτὸς ἐβούλετο· γὰρ ἦν φίλος καὶ ξένος
himself desired (to go); for he-was (a) friend and guest

Ἀριαίου. Οἱ μὲν ᾤχοντο,
of-Ariæus (bound by the ties of hospitality). — (These) then departed,

δὲ Κλέαρχος περιέμενε. Δὲ τὸ στράτευμα
but Clearchus waited (for them). But the army

ἐπορίζετο σῖτον ὅπως ἐδύνατο ἐκ τῶν
supplied-itself with-food as-well-as they-were-able from — (their)

ὑποζυγίων, κόπτοντες τοὺς βοῦς καὶ ὄνους·
beasts-of-burden, slaughtering — (their) oxen and asses;

δὲ προϊόντες μικρὸν ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος, οὗ
and advancing (a) little from the army, (to) where

ἡ μάχη ἐγένετο ἐχρῶντο ξύλοις, τε τοῖς
the battle took-place they-got wood (for fuel), not-only from-the

οἰστοῖς, οὖσιν πολλοῖς, οὓς οἱ Ἕλληνες
arrows, being many (in number), which the Greeks,

ἠνάγκαζον τοὺς αὐτομολοῦντας παρὰ βασιλέως
compelled — (those) deserting from (the) king

ἐκβάλλειν, καὶ τοῖς γέρροις, καὶ ταῖς
to-throw-away, and the wicker-shields (of the Persians), and the

ἀσπίσι ταῖς ξυλίναις ταις Αἰγυπτίαις. Δὲ καὶ
shields the wooden-ones the Egyptian. And also

πολλαὶ πέλται καὶ ἅμαξαι ἔρημοι ἦσαν
many targets and wagons emptied (of their contents) were

φέρεσθαι. χρώμενοι πᾶσι οἷς, ἕψοντες κρέα
to-be-carried-off, using all which, (for) cooking meat

ἤσθιον ἐκείνην τὴν ἡμέραν.
they-eat (enough for) that — day.

Καὶ ἦν ἤδη τε περὶ πλήθουσαν ἀγοράν,
And it-was now not-only | about full market,

καὶ ἔρχονται παρὰ
[about the middle of the forenoon], but-also there-arrived from (the)

βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους κήρυκες, οἱ μὲν ἄλλοι
king and Tissaphernes heralds, | the — others

βάρβαροι δὲ ἦν εἷς αὐτῶν Ἕλλην
barbarian [being barbarian] but there-was one of-them (a) Greek

Φαλῖνος, ὃς ἐτύγχανε ὢν παρὰ
Phalinus, (by name), who | happened being [happened to be] with

Τισσαφέρνει, καὶ ἔχων ἐντίμως· [καὶ ἦν
Tissaphernes, | and (who) holding (him) honourably; [and was

καὶ γὰρ προσεποιεῖτο εἶναι
highly esteemed by him]; — for he-pretended to-be

ἐπιστήμων τῶν τε ἀμφὶ τάξεις καὶ
skilled (in) the (things) not-only relative-to tactics but-also

ὁπλομαχίαν. Δὲ οὗτοι
(in those relative to) fighting-with-heavy-arms. But these (heralds)

προσελθόντες, καὶ καλέσαντες τοὺς ἄρχοντας
approaching, and calling to the generals

τῶν Ἑλλήνων, λέγουσιν ὅτι βασιλεὺς κελεύει
of-the Greeks, said, that (the) king commanded

τοὺς Ἕλληνας, ἐπεὶ νικῶν τυγχάνει,
the Greeks, | since conquering he-happens, [since he had

καὶ ἀπέκτονε Κῦρον, παραδόντας
gained the victory], and had-slain Cyrus, (that) having-delivered-up

τὰ ὅπλα, ἰόντας ἐπὶ τὰς θύρας
— (their) arms, (and) going | to the gates (of the,

βασιλέως, εὑρίσκεσθαι ἄν
king, [to the palace of the king], to-obtain-for-themselves if

δύνωνται τι ἀγαθόν. Ταῦτα μὲν οἱ
they-can any-thing good (or favourable). Thus — did the

κήρυκες βασιλέως εἶπον· δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες μὲν
heralds ¹of (the, ¹king ¹speak; but the Greeks indeed

ἤκουσαν βαρέως, δὲ Κλέαρχος ὅμως
heard (them) heavily (with concern), but Clearchus only

εἶπε τοσοῦτον, ὅτι εἴη οὐ τῶν νικώντων
spoke so-much, that it-was not (the part) of — (those) conquering

παραδιδόναι τὰ ὅπλα· ἀλλ', μὲν ἔφη ὑμεις
to give-up — (their) arms; but, indeed said-he, ¹do you

ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί ἀποκρίνασθε τούτοις
O men generals ¹reply to-these (men)

τε ὅ τι ἔχετε κάλλιστον καὶ ἄριστον·
not only what you-hold (to be) most-proper but-also the-best;

δὲ ἐγὼ ἥξω αὐτίκα. Γὰρ τις τῶν ὑπηρετῶν
and I will-come directly. For some-one of-the attendants

ἐκάλεσε αὐτὸν, ὅπως ἴδοι τὰ ἱερα
called him, that he-might-see the (entrails of a) victim

ἐξηρημένα· γὰρ ἔτυχε θυόμενος.
(that just) had-been-taken-out; for he-happened (to be) sacrificing.

Ἔνθα δὴ Κλέανωρ μὲν ὁ Ἀρκὰς, ὢν πρεσβύτατος,
Then indeed Cleanor — the Arcadian, being the-oldest,

ἀπεκρίνατο ὅτι ἂν πρόσθεν ἀποθάνοιεν ἢ
answered that ¹they would sooner ¹die than (that)

παραδοίησαν τὰ ὅπλα· δὲ Πρόξενος ὁ Θηβαῖος
they-would-deliver-up — (their) arms; but Proxenus the Theban

ἔφη, Ἀλλ' ἐγώ ὦ Φαλῖνε θαυμάζω. πότερα
said, But I, O Phalinus, wonder, whether (the)

βασιλεὺς αἰτεῖ τὰ ὅπλα ὡς κρατῶν ἢ
king asks (for) — (our) arms as conquering or

ὡς δῶρα διὰ φιλίαν. Γὰρ εἰ μὲν ὡς κρατῶν,
as gifts through friendship. For if indeed as conquering,

τί δεῖ αὐτὸν αἰτεῖν καὶ οὐκ ἐλθόντα
why does-it-become him to-ask (for them) and not coming

λαβεῖν; δὲ εἰ πείσας βούλεται λαβεῖν,
take (them)? but if having-persuaded (us) he-desires to-take

λεγέτω, τί ἔσται τοῖς στρατιώταις,
them), let-him-say, what will-be (left) to-the soldiers

ἐὰν χαρίσωνται αὐτῷ ταῦτα. Πρὸς ταῦτα
if they-should-gratify him (in) this. To this

Φαλῖνος εἶπε, βασιλεὺς ἡγεῖται νι-
Phalinus said, (The) king considers (himself) to-be-the-con-

κᾶν, ἐπεὶ ἀπέκτονε Κῦρον· γὰρ τίς ἔστιν αὐτῷ,
queror, since he-has-slain Cyrus; for who is-there against-him,

ὅστις ἀντιποιεῖται τῆς ἀρχῆς; δὲ καὶ
who disputes the government (with him)? | and also

νομίζει ὑμᾶς εἶναι ἑαυτοῦ
considers you to-be to-himself [he moreover considers you as

ἔχων ἐν τῇ μήσῃ χώρᾳ
belonging to him as captives] | having (you) in the middle country

ἑαυτοῦ, καὶ ἐντὸς
of-himself, [having you in the interior of his kingdom], and within

ἀδιαβάτων ποταμῶν, καὶ δυνάμενος ἀγαγεῖν ἐφ'
impassable rivers, and being-able to-lead against

ὑμᾶς πλῆθος ἀνθρώπων ὅσον εἰ
you (such a) multitude of-men (and) so-great (that) if

παρέχοι ὑμῖν οὐδὲ ἂν δύναισθε ἀποκτεῖναι
he-should-allow-it to-you neither would you-be-able to-kill (them).

Μετὰ τοῦτον Θεόπομπος Ἀθηναῖος εἶπεν
After this-one Theopompus (the) Athenian spoke,

Ω Φαλῖνε, νῦν, ὡς σὺ ὁρᾷς, ἔστιν οὐδὲν ἄλλο
O Phalinus, now, as you see, there-is nothing else

ἀγαθὸν ἡμῖν, εἰ μὴ ὅπλα
good (or of value) to-us, | if not [unless] (our) arms

καὶ ἀρετή. Οὖν μὲν ἔχοντες ὅπλα,
and courage. Therefore indeed having (our) arms,

οἰόμεθα ἂν καὶ χρῆσθαι τῇ
we-are-of-the-opinion (that) we could also make-use — (of our)

ἀρετῇ, δὲ παραδόντες ἂν ταῦτα, στερηθῆναι
courage, but giving-up — these, (would be) to-deprive

καὶ τῶν σωμάτων. Οὖν μὴ οἷον
(us) also — (of our) bodies. Therefore do not suppose

παραδώσειν ὑμῖν τὰ μόνα ἀγαθὰ
that) we will-give-up to-you the sole (advantageous) good

ὄντα ἡμῖν· ἀλλὰ σὺν τούτοις καὶ
existing for-us; but with these (in our hands) we also

μαχούμεθα περὶ τῶν ἀγαθῶν ὑμετέρων. Δὲ ὁ
may-fight for the good-things of-yourselves. But —

Φαλῖνος ἀκούσας ταῦτα ἐγέλασε, καὶ εἶπεν·
Phalinus hearing these (things) smiled, and said·

Ἀλλὰ μέν, ὦ νεανίσκε, ἔοικας φιλοσόφῳ,
But indeed, O young-man, you-seem (to be like to a) philosopher,

καὶ λέγεις οὐκ ἀχάριστα· ἴσθι μέντοι ὢν
and you-speak not without-grace; | know however (you) being

ἀνόητος, εἰ
out-of-your-senses, [be assured that you are out of your senses], if

οἴει τὴν ὑμετέραν ἀρετὴν ἂν περιγενέσθαι
you-suppose (that) — your valour — is-to-be-superior

τῆς δυνάμεως βασιλέως. Δὲ ἔφασαν
(to) the power (of) the king. But they-reported (that)

τινας ἄλλους ὑπομαλακιζο-
some others (of the generals) having-become-somewhat-timid-and-

μένους λέγειν, ὡς καὶ ἐγένοντο πιστοὶ Κύρῳ,
apprehensive said, as also they-had-been faithful to-Cyrus,

καὶ ἂν γένοιντο ἄξιοι πολοῦ βασιλεῖ
so they might become | worthy of-much to (the) king

εἰ βούλοιτο γενέσθαι
[of great service to the king] if he-desired to-become (their)

φίλους· καὶ εἴτε θέλοι χρῆσθαι τι
friend; and afterwards he-might-wish to-employ (them) for-any

ἄλλο, εἴτε στρατεύειν ἐπ᾽
other (purpose), (or if) afterwards (he were) to-march against

Αἴγυπτον, ἂν συγκατασκέψαιντο αὐτῷ. Ἐν
Egypt, they would assist-in-reducing-it for-him. During

τούτῳ Κλέαρχος ἧκε, καὶ ἠρώτησεν εἰ ἤδη
this (time) Clearchus came, and inquired if now

ἀποκεκριμένοι εἶεν. Δὲ Φαλῖνος ὑπολαβών
they-had-returned-an-answer. But Phalinus having-taken-up (the dis-

εἶπεν· Ὦ Κλέαρχε, οὗτοι λέγει ἄλλος
course) said O Clearchus, these say (one thing), others

ἄλλα· δὲ σὺ εἰπέ ἡμῖν, τί λέγεις.
(say) other (things); but ¹do you ¹tell us, what you-say.

Δ' ὁ εἶπεν· Ἐγώ, ὦ Φαλῖνε, ἄσμενος
But — ¹he [Clearchus] ¹said: I, O Phalinus, am-glad

ἑώρακα σε, δὲ καὶ οἶμαι πάντες οἱ ἄλλοι·
I-have-seen you, and also I-think all the others (are so);

γὰρ τε εἶ σύ Ἕλλην, καὶ ἡμεῖς,
for not-only are you (a) Greek, but-also we (ourselves are),

ὄντες τοσοῦτοι, ὅσους σὺ ὁρᾷς· ὄντες δὲ
being so-many (in number), as you see; being then

ἐν τοιούτοις πράγμασι, συμβουλευόμεθά σοι,
in such circumstances, ¹we (would) ¹consult with-you,

τί χρὴ ποιεῖν περὶ ὧν λέγεις.
(about) what it-is-proper to-do concerning (that) which you-announce

Οὖν, πρὸς θεῶν, σὺ συμβού-
(from the king). Therefore, by (the) gods, | ¹do you ¹con-

λευσον ἡμῖν ὅ τι δοκεῖ σοι εἶναι
sult with-us [give us your advice] what seems to-you to-be

κάλλιστον καὶ ἄριστον, καὶ ὅ σοι οἴσει
the-most-honourable and the-best, and which to-you will-bring

τιμὴν εἰς τὸν χρόνον ἔπειτα ἀναλεγόμενον
honour in the time to-come, (when) it-is-related,

ὅτι Φαλίνός ποτε πεμφθεὶς παρὰ βασιλέως,
that Phalinus when, having-been-sent from (the) king,

κελεύσων τοὺς Ἕλληνας παραδοῦναι τὰ ὅπλα,
commanding the Greeks to give-up — (their) arms,

ξυνεβούλευσεν αὐτοῖς ξυλβουλευομένοις τάδε
counselled them consulting (with him) so-and-so

Οἶσθα δὲ, ὅτι ἃ ἂν συμβουλεύσῃς
(For) you-know —, that what ¹you may ²have-advised (of a)

ἀνάγκη λέγεσθαι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι. Ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος
necessity is-to-be-reported in — Greece. — — Clearchus

ὑπήγετο ταῦτα, καὶ βουλόμενος αὐτόν,
craftily-urged these (things), also desiring (that) he

τὸν πρεσβεύοντα παρὰ βασιλέως, ξυμβουλεῦσαι
— coming-as-envoy from (the) king, should-counsel

μη παραδοῦναι τὰ ὅπλα, ὅπως οἱ Ἕλληνες
(them) not to-give-up — (their) arms, that the Greeks

εἶεν μᾶλλον εὐέλπιδες. Δὲ Φαλῖνος ὑποστρέψας
might-be more full-of-good-hopes. But Phalinus | having-turned

παρὰ τὴν δόξαν αὐτοῦ
[having evaded this appeal] contrary to-the opinion of-him [Clearchus]

εἶπεν· Ἐγώ, εἰ μὲν τῶν μυρίων ἐλπίδων ἐστί
said: I, if indeed of — ten-thousand hopes there-is

τις μία ὑμῖν σωθῆναι πολεμοῦντας
any one (remaining) to-you to-save (yourselves) fighting-against

βασιλεῖ, συμβουλεύω μὴ παραδιδόναι τὰ
(the) king, counsel (you) not to-give-up —

ὅπλα· εἰ δὲ τοι ἐστὶν μηδεμία ἐλπὶς
(your) arms: if indeed — there-is not-one hope (for you)

σωτηρίας ἄκοντος βασιλέως, συμβουλεύω ὑμῖν
of-safety opposing (the) king, I-advise you

σώζεσθαι ὅπῃ δυνατόν. Δὲ
to-save-yourselves | in-what-way possible [in the only way you can]. But

Κλέαρχος πρὸς ταῦτα εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ μὲν
Clearchus to these (things) said: But indeed

δὴ σὺ λέγεις ταῦτα· δὲ παρ' ἡμῶν
really 'do you 'say these (things); but for our (part)

ἀπάγγελλε τάδε, ὅτι ἡμεῖς οἰόμεθα, εἰ μὲν
announce this, that we think, if indeed

δέοι εἶναι φίλους βασιλεῖ ἄν
it-may-become (us) to-become friends 'to (the) king | (that) 'we would

ἄξιοι πλείονος εἶναι φίλοι,
'be-worthy of-more to-be friends, [that we would be more valuable

ἔχοντες τὰ ὅπλα, ἢ παραδόντες
friends), having — (our) arms, than 'giving (them) 'up

ἄλλῳ· δὲ εἰ δέοι πολεμεῖν, ἄν ἄμεινον
to-another; but if it-behoves (us) to-make-war, (it) would (be) better

πολεμεῖν ἔχοντες τὰ ὅπλα, ἢ παραδόντες
to-make-war having — (our) arms, than 'giving (them) 'up

ἄλλῳ. Δὲ ὁ Φαλῖνος εἶπε, Ταῦτα μὲν δὴ
to-another. But — Phalinus said. These (things) — certainly

ἀπαγγελοῦμεν· ἀλλὰ καὶ βασιλεὺς ἐκέλευσε
we-will-announce, but also (the) king commanded (us)

εἰπεῖν ὑμῖν τάδε, ὅτι μὲν μένουσι αὐτοῦ
to-say to-you thus, that — (to you) remaining here

εἴησαν σπονδαί, προϊοῦσι δὲ καὶ ἀπιοῦσι
here-would-be (a) truce, (but) advancing and also going-away

πόλεμος. Καὶ οὖν εἴπατε
[retreating] (there would be) war. And therefore tell (us)

περὶ τούτου, πότερα μενεῖτε καὶ
your answer) respecting this, whether you-will-remain and

εἰσι σπονδαί, ἢ ἀπαγγελῶ παρ' ὑμῶν
there-is (a) truce, or (whether) I-shall-announce from you

ὡς πολέμου ὄντος. Δὲ Κλέαρχος
that war being [that there is war]. But Clearchus

ἔλεξεν· Ἀπάγγελλε καὶ τοίνυν περὶ τούτου,
said: Announce also therefore respecting this,

ὅτι καὶ δοκεῖ ἡμῖν, ταὐτὰ ἅπερ καὶ
that it also seems to-us, the-same as (it does) likewise to (the)

βασιλεῖ.
king [that we are of the same opinion and determination with the king]

Τί οὖν ἐστί ταῦτα; ἔφη ὁ Φαλῖνος. Ὁ Κλέ-
What therefore are these? said — Phalinus. — Cle-

αρχος ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἢν μὲν μένωμεν σπονδαί,
archus replied: If indeed we-remain (here), (a) truce,

ἀπιοῦσι δὲ καὶ προιοῦσι πόλεμος. Δὲ ὁ
(if) we-retreat and also (if) we-advance war. But — (Phalinus)

πάλιν ἠρώτησε· Ἀπαγγελῶ σπονδὰς ἢ πόλεμον;
again asked: Shall-I-announce (a) truce or war?

Δὲ Κλέαρχος ἀπεκρίνατο ταὐτὰ πάλιν· σπονδαὶ
But Clearchus answered the-same again; (a) truce

μὲν μένουσι, δὲ ἀπιοῦσι ἢ προϊοῦσι πόλεμος. Δὲ
— remaining, but retreating or advancing war. But

τι ὁ ποιήσοι οὐ διεσήμηνε.
what — (he) might-do he did not signify.

## CHAPTER II.

Φαλῖνος μὲν δὴ ᾤχετο, καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ
PHALINUS — indeed departed, as-also — (those) with him

Δὲ οἱ παρὰ Ἀριαίου ἦκον, Προκλῆς καὶ
But — (those from Ariæus were-come, (namely) Procles and

Χειρίσοφος· δὲ Μένων ἔμενε αὐτοῦ παρὰ Ἀριαίῳ·
Cheirisophus; but Menon remained there with Ariæus;

δὲ οὗτοι ἔλεγον, ὅτι Ἀριαῖος φαίη εἶναι
and these reported, that Ariæus said (that) there-are

πολλοὺς Πέρσας βελτίους ἑαυτοῦ, οὓς οὐκ
many Persians superior (to) himself, who would not

ἀνασχέσθαι αὐτοῦ βασιλεύοντος· ἀλλ' εἰ βούλεσθε
endure him reigning; but if you-wish

συναπιέναι κελεύει ἥκειν ἤδη τῆς
to-depart-with (him) he-requests (you) to-come now — (this)

νυκτός· δὲ εἰ μή, φησίν αὐτὸς ἀπιέναι
night; but if (you do) not, he-says (that) he (is) to-depart

πρωΐ. Δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ
early-in-the-morning. And — Clearchus said: But

χρὴ ποιεῖν οὕτως· ὥσπερ λέγετε, ἐὰν μὲν
it-is-necessary to-do so; as you-say, if indeed

ἥκωμεν· δὲ εἰ μή, πράττετε ὁποῖον τι
we-might-come (to Ariæus); but if not, do whatever

ἂν οἴησθε μάλιστα συμφέρειν. Δὲ οὐδὲ
you may think (to be) the-most advantageous. But neither

εἶπε τούτοις ὅ τι ποιήσοι. Δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα,
did-he-say to-those what he-would-do. But after these

ἡλίου ἤδη δύνοντος, συγκαλέσας τοὺς
(things), (the) sun now setting, having-assembled the

στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς ἔλεξε τοιάδε·
generals and captains he-spoke (in) this-manner:

Ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐμοί θυομένῳ
O men to-me sacrificing-and-inspecting-the-entrails (for a sign re

ἰέναι ἐπὶ βασιλέα τὰ ἱερὰ οὐκ
specting) | to-go [marching] against (the) king the victims 'did not

ἐγίγνετο. Καὶ εἰκότως ἄρα ἐγίγνετο
'become (favourable). And with-good-reason therefore they-were

οὐ· γὰρ ὡς ἐγὼ νῦν πυνθάνομαι ὁ ναυσίπορος
not (so); for as I now learn the navigable

ποταμός Τίγρης ἐστι ἐν μέσῳ ἡμῶν καὶ
river Tigris is in (the) middle (between) us and

βασιλέως, ὃν ἂν οὐ δυναίμεθα διαβῆναι
(the) king, which 'we would not 'be-able to-cross

ἄνευ πλοίων· δὲ ἡμεῖς ἔχομεν οὐ πλοῖα. Μὲν δὴ
without boats; but we have not boats. — Certainly

γε οὐκ οἷόν τε μένειν αὐτοῦ· γαρ
(for us) at-least (it is) not possible to-remain here, for

τα ἐπιτήδια ἔστιν οὐκ ἔχειν·
the necessaries-of-life | are not to-have, [are not to be procured],

δὲ ἰέναι παρα τοὺς φίλους Κύρου τὰ ἱερὰ ἦν
but to-go to the friends of-Cyrus the sacrifices were

πάνυ καλὰ ἡμῖν. Οὖν ὧδε χρὴ
altogether favourable to-us. Therefore thus it-is-necessary (for us)

ποιεῖν· ἀπιόντας δειπνεῖν ὅ τι τις ἔχει.
to-act, having-retired to-sup (on) whatever any-one has

Ἐπειδὰν δὲ σημήνῃ τῷ κέρατι ὡς
After indeed the-signal-may-be-given with (the) horn as (if)

ἀναπαύεσθαι συσκευάζεσθε· ἐπειδὰν δὲ τὸ δεύτερον
to-go-to-rest pack-up-your-baggage; after — the second

ἀναλίθεσθε ἐπὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια· δὲ
(signal) place (the baggage) on the beasts-of-burden; but

ἐπὶ τῷ τρίτῳ, ἕπεσθε τῷ ἡγουμένῳ,
on the third (signal), follow — (your) leader,

ἔχοντες μὲν τὰ ὑποζύγια πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ,
having indeed the beasts-of-burden next the river,

δὲ τὰ ὅπλα ἔξω. Οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ
but the heavy-armed-men on-the-outside. The generals and

λοχαγοι ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἀπῆλθον και
captains having-heard these (things) departed, and

ἐποίουν οὕτω. Καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν ὁ
did so. And (for) the rest (of the time) — (Clearchus)

μὲν ἦρχε, δὲ οἱ ἐπείθοντο, οὐχ
indeed commanded, and — (the others) obeyed, (they) not

ἑλόμενοι, ἀλλὰ ὁρῶντες
having-chosen (him actually as their commander), but perceiving

ὅτι μόνος ἔφρόνει οἷα
that (he) alone thought (and had the mental qualifications) such-as

ἔδει τὸν ἄρχοντα, οἱ ἄλλοι δ' ἦσαν
became — (a) commander, the other (commanders) indeed were

ἄπειροι. Ἀριθμὸς δὲ τῆς ὁδοῦ,
inexperienced. | (The) number — of-the road, [the computation

ἣν ἦλθον ἐξ Ἐφέσου τῆς Ἰωνίας
of the distance] which they-came from Ephesus — (in) Ionia

μέχρι τῆς μάχης, τρεῖς καὶ ἐνενήκοντα
to-the (place) of-the battle, (was) three and ninety

σταθμοὶ πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα καὶ πεντα-
day's-march (making) five and thirty and five-

κόσιοι παρασάγγαι, πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑξακις-
hundred [535] parasangs, (or) fifty and six-

χίλιοι καὶ μύριοι στάδιοι. ἀπὸ
thousand and ten-thousand [16,050] stadia; (the distance) from

δὲ τῆς μάχης εἰς Βαβυλῶνα ἐλέγοντο εἶναι
— (the place) of-the battle to Babylon was-said to-be

ἑξήκοντα καὶ τριακόσιοι στάδιοι.
sixty and three-hundred [360] stadia.

Ἐντεῦθεν, ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο σκότος, Μιλτοκύθης μὲν
Thence, when it-became dark, Miltocythes —

ὁ Θρᾴξ ἠὐτομόλησε πρὸς βασιλέα, ἔχων τε
the Thracian deserted to (the) king, having not only

τοὺς ἱππέας τοὺς μεθ' ἑαυτοῦ εἰς
the horsemen — (those) with him to-the-number-of

τετταράκοντα καὶ ὡς τριακοσίους τῶν Θρᾳκῶν
forty, but-also about three-hundred of-the Thracian

πεζῶν. Δε Κλέαρχος ἡγεῖτο τοῖς ἄλλοις
foot-soldiers. But Clearchus lead-the-way for-the res

κατὰ τὰ παρηγγελμένα,
according | to-the things-which-had-been-directed, [in the prescribed order],

δ' οἱ εἵποντο, καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὸν πρῶτον
and — (they) followed, and arrived at the first

σταθμόν, παρὰ Ἀριαῖον καὶ τὴν στρατιάν
station, to (where) Ariæus, and the army

ἐκείνου, ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας· καὶ
of-himself (were), about mid night; and (when they arrived)

θέμενοι ἐν τάξει τὰ ὅπλα οἱ
having-been-placed in order (of battle) — (under) arms, the

στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ξυνῆλθον
generals and captains of-the Greeks went-together

παρὰ Ἀριαῖον· καὶ τε οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ Ἀριαῖος,
to Ariæus; and not-only the Greeks but-also Ariæus,

καὶ οἱ κράτιστοι τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ ὤμοσαν, μήτε
and the principal-men of — (those) with him took-an-oath, not

προδώσειν ἀλλήλους, τε ἔσεσθαι σύμμαχοι· οἱ
to-betray one-another, but to-be-hereafter allies; the

βάρβαροι δὲ προσώμοσαν καὶ ἡγήσεσθαι
barbarians indeed swore-in-addition also to-lead-the-way

ἀδόλως. Δ' ὤμοσαν ταῦτα, σφάξαντες
without-treachery. And they-swore these (things), killing

ταῦρον, καὶ λύκον, καὶ κάπρον, καὶ
(in sacrificing) (a) bull, and wolf, and boar, and

κριόν, εἰς ἀσπίδα, οἱ μὲν Ἕλληνες
ram, (receiving the blood) in (a) shield, the — Greeks

βάπτοντες ξίφος, δὲ οἱ βάρβαροι λόγχην.
dipping (a) sword, and the barbarians (a) lance, (into the

Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ πιστὰ ἐγένετο
blood). When indeed — (these) pledges-of-fidelity had-taken-place

ὁ Κλέαρχος εἶπεν· Ἄγε δή, ὦ Ἀριαῖε, ἐπείπερ
— Clearchus said: Come then, O Ariæus, since-then

ὁ αὐτὸς στόλος ἐστὶ ὑμῖν καὶ ἡμῖν, εἰπὲ τίνα
the same route is to-you and to-us, tell-us what

γνώμην ἔχεις περὶ τῆς πορείας. πότερον
opinion (or plan) you-have respecting the march· whether

ἄπιμεν, ἥνπερ ἤλθομεν ἢ
shall) we-return, (by the same route) which we-came or

δοκεῖς ἐννενοηκέναι τινὰ ἄλλην κρείττω
do-you-think to-have-thought-of (or devised) any other better

ὁδόν; Ὁ δ' εἶπεν· Ἀπιόντες μὲν ἣν
road? — (He) — replied: Returning — (by the way) which

ἤλθομεν. ἄν παντελῶς ἀπολοίμεθα ὑπὸ
we-came, ¹we would ¹be entirely ¹destroyed by

λιμοῦ· γὰρ ὑπάρχει ἡμῖν νῦν οὐδὲν τῶν
famine; for there-is to-us now no (supply) of —

ἐπιτηδείων· γὰρ οὐδὲ τῶν ἐγγυτάτω
provisions; for neither (during) the nearest (or last)

ἑπτακαίδεκα σταθμῶν ἰόντες δεῦρο, εἴχομεν
seventeen days'-march coming hither, | we-having

λαμβάνειν οὐδὲν ἐκ τῆς χώρας.
to-take nothing from the country [we could procure nothing

Δ' εἴτι ἦν ἔνθα, ἡμεῖς
from the country] But any-thing (that) was there, we

διαπορευόμενοι κατεδαπανήσαμεν. Δὲ νῦν ἐπινο-
passing-through consumed-it. But now we

οῦμεν πορεύεσθαι μὲν μακροτέραν, δ'
think to-go — (a) longer (way), but ¹we-shall

οὐκ ἀπορήσομεν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων. Δὲ πορευτέον
not ¹want — provisions. But |it-is-to-be-marched

ἡμῖν τοὺς πρώτους σταθμοὺς
to-us [we must make the march] (on) the first days'-marches

μακροτάτους ὡς ἄν δυνώμεθα, ἵνα ὡς
the-longest that ¹we can ¹possibly-make-them, in-order that

ἀποσπασθῶμεν πλεῖστον τοῦ βασιλικοῦ στρατεύ-
we-may-be-removed the-farthest from-the royal ar-

ματος· γὰρ ἢν ἅπαξ ἀπόσχωμεν ὁδὸν δύο ἢ
my; for if once we-be-distant (a) journey of-two or

τριῶν ἡμερῶν, βασιλεὺς οὐκέτι μὴ
three days, (the) king ¹would | no-more not [not]

δύνηται καταλαβεῖν ἡμᾶς. Γὰρ μὲν ὀλίγῳ
be able to-overtake us. For indeed ¹with (a) small

στρατεύματι οὐ τολμήσει ἐφέπεσθαι. Δ'
army he-will not dare to-pursue (us). But

ἔχων πολὺν στόλον οὐ δυνήσεται πορεύεσθαι
having (a) large force he-will not be-able to-march

ταχέως· δὲ καὶ ἴσως σπανιεῖ τῶν
fast-enough; and also will probably experience-want of-the

ἐπιτηδείων. Ἔγωγε, ἔφη, ἔχω ταύτην τὴν
necessaries-of-life. I-at-least, said-he, hold this —

γνώμην.
opinion.

Δὲ αὕτη ἡ στρατηγία ἦν δυναμένη οὐδὲν
But this — plan-of-campaign was equivalent-to nothing

ἄλλο, ἢ ἀποδρᾶναι ἢ ἀποφυγεῖν, δὲ ἡ τύχη
else, than to-stealing-away or to-fleeing-openly-away, but — fortune

ἐστρατήγησε κάλλιον. Γὰρ ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο ἡμέρα
conducted-the-army more-honourably. For when it-became day

ἐπορεύοντο, ἔχοντες τὸν ἥλιοι ἐν δεξιᾷ
they-marched-forth, having the sun on the-right

λογιζόμενοι ἥξειν ἅμα δύνοντι ἡλίῳ
expecting to-arrive at-the-same-time with (the) setting sun

εἰς κώμας τῆς Βαβυλωνίας χώρας· καὶ
at (some) village of-the Babylonian territory; and (as respects)

τοῦτο μὲν οὐκ ἐψεύσθησαν. Δὲ ἔτι
this they-were indeed not deceived. And yet

ἀμφὶ δείλην ἔδοξαν ὁρᾶν
about the-fore-part-of-the-afternoon they-thought (that) they-saw (the)

πολεμίους ἱππέας· καὶ τε οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων
enemy's cavalry; and not-only — (those) of-the Greeks

ἔτυχον μὴ ὄντες ἐν ταῖς τάξεσιν,
(who) happened not being [who were not] in the ranks,

ἔδεον εἰς τὰς τάξεις, καὶ Ἀριαῖος, (γὰρ ἐτύγχανε
ran to the ranks, but-also Ariæus, (for he-happened

πορευόμενος ἐφ' ἁμάξης, διότι ἐτέτρωτο,)
to be) proceeding in (a) wagon, because he-had been-wounded,)

καταβὰς ἐθωρακίζετο καὶ οἱ σὺν
coming-down did-put-on (his) corselet and-also — (those) with

αὐτῷ. Ἐν ᾧ δὲ ὡπλί-
him (did the same). During (the time) in-which — they-were-arm-

ζοντο οἱ σκοποὶ προπεμφθέντες, ἦκον λέγοντες,
ing-themselves the scouts sent-out-before, came saying,

ὅτι εἰσιν οὐχ ἱππεῖς, ἀλλ' ὑποζύγια
that they-were not horsemen, but beasts-of-burden (that)

νέμοιντο. Καὶ πάντες εὐθὺς ἔγνωσαν, ὅτι
might-be-pasturing. And all immediately knew, that

βασιλεύς ἐστρατοπεδεύετο που ἐγγύς· καὶ
(the) king was-encamped some-where near; and

γὰρ καὶ καπνὸς ἐφαίνετο ἐν κώμαις οὐ πρόσω.
really also smoke appeared in (the) villages not far

Δὲ Κλέαρχος μὲν οὐκ ἦγεν
(distant). But Clearchus indeed 'did not 'lead (his forces)

ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· γὰρ ᾔδει τοὺς στρατιώτας
against the enemy; for he-knew (that) the soldiers

ὄντας καὶ ἀπειρηκότας καὶ ἀσίτους· δὲ καὶ ἦν
were both fatigued and fasting; and also it-was

ἤδη ὀψὲ· οὐ μέντοι οὐδὲ ἀπέκλινε,
now late; | not however [yet however] he-'did not 'decline

φυλαττόμενος μὴ δοκοίη
(from his route), taking-care (that) 'he-might not 'seem

φεύγειν, ἀλλ' ἄγων εὐθύωρον, ἔχων
to-flee, but leading (the army) in-a-direct-line, (and) having

τοὺς πρώτους κατεσκήνωσεν
(or leading) (himself) the foremost (or advance) he-encamped

ἅμα τῷ δυομένῳ ἡλίῳ, εἰς τὰς ἐγγυτάτω
at-the-time-of the setting sun, in the nearest

κώμας, ἐξ ὧν διήρπαστο ὑπὸ τοῦ βασιλικοῦ
villages, from which was-taken-away by the royal

στρατεύματος καὶ αὐτὰ τὰ ξύλα ἀπὸ τῶν οἰκιῶν.
troops even the wood-work from the houses.

Οὖν μὲν οἱ πρῶτοι ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο
Therefore indeed the first (or advance) encamped

ὅμως τινὶ τρόπῳ, δὲ οἱ ὕστεροι προσιόντες
however in some order, but — (those) following coming up

σκοταῖοι ηὐλίζοντο ὡς ἕκαστοι ἐτύγχανον,
in-the-dark quartered-themselves as 'they severally 'chanced

καὶ ἐποίουν πολλὴν κραυγὴν καλλοῦντες
(to find quarters), and they-made much noise calling

ἀλλήλους, ὥστε καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους ἀκούειν·
to-one-another, so-that even the enemy heard (it);

ὥστε μὲν οἱ ἐγγύτατα τῶν πολεμίων καὶ ἔφυγον
so-that indeed the nearest of-the enemy even fled

ἐκ τῶν σκηνωμάτων. Δὲ τοῦτο ἐγένετο δῆλον
from the encampments. And this became apparent

τῇ ὑστερίᾳ· γὰρ οὔτε ἔτι οὐδὲν
on-the following-day; for neither any-longer | 'did no

ὑποζύγιον ἐφάνη, οὔτε
beasts-of-burden 'appear, [did any beasts of burden appear], or

στρατόπεδον, οὔτε καπνὸς οὐδαμοῦ πλησίον. Δὲ
camp, or smoke any-where near. And

ὡς ἔοικε, καὶ βασιλεὺς ἐξεπλάγη τῇ ἐφόδῳ
as it-seemed, even (the) king was-alarmed at-the approach

τοῦ στρατεύματος. Δὲ τοῦτο ἐδήλωσε
of-the (Grecian) army. And this was-manifest

οἷς ἔπραττε τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ. Μέντοι τῆς ταύτης
by-what he-did on-the following-day. However — this-same

νυκτὸς προϊούσης, φόβος ἐμπίπτει καὶ τοῖς Ἕλλησι
night advancing, (a) panic fell also on-the Greeks

καὶ ἦν θόρυβος καί δοῦπος εἰκὸς οἷον
and there-was tumult and noise like as (sudden)

φόβου ἐμπεσόντος γίγνεσθαι. Δὲ Κλέ-
fear falling-on (one) (causes) to-be. But Cle-

αρχος Τολμίδην Ἠλεῖον, ὃν ἐτύγχανεν
archus (ordered) Tolmides (the) Elean, | whom he-happened

ἔχων πὰρ' ἑαυτῷ,
having [whom he happened to have] with himself, (and who was)

ἄριστον κήρυκα τῶν τότε, τοῦτον
the-best herald of — (those) then (existing), this-one (then)

ἐκέλευσε ἀνειπεῖν, κατακηρύξαντα σιγήν,
he-ordered to-proclaim, he 'having (first) 'ordered silence,

ὅτι οἱ ἄρχοντες προαγορεύουσιν, ὃς ἂν
that the generals publicly-announce, (that he) who might

μηνύσῃ τὸν ἀφέντα τὸν ὄνον εἰς
give-information (respecting) the (one) having-let-loose the ass among

τὰ ὅπλα, ὅτι λήψεται μισθὸν τάλαντον
the arms, that he-would-receive (as) reward (a) talen

ἀργυρίου. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ταῦτα ἐκηρύχθη, οἱ στρα
of-silver. When indeed this was-proclaimed, the sol-

τιῶται ἔγνωσαν, ὅτι ὁ φόβος εἴη κενὸς, καὶ
diers knew, that — (their) fear was groundless, and

οἱ ἄρχοντες σῶοι. Δὲ ἅμα ὄρθρῳ
that) the generals (were) safe. But at-the-time-of day-break

ὁ Κλέαρχος παρήγγειλε τοὺς Ἕλληνας τίθεσθαι
— Clearchus ordered the Greeks to-place-themselves

τὰ ὅπλα εἰς τάξιν ἧπερ εἶχον ὅτε
— (under) arms in (the) order in-which they-had (themselves) when

ἡ μάχη ἦν.
the battle was.

## CHAPTER III

Δὲ ὃ δὴ ἔγραψα, ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἐξεπλάγη
But what I already wrote, that (the) king was-alarmed

τῇ ἐφόδῳ ἦν δῆλον τῷδε.
at-the approach (of the Greeks) was evident by-this (that follows).

Γὰρ μὲν τῇ πρόσθεν ἡμέρᾳ πέμπων
For indeed on-the preceding day sending (to the Greeks)

ἐκέλευε παραδιδόναι τὰ ὅπλα, δὲ τότε
he-ordered (them) to-give-up — (their) arms, but afterwards

ἅμα ἀνατέλλοντι ἡλίῳ ἔπεμψε
at-the-same-time with (the) rising sun he-sent

κήρυκας περὶ σπονδῶν. Δ' οἱ ἐπεὶ
heralds about (a) truce. But — (these heralds), when

ἦλθον πρὸς τοὺς προφύλακας, ἐζήτουν τοὺς ἄρ
they went to the outposts, inquired-for the com

χοντας. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ προφῦλακες
manders When indeed the guards (at the outpos s

ἀπήγγελλον, Κλέαρχος, τυχὼν τοτε ἐπισκοπῶν
reported-this, Clearchus, happening then to-be-inspecting

τὰς τάξεις, εἶπε τοῖς προφύλαξι κελεύειν
the troops-drawn-up-in-order, told the guards to-request

τους κήρυκας περιμένειν ἄχρι ἂν σχολάσῃ
the heralds to-remain till he might be-at-leisure

Ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέστησε τὸ στράτευμα ὥστε ἔχειν
When — he-had-arranged the army so-as to-have

καλῶς ὁρᾶσθαι πάντῃ φάλλαγγα
(itself) beautifully to-be-seen on-all (sides), (the) phalanx

πυκνήν, δὲ μηδένα τῶν ὁπλων
(being) in-close-order, but not-one of-the unarmed (men)

καταφανῆ εἶναι, ἐκάλεσε τοὺς ἀγγέλους, καὶ
appeared to-be (there), he-called-for the messengers, and

αὐτός τε προῆλθε ἔχων τε τούς εὐοπλοτάτους
he-himself — advanced having — the best-armed

καὶ εὐειδεστάτους τῶν στρατιωτῶν αὐτοῦ
and the-handsomest of-the soldiers of-himself (there about

καὶ ἔφρασε τοῖς ἄλλοις στρατηγοῖς
him), and he-told the other commanders (to do the)

ταὐτὰ. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦν πρὸς τοῖς ἀγγέλοις
same (thing). When indeed he-was near the messengers

ἀνηρώτα τί βούλοιντο. Οἱ δὲ ἔλεγον, ὅτι
he-demanded what they-wished. — (They) indeed replied, that

ἥκοιεν ἄνδρες περὶ σπονδῶν, οἵτινες
they-came (as) men respecting (a) truce, (and) who

ἔσονται ἱκανοὶ τε ὁ παγγεῖλαι τὰ
would-be competent (and empowered) not-only to-announce —

παρὰ βασιλέως τοῖς Ἕλλησι,
(any communication) from (the) king to-the Greeks,

καὶ τὰ παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων βασιλεῖ.
but-also — (those) from the Greeks to (the) king

Δὲ ὁ ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἀπαγγέλλετε τοίνυν
But — (he, Clearchus,) replied: Announce therefore

αὐτῷ, ὅτι πρῶτον δεῖ μάχης, γὰρ
to-him (the king), that first there-is-need 'of (a) 'battle, for

ἔστιν οὐκ ἄριστον, οὐδὲ ὁ τολμή-
there is no breakfast (for us), nor (is there any one) who will-be-

σων λέγειν περὶ σπονδῶν τοῖς Ἕλλησι,
daring (enough) to-speak about (a) truce to-the Greeks,

μὴ πορίσας ἄριστον. Οἱ ἄγγελλοι ἀκού-
not having-provided (them) breakfast. The messengers hear-

σαντες ταῦτα ἀπήλαυνον, καὶ ταχὺ ἦκον·
ing these (things) departed, and soon came

καὶ ᾧ ἦν δῆλον ὅτι βασιλεὺς
(back), and to-whom [Clearchus] it-was manifest that (the) king

ἦν που ἐγγυς, ἤ τις ἄλλος, ᾧ
was some-where near, or some (persons) else, to-whom

ἐπετέτακτο πράττειν ταῦτα· ἔλεγον δὲ
it-was-commanded to-transact these (affairs); they-said indeed

ὅτι λέγειν δοκοῖεν βασιλεῖ εἰκότα,
that (the things) they-reported seemed 'to (the) 'king reasonable,

καὶ ἦκοιεν ἔχοντες ἡγεμόνας, οἵ, ἐὰν
and they-came (back) having guides, who, if (the)

σπονδαὶ γένωται, ἄξουσιν αὐτοὺς ἔνθεν ἔξουσι
truce should-take-place, would-conduct them to-where they-would-have

τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Ὁ δὲ ἠρώτα, εἰ
the necessaries-of-life. — But 'he (Clearchus) 'inquired, if

σπένδοιτο αὐτοῖς τοῖς ἀνδράσι ἰοῦσι
a-truce-would-be-made (only) for-those — men going-to

καὶ ἀπιοῦσιν, ἢ ἔσοιντο σπονδαί
and returning-from (the king), or (if) there-would-be (a) truce

καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις. Δὲ οἱ ἔφασαν ἅπασι,
also 'for (all) 'the others. But — (they) said for-all,

μέχρι τὰ παρ' ὑμῶν ἂν διαγγελθῇ
until the (things) from you may be-communicated to (the)

βασιλεῖ. Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶπον ταῦτα, μεταστη-
'king. When indeed they-said these (things), having-dis

σάμενος αὐτούς, ὁ Κλέαρχος ἐβουλεύετο.
missed these (messengers), — Clearchus consulted with

Καὶ ἐδόκει τας σπονδὰς
his officers). And it-seemed (to them) (that) the truce

ποιεῖσθαι ταχύ, καὶ ἐλθεῖν τε καθ' ἡσυχίαν
was-to-be-made speedily, and to-go not-only at (their) leisure

ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, καὶ λαβεῖν. Ὁ
after the necessaries-of-life, but-also to-take [them as required]. —

δὲ Κλέαρχος εἶπε· Δοκεῖ μὲν κἀμοὶ ταῦτα·
But Clearchus said: | It-seems indeed also-to-me the-same,

οὐ μέντοι ταχύ γε
[I am of the same opinion]; I-'will not however immediately indeed

ἀπαγγελῶ, ἀλλὰ διατρίψω ἔστ' οἱ
'announce (our determination), but will-delay until the

ἄγγελοι ἂν ὀκνήσωσι μὴ ἀποδόξῃ
messengers might be-apprehensive (that) it-'might not 'seem

ἡμῖν ποιήσασθαι τὰς σπονδάς·
(proper) to-us to-have-made-for-ourselves the truce; 'I

μέντοι γε οἶμαι, ἔφη, τὸν αὐτὸν φόβον
however certainly 'think, said-he, (that) the same fear

παρέσεσθαι, καὶ τοῖς ἡμετέροις στρατιώταις.
will-be-present, even — to-our-own soldiers.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει εἶναι καιρὸς ἀπήγγελλεν
When indeed he-thought (it) to-be the-proper-time he-announced

ὅτι σπένδοιτο, καὶ ἐκέλευε
(to the messengers) that he-would-make-the-truce, and requested

ἡγεῖσθαι εὐθὺς πρὸς τἀπιτήδεια.
(them) to-conduct (them) immediately to the-provisions.

Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἡγοῦντο· Κλέαρχος
And the (messengers then) indeed led-the-way; Clearchus

μὲν μέντοι ἐπορεύετο ποιησόμενος τὰς μὲν σπονδάς,
indeed however proceeded about-making the — truce,

δὲ ἔχων τὸ στράτευμα ἐν τάξει, καὶ αὐτὸς
but having the army in order (of battle), and he-himself

ὤπισθοφυλάκει. Καὶ ἐνετύγχανον τάφροις καὶ
brought-up-the-rear. And they-met-with ditches and

αὐλῶσι πλήρεσιν ὕδατος ὡς μὴ δύνασθαι
canals (so) full of-water as not to-be-able

διαβαίνειν ἄνευ γεφυρῶν· ἀλλ' ἐποιοῦντο δια-
to-cross (them) without bridges; but they-made cross-

βάσεις ἐκ τῶν φοινίκων οἱ ἦσαν ἐκπεπτωκότες,
ings out-of the palm-trees which had fallen-down,

δὲ καὶ τοὺς ἐξέκοπτον. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἦν
and also of — (those) they-cut-down. And here was

καταμαθεῖν Κλέαρχον ὡς ἐπεστάτει,
(an opportunity) to-observe Clearchus how he-exercised-command,

ἔχων μὲν ἐν τῇ ἀριστερᾷ χειρὶ τὸ δόρυ, δὲ
having indeed in — (his) left hand the spear, but

ἐν τῇ δεξιᾷ βακτηρίαν· καὶ εἴ τις
in — (his) right (hand a) truncheon; and if any-one

δοκοίη αὐτῷ τῶν τεταγμένων πρὸς τοῦτο
might-seem to-him of — (those) appointed to this (work)

βλακεύειν, ἐκλεγόμενος τὸν ἐπιτήδειον
to-loiter, selecting — (a) fit (person) he

ἄν ἔπαισε, καὶ ἅμα αὐτὸς ἐμβαίνων
would 'beat (him), and at-the-same-time he leaping

εἰς τὸν πηλὸν προσελάμβανεν· ὥστε
into the mud took-part (in the work); so-that

αἰσχύνην εἶναι πᾶσιν μὴ οὐ συσπουδάζειν.
shame was to-all — not to-emulate (him in

Καὶ οἱ γεγονότες τριάκοντα
expediting the work). And — (those) being thirty

ἔτη ἐτάχθησαν μὲν πρὸς αὐτοῦ.
years (of age) were-appointed — by him (for this work);

ἐπεὶ δὲ καὶ ἑώρων Κλέαρχον σπου-
after indeed also the older persons) saw Clearchus hasten-

δάζοντα, καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτεροι προσελάμβανον.
ing (the work), even the older-men took-part

Δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος ἔσπευδε πολύ μᾶλλον,
(in it). But — Clearchus hastened (the work) much more

ὑποπτεύων τὰς τάφρους εἶναι μὴ ἀεὶ οὕτω πλήρεις
suspecting the ditches to-be not always so full

ὕδατος· γὰρ ἦν οὐ ὥρα οἷα ἄρδειν το
of-water; for it-was not (the) season proper to-water the

πεδίον· ἀλλ' ὑπώπτευε βασιλέα ἀφεικέναι
ground; but suspected (that the) king had-sent-out

τὸ ὕδωρ ἐπὶ τὸ πεδίον ἕνεκα τούτου, ἵνα ἤδη
the water on the plain by-reason-of this, that already

πολλὰ δεινὰ προφαίνοιτο τοῖς Ἕλλησι εἰς τὴν
many difficulties might-appear to-the Greeks in the

πορείαν.
march.

Δὲ πορευόμενοι ἀφίκοντο εἰς κώμας, ὅθεν
And proceeding they-arrived at (the) villages, from-which

οἱ ἡγεμόνες ἀπέδειξαν λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτή-
the guides signified (to them) to-take the provi-

δεια. Ἐνῆν δὲ πολὺς σῖτος, καὶ
sions. There-was-in (these villages) indeed much corn, and

οἶνος φοινίκων, καὶ ὄξος ἕψητὸν ἀπὸ τῶν
wine of-date-palms, and (an) acid-wine cooked from —

αὐτῶν. Δὲ αἱ αὗται βάλανοι τῶν φοινίκων,
them. But the same dates of-the palms,

οἷας μὲν ἔστιν ἰδεῖν ἐν τοῖς Ἕλλησιν
such-as indeed are | to-see [to be seen] in — Greece

ἀπέκειντο τοῖς οἰκέταις, δὲ αἱ ἀποκείμεναι
are-put-by for-the servants, but — (those) put-away

τοῖς δεσπόταις ἦσαν ἀπόλεκτοι, θαυμάσιαι τὸ
for-the masters were choice-ones, admirable for —

κάλλος καὶ τὸ μέγεθος, δὲ ἡ ὄψις
(their) beauty and — size, and — (their) appearance

διέφερε οὐδὲν ἠλέκτρου. Δὲ ξηραίνοντες τὰς
differed nothing from-amber. And drying —

τινας ἀπετίθεσαν τραγήματα. Καὶ
some (of these) they-put (them) up for-sweetmeats. And

ἦν καὶ ἡδὺ μὲν παρὰ πότον, δὲ κεφαλαλγές.
(they) were also pleasant indeed with drink, but causing-headache

Ἐνταῦθα καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται πρῶτον ἔφαγον τὸν
Here also the soldiers first eat | the

ἐγκέφαλον τοῦ φοίνικος, καὶ
brains of-the palm-tree, [the cabbage of the palm-tree], and

οἱ πολλοὶ ἐθαύμασαν τε τὸ εἶδος καὶ
the multitude were-astonished not-only — 'at (its) 'appearance but-also

τὴν ἰδιότητα τῆς ἡδονῆς. Καὶ τοῦτο δὲ ἦν
at-the peculiarity — 'of (its) sweetness. And this also was

σφόδρα κεφαλαλγές. Δὲ ὁ φοῖνιξ ὅθεν
exceedingly (apt at) causing-headache. But the palm-tree whence

ὁ ἐγκέφαλος ἐξαιρεθείη αὐαίνετο ὅλος.
the cabbage may-have-been-taken, withered entirely.

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας· καὶ Τισσαφέρνης
Here they-remained three days; and Tissaphernes

ἦκε παρὰ μεγάλου βασιλέως, καὶ ὁ ἀδελφὸς
came from (the) great king, and the brother

τῆς γυναικὸς βασιλέως, καὶ τρεῖς ἄλλοι
of-the wife 'of (the) 'king, and (also) three other

Πέρσαι, δὲ πολλοὶ δοῦλοι εἵποντο. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ
Persians, and many slaves attended. After indeed the

στρατηγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἀπήντησαν αὐτοῖς,
generals of-the Greeks went-to-meet them,

Τισσαφέρνης ἔλεγε πρῶτος δι' ἑρμηνέως τοιάδε·
Tissaphernes spoke first through (an) interpreter thus:

Ἐγώ, ὦ Ἕλληνες ἄνδρες, οἰκῶ γείτων τῇ Ἑλλάδι,
I, O Grecian men, dwell neighbouring — Greece,

καὶ ἐπεὶ εἶδον ὑμᾶς ἐμπεπτωκότας εἰς πολλὰ
and when I-saw you having-fallen into many

κακά, καὶ ἀμήχανα, ἐποιησάμην
evils, and inextricably-great (difficulties), | I-made-it-for-myself

εὕρημα
a-piece-of-good-luck [I considered it a most fortunate affair for me]

εἴ πως δυναίμην αἰτήσασθαι
if I-'were in-any-manner 'able to-entreat (and obtain)

παρὰ βασιλέως δοῦναι ἐμοὶ ἀποσῶσαι
from (the) king to-have-given me (permission) to-save

ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Γὰρ οἶμαι
you (and restore you) to — Greece. For I-think

ἂν οὐκ ἔξειν ἀχαρίστως μοι
|(that) 'it would not 'have (itself) ungrateful to-me [that there

οὔτε πρὸς ὑμῶν, οὔτε
will be no want of gratitude towards me] either from you, or

πρὸς τῆς πάσης Ἑλλάδος. Δὲ γνούς ταῦτα
from — all Greece. And knowing these (things)

ἠτούμην βασιλέα, λέγων αὐτῷ, ὅτι
I-made-my-request 'to (the) 'king, saying to-him, that

ἄν δικαίως χαρίζοιτο μοι, ὅτι τε πρῶτος
he might justly 'gratify me, (as) that 'I not-only first

ἤγγειλα αὐτῷ Κῦρον ἐπιστρατεύοντα,
'announced to-him (that) Cyrus was-marching-against (him),

καὶ ἀφικόμην ἅμα τῇ ἀγγελίᾳ ἔχων
but-also I-came at-the-same-time with-the message having

βοήθειαν, καὶ μόνος τῶν τεταγ-
assistance (in auxiliary troops), and 'I alone of — (those) having-

μένων κατὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας οὐκ ἔφυγον,
been-drawn-up against the Greeks 'did not 'flee,

ἀλλὰ διήλασα, καὶ συνέμιξα
but charged (through their ranks), and joined (the)

βασιλεῖ ἐν τῷ ὑμετέρῳ στρατοπέδῳ, ἔνθα
king in — your-own camp, whither (the)

βασιλεὺς αφίκετο ἐπεὶ ἀπέκτεινε Κῦρον, καὶ
king came after he-had-killed Cyrus, and

ἐδίωξα τοὺς βαρβάρους ξὺν Κύρῳ σὺν τοῖσδε
I-pursued — (those) barbarians with Cyrus with these,

τοῖς νῦν παροῦσι μετ' ἐμοῦ, οἵπερ εἰσ
(namely) these now present with us, who are

πιστότατοι αὐτῷ. Καὶ μὲν ὑπέσχετό
the-most faithful to-him. And indeed 'he [the king] 'promised

μοι βουλεύσασθαι περὶ τούτων, δὲ ἐκέλευσε
me to-deliberate about these (affairs), and commanded

με ἐλθόντα ἔρεσθαι ὑμᾶς ἕνεκεν τίνος ἐστρατεύσατε
me having-gone to-ask you by-reason of-what you-took-the-field

ἐπ' αὐτόν. Καὶ συμβουλεύω ὑμῖν ἀποκρίνασθαι
against him. And I-counsel you to-reply

μετρίως, ἵνα ᾖ εὐπρακτότερον μοι, ἐάν
moderately, that it-may-be easier for-me, if

δύνωμαι διαπράξασθαι τι ἀγαθὸν ὑμῖν
I-am-able to-effect any-thing good (or advantageous) for-you

παρ' αὐτοῦ.
with him.

Πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ Ἕλληνες μεταστάντες ἐβουλεύ-
At this the Greeks withdrawing delibe-

οντο, καὶ ἀπεκρίναντο· Κλέαρχος δ'
rated, and gave (their) answer; Clearchus indeed

ἔλεγεν· Ἡμεῖς οὔτε συνήλθομεν ὡς
spoke (for them): We neither assembled-together for-the-purpose-of

πολεμήσοντες βασιλεῖ οὔτ' ἐπορευόμεθα
hereafter-making-war against (the) king nor did-we-set-out

ἐπὶ βασιλέα, ἀλλὰ Κῦρος εὗρισκε πολλὰς
against (the) king, but Cyrus invented many

προφάσεις, καὶ ὡς σὺ εὖ οἶσθα, ἵνα τε
pretexts, and as you well know, that not-only

λάβοι ὑμᾶς ἀπαρασκευάστους, καὶ ἀναγάγοι
he-might-take you unprepared, but-also lead

ἡμᾶς ἐνθάδε. Ἤδη μέντοι ἐπεὶ ἑωρῶμεν αὐτὸν
us thither. Now however when we-saw him

ὄντα ἐν δεινῷ ᾐσχύνθημεν καὶ θεοὺς
being in danger we-were-made-to-be-ashamed both (before) gods

καὶ ἀνθρώπους προδοῦναι αὐτόν, παρέχοντες
and men to-have-betrayed him, we-allowing (him)

ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν χρόνῳ ποιεῖν εὖ
in the former time to-do well (to confer favours

ἡμᾶς αὐτούς. Ἐπεὶ δὲ Κῦρος τέθνηκεν,
on] us ourselves. Since indeed Cyrus is-dead, we

οὔτε ἀντιποιούμεθα βασιλεῖ τῆς ἀρχῆς,
neither contend with (the) king for-the kingdom,

οὔτ' ἔστιν ἕνεκα ὅτου ἂν βουλοίμεθα
nor is-there (any thing) on-account-of which we might desire

ποιεῖν κακῶς τὴν χώραν βασιλέως, οὐδ'
to-do harm (to) the country of (the) king, nor

ἂν ἐθέλοιμεν ἀποκτεῖναι αὐτόν, δ' ἂν
would we-wish to-kill him, but we would

πορευοίμεθα οἴκαδε, εἴ τις μὴ λυποίη ἡμᾶς·
'proceed homeward, if any-one 'would not 'molest us,

μέντοι ἀδικοῦντα πειρασόμεθα σὺν
'those however 'injuring (us) we-will-endeavour with (the aid of)

τοῖς θεοῖς ἀμύνασθαι· ἐὰν μέντοι τις
the gods to-avenge (ourselves on); if however any-one

καὶ ὑπάρχῃ ποιῶν εὖ ἡμᾶς, καὶ τούτου
even begin doing good to-us, and-even to-this-one we 'will

οὐχ ἥττησόμεθα ποιοῦντες εὖ γε εἰς
not 'be-inferior doing good at-least to (the best of our)

δύναμιν. Οὕτως μὲν ὁ εἶπεν.
power. Thus indeed 'did — (Clearchus) 'speak.

Ἀκούσας δὲ ὁ Τισσαφέρνης ἔφη· Ταῦτα
Hearing (this) — — Tissaphernes said: These things

ἐγὼ ἀπαγγελῶ βασιλεῖ, καὶ πάλιν
I will-announce 'to (the) 'king, and (will bring) back

ὑμῖν τὰ παρ' ἐκείνου· δὲ μέχρι
to-you the (things) from him; [his answer]; and until

ἐγὼ ἂν ἥκω αἱ σπονδαὶ μενόντων, δὲ
I may come 'let the truce 'remain-in-force, and

ἡμεῖς παρέξομεν ἀγοράν. Καὶ μὲν εἰς τὴν
we will-provide (a) market (for you.) And indeed on the

ὑστεραίαν οὐχ ἥκεν· ὥσθ' οἱ Ἕλληνες
following-day he-'did not 'come; so-that the Greeks

ἐφρόντιζον. Δὲ τῇ τρίτῃ ἥκων ἔλεγεν, ὅτι
began-to-be-anxious. But on-the third (day) coming he-said, that

ἥκοι διαπεπραγμένος παρὰ βασιλέως δοθῆναι
he-came having-obtained from (the) king to-be-allowed

αὐτῷ σώζειν τοὺς Ἕλληνας, καίπερ πάνυ πολλῶν
to-himself to-save the Greeks, although a-great many

ἀντιλεγόντων, ὡς οὐκ εἴη ἄξιον
speaking-against (and opposing it), so-that it-'might not 'be becoming

βασιλεῖ ἀφεῖναι τοὺς στρατευσαμένους
'for (the) 'king to-let-go — (those) making-war

ἐφ' ἑαυτόν. Δὲ τέλος εἶπε· καὶ νῦν ἔξεστιν
against himself. And in-conclusion he-said: and now it-is-allowed

ὑμῖν λαβεῖν πιστὰ παρ' ἡμῶν, ἢ μὴν τὴν χώραν
you to-take assurances from us, that truly the country
παρέξειν φιλίαν ὑμῖν, καὶ ἀδόλως ἀπάξειν
will-be-kept friendly to-you, and without-treachery hereafter-to-lead
εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, παρέχοντας
(you) back to — Greece, (you) obtaining (a)
ἀγοράν· δ' ὅπου ἄν ᾖ μή
market (for provisions); but where (indeed there) may be not (any
πρίασθαι ἐάσομεν ὑμᾶς λαμβάνειν τὰ
thing) to-purchase we-will-allow you to-take the
ἐπιτήδεια ἐκ τῆς χώρας. Δ' αὖ
necessaries (of life) from the country. But on-the-other-hand
δεήσει ὑμᾶς, ὁμόσαι ἡμῖν, ἢ μὴν πορεύεσθαι
it-will-be-necessary for-you to-swear to-us, truly to-march
ὡς διὰ φιλίας ἀσινῶς, λαμβάνοντας
as through (a) friendly (country) without-doing-harm, taking
σῖτα καὶ ποτά, ὁπόταν μὴ παρέχωνεν
provisions and drink, whenever we-do not provide (a)
ἀγοράν· ἢν δὲ παρέχωμεν ἀγοράν,
market (for you); if indeed we-provide (you a) market,
ὠνουμένους ἕξειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Ταῦτα
you-purchasing will-have the necessaries-of-life. These (things)
ἔδοξε, καὶ ὤμοσαν καὶ Τισ-
seemed (good, and were assented to), and they-took-the-oaths, and Tis-
σαφέρνης καὶ ὁ ἀδελφὸς τῆς γυναικὸς
saphernes, and the brother of-the wife of (the)
βασιλέως ἔδοσαν δεξιὰς τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ
king gave (their) right-hands to-the generals and
λοχαγοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων, καὶ ἔλαβον
captains of-the Greeks, and took (the same)
παρὰ τῶν Ἑλλήνων. Δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα Τισσα-
from the Greeks. And after this Tissa-
φέρνης εἶπε· Νῦν μὲν δὴ ἄπειμι ὡς
phernes said: Now indeed — I (will) go-back to (the)
βασιλέα· ἐπειδὰν δὲ διαπράξωμαι ἃ δέομαι,
king; after indeed I-shall-accomplish (that) which I-desire.

συσκευασάμενος, ἥξω ὡς
having-collected-and-packed-up-my-baggage, I-will-return as (about)

ἀπάξων ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ αὐτὸς
leading you back to — Greece, and myself

ἀπιὼν ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχὴν ἐμαυτοῦ.
returning to | the government of-myself [my own government].

## CHAPTER IV.

Μετὰ ταῦτα τε οἱ Ἕλληνες καὶ
After these (things) not-only the Greeks but-also

Ἀριαῖος ἐστρατοπεδευμένοι ἐγγὺς ἀλλήλων
Ariæus being-encamped near to-one-another

περιέμενον Τισσαφέρνην πλείους ἢ εἴκοσιν ἡμέρας.
waited for-Tissaphernes more than thirty days.

Ἐν δὲ ταύταις ἀφικνοῦνται πρὸς Ἀριαῖον
During — these (days) there-came to Ariæus

καὶ οἱ ἀδελφοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀναγκαῖοι,
as-well — (his) brother as — (his) other relations,

καὶ τινες Περσῶν πρὸς τοὺς σὺν ἐκείνῳ,
and some Persians to those (men) with him,

τε παρεθάρσυνον, καὶ ἔφερον δεξιὰς
they not-only encouraged (them), but-also brought | right-hands

ἐνίοις παρὰ βασιλέως, βασιλέα
[assurances] to-some from (the) king, (that the) king

μὴ μνησικακήσειν τῆς ἐπιστρατείας
would not remember-in-evil (the injuries) of-the expedition

σὺν Κύρῳ αὐτοῖς, μηδὲ μηδενὸς ἄλλου
under Cyrus (received) from-them, | neither no other [or

τῶν παρῳχημένων. Δὲ τούτων
any thing else] of-the (affairs) gone-by. But these

γιγνομένων, οἱ περὶ Ἀριαῖον
(things while) occurring, | the about Ariæus [the followers

ἦσαν ἔνδηλοι προσέχοντες
of Ariæus] were evidently (not so attentive to, and) applying

τὸν νοῦν ἧττον τοῖς Ἕλλησι· ὥστε καὶ δια τοῦτο
the mind less to-the Greeks; so-that also through this

μὲν τοῖς πολλοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων οὐκ ἤρεσκον,
indeed — many of-the Greeks were not pleased.

ἀλλὰ προσιόντες τῷ Κλεάρχῳ καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις
but going-to — Clearchus and the other

στρατηγοῖς ἔλεγον· Τί μένομεν; ἢ οὐκ
generals they-said: Why do-we-remain? or do-we not

ἐπιστάμεθα, ὅτι βασιλεὺς ἂν ποιήσαιτο περὶ
believe, | that (the) king would make-it-to-himself above

παντὸς ἀπολέσαι ἡμᾶς,
all-things to-destroy us, [the king would above all things wish

ἵνα καὶ εἴη φόβος τοῖς ἄλλοις
to destroy us], in-order-that also there-might-be fear to-the other

Ἕλλησι στρατεύειν ἐπὶ μέγαν βασιλέα; καὶ
Greeks to-war against (the) great king? and

νῦν μὲν ὑπάγεται ἡμᾶς μένειν, διὰ τὸ
now indeed he-deceitfully-leads us to-stay, | on-account-of the

διεσπάρθαι αὐτῷ τὸ στράτευμα·
to-have-dispersed to-him the army; [on account of the dis-

δὲ ἡ στρατιὰ πάλιν
persed state of his army]; | but (when) the army again

ἐπὴν ἁλισθῇ αὐτῷ,
was-there (and) may-have-been-taken (or re-assembled) by-him, [but when

οὐκ ἔστιν
his army is again collected together by him], it-will not be

ὅπως οὐκ ἐπιθήσεται ἡμῖν. Ἴσως δὲ
that he-will not attack us. Perhaps indeed he-is

ἢ ἀποσκάπτει τι, ἢ ἀποτειχίζει,
either digging-out some (trench), or building-a-wall-against (us),

ὡς ἡ ὁδὸς ᾖ ἄπορος. Γὰρ οὐκ ἐκών
so-that the road may-be impassable. For he-will not willingly

γε βουλήσεται ἡμᾶς ἐλθόντας εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα
at-least consent for-us going-back to — Greece

ἀπαγγεῖλαι, ὡς ἡμεῖς, ὄντες τοσοίδε, ἐνικῶμεν
to-relate, that we, being so-few, | defeated

τὸν βασιλέα ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις αὐτοῦ,
the king at the gates of-him, [defeated the

καὶ καταγελάσαντες ἀπήλ-
king at his palace], and having-laughed-at-him we-de-

θομεν.
parted (home).

Δὲ Κλέαρχος ἀπεκρίνατο τοῖς ταῦτα λέ-
But Clearchus replied to — (those) thus ad-

γουσιν· Ἐγὼ μὲν καὶ ἐνθυμοῦμαι πάντα
dressing (him)· I indeed also am-thinking-about all

ταῦτα· δ' ἐννοῶ, ὅτι εἰ νῦν ἄπιμεν δόξομεν
this; but I-think, that if 'we now 'go-away we-will-seem

ἀπιέναι ἐπὶ πολέμῳ, καὶ ποιεῖν παρὰ τὰς σπονδάς.
to-go-away for war, and to-act contrary to-the truce.

Ἔπειτα πρῶτων μὲν οὐδεὶς παρέξει ἡμῖν ἀγοράν,
Next-then first indeed no-one will-provide us (a) market,

οὐδὲ ὅθεν ἐπισιτιούμεθα· αὖθις
nor (will there be a place) whence we-would-procure-provisions; again

δὲ ἔσται οὐδεὶς ὁ ἡγησόμενος·
in the second place) — | there-will-be no-one — hereafter-guiding-us;

καὶ ἅμα ἡμῶν ποιούντων
[we will have no guides]; and at-the-same-time we are-doing

ταῦτα Ἀριαῖος εὐθὺς ἀφεστήξει· ὥστε
this Ariæus 'will immediately 'separate (from us); so-that

οὐδεὶς λελείψεται φίλος ἡμῖν, ἀλλὰ καὶ οἱ
no-one will-be-left (a) friend to-us, but also — (those)

πρόσθεν ὄντες ἔσονται πολέμιοι ἡμῖν. Δ'
formerly being (our friends) will-become hostile to-us. But

ἄρα μὲν εἰ ἔστι τις ἄλλος ποταμὸς καὶ
whether indeed — there-is any other river also

διαβατέος ἡμῖν, οἶδα οὐκ· δ' οὖν ἴσμεν
necessary-to-pass-over by-us, I-know not: but therefore-then we-know

ὅτι διαβῆναι τὸν Εὐφράτην ἀδύματον πολεμίων
that to-have-crossed the Euphrates (is) impossible (the) enemy

κωλυόντων. Δή μὲν ἂν οὐ δέῃ γε
prohibiting (us). Truly indeed 'it might not 'be-proper (for us) at-least

μάχεσθαι, ξύμμαχοι ἱππεῖς εἰσιν ἡμῖν·
to-fight, (for) auxiliary cavalry is to-us (nowhere)

δὲ ἱππεῖς τῶν πολεμίων εἰσιν οἱ πλεῖστοι καὶ
but (the) cavalry of-the enemy is — numerous and

ἄξιοι πλείστου· ὥστε νικῶντες τίνα μὲν
|worthy of-much; [efficient]; so-that conquering how-many indeed

ἂν ἀποκτείναιμεν; δὲ ἡττωμένων οἷόν τε
might we-kill? but being-defeated (it would be) possible

σωθῆναι οὐδένα. Ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν
to-save none. I indeed therefore (as respects the)

βασιλέα ᾧ ἐστι οὕτω πολλά τὰ σύμμαχα,
king to-whom there-are so many — auxiliaries,

εἴπερ προθυμεῖται ἀπολέσαι ἡμᾶς, οὐκ
if he-desires to-destroy us, 'I (I say) 'do not

οἶδα ὅ τι δεῖ αὐτὸν ὀμόσαι, καὶ δοῦναι
'know what need (there was that) he swore, and gave

δεξιὰν, καὶ ἐπιορκῆσαι θεους, καὶ
(the) right-hand, and perjured-himself 'before (the) 'gods, and

ποιῆσαι τὰ πιστὰ ἑαυτοῦ ἄπιστα τε
made the pledges of-himself faithless (even) not-only

Ἕλλησι καὶ βαρβάροις. Ἔλεγε πολλὰ
'to (the) 'Greeks but-also 'to (the) 'barbarians. He-said much

τοιαῦτα.
thus.

Δὲ ἐν τούτῳ Τισσαφέρνης ἦκε, ἔχων τὴν
But during this (time) Tissaphernes came, | having the

δύναμιν ἑαυτοῦ, ὡς ἀπιών οἶκον,
forces of-himself, [having his army with him], as-if returning home,

καὶ Ὁρόντας τὴν δύναμιν ἑαυτοῦ·
and-also Orontas (came having) the forces of-himself;

ἦγε δὲ καὶ τὴν θυγατέρα βασιλέως
'he (Orontas) 'brought — also the daughter 'of (the) 'king

τὴν ἐπὶ γάμῳ. Ἐντεῦθεν ἤδη δὲ ἐπο-
the (one) on marriage. Hence 'they now indeed 'pro-

ρεύοντο Τισσαφέρνους ἡγουμένου
ceeded (on their march), Tissaphernes guiding (them),

καὶ παρέχοντος ἀγορὰν Δὲ καὶ
and providing (them a) market (for provisions). And also

Ἀριαῖος ἔχων τὸ βαρβαρικὸν στράτευμα
Ariæus having (and commanding) the barbarian army

Κύρου ἐπορεύετο, ἅμα Τισσαφέρνει καὶ Ὀρόντᾳ,
of-Cyrus marched, together-with Tissaphernes and Orontas,

καὶ ξυνεστρατοπεδεύετο σὺν ἐκείνοις. Δὲ οἱ
and-also he-encamped-together with them. But the

Ἕλληνες ὑφορῶντες τούτους, αὐτοί
Greeks suspecting these-men, they [the Greeks]

ἐχώρουν ἐφ' ἑαυτῶν ἔχοντες ἡγεμόνας.
went by themselves having guides (of their own).

Δὲ ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἑκάστοτε ἀπέχοντες ἀλλή-
And they-encamped each-time being-distant from-one-

λων παρασάγγην καὶ μεῖον. Δὲ ἀμφότεροι
another (a) parasang (or) even less. But both

ἐφυλάττοντο ὥσπερ πολεμίους ἀλλήλους,
(parties) guarded-themselves as-if enemies to-one-another

καὶ εὐθὺς τοῦτο παρεῖχεν ὑποψίαν.
and immediately this excited (and increased) mistrust (and

Ἐνίοτε δὲ καὶ ξυλιζόμενοι ἐκ τοῦ
suspicion). Sometimes — also (when) gathering-wood from the

αὐτοῦ, καὶ ξυλλέγοντες χόρτον καὶ
same (place), and were (also) collecting grass and

ἄλλα τοιαῦτα, ἐνέτεινον πληγὰς ἀλλήλοις·
other such (things), they-stretched-out blows to-one-another;

ὥστε
[they stretched out their arms threatening, or giving blows], so-that

τοῦτο καὶ παρεῖχε ἔχθραν. Δὲ διελ-
this also caused-more animosity (between them). And having-

θόντες τρεῖς σταθμοὺς ἀφίκοντο πρὸς τὸ τεῖχος
gone-through three days'-march they-arrived at the wall

καλούμενον Μηδίας, καὶ παρῆλθον εἴσω
called (the wall of) Media, and they-passed-through within

αὐτοῦ. Δὲ ἦν ᾠκοδομημένον ὀπταῖς
it. And (this wall) was built-of burnt

πλίνθοις, κειμέναις ἀσφάλτῳ, εὖρος
bricks, laid in-bitumen, (the) breadth (of this wall was)

εἴκοσι ποδῶν, δὲ ὕψος ἑκατόν· δὲ μῆκος
twenty feet, and (the) height a-hundred-feet; and (the) length

ἐλέγετο εἶναι εἴκοσι παρασαγγῶν· δὲ οὐ
was-said to-be twenty parasangs; and it-'was not

πολύ ἀπέχει Βαβυλῶνος. Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν
much 'distant from-Babylon. Hence — they-proceeded

δύο σταθμοὺς ὀκτώ παρασάγγας, καὶ διέ-
two days'-march (making) eight parasangs, and they-

βησαν δύο διώρυχας, τὴν μὲν ἐπὶ
crossed two canals, the (one) indeed on (a permanent)

γεφύρας, δὲ τὴν
bridge, but the (other they crossed on a temporary bridge) 'having

ἐζευγμένην ἑπτά πλοίοις· δ' αὗται
(its banks) 'joined-together by-seven boats; and these (canals)

ἦσαν ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ Τίγρητος· δὲ καὶ
were (conducted) from the river Tigris; and also

τάφροι κατετέτμηντο ἐξ αὐτῶν ἐπὶ τὴν χώραν,
litches had-been-cut from them over the country,

αἱ μὲν πρῶται μεγάλαι, δ' ἔπειτα ἐλάττους,
which indeed first (were) large, but afterwards less,

δὲ καὶ τέλος μικροὶ ὀχετοὶ ὥσπερ ἐπὶ
and also at-last (only) small drains (or streams) as in

τὰς μελίνας ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι. Καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται
the panic (fields) in — Greece. And (then) they-arrived

ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν Τίγρητα· πρὸς ᾧ ἦν
at the river Tigris; near to-which there-was (a)

μεγάλη καὶ πολυάνθρωπος πόλις ὄνομα ᾗ
large and populous city (the) name to-which

Σιττάκη, ἀπέχουσα τοῦ ποταμοῦ πεντεκαίδεκα
(was) Sittace, being-distant from-the river fifteen

σταδίους. Οὖν μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐσκήνησαν παρ'
stadia. Therefore indeed the Greeks encamped near

αὐτὴν, ἐγγὺς μεγάλου καὶ καλοῦ παραδείσου
it (and) close to (a) large and beautiful park

καὶ δασέος παντοίων δένδρων· δὲ οἱ βάρβαροι,
and thick with-all-kind of-trees; but the barbarians,

διαβεβηκότες τὸν Τίγρητα· ἦσαν οὐ μέντοι
having-crossed the (river) Tigris; they-were not however

καταφανεῖς.
visible

Μετὰ δὲ τὸ δεῖπνον Πρόξενος καὶ Ξενοφῶν
After — — supper Proxenus and Xenophon

ἔτυχον ὄντες ἐν περιπάτῳ πρὸ
happened being in walking [happened to be walking] before

τῶν ὅπλων· καὶ τις ἄνθρωπος προσελθὼν
the (place) of-arms; and a man approaching

ἠρώτησε τοὺς προφύλακας ποῦ ἂν ἴδοι Πρόξενον
inquired of-the sentinels where he might see Proxenus

ἢ Κλέαρχον· δὲ οὐκ ἐζήτει Μένωνα, καὶ
or Clearchus; but he did not inquire for-Menon, and

ταῦτα ὢν παρ' Ἀριαίου, τοῦ ξένου Μένωνος.
this being from Ariæus, the guest-friend of-Menon.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ Πρόξενος εἶπεν ὅτι εἰμι αὐτός ὃν ζητεῖς,
Then indeed Proxenus said (*that*) I-am he whom you-seek

ὁ ἄνθρωπος εἶπε τάδε· Ἀριαῖος καὶ Ἀρτάοζος
the man (then) spoke thus: Ariæus and Artaozus

ὄντες πιστοὶ Κύρῳ καὶ εὖνοι ὑμῖν,
being faithful (friends) to-Cyrus and well-disposed towards-you

καὶ κελεύουσι φυλάττεσθαι, μὴ οἱ βάρβαροι
— exhort-you to-be-on-your-guard, lest the barbarians

ἐπιθῶνται τῆς νυκτὸς· δὲ ἔστι πολὺ στράτευμα
fall-upon-you in-the night; for there-is (a) numerous army

ἐν τῷ πλησίον παραδείσῳ. Καὶ κελεύουσι
in the neighbouring park. They also request-you

πέμψαι φυλακὴν ἐπὶ τὴν γέφυραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ
to-send (a) guard to the bridge of-the river

Τίγρητος, ὡς Τισσαφέρνης διανοεῖται λῦσαι αὐτὴν
Tigris, as Tissaphernes designed to-break it

τῆς νυκτός, ἐὰν δύνηται, ὡς μὴ
down in-the night, if he-can, so-that you-can not

διαβῆτε, ἀλλ' ἀποληφθῆτε ἐν μέσῳ
'cross, but (will be) intercepted in middle (space between)

τοῦ ποταμοῦ καὶ τῆς διώρυχος. Ἀκούσαντες
the river and the canal. Hearing

ταῦτα ἄγουσιν αὐτὸν παρὰ τὸν Κλέαρχον,
these (things) they-lead him to — Clearchus,

καὶ φράζουσιν ἃ λέγει. Ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος
and told (him) what he-said. But — Clearchus

ἀκούσας σφόδρα ἐταράχθη καὶ ἐφοβεῖτο.
hearing (this) 'was greatly 'agitated and alarmed.

Εἴ τις νεανίσκος τῶν παρόντων ἐννοήσας
But a-certain young-man of-those present having-reflected (thereon)

εἶπεν, ὡς τε τὸ ἐπιθήσεσθαι, καὶ τὸ λύσειν
said, that not-only the making-an-attack, but-also the breaking

τὴν γέφυραν εἴη οὐκ ἀκόλουθα. Γὰρ δῆλον
the bridge were not consistent. For (it is) evident

ὅτι ἐπιτιθεμένους δεήσει ἢ νικᾶν ἢ
that attacking (us) it-will-be-necessary either to-conquer or

ἡττᾶσθαι. Ἐὰν οὖν μὲν νικῶσι, τί
to-be-conquered. If therefore indeed they-should-conquer, what

δεῖ αὐτοὺς λύειν τὴν γέφυραν; γὰρ οὐδὲ
is-the-necessity for-them to-break-down the bridge? for neither

ἂν ὦσιν πολλαὶ γέφυραι, ἂν ἔχοιμεν ὅποι
if there-were many bridges, would we-have where

φυγόντες ἡμεῖς σωθεῖμεν. Δὲ ἐὰν ἡμεῖς
fleeing we might-save (ourselves). But if we

νικῶμεν τῆς γεφύρας λελυμένης οὐχ
conquer the bridge having-been-destroyed, they-'would not

ἕξουσιν ὅποι ἐκεῖνοι φύγωσιν· οὐδὲ μὲν
'have where they might-flee; | neither indeed [nor]

οὐδεὶς πέραν
| 'will none [will any] (of their friends) on-the-other-side (of the river)

ὄντων πολλῶν δυνήσεται βοηθῆσαι αὐτοῖς
being (ever so) many 'be-able to-assist them

τῆς γεφύρας λελυμένης.
the bridge being-destroyed.

Ὁ Κλέαρχος ἀκούσας δὲ ταῦτα ἤρετο
— Clearchus having-heard — these (things) asked

τὸν ἄγγελον τις πόση εἴη χώρα ἣ
the messenger how much might-be (the) country (in extent) which

ἐν μέσῳ τοῦ Τίγρητος καὶ τῆς
(is situated) (*in the-middle*) (between) the Tigris and the

διώρυχος. Δὲ ὁ εἶπεν, ὅτι πολλή,
canal. And who said, that (it was) great (in extent),

καὶ ἔνεισι κῶμαι καὶ πόλεις πολλαὶ καὶ
and there-were-in-it villages and towns many and

μεγάλαι. Καὶ τότε δὴ ἐγνώσθη, ὅτι οἱ βάρβαροι
large. And then truly they-perceived, that the barbarians

ὑποπέμψαιεν τὸν ἄνθρωπον ὀκνοῦντες, μὴ οἱ
covertly-sent — (this) man fearing, lest the

Ἕλληνες, διελόντες τὴν γέφυραν, μένοιεν ἐν τῇ
Greeks, taking-to-pieces the bridge, might-remain in the

νήσῳ ἔχοντες ἐρύματα ἔνθεν μὲν τὸν Τίγρητα,
island having as-defences on-this (side) indeed the Tigris,

δὲ ἔνθεν τὴν διώρυχα, δ' ἔχοιεν τὰ ἐπιτή-
but on-the-other the canal, and they-might-have the necessa-

δεια ἐκ τῆς χώρας ἐν μέσῳ,
ries-of-life from the country | in (the) middle, [from the country

οὔσης πολλῆς
intervening between the river and canal], being great (in extent)

καὶ ἀγαθῆς, καὶ ἐνόντων τῶν
and of-good (quality of soil), and there-being-on-it — (those)

ἐργασομένων· δὲ καὶ εἶτα γένοιτο ἀπο-
capable-of-cultivating-it; and also afterwards might-become (a) place-

στροφή, εἴ τις βούλοιτο ποιεῖν κακῶς
of-refuge, if any-one might-wish to-do evil ¹to (the)

βασιλέα. Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀνεπαύοντο· μέντοι
king. After this they-went-to-rest; however they

ὅμως ἔπεμψαν φυλακὴν ἐπὶ τὴν γέφυραν· καὶ
likewise ¹sent (a) guard to the bridge; and

οὔτε οὐδεὶς ἐπέθετο οὐδαμόθεν, οὔτε
neither ¹did (*no-one*) (any one) ¹attack-them from-any-quarter, nor

οὐδεὶς τῶν πολεμίων ἦλθε πρὸς τὴν
did — (any one) of-the enemy ¹go to the

γέφυραν, ὡς οἱ φυλάττοντες ἀπήγγελλον.
bridge, as — (those) guarding-it reported.

Δὲ ἐπειδὴ ἐγένετο ἕως, διέβαινον τὴν γέφυραν,
And when it-became day-light, they-crossed the bridge,

ἐζευγμένην τριάκοντα καὶ ἑπτὰ πλοίοις,
joined-together by (or formed of) thirty and seven boats,

ὡς πεφυλαγμένως οἷόν τε μάλιστα·
as cautiously as indeed most (could be); [with

γὰρ τινες τῶν Ἑλλήνων παρὰ
the greatest caution]; for some of-the Greeks from

Τισσαφέρνους ἐξήγγελλον, ὡς μέλλοιεν
Tissaphernes announced, that ¹they (the enemy) ²intended

ἐπιθήσεσθαι διαβαινόντων. Ἀλλὰ μὲν
to-attack (them) crossing (the bridge). But even

ταῦτα ἦν ψευδῆ· διαβαινόντων μέντοι ὁ Γλοῦς
his was false; crossing-over however — Glus

ἐπεφάνη μετ' ἄλλων, σκοπῶν εἰ διαβαίνοιεν
appeared with others, observing if they-crossed

τὸν ποταμόν· δὲ ἐπειδὴ εἶδεν, ἀπελαύνων
the river; but when he-saw (that they did) riding-away

ὤχετο.
he-hastened.

Ἀπὸ δὲ τοῦ Τίγρητος ἐπορεύθησαν τέτταρας
From — the Tigris they-proceeded four

σταθμούς, εἴκοσι παρασάγγας, ἐπὶ τὸν
days'-march, (making) twenty parasangs, to the

ποταμόν Φύσκον, τὸ εὖρος πλέθρου·
river Physcus, the breadth (thereof being) a-plethrum;

ἐπῆν δὲ γέφυρα. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα
²on (which) ¹there-was — (a) bridge. And here

ᾠκεῖτο μεγάλη πόλις, ᾗ ὄνομα Ὦπις·
was-situated (a) large town, to-which (the) name (was) Opis;

πρὸς ἣν ὁδὸς ἀδελφὸς Κύρου καὶ Ἀρταξέρξου,
near which (a) natural (or rather) of-Cyrus and Artaxerxes.

ὁ ἄγων πολλὴν στρατιὰν ἀπὸ Σούσων καὶ
who was-leading (a) numerous army from Susa and

Ἐκβατάνων, ὡς βοηθήσων βασιλεῖ, ἀπήντησε
Ecbatana, as assisting (the) king, met

τοῖς Ἕλλησι· καὶ ἐπιστήσας τὸ στράτευμα
the Greeks; and having-halted | the army

ἑαυτοῦ ἐθεώρει τοὺς Ἕλληνας παρερχομένους
of-himself [his army] he-viewed the Greeks passing-by

Ὁ δὲ Κλέαρχος ἡγεῖτο μὲν εἰς δύο,
— But Clearchus led — (his men) by two (abreast)

δὲ ἄλλοτε ἐπορεύετο καὶ ἄλλοτε ἐφιστάμενος.
but at-one-time he-marched-forward and at-another halting.

Ἐς ὅσον χρόνον ἐπιστήσειε τὸ ἡγούμενον τοῦ
And as-long (a) time (as) he-might-halt the van of-the

στρατεύματος, τοσοῦτον χρόνον ἦν ἀνάγκη
army, so-long (a) time it-was necessarily

τὴν ἐπίστασιν γίγνεσθαι δι' ὅλου τοῦ
(that a) — halt should-take-place through the-whole of-the

στρατεύματος· ὥστε τὸ στράτευμα καὶ τοῖς
army; so-that the army even to-the

Ἕλλησι αὐτοῖς δόξαι εἶναι πάμπολυ, καὶ τον
Greeks themselves seemed to-be very-large, and the

Πέρσην θεωροῦντα ἐκπεπλῆχθαι.
Persian (general) viewing (them) was-amazed.

Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῆς Μηδίας ἓξ
Hence — they-proceeded through — Media | six

ἐρήμους σταθμούς,
desert stations, [six days' march through a desert], (making)

τριάκοντα παρασάγγας, εἰς τὰς κώμας Παρυ-
thirty parasangs, to the villages of-Pary-

σάτιδος, τῆς μητρός Κύρου καὶ βασιλέως.
satis, the mother of-Cyrus and [1]of (the) [1]king.

Τισσαφέρνης ἐπεγγελῶν Κύρῳ ἐπέτρεψε τοῖς
Tissaphernes (as) insulting Cyrus permitted the

Ἕλλησι διαρπάσαι ταύτας, πλὴν
Greeks to-plunder these (villages), except (the)

ἀνδραπόδων. Ἐνῆν δὲ πολύς σῖτος, καὶ
slaves. There-was-in-them indeed much corn, also

πρόβατα, καὶ ἄλλα χρήματα. Ἐντεῦθεν δ'
sheep, and other things. Hence —

ἐπορεύθησαν τέτταρας ἐρήμους σταθμούς,
they-proceeded | four desert stations, [four days'

εἴκοσι παρασάγγας, ἔχοντες
march in the desert], (making) twenty parasangs, having

τὸν ποταμὸν Τίγρητα ἐν ἀριστερᾷ. Ἐν
the river Tigris on (their) left. In (the

δὲ τῷ πρώτῳ σταθμῷ, πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ,
end of) — the first days'-march, beyond the river,

ᾠκεῖτο μεγάλη καὶ εὐδαίμων πόλις,
there-was-situated (a) large and opulent town, (the)

ὄνομα Καιναί, ἐξ ἧς οἱ βάρβαροι
name (of which was) Cænæ, from which the barbarians

διῆγον ἐπὶ σχεδίαις διφθερίναις ἄρτους,
brought-over, on rafts (made of) skins, bread,

τυρούς, οἶνον.
cheese, wine.

## CHAPTER V.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν
After these (things) they-arrived at the river

Ζάπατον, τὸ εὖρος τεττάρων πλέθρων.
Zapata, (it having) the breadth of-four plethra.

Καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας· ἐν δὲ
And here they-remained three days; during —

ταύταις ἦσαν μὲν ὑποψίαι, δὲ
these (days) there-were indeed (the same) suspicions, but

οὐδεμία φανερὰ ἐπιβουλὴ ἐφαίνετο. Ἔδοξεν
no manifest plot appeared. It-seemed

οὖν τῷ Κλεάρχῳ ξυγγενέσθαι τῷ Τισσα-
therefore (good) — to-Clearchus to-have-a conference — with-Tissa-

φέρνει, καὶ εἴ πως δύναιτο, παῦσαι τὰς
phernes, and if in-any-manner he-could, to-put-an-end to — (these)

ὑποψίας, πρὶν πόλεμον γενέσθαι ἐξ αὐτῶν· καὶ
suspicions, before war should-arise from them; and

ἔπεμψέ τινα ἐροῦντα, ὅτι χρήζοι ξυγγενέσθαι
ne-sent some-one saying, that he-desired to-confer

αὐτῷ. Δὲ ὁ ἑτοίμως ἐκέλευεν ἥκειν. Ἐπειδὴ
with-him. And who promptly requested (him) to-come. When

δὲ ξυνῆλθον, ὁ Κλέαρχος λέγει τάδε· Ἐγώ, ὦ
indeed they-met, — Clearchus spoke thus: I, O

Τισσαφέρνη, οἶδα μὲν ὅρκους γεγενημένους
Tissaphernes, know indeed (that) oaths have-been-taken

ἡμῖν, καὶ δεξιὰς δεδομένας, μὴ ἀδικήσειν
between-us, and right-hands given, not to-injure

ἀλλήλους· δὲ ὁρῶ σέ τε φυλαττόμενον ὡς
one-another; but I-see you not-only guarding-yourselves as-if

ἡμᾶς πολεμίους, καὶ ἡμεῖς, ὁρῶντες ταῦτα,
we (were) enemies, but-also we, perceiving these

ἀντιφυλαττόμεθα. Ἐπεὶ δὲ σκοπῶν
(things), are-on-our-guard-against (you). After indeed considering

οὐ δύναμαι αἴσθεσθαι οὔτε σὲ
(attentively), I-am not [1]able to-perceive (*neither*) you

πειρώμενον ποιεῖν ἡμᾶς κακῶς, ἐγώ τε σαφῶς
striving to-do us ill, I indeed clearly

οἶδα ὅτι ἡμεῖς γε οὐδ' ἐπινοοῦμεν οὐδέν
know that we at-least neither intend (*nothing*) (any thing)

τοιοῦτον, ἔδοξέ μοι ἐλθεῖν εἰς λόγους
of-this-sort (toward you), it-seemed to-me (best) to-come to (a) conference

σοι, ὅπως εἰ δυναίμεθα ἐξέλοιμεν τὴν ἀπιστίαν
with-you, so-that if we-can we-may-remove the mistrust

ἀλλήλων. Γὰρ καὶ ἤδη οἶδα ἀνθρώπους,
of-one-another. For indeed [1]I now [1]know men,

τοὺς μὲν ἐκ διαβολῆς, δὲ καὶ τοὺς
— (some) indeed from direct-accusation, but also — (others)

ἐξ ὑποψίας, οἳ φοβήθεντες ἀλλήλους βουλόμενοι,
from suspicion, who having-feared one-another (and) wishing

φθάσαι πρὶν παθεῖν
to-have-anticipated (in inflicting injury) before suffering (any)

ἐποίησαν ἀνήκεστα κακὰ τοὺς οὔτε μέλ-
have-done irremediable evils to — (those) neither intend

λοντας οὔτ' αὖ βουλομένους οὐδέν
ing nor moreover wishing (*nothing*) (any thing) ¹of (the)

τοιοῦτον. Νομίζων οὖν τὰς τοιαύτας
¹kind. Thinking therefore (that) — such-kinds-of

ἀγνωμοσύνας ἂν παύεσθαι μάλιστα συνουσίαις,
misunderstandings may be-made-to-cease most-of-all by-meeting-together,

ἥκω, καὶ βούλομαι διδάσκειν σε, ὡς σὺ
I-come (then), and am-desirous to-inform you, that you ¹do

οὐκ ὀρθῶς ἀπιστεῖς ἡμῖν. Γὰρ μὲν πρῶτον καὶ
not rightly ¹mistrust us. For indeed first and

μέγιστον, οἱ ὅρκοι θεῶν κολύουσι
principally, the oaths (taken in the name) ¹of (the) ²gods forbid

ἡμᾶς εἶναι πολεμίους ἀλλήλοις· ὅστις δὲ τούτων
us to-be enemies to-one-another; whoever indeed of-these

σύνοιδεν αὐτῷ παρημεληκώς, τοῦτον
is-conscious to-himself (of) having-disregarded (these things), this-one

ἐγῶ ἂν οὔποτ' εὐδαιμονίσαιμι. Γὰρ τὸν
I could never (esteem) happy. For (from) the

πόλεμον θεῶν οἶδα οὐκ, οὔτ' ἀπὸ ποίου
hostility ¹of (the) ²gods I-know not, neither | from [with] what-degree

ἂν τάχους οὔτε ὅποι τις φεύγων ἂν ἀποφύγοι,
— of-speed nor where any-one fleeing may escape,

οὔτ' εἰς ποῖον σκότος ἂν ἀποδραίη, οὔθ' ὅπως
neither into what darkness ¹he might ²flee-away, nor how

ἂν ἀποσταίη εἰς ἐχυρὸν χωρίον,
he could ¹retreat into (a) fortified place (and escape from

γὰρ πάντη πάντα ὕποχα τοῖς θεοῖς, καὶ
them), for everywhere all (is) subject to-the gods, and

οἱ θεοὶ κρατοῦσι παντα χῇ πάντων ἴσον. Οὕτω
the gods rule everywhere over-all-things alike. Thus

γιγνώσκω δὴ μὲν περὶ τῶν θεῶν τε καὶ
do-I-¹hink truly indeed respecting the gods, and also

τῶν ὅρκων, παρ' οἷς ἡμεῖς, συνθέμενοι,
— (respecting) oaths, with whom we, having-concurred

κατεθέμεθα τὴν φιλίαν· δὲ τῶν
(with one another), have-deposited — (our) friendship; but —

ἀνθρωπίνων ἐγὼ νομίζω σὲ ἐν τῷ παρόντι
of-all-human-things I consider you at the present (time)

εἶναι μέγιστον ἀγαθόν ἡμῖν. Γὰρ μὲν σὺν σοὶ
to-be the-greatest good to-us. For indeed with you

πᾶσα μὲν ὁδὸς εὔπορος, δὲ πᾶς ποταμὸς
every — road (is) easy, and every river

διαβατός, οὐκ ἀπορία τε τῶν ἐπιτηδείων·
passable, (there is) no want indeed of-the necessaries-of-life;

δὲ ἄνευ σοῦ πᾶσα ἡ ὁδὸς μὲν διὰ σκότους
but without you (our) entire — route — (will be) through darkness

(γὰρ ἐπιστάμεθα οὐδὲν αὐτῆς), δὲ πᾶς ποταμὸς
(for we-know nothing of-it), and every river

δύσπορος, δὲ πᾶς ὄχλος
(would be) difficult-in-crossing, also every multitude-of-men (would be)

φοβερός, δὲ ἐρημία φοβερώτατον· γὰρ
terrible, but solitude (would be) the-most-terrible (thing); for

ἐστί μεστὴ πολλῆς ἀπορίας. Δὲ εἰ
it-is full of-every want (and difficulty). But if

δὴ καὶ μανέντες κατακτείναιμεν σε, ἄν τι
truly having even become-mad we-should-kill you, would

τι ἄλλο κατακτείναντες τὸν εὐερ-
any-thing else (happen) having-slain — (our) bene-

γέτην ἀγωνιζοίμεθα πρὸς βασιλέα
factor, (but that) we-should-have-to-contend with (the) king

τὸν μέγιστον ἔφεδρον; ὅσων καὶ δὲ δὴ οἵων
the greatest avenger? of-how-many, and indeed truly how-great

ἐλπίδων ἂν στερήσαιμι ἐμαυτόν, εἰ ἐπιχειρήσαιμι
expectations I-should deprive myself, if I-should-attempt

ποιεῖν σέ τι κακόν, ταῦτα λέξω. Ἐγὼ
to-do you any harm, this I-will-tell (you). I

γὰρ ἐπεθύμησά Κῦρον γενέσθαι φίλον μοι
therefore desired Cyrus to-become (a) friend to-me

νομίζων τῶν τότε εἶναι ἱκανώτατον
thinking (him) of-the (men) at-that-time to-be the-most-apt

ποιεῖν εἴ τι ὃν βούλοιτο· δὲ νῦν ὁρῶ
to-do good to-whom he-wished (to do so); but ¹I now ²see

σὲ ἔχοντα τε τήν δύναμιν καὶ χώραν Κύρου,
you having not-only the power and territory of-Cyrus,

καὶ σώζοντα τὴν ἀρχὴν σεαυτοῦ, δὲ τὴν
but-also retaining the government of-yourself. but the

δύναμιν βασιλέως, ἣ Κῦρος ἐχρῆτο
power ¹of (the) ²king, which Cyrus experienced (as)

πολεμίᾳ, ταύτην οὖσαν ξύμμαχον σοί.
hostile, this (power) being (now an) ally to-you.

Δὲ τούτων ὄντων τοιούτων, τίς
But these (things) being in-this-manner, (is there) any-one (who)

οὕτω μαίνεται, ὅστις οὐ βούλεταί εἶναι
is so ¹mad, who ²would not ³wish to-be (a)

φίλος σοι; Ἀλλὰ μὴν (γὰρ ἐρῶ καὶ ταῦτα
friend to-you? But truly (for I-will-mention also those

ἐξ ὧν ἔχω ἐλπίδας, καὶ σε βουλή-
(things) from which I-have hopes, (that) even you will-

σεσθαι εἶναι φίλον ἡμῖν), γὰρ μὲν οἶδα
desire to-be (a) friend of-us), for indeed I-know ¹of (the)

Μυσοὺς ὄντας λυπηροὺς ὑμῖν, οὓς νομίζω
²Mysians being troublesome to-you, whom, I-am-of-opinion (that)

σὺν τῇ παρούσῃ δυνάμει ἂν παρασχεῖν
with the present (Grecian) force, ¹I could ²render

ταπεινοὺς ὑμῖν· δὲ καὶ οἶδα Πισίδας·
submissive to-you; so also I-know (that the) Pisidians (annoy

δὲ καὶ ἀκούω εἶναι πολλὰ ἄλλα ἔθνη
you); and also I-hear (that) there-are many other nations

τοιαῦτα ἃ οἶμαι ἂν παῦσαι ἀεὶ
like-these (two mentioned) whom I-think (that) ¹I might ²prevent ever

ἐνοχλοῦντα τῇ ὑμετέρᾳ εὐδαιμονίᾳ. Δὲ
disturbing — your happiness. But (as respects the)

Αἰγυπτίους, οἷς νῦν γιγνώσκω ὑμᾶς
Egyptians, against-whom ¹I now ²know (that) you

μάλιστα τεθυμωμένους, οὐχ ὁρῶ ποιῳ
have-'been very-much 'excited, I-'do not 'see what

συμμάχῳ δυνάμει μᾶλλον χρησάμενοι
auxiliary force (which) having-'been rather 'used,

ἂν κολάσεσθε τῆς
'you might 'punish (them better than) — (with the force)

οὔσης νῦν σὺν ἐμοί. Ἀλλὰ μὴν ἔν τοῖς γε
being now with me. But truly among — (those) at-least

οἰκοῦσι πέριξ σύ, εἰ μὲν βούλοιο εἶναι
(who) dwell round-about you, if indeed you-desired to-be (a)

φίλος τῳ, ὡς ἂν εἷς μέγιστος·
friend — (to-any), that 'you might 'be (the) greatest (possible)

δὲ εἴ τις λυτοίη σε, ἀναστρέφοιο ὡς
but if any-one offend you, you-might-deal (with them) as (a)

δεσπότης, ἔχων ἡμᾶς ὑπηρέτας, οἷ ἄν
master, having us for-assistants, — (for) 'we would

ὑπηρετοῖμεν σοι οὐκ ἕνεκα τοῦ μισθοῦ
'serve you not on-account-of — (our) pay

μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ τῆς χάριτος, ἧς,
alone, but also (on account of) the gratitude, which,

σωθέντες ὑπὸ σοῦ, ἂν δικαίως ἔχομεν σοι
having-been-saved by you, 'we might justly 'have to-you.

Ἐμοὶ μὲν δὴ ἐνθυμουμένῳ πάντα ταῦτα
I indeed — considering all these (things),

τὸ σὲ ἀπιστεῖν ἡμῖν δοκεῖ εἶναι.
the you to-distrust us [your distrusting us] seems to-be

οὕτω θαυμαστὸν, ὥστε ἂν ἥδιστ' καὶ ἀκούσαιμι
so wonderful, that 'I would most-gladly even 'have-heard

τὸ ὄνομα τίς ἐστὶ οὕτω δεινὸς λέγειν,
the name (of him) — [who] is so skilled to-speak,

ὥστε λέγων πεῖσαι σε ὡς ἡμεῖς ἐπιβουλεύομεν
that speaking to-have-persuaded you that we are-conspiring

σοι. Κλέαρχος μὲν οὖν εἶπε τοσαῦτα·
against-you. Clearchus indeed therefore spoke in-this-manner:

δὲ Τισσαφέρνης ἀπημείφθη ὧδε·
but Tissaphernes replied thus (as follows):

Ἀλλὰ μέν, ὦ Κλέαρχε, ἥδομαι ἀκούων
But indeed, O Clearchus, I-am-delighted hearing (the)

φρονίμους λόγους σου· γὰρ γιγνώσκων ταῦτα,
judicious discourse of-you; for knowing these

εἰ βουλεύοις τι κακὸν ἐμοί,
(your sentiments), if you-were-to-plan any-thing evil against-me,

ἅμα ἂν δοκεῖς μοι καὶ εἶναι κακόνους
at-the-same-time 'you would 'appear to-me even to-be evil-minded

σαυτῷ. Δ' ὡς ἂν μάθῃς, ὅτι ὑμεῖς ἂν οὐδὲ
to-yourself. But that 'you may 'learn, that you 'do not

δικαίως ἀπιστοίητε οὔτε βασιλεῖ οὔτ' ἐμοί,
justly 'mistrust either (the) king or me,

ἀντάκουσον. Γὰρ εἰ ἐβουλόμεθα ἀπολέσαι ὑμᾶς
listen-in-turn. For if we-wished to-destroy you

πότερα δοκοῦμεν σοι ἀπορεῖν πλήθους ἱππέων
whether do-we-seem to-you to-want (the) multitude of-cavalry,

ἢ πεζῶν ἢ ὁπλίσεως ἐν ᾗ ἂν εἴημεν ἱκανοὶ
or of-infantry or warlike-equipments by which 'we might 'be able

μὲν βλάπτειν ὑμᾶς, δὲ οὐδεὶς κίνδυνος,
indeed to-injure you, and (there would be) no danger

ἀντιπάσχειν; Ἀλλὰ ἂν δοκοῦμεν σοι ἀπορεῖν
to-undergo-in-return? But might we-seem to-you (as) wanting

χωρίων ἐπιτηδείων ἐπιτίθεσθαι ὑμῖν; μὲν
places suitable to-attack you? (are there not) indeed

τοσαῦτα πεδία ἃ οὐ ὄντα φίλια ὑμεῖς διαπορεύεσθε
so-many plains, which not being friendly you pass-through

σὺν πολλῷ πόνῳ, δὲ ὁρᾶτε τοσαῦτα
with much labour (and difficulty) and do-you-see the-many

ὄρη ὄντα πορευτέα ὑμῖν,
mountains | being to-be-crossed by-you, [that are to be crossed by you],

ἃ ἔξεστι ἡμῖν προκαταλαβοῦσι
which it-is-allowed us after-having-previously-taken-possession (of them)

παρέχειν ἄπορα ὑμῖν, δ' εἰσὶ τοσοῦτοι ποταμοὶ
to-render impassable to-you, and are-there (not) so-many rivers

ἐφ' ὧν ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν ταμιεύεσθαι
at which it-is-allowed us to-regulate (and determine)

ὁπόσοις ὑμῶν ἂν βουλώμεθα μάχεσθαι; δὲ
with-how-many of-you we might wish to-fight? and

εἰσὶ αὐτῶν οὓς ἂν οὐδὲ διαβαίητε
are-there (not some) of-these (rivers) which you could not cross

παντάπασι, εἰ ἡμεῖς μὴ διαπορεύοιμεν ὑμᾶς.
at-all, if we did not cross you over

Δ' εἰ ἐν πᾶσι τούτοις ἡττώμεθα, ἀλλὰ
But if in all these (things) we-should-fail, but (then)

γέ τοι τό πῦρ ἐστι κρεῖττον τοῦ καρποῦ
at-least — — | fire is better (than) the fruit

κατα-
(of the earth); [fire is master over the produce of the soil]; (for) burn-

καύσαντες ὃν ἡμεῖς ἂν δυναίμεθ' ἀντιτάξαι λιμὸν
ing which we would be-able to-oppose famine

ὑμῖν, ᾧ ὑμεῖς, οὐδ' εἰ εἴητε πάνυ ἀγαθοί,
to-you, against-which you, neither if you-were ever-so brave,

ἂν δύναισθε μάχεσθαι. Πῶς οὖν ἄν, ἔχοντες
could you-be-able to-contend How-then therefore if, having

τοσούτους πόρους πρὸς τὸ πολεμεῖν ὑμῖν
so-many means | for the to-wage-war with-you, [for

καὶ μηδένα τούτων ἐπικίνδυνον
waging war with you], and none of-these dangerous

ἡμῖν, ἔπειτα ἂν ἐκ παντων τούτων ἐξελοίμεθα
to-us, now-that we should of all these select

τοῦτον τὸν τρόπον, ὃς μὲν μόνος ἀσεβὴς
this — manner, which indeed alone (is) impious

πρὸς θεῶν, δὲ μόνος αἰσχρὸς πρὸς ἀνθρώπων;
before (the) gods, and alone (is) disgraceful before men?

Δὲ ἐστὶ παντάπασιν ἄπορων
But it-is altogether (the part of men) perplexed-by-difficulties,

καὶ ἀμηχάνων καὶ ἐχομένων ἀνάγκῃ, καὶ
and destitute-of-means, and held by-necessity, and

τούτων πονηρῶν, οἵτινες ἐθέλουσι
these (being) wicked (by nature), who desire

πράττειν τι τε δι' ἐπιορκίας πρὸς θεούς,
to-effect any-thing no only by perjury to (the) gods.

καὶ ἀπιστίας πρὸς ἀνθρώπους. Ἡμεῖς, ὦ Κλέαρχε,
but-also perfidy to men. We, O Clearchus,

ἐσμὲν οὐχ οὕτε οὕτως ἀλόγιστοι οὔτε ἠλίθιοι.
are not (*neither*) (either) so inconsiderate (*nor*) (or) foolish.

Αλλὰ τί δή, ἐξὸν ἀπολέσαι ὑμᾶς,
But why truly, it-being-allowed (us) to-have-destroyed you, | did-we

οὐκ ἤλθομεν ἐπὶ τοῦτο: ἴσθι
not go to this? [why did we not attempt it]? know

εὖ, ὅτι ὁ αἴτιος τούτου ἐμὸς ἔρως, ἐμὲ
well, that the cause of-this (was) my desire, | me

τὸ γενέσθαι πιστὸν τοῖς Ἕλλησι,
the to-become [for becoming] (a) faithful (friend) to-the Greeks

καὶ ᾧ ξενικῷ Κῦρος ἀνέβη πιστεύων
and with-which foreign (force) Cyrus went-up trusting (them)

διὰ μισθοδοσίας, τούτῳ
on-account-of (the) pay-given (them), with-this (force) (it is for)

ἐμὲ καταβῆναι ἰσχυρόν δι' εὐεργεσίας.
me to-go-down strengthen on-account-of benefits (bestowed

Δὲ ὅσα ὑμεῖς ἔστε
on them). But (as respects) how-many-things (in which) you are

χρήσιμοι μοι σὺ μὲν καὶ εἶπας τὰ,
useful to-me you have indeed even mentioned — (some of them),

δὲ τὸ μέγιστον ἐγὼ οἶδα· γὰρ μὲν ἔξεστι
but the greatest (of all) I-myself know; for indeed it-is-allowed

μόνῳ βασιλεῖ ἔχειν τὴν τιάραν ὀρθὴν ἐπὶ
alone to (the) king to-have the tiara upright on

τῇ κεφαλῇ, δ' ἴσως, τὴν ἐπὶ τῇ καρδίᾳ,
the head, but perhaps, — (that) on the heart,

ὑμῶν παρόντων, καὶ ἕτερος ἂν εὐπετῶς
you being-present (and assisting), even another may easily

ἔχοι.
have (so.)

Εἰπὼν ταῦτα ἔδοξε τῷ Κλεάρχῳ λέγειν
Saying these (things) he-seemed to — Clearchus to-speak

ἀληθῆ· καὶ εἶπεν· Οὐκ οὖν, ἔφη,
the-truth; and he-said· (Are) not (those) therefore, he-said

οἵτινες, τοιούτων εἰς φιλίαν ὑπαρχόντων
who, such-great (inducements) to friendship existing

ἡμῖν, διαβάλλοντες πειρῶνται ποιῆσαι ἥμας πολε-
to-us, calumniating endeavour to-make us mi-

μίους εἶσι ἄξιοι παθεῖν τὰ
mical (to one another) are (they not) worthy to-suffer the

ἔσχατα; Καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν γε ἔφη ὁ
extreme (of punishment)? And I indeed at-least said —

Τισσαφέρνης, εἰ τε οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ
Tissaphernes, if 'you as-also the generals and the

λοχαγοὶ βούλεσθε ἐλθεῖν μοι ἐν τῷ ἐμφανεῖ,
captains 'will come to-me in — (a) public

λέξω τοὺς λέγοντας πρὸς ἐμὲ, ὡς
(manner), I-will-mention — (those) telling — me, that

σὺ ἐπιβουλεύεις ἐμοὶ καὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ σὺν ἐμοί.
you are-conspiring-against me, and the army with me.

Δὲ ἐγὼ, ἔφη ὁ Κλέαρχος, ἄξω πάντας,
And I, said — Clearchus, will-bring (them) all,

καὶ αὖ δηλώσω σοι, ὅθεν ἐγὼ ἀκούω
and 'I in-return 'will-declare to-you, whence I hear (reports)

περὶ σοῦ. Ἐκ τούτων δὴ τῶν λόγων ὁ Τισσα-
about you. After these — — speeches — Tissa-

φέρνης φιλοφρονούμενος τότε τε
phernes treating-him-in-a-friendly-and-courteous-manner, then not-only

μὲν ἐκέλευσε αὐτὸν μένειν, καὶ ἐποιήσατο
indeed requested him to-remain, but-also made-him (a)

σύνδειπνον. Δὲ τῇ ὑστερίᾳ ὁ Κλέαρχος,
companion-at-supper. But on-the following-day — Clearchus,

ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, ἦν δῆλός τ'
going to the camp, was evidently not-only

οἰόμενος τὸν Τισσαφέρνην ἦν πάνυ φιλικῶς
thinking (that) — Tissaphernes was very kindly

διακεῖσθαι, καὶ ἀπήγγελλεν ἃ ἐκεῖνος
affected (towards him), but-also announced what he

ἔλεγεν· ἔφη τε χρῆναι ἰέναι παρὰ
said-mentioned; he-said (that) not-only (those) ought to-go to

Τισσαφέρνην, οὓς ἐκέλευσε, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων
Tissaphernes, whom he-called, but-also (those) of-the Greeks,

οἳ ἂν ἐλεγχθῶσι διαβάλλοντες,
who might be-convicted (as) calumniating (their countrymen',

αὐτοὺς τιμωρηθῆναι ὡς ὄντας προδότας καὶ
(that) those are-to-be-punished as being traitors and

κακόνους τοῖς Ἕλλησι. Δὲ ὑπώπτευε Μένωνα
evil-disposed to-the Greeks. For he-suspected (that) Menon

εἶναι τὸν διαβάλλοντα, καὶ εἰδὼς αὐτὸν
was the calumniator, even having-known him (as)

συγγεγενημένον Τισσαφέρνει μετ' Ἀριαίου,
having-been-with Tissaphernes (in company) with Ariæus,

καὶ στασιάζοντα αὐτῷ καὶ ἐπιβουλεύοντα,
both (as) forming-a-party against-himself, and (as) intriguing,

ὅπως λαβὼν τὸ ἅπαν στράτευμα πρὸς ἑαυτὸν
so-that having-secured the entire army for himself

ᾖ φίλος Τισσαφέρνει. Δὲ καὶ ὁ Κλέ-
he-might-be (a) friend to-Tissaphernes. But also — Cle-

αρχος ἐβούλετο τὸ ἅπαν στράτευμα ἔχειν τὴν
archus wished the entire army to-have —

γνώμην πρὸς ἑαυτὸν, καὶ τοὺς παραλυ-
(their) minds for him, and — (those) molest-

ποῦντας εἶναι ἐκποδών. Δὲ τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν
ing to-be removed-away. But some of-the soldiers

ἀντέλεγον αὐτῷ, πάντας τοῦς λοχα-
spoke-in-opposition to-him, [Clearchus], (that) all the cap-

γοὺς καὶ στρατηγούς μὴ ἰέναι, μηδὲ
tains and generals 'should not 'go, (and that) neither

πιστεύειν Τισσαφέρνει. Δὲ ὁ Κλέαρχος κατέτεινεν
should-'hey-trust Tissaphernes. But — Clearchus contended

ἰσχυρῶς ἔστε διεπράξατο μὲν πέντε στρατηγους
vehemently until he-obtained indeed five generals

δὲ εἴκοσι λοχαγούς ἰέναι· δὲ καὶ τῶν
and twenty captains ɔ-go (with him), and also (some) of-the

ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν ὡς διακόσιοι συνηκολούθησαν
other soldiers about two-hundred followed

ὡς εἰς ἀγορὰν.
as-if (going) to market.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις ταῖς Τισσα-
When indeed they-were at the gates of — Tissa-

φέρνους, οἱ στρατηγοὶ μὲν παρεκλήθησαν εἴσω,
phernes, the generals indeed were-invited within,

Πρόξενος Βοιώτιος, Μένων Θετταλὸς,
(these were) Proxenus (the) Bœotian, Menon (the) Thessalian,

Ἀγιας Ἀρκάς, Κλέαρχος Λάκων, Σω-
Agias (the) Arcadian, Clearchus (the) Lacedæmonian, (and) So-

κράτης Ἀχαιός· δὲ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἔμενον ἐπὶ
crates (the) Achæan; but the captains remained at

ταῖς θύραις. Οὐ πολλῷ δὲ ὕστερον, ἀπὸ τοῦ
the gates. Not long indeed after, at the

αὐτοῦ σημείου, τ' οἱ ἔνδον ξυνελαμβάνοντο
same signal, not-only — (those) within were-seized,

καὶ οἱ ἔξω κατεκόπησαν. Δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα
but-also — (those) without were-killed. And after this

τινὲς τῶν ἱππέων βαρβάρων, ἐλαύνοντες διὰ
some of-the cavalry of (the) barbarians, riding through

τοῦ πεδίου· ὅτινι Ἕλληνι ἐντυγχάνοιεν, ἢ
the plain; whatever Greek they-might-meet, either

δούλῳ ἢ ἐλευθέρῳ ἔκτεινον πάντας. Δὲ οἱ
slave or freeman they-killed (them) all. But the

Ἕλληνες ὁρῶντες ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου τὴν
Greeks observing from the camp — (this)

ἱππασίαν αὐτῶν τε ἐθαύμαζον, καὶ ἠμφιγνόουν
riding-about of-them were not-only astonished, but-also doubted

ὅ τι ἐποίουν, πρὶν Νίκαρχος Ἀρκὰς ἦκε φεύγων,
what they-were-doing, until Nicarchus (an) Arcadian came fleeing,

τετρωμένος εἰς τὴν γαστέρα, καὶ ἔχων τὰ
being-pierced in the belly, and having the

ἔντερα ἐν ταῖς χερσὶ,
intestines in — (his) hands, [and holding back the intestines with his

καὶ εἶπε πάντα τὰ γεγενημένα. Ἐκ τούτο
ands], and related all — (that) had-occurred. Upon this

δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔδεον ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα πάντες
indeed the Greeks ran to — (their) arms all

ἐκπεπληγμένοι, καὶ νομίζοντες
being-struck (with consternation), and thinking (that)

αὐτοὺς αὐτίκα ἥξειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.
they 'will immediately 'come against the camp.

Οἱ πάντες δὲ οὐκ ἦλθον, δὲ Ἀριαῖος καὶ
— All indeed 'did not 'go, but (only) Ariæus and

Ἀρτάοζος καὶ Μιθραδάτης, οἳ ἦσαν πιστότατοι
Artaozus and Mithradates, who were the-most-faithful

Κύρῳ· δὲ ὁ ἑρμηνεὺς τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔφη καὶ
to-Cyrus; but the interpreter of-the Greeks said (that) also

ὁρᾶν τὸν ἀδελφὸν Τισσαφέρνους σὺν αὐτοῖς,
he-saw the brother of-Tissaphernes with them,

καὶ γιγνώσκειν· δὲ καὶ ἄλλοι Περσῶν
and (that) he-knew (him); and also others 'of (the) 'Persians

εἰς τριακοσίους τεθωρακισμένοι ξυνηκο-
to-the-number-of three-hundred equipped-with-corselets accom-

λούθουν. Οὗτοι, ἐπεὶ ἦσαν ἐγγὺς, ἐκέλευον, εἰ
panied-them. These, when they-were near, requested, if

εἴη ἤ τις στρατηγὸς ἢ λοχαγὸς τῶν
there-were either any general or captain of-the

Ἑλλήνων, προσελθεῖν, ἵνα ἀπαγγείλωσι
Greeks, (them) to-come-forth, that they-may-deliver-a-message

τὰ παρὰ βασιλέως. Μετὰ ταῦτα στρατηγοὶ
— from (the) king. After this (the) generals

τῶν Ἑλλήνων μέν Κλεάνωρ Ὀρχομένιος καὶ
of-the Greeks, namely Cleanor (the) Orchomenian, and

Σοφαίνετος Στυμφάλιος, ἐξῆλθον φυλαττόμενοι,
Sophænetus (the) Stymphalian, went-forth guarded

Ξενοφῶν Ἀθηναῖος δὲ ξὺν
(and with precaution), Xenophon (the) Athenian (went) also with

αὐτοῖς, ὅπως μάθοι τὰ περὶ Προξένου·
them, that he-might-learn — (something) about Proxenus

(Χειρίσοφος δ' ἐτύγχανεν ἀπὼν ἐν τινι
(Cheirisophus — | happened being-absent [was absent] at a

κώμῃ ξὺν ἄλλοις ἐπισιτιζόμενος.) Δὲ ἐπεὶ
village with others seeking-for-provisions.) But when

ἔστησαν εἰς ἐπήκοον, Ἀριαῖος εἶπε τάδε·
they-stood in hearing (distance) Ariæus spoke thus:

Κλέαρχος μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες Ἕλληνες, ἐπεὶ τε
Clearchus indeed, O men Greeks, since he not-only

ἐφάνη ἐπιορκῶν, καὶ λύων τὰς σπονδὰς
appeared committing-perjury, but-also breaking the truce,

ἔχει τὴν δίκην καὶ τέθνηκε· δὲ
has-received — (his) just-punishment, and died; but

Πρόξενος καὶ Μένων, ὅτι κατήγγειλαν τὴν
Proxenus and Menon, because they-denounced the

ἐπιβουλήν, εἰσιν ἐν μεγάλῃ τιμῇ. Δὲ ὁ βασιλεὺς
plot, are in great honour. And the king

ἀπαιτεῖ ὑμᾶς τὰ ὅπλα· γὰρ φησίν εἶναι
demands of-you — (your) arms; for says-he | to-be

αὐτοῦ ἐπείπερ ἦσαν Κύρου
of-him [they are his] | because they-were of-Cyrus [because they be

τοῦ δούλου ἐκείνου.
longed to Cyrus] the slave (and subject) of-himself.

Πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀπεκρίναντο (δὲ
To this the Greeks answer (for

Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος ἔλεγε)· Ὦ Ἀριαῖε
Cleanor the Orchomenian spoke) (for them): O Ariæus,

κάκιστε ἀνδρώπων καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ὅσοι ἦτε φίλοι
most-wicked of-men, and the others as-many-as were friends

Κύρου οὐκ αἰσχύνεσθε οὔτε θεοὺς
of-Cyrus, do-you not respect (*neither*) (either) (the) gods

οὔτ' ἀνδρώπους, οἵτινες ὀμόσαντες νομεῖν τοὺς
(*nor*) (or) men, who having-sworn to-consider —

αὐτοὺς φίλους καὶ ἐχδροὺς ἡμῖν,
those friends and enemies to-us (to be the same to you),

προδόντες ἡμᾶς σὺν Τισσαφέρνει τῷ ἀθεωτάτῳ
betraying us with Tissaphernes the most-godless

τε καὶ πανουργοτάτῳ, ἀπολωλέκατε τε τοῦς
and also most-crafty, you-have-destroyed not-only the

αὐτούς ἄνδρας, οἷς ὤμνυτε, καὶ προδέδω-
very-same men, to-whom you-swore, but-also deserting-and-be-

κότες ἡμᾶς τοὺς ἄλλους ἔρχεσθε
traying | us the other [us, who are left] have-come

ἐφ' ἡμᾶς ξὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις; Δὲ ὁ Ἀριαῖος
against us with — (our) enemies? But — Ariæus

εἶπε· Γὰρ Κλέαρχος φανερὸς ἐγένετο πρόσθεν
said. For Clearchus evidently was before

ἐπιβουλεύων Τισσαφέρνει τε καὶ Ὀρόντᾳ καὶ
plotting-against Tissaphernes and also Orontes and

ἡμῖν πᾶσιν ξὺν τοῖς τούτοις. Ἐπὶ τούτοις
against-us all with — these. After this

Ξενοφῶν εἶπε τάδε· Κλέαρχος μὲν τοίνυν, εἰ
Xenophon spoke thus· Clearchus indeed therefore, if

ἔλυε τᾶς σπονδάς παρὰ τοὺς ὅρκους ἔχει
he-has-broken the truce contrary to — (his) oaths he-has

τὴν δίκην· γὰρ δίκαιον ἀπόλλυσθαι
— (his) just-punishment; for it-is-just to-destroy

τοὺς ἐπιορκοῦντας· δὲ Πρόξενος καὶ Μένων
— (those) perjuring-themselves, but Proxenus and-also Menon

ἐπείπερ εἰσὶν μὲν ὑμέτεροι εὐεργέται, δὲ ἡμέτεροι
since they-are indeed your benefactors, and our

στρατηγοί, πέμψατε αὐτοὺς δεῦρο· γὰρ δῆλον,
generals, send them hither; for (it is) clear,

ὅτι, ὄντες γε φίλοι ἀμφοτέροις, πειράσονται
that, being at-least friends to-both (parties), they-will-endeavour

ξυμβουλεύειν τὰ βέλτιστα καὶ ὑμῖν καὶ ἡμῖν.
to-advise the best both for-you and for-us.

Πρὸς ταῦτα οἱ βάρβαροι διαλεχθέντες πολὺν
After this the barbarians, having-conversed for-a-long

χρόνον ἀλλήλοις ἀπῆλθον ἀποκρινάμενοι οὐδέν.
time with-one-another, departed, having-answered nothing.

## CHAPTER VI.

Οἱ στρατηγοί μὲν δή, οὕτω ληφθέντες,
The generals indeed, thus taken (prisoners),

ἀνήχθησαν ὡς βασιλέα, καὶ τὰς
were-taken-up to (the) king, and having — (their)

κεφαλὰς ἀποτμηθέντες ἐτελεύτησαν· εἷς μὲν
heads having-cut-off died; one indeed

αὐτῶν Κλέαρχος ὁμολογουμένως ἐκ πάντων τῶν
of-them Clearchus by-general-account of all —

ἐχόντων ἐμπείρως αὐτοῦ, δόξας
(those) having experimentally (a knowledge) of-him, having-appeared

γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ καὶ ἐσχάτως πολεμικὸς
to-be [seemed to be] (a) man both extremely addicted-to-war

καὶ φιλοπόλεμος. Γὰρ καὶ δὴ
and fond-of-military (affairs and enterprises). For also truly

ἕως μὲν ἦν πόλεμος τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις
as-long-as indeed there-was war with-the Lacedæmonians

πρὸς τοὺς Ἀθηναίους, παρέμενε.
against the Athenians, he-remained (with the Lacedæmonians).

Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰρήνη ἐγένετο πείσας τὴν πόλιν
But when peace took-place having-persuaded the city

αὐτοῦ ὡς οἱ Θρᾷκες
of-himself [having persuaded Sparta, his city,] that the Thracians

ἀδικοῦσι τοὺς Ἕλληνας, καὶ διαπραξάμενος
were-committing-injuries on-the Greeks, and having-obtained

ὡς ἐδύνατο παρὰ τῶν Ἐφόρων
as-well-as he-could from the Ephori (the means to carry

ἐξέπλει ὡς πολεμήσων τοῖς Θρᾳξίν
on the war) he-sailed as about-making-war against-the Thracians

ὑπὲρ Χερρονήσου καὶ Περίνθου. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ
above (the) Chersonesus and Perinthus. But when the

Ἔφοροι πως μεταγνόντες, αὐτοῦ ὄντος
Ephori having some-how changed-their-minds, he being

ἤδη ἔξω, ἐπειρῶντο ἀποστρέφειν αὐτὸν
now without (their jurisdiction), they-endeavoured to-'turn him

ἐξ Ἰσθμοῦ, ἐνταῦθα οὐκέτι πείθεται,
back from (the) Isthmus, there he-'did not-any-longer 'obey.

ἀλλ' πλέων ᾤχετο εἰς Ἑλλήσποντον·
but sailing (away) he-proceeded to (the) Hellespont.

Καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἐθανατώθη ὑπὸ τῶν τελῶν
And for this he-was-condemned-to-death by the magistrates

ἐν τῇ Σπάρτῃ, ὡς ἀπειθῶν. Δὲ ὢν ἤδη
in — Sparta, as being-disobedient. But being now (an)

φυγὰς, ἔρχεται πρὸς Κύρον, καὶ μὲν ὁποίοις
exile, he-goes to Cyrus, and indeed by-what

λόγοις ἔπεισε Κῦρον γέγραπται
discourses (and means) he-persuaded Cyrus has-been-written

ἄλλῃ· δὲ Κῦρος δίδωσι αὐτῷ μυρίους
in-another-place; and Cyrus gave him ten-thousand

δαρεικούς. Δὲ ὁ λαβὼν οὐκ ἐτράπετο
darics. And who taking (this sum) 'did not 'turn-himself

ἐπὶ ῥᾳθυμίαν, ἀλλ' συλλέξας στράτευμα ἀπὸ
to idleness, but having-collected (an) army with

τούτων τῶν χρημάτων, ἐπολέμει τοῖς Θρᾳξί,
this-same — money, he-made-war with-the Thracians,

καὶ τε ἐνίκησε μάχῃ, καὶ δὴ ἔφερε καὶ
and not-only conquered (them) in-battle, but-also — took-away and

ἦγε ἀπὸ τοίτου τούτους, καὶ διεγένετο
led-away from this (country) all-things, and he-continued

πολεμῶν, μέχρι Κῦρος ἐδεήθη τοῦ στρατεύματος·
fighting, until Cyrus needed — (his) army:

δὲ τότε ἀπῆλθεν ὡς αὖ πολε-
and then departed (to go to him) that (he might be) again making-

μήσων ξὺν ἐκείνῳ.
war with him.

Δοκεῖ μοι ταῦτα οὖν εἶναι ἔργα
It-seems to-me (that) these therefore were (the) occupations

φιλοπολέμου, ὅστις ἐξὸν μὲν ἔχειν
of-one-fond-of-war, who when-it-was-allowed-him indeed to-have

εἰρήνην ἄνευ αἰσχύνης καὶ βλάβης, αἱρεῖται
peace without shame and detriment, he-chose

πολεμεῖν, δὲ ἐξὸν ῥᾳθυμεῖν,
to-make-war, and when-it-was-allowed-him to-lead-a-life-of-indolence,

βούλεται πονεῖν ὥστε πολεμεῖν,
he-wished to-undergo-severe-labour so-as to-be-engaged-in-war (with its

δὲ ἐξὸν ἔχειν χρήματα
toils and adventures), und when-it-was-allowed-him to-have riches

ἀκινδύνως, αἱρεῖται πολεμῶν ποιεῖν ταῦτα
without-danger, he-chose making-war to-make these (riches)

μείονα. Δὲ ἐκεῖνος ἤθελε δαπανᾶν εἰς πόλεμον
less. But he desired to-spend-his-money in war

ὥσπερ εἰς παιδικὰ ἢ εἰς τινὰ
as (he might have spent it) on (a) beloved-object, or on any

ἄλλην ἡδονήν· οὕτω μὲν ἦν φιλοπόλεμος.
other pleasure; so 'fond indeed was-he 'of-war.

Δὲ αὖ ἐδόκει εἶναι πολεμικὸς ταύτῃ, ὅτι
And again he-appeared to-be fitted-for-war in-this, that

τε ἦν φιλοκίνδυνος, καὶ ἄγων ἐπὶ τοὺς
not-only he-was fond-of-danger, | but-also marching against the

πολεμίους,
enemy, [but was always ready to lead his army against the enemy],

καὶ ἡμέρας καὶ νυκτός, καὶ ἐν τοῖς δεινοῖς
both by-day and night, and in — danger (was)

φρόνιμος, ὡς οἱ παρόντες
prudent-and-self-possessed, as — (those) being-present (with him)

πανταχοῦ πάντες ὡμολόγουν. Καὶ δ' ἐλεγέτο
in-any-place all confessed. And also he-was-said

εἶναι ἀρχικὸς ὡς δυνατὸν ἐκ τοῦ
to-be qualified-for-commanding in-as-much-as he-could-be from —

τοιούτου τρόπου, οἷον κἀκεῖνος εἶχεν. Γὰρ
such (a) disposition, as even-he had. For

μὲν ἦν ἱκανός, ὡς καὶ τις ἄλλος, φροντίζειν,
indeed he-was capable, (more) than even any other, to-take-care

ὅπως ἡ στρατιὰ ἕξει τὰ ἐπιτήδεια αὐτῷ, καὶ
how the army would have provisions for-itself, and

παρασκευάζειν ταῦτα· δὲ καὶ ἱκανὸς ἐμποι-
to-procure the-same; and also (he was) capable to-im-

ῆσαι τοῖς παροῦσιν, ὡς Κλεάρχῳ εἴη πειστέον.
press on — (those) present, that Clearchus was to-be-obeyed

Δὲ τοῦτο ἐποίει ἐκ τοῦ εἶναι χαλεπὸς·
And | this he-effected from — (that) to-be severe;

γὰρ καὶ ὁρᾶν ἦν
[this he effected by his severity]; for even to-look-at he-was

στυγνὸς, καὶ τῇ φωνῇ τραχὺς· τε
gloomy-and-stern, and in — (his) voice harsh; [1]he not-only

ἀεὶ ἐκόλαζέ ἰσχυρῶς, καὶ ἐνίοτε ὀργῇ, ὡς
always punished severely, but-also sometimes in-anger, so (that)

καὶ ἔσθ' ὅτε μεταμέλειν αὐτῷ. Καὶ δ' ἐκόλαζε
even [1]he sometimes [1]repented himself And also he-punished

Γνώμῃ· γὰρ ἡγεῖτο ἀκολάστου
according-to-rule (or on principle); for he-thought an-undisciplined

στρατεύματος εἶναι οὐδὲν ἄφελος. Ἀλλὰ καὶ
army to-be (of) no use. But even

ἔφασαν αὐτὸν λέγειν, ὡς δέοι τὸν
they-said (that) he (used) to-say, that it-becomes the

στρατιώτην φοβεῖσθαι τὸν ἄρχοντα μᾶλλον
soldier to-fear — (his) commander more

ἢ τοὺς πολεμίους, εἰ μέλλοι ἢ φυλάξειν
than the enemy, if he-[1]would either [2]keep

φυλακὰς, ἢ ἀφέξεσθαι φίλων, ἢ
guard [1]well, or abstain-from (doing injury to) friends, or

ἰέναι ἀπροφασίστως πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους. Μὲν
go without-hesitation against the enemy. Indeed

οὖν ἐν τοῖς δεινοῖς
therefore in — dangerous-and-frightful-circumstances (the soldiers)

σφόδρα ἤθελον ἀκούειν αὐτοῦ, καὶ
[1]were exceedingly [1]willing to-listen-to (and obey) him, and

οἱ στρατιῶται οὐκ ᾑροῦντο ἄλλον·
the soldiers [1]did not [1]wish-for another (commander),

γὰρ καὶ ἔφασαν τότε τὸ στρυγνὸν ἐν τοις
for indeed they-said (that) then the gloomy-sternness in the

προσώποις αὐτοῦ φαίνεσθαι φαιδρὸν, καὶ
countenance of-him appeared cheerful-and-animated, and

τὸ χαλεπὸν ἐδόκει εἶναι ἐῤῥωμένον πρὸς
— (his) severity seemed to-be what-was-strong-in-courage against

τοὺς πολεμίους· ὥστε ἐφαίνετο
the enemy so-that (his countenance) appeared (indicative or

σωτήριον, καὶ οὐκέτι χαλεπόν. Δ' ὅτε
saving-and-protecting, and no-longer severe. But when

γένοιντο ἔξω τοῦ δεινοῦ, καὶ ἐξείη
they-were out-of — danger, and it-might-be-allowed-them

ἀπιέναι πρὸς ἄλλους ἀρχομένους
to-go to others | as-persons-having-been-commanded, [as

πολλοὶ ἀπέλειπον αὐτόν· γὰρ εἶχεν οὐκ
soldiers], many left him; for he-had no

τὸ ἐπίχαρι, ἀλλ' ἦν ἀεὶ χαλεπὸς
agreeableness (or manners), but he-was always stern

καὶ ὠμός· ὥστε οἱ στρατιῶται διέκειντο πρὸς
and unfeeling; so-that the soldiers were-affected towards

αὐτὸν ὥσπερ παῖδες πρὸς διδάσκαλον. Καὶ
him as boys towards (their) teacher. And

γὰρ οὖν οὐδέποτε εἶχεν ἑπομένους
— therefore he never had (those) following (him)

φιλίᾳ καὶ μὲν εὐνοίᾳ· δὲ
through-friendship (or) even indeed being-well-disposed-towards-him; but

οἵτινες ἢ τεταγμένοι ὑπὸ πόλεως,
those-who either had-been-ordered (to the service) by (the) state,

ἢ κατεχόμενοι ὑπὸ τοῦ δεῖσθαι, ἢ τινὶ ἄλλῃ
or being-compelled by — want, or any other

ἀνάγκῃ παρείησαν αὐτῷ ἐχρῆτο
necessity, might-be-with him, he-made-use-of (as) being

σφόδρα πειθομένοις. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἤρξαντο νικᾶν
extremely obedient. And when they-began to-conquer

ξὺν αὐτῷ τοὺς πολεμίους, ἤδη ἦν τὰ ποιοῦντα
under him the enemy, | now were the doings

μεγάλα τοὺς στρατιώτας
great [the opportunities were then great] for the soldiers

συν αὐτῷ εἶναι χρησίμους· γὰρ τε τὸ ἔχειν
with him to-be useful-and-good; | for not-only the to-have

θαῤῥαλέως πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους παρῆν,
confidently against the enemy was-present (to them),

[for they had a perfect feeling of confidence, in their minds, against the

καὶ τὸ φοβεῖσθαι τὴν τιμωρίαν
enemy], but-also | the to-fear [the fear of] — punishment

παρ' ἐκείνου ἐποίει αὐτοὺς εὐτάκτους. Τοιοῦτος
from him made them well-disciplined. Such

μὲν δὴ ἦν ἄρχων· δὲ ἐλέγετο οὐκ ἐθέλειν
truly — was-he commanding; but he-was-said not to-wish

μάλα ἄρχεσθαι ἄλλων. Δὲ ἦν, ὅτε ἐτε-
much to-be-commanded by-others. And he-was, when he

λεύτα, ἀμφὶ τὰ πεντήκοντα ἔτη.
died, about — fifty (years of) age.

Πρόξενος δὲ ὁ Βοιώτιος ὢν εὐθὺς μὲν
Proxenus indeed the Bœotian (when) being just indeed (only a)

μειράκιον, ἐπεθύμει γενέσθαι ἀνὴρ ἱκανός
youth, desired to-become (a) man capable

πράττειν τὰ μεγάλα· καὶ διὰ ταύτην τὴν
to-perform — great-thing; and through this-same —

ἐπιθυμίαν ἔδωκε ἀργύριον Γοργίᾳ τῷ Λεοντίνῳ.
desire he-gave money to-Gorgias the Leontinian

Ἐπεὶ δὲ συνεγένετο ἐκείνῳ,
(for instruction). When indeed he-had-been-with him (some time),

νομίσας εἶναι ἤδη ἱκανὸς καὶ ἄρχειν,
having-thought (himself) to-be now qualified both to-command,

καὶ ὢν φίλος τοῖς πρώτοις
and, being (a) friend to-the first (or chief men, that) he-might

μὴ ἥττᾶσθαι εὐεργετῶν, ἤλθεν εἰς ταύτας τὰς
not be-inferior in-conferring-benefits, he-went on these-same —

πράξεις σὺν Κύρῳ· καὶ ᾤετο κτήσεσθαι
doings (expeditions) with Cyrus; and thought to-acquire

ἐκ τούτων μέγα ὄνομα, καὶ μεγάλην δύναμιν,
from this (a) great name, and great power,

καὶ πολλὰ χρήματα. Δ' ἐπιθυμῶν τοσούτων
and much money. But desiring these-same (things)

σφόδρα, καὶ αὖ εἶχεν ἔνδηλον, ὅτι
vehemently, he also on-the-other-hand had (this) evident, that he

ἂν θέλοι κτᾶσθαι οὐδὲν τούτων μετὰ ἀδικίας,
might wish to-acquire nothing of-these (things) by unjust-means,

ἀλλὰ ᾤετο τούτων δεῖν τυγχάνειν σὺν
but he-thought (that) such-things ought to-be-acquired by

τῷ δικαίῳ καὶ καλῷ, δὲ ἄνευ τούτων
— just and honourable (means), but without these

μή. Ἦν δὲ δυνατὸς ἄρχειν καλῶν μὲν
not (at all). He-was indeed competent to-command orderly —

καὶ ἀγαθῶν· μέντοι οὐχ ἱκανὸς ἐμποιῆσαι τοῖς
and good (men); however not capable to-impress the

στρατιώταις ἑαυτοῦ οὔτ' αἰδῶ οὔτε
soldiers of-himself (*neither*) (either) with-respect (*nor*) (or)

φόβον, ἀλλὰ καὶ μᾶλλον ᾐσχύνετω τοὺς
fear, but he-was even more in-awe (of) — (his)

στρατιώτας, ἢ οἱ ἀρχόμενοι
soldiers, than those under (his) command (were of)

ἐκεῖνον· καὶ ἦν φανερὸς μᾶλλον φοβούμενος
him; and he-was evidently more fearing

τὸ ἀπεχθάνεσθαι τοῖς στρατιώταις,
the to-be-hated — (by his) soldiers, [the hatred

ἢ οἱ στρατιῶται τὸ ἀπιστεῖν ἐκείνῳ.
of his soldiers], than the soldiers the to-disobey him

Δὲ ᾤετο ἀρκεῖν
[than his soldiers were to disobey him]. And he-thought (it) to-be-sufficient

πρὸς τὸ ἀρχικὸν καὶ δοκεῖν εἶναι ἐπαινεῖν
for — commanding, and to-seem to-be (so) to-praise

μὲν τὸν ποιοῦντα καλῶς, δὲ μὴ ἐπαινεῖν
indeed — (him) acting well, but not to-praise

τὸν ἀδικοῦντα. Τοιγαροῦν μὲν τῶν
— (him) acting-improperly. Therefore indeed of — (those)

συνόντων οἱ μὲν καλοί τε κἀγαθοὶ ἦσαν
with-him — (such) indeed (as were) orderly and also-good were

εὖνοι αὐτῷ, δὲ οἱ ἄδικοι ἐπεβούλευον
attached to-him, but — (such as were) wicked plotted-against (him)

ὡς ὄντι εὐμεταχειρίστῳ. Δὲ ὅτε ἀπέθνησκεν ἦν
as being easily-managed. And when he-died he-was

ὡς τριάκοντα ἐτῶν.
about thirty years (of age).

Δὲ Μένων ὁ Θετταλὸς ἦν δῆλος μὲν ἐπιθυμῶν
But Menon the Thessalian was evidently indeed desiring

ἰσχυρῶς πλουτεῖν, δὲ ἐπιθυμῶν ἄρχειν ὅπως
vehemently to-become-rich, and desiring to-command so-that

λαμβάνοι πλείω, δὲ ἐπιθυμῶν τιμᾶσθαι ἵνα
he-might-take more, and desiring to-be-honoured in-order-that

κερδαίνοι πλείω· ἐβούλετο τε μέγιστα εἶναι φίλος
he-might-gain more; he-wished — most-of-all to-be (a) friend

τοῖς δυναμένοις, ἵνα ἀδικῶν μὴ
to-the powerful, in-order-that acting-unjustly | he-might not

διδοίη δίκην. Ἐπὶ δὲ τὸ
give justice [he might not be punished]. | Towards indeed the

κατεργάζεσθαι ὧν ἐπιθυμοίη, ᾤετο
to-accomplish [for accomplishing] of-what he-might-desire, he-thought

συντομωτάτην ὁδὸν εἶναι τε διὰ τοῦ ἐπιορκεῖν,
the-shortest way to-be not-only through | the to-perjure,

καὶ ψεύδεσθαι καὶ ἐξαπατᾶν·
[perjury], but-also | to-lie [falsehood] and | to-deceive [deceit],

δ' ἐνόμιζε τὸ ἁπλοῦν καὶ τὸ ἀληθὲς εἶναι τὸ
but he-considered — sincerity and — truth to-be the

αὐτὸ τῷ ἠλιθίῳ. Δὲ μὲν ἦν φανερὸς στέργων
same with — folly. And indeed he-was evidently having-affection

οὐδένα, ὅτῳ δὲ φαίνη εἶναι φίλος, τούτῳ
for-no-one, to-whom indeed he-seemed to-be (a) friend, against-this-one

ἐγίγνετο ἔνδηλος ἐπιβουλεύων. Καὶ μὲν
he-was evident (as) plotting (mischief). And indeed

κατεγέλα οὐδενὸς πολεμίου, δὲ ἀεὶ διελέγετο
he-derided no enemy, but he always conversed

τῶν πάντωι συνόντων ὡς κατα-
— with-all (those) | being-about-him [his associates] as-if ridi

γελῶν. Καὶ μὲν τοῖς κτήμασιν τῶν
culing (them). And indeed against-the property of — (his)

πολεμίων οὐκ ἐπεβούλευε, γὰρ ᾤετο
enemies he-ᵗformed no ᵗdesigns, for he-thought (it)

εἶναι χαλεπὸν λαμβάνειν τὰ τῶν φυλατ-
to-be difficult to-take the (property) of — (those) guard-

τομένων· δὲ μόνος ᾤετο εἰδέναι ὄν
ing (it); | but (he) alone he-thought to-know (it) being

ῥᾷστον λαμβάνειν τὰ ἀφύλακτα.
easy to-take the unguarded [but he thought that

he alone knew that it was easy to take the unguarded property of friends].

Καὶ ὅσους μὲν αἰσθάνοιτο ἐπιόρκους καὶ ἀδίκους
And as-many-as indeed he-might-perceive perjured and unjust

ἐφοβεῖτο ὡς εὖ ὡπλισμένους, δὲ τοῖς
he-feared as well armed (against him), but the

ὁσίοις καὶ ἀσκοῦσιν ἀλήθειαν ἐπειρᾶτο χρῆσθαι
pious and those-practising truth he-endeavoured to-make-use-of

ὡς ἀνάνδροις. Δὲ ὥσπερ τις ἀγάλλεται ἐπὶ
as weak-persons. And as any-one prides-himself on

θεοσεβείᾳ, καὶ ἀληθείᾳ, καὶ δικαιότητι, οὕτω
religion, and truth, and justice, so

Μένων ἠγάλλετο δύνασθαι τῷ ἐξαπατᾶν, τῷ
Menon prided-himself to-be-able — to-deceive, —

πλάσασθαι ψευδῆ, τῷ διαγελᾶν φίλους· δὲ
to-devise falsehoods, — to-sneer-at friends; and (that)

τὸν μὴ πανοῦργον
— (he who was) not ready-to-do-any-thing (of a villanous nature for his

ἀεὶ ἐνόμιζεν εἶναι τῶν ἀπαι-
own advantage) ᵗhe always ᵗconsidered to-be of-the un-

δεύτων. Καὶ παρ' οἷς μὲν ἐπεχείρει
taught (and ignorant). And with whom indeed he-endeavoured

πρωτεύειν φιλίᾳ, τούτους ᾤετο
to-have-the-first-place ᵗin (their) ᵗfriendship, these-same he-thought

δεῖν κτήσασθαι διαβάλλων τοῦς
ᵗit to-become-him to-gain-over (through) plotting-against —

πρώτους. Δὲ τὸ παρέ-
those who had been) first (in their favour). And | the to-

χεσθαι τοὺς στρατιώτας πειθομένους
keep [the keeping of] — (his) soldiers obedient

ἐμηχανᾶτο ἐκ τοῦ συναδικεῖν αὐτοῖς.
he-effected | from the to-do-wrong with-them [by participating

Δὲ ἠξίου τιμᾶσθαι καὶ θεραπεύεσθαι,
in their evil deeds]. Also he-claimed to-be-honoured and courted,

ἐπιδεικνύμενος ὅτι ἂν δύναιτο καὶ ἐθελο-
showing that ⁱhe might ⁱbe-able and might-wish

ἀδικεῖν πλεῖστα. Δὲ κατέλεγεν εὐεργεσίαν,
to-injure the-most. And he-called-it (a) favour

ὁπότε τις ἀφίστατο αὐτοῦ, ὅτι χρώ-
(on his part), when any-one deserted him, that (while) making-

μενος αὐτῷ οὐκ ἀπώλεσεν αὐτόν.
use of-him he-ⁱdid not ⁱdestroy him.

Καὶ μὲν δὴ ἔξεστι περὶ τὰ
And indeed truly (were) it-allowed (to speak) respecting the

ἀφανῆ αὐτοῦ ψεύδεσθαι, δὲ ἃ
private (affairs) of-him one-might-say-what-is-not-true, but what

πάντες ἴσασι ἐστί τάδ'. Ὢν ἔτι ὡραῖος
all know is this. Being yet in-the-prime-of-youth

διεπράζατο παρὰ Ἀριστίππῳ μὲν στρατηγεῖν
he-obtained from Aristippus — to-command (of)

τῶν ξένων· δὲ ἐγένετο, ὢν ἔτι ὡραῖος,
the foreign-mercenaries; and he-became, being yet in-the-bloom-of-youth,

οἰκειότατος Ἀριαίῳ, ὄντι βαρβάρῳ, ὅτι
most-intimate with-Ariæus, he-being (a) barbarian, for ⁱhe

ἥδετο καλοῖς μειρακίοις· δὲ αὐτὸς εἶχε
(Ariæus) ⁱdelighted in-beautiful youths; and he-himself had

Θαρύπαν παιδικά, ἀγένειος ὤν
Tharypas (a) favourite, (a) beardless-youth — (having one)

γενειῶντα. Δὲ τῶν συστρατηγῶν ἀποθνησ-
having-a-beard. But — (his) fellow-officers being-put-

κόντων, ὅτι ἐστράτευσαν ἐπὶ βασιλέα ξὺν
to-death, because they-fought against (the) king with

Κύρῳ πεποιηκως ταὐτὰ οὐκ ἀπέθανε·
Cyrus (though) he-having-done the-same ¹did not ¹die,

δὲ μετὰ τὸν θάνατον τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν
but after the death of-the other generals

τιμωρηθεὶς ὑπὸ βασιλέως ἀπέθανεν, οὐχ
having-been-punished by (the) king he-died, no

ὥσπερ Κλέαρχος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ
like Clearchus, and the other generals, ¹having

τὰς κεφαλὰς ἀποτμηθέντες, (ὅσπερ δοκεῖ εἶναι
— (their) heads ¹cut-off, which seems to-be

τάχιστος θάνατος,) ἀλλὰ ζῶν αἰκισθεὶς
(the) speediest death,) but living having-been-tortured

ἐνιαυτόν ὡς πονηρός, λέγεται
(during a) year as (a) malefactor, he-is-said ¹to (have)

τυχεῖν τῆς τελευτῆς.
met — (with his) end.

Δὲ Ἀγιας ὁ Ἀρκάς, καὶ Σωκράτης ὁ Ἀχαιὸς,
But Agias the Arcadian, and Socrates the Achæan,

και τούτω ἀπεθανέτην. Δὲ οὔτ' οὐδεὶς
also these-two died. But neither ¹did (*no-one*) (any-one)

κατεγέλα τούτων ὡς κακῶν ἐν πολέμῳ, οὔτ'
¹deride these as cowards in battle, or

ἐμέμφετο αὐτοὺς εἰς φιλίαν. Δὲ ἄμφω
reproached them (in regard) to friendship. And both

ἦστην ἀμφὶ πέντε καὶ τριάκοντα τὰ ἔτη
were about five and thirty — years

ἀπὸ γενεᾶς.
from (their) birth.

# BOOK III.

## CHAPTER I.

Ὅσα μὲν δή, οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπραξαν, ἐν τῇ
WHAT indeed truly, the Greeks did, in —

ἀναβάσει τῇ μετὰ Κύρου μέχρι τῆς μάχης,
(their) upward-march — with Cyrus until the battle

καὶ ὅσα ἐγένετο ἐπεὶ Κῦρος ἐτελεύτησε, τῶν
and what took-place after Cyrus died, the

Ἑλλήνων, ἀπίοντων σὺν Τισσαφέρνει, ἐν
Greeks, departing with Tissaphernes, (confiding) in

ταῖς σπονδαῖς, δεδήλωται, ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ.
the truce, has-been-shown, in the preceding discourse.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ τε οἱ στρατηγοὶ συνειλημμένοι ἦσαν,
After indeed not-only the generals had-been-seized,

καὶ οἱ τῶν λοχαγῶν καὶ τῶν στρατιωτῶν
but-also — (those) of-the captains and of-the soldiers

συνεπόμενοι ἀπολώλεσαν, οἱ Ἕλληνες ἦσαν
accompanying (them) had-perished, the Greeks were

δὴ ἐν πολλῇ ἀπορίᾳ, ἐννοούμενοι μὲν, ὅτι
truly in much perplexity, reflecting indeed, that

ἦσαν ἐπὶ ταῖς θύραις βασιλέως, δὲ κύκλῳ
they-were at the gates ‘of (the) ‘king, and ‘in (a) ‘circle

αὐτοῖς ἦσαν πάντῃ πολλὰ καὶ ἔθνη
(around) them there-were everywhere (a great) many both nations

καὶ πόλεις πολέμιαι, δὲ οὐδεὶς ἔτι ἔμελλε
and towns hostile (to them), and no-one hereafter would

παρέξειν ἀγοράν, δὲ ἀπεῖχον τῆς
provide (a) market (for them), and they-were-distant from —

Ἑλλάδος οὐ μεῖον ἢ μύρια στάδια, δ'
Greece not less than ten-thousand stadia, and

ἦν οὐδεὶς ἡγεμὼν τῆς ὁδοῦ, δ' ἀδιάβατοι
there-was no guide (for) the road, and impassable

ποταμοὶ διεῖργον ἐν μέσῳ τῆς ὁδοῦ οἴκαδε,
rivers intervened in (the) midst of — (their) road homeward,

δὲ καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι ἀναβάντες σὺν Κύρῳ προὐδε-
nd also the barbarians having-come-up with Cyrus had-aban

δώκεσαν αὐτούς, δὲ καταλελειμμένοι ἦσαν μόνοι,
doned them, and they-were-left alone,

οὐδὲ ἔχοντες οὐδένα ἱππέα σύμμαχον·
(*nor-indeed*) (and indeed) having no cavalry (as) auxiliary;

ὥστε ἦν εὔδηλον, ὅτι νικῶντες ἂν
so-that it-was very-evident, that defeating (the enemy) [1]they would

μὲν κατακάνοιεν οὐδένα, δὲ αὐτῶν ἡττηθέντων
indeed [1]kill no-one, but they being-defeated,

οὐδεὶς ἂν λειφθείη. [2]Ἐννοούμενοι
not-one (of their number) would be-left (alive). Reflecting

ταῦτα, καὶ ἔχοντες ἀθύμως,
on-these (things), | and having (themselves) dejectedly, [and be-

ὀλίγοι μὲν αὐτῶν ἐγεύσαντο σίτου
ing disheartened], few indeed of-them tasted food

εἰς τὴν ἑσπέραν, δὲ ὀλίγοι ἀνέκαυσαν
— (for) — (that) evening, and few kindled (a)

πῦρ, δὲ πολλοὶ οὐκ ἦλθον ἐπὶ τὰ
fire, and many [1]did not [1]go to the (place of)

ὅπλα ταύτην τὴν νύκτα, δὲ ἀνεπαύοντο
arms (during) that-same — night, and they-went-to-rest

ὅπου ἕκαστος ἐτύγχανεν, οὐ δυνάμενοι κα-
where each happened (to be), not being-able to-

θεύδειν ὑπὸ λύπης καὶ πόθου πατρίδων,
sleep for sorrow and (the) desire (for) country,

γονέων, γυναικῶν, παίδων, οὓς ἐνόμιζον οὔποτ'
parents, wives, children, whom they-thought never

ὄψεσθαι ἔτι. Οὕτω μὲν δὴ διακείμενοι πάντες
to-see more. Thus indeed — disposed [1]they all

ἀνεπαύοντο.

[1]went-to-rest.

Ἦν δὲ ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ τις Ξενοφῶν
There-was — in the army a-certain Xenophon (an)

Ἀθηναῖος, ὃς ὢν οὔτε στρατηγὸς οὔτε λο-
Athenian, who being neither (a) general nor (a) cap-

χαγός, οὔτε στρατιώτης, συνηκολούθει,
tain, nor (a private) soldier, accompanied (the

ἀλλὰ Πρόξενος μετεπέμψατο αὐτὸν
expedition), but Proxenus sent-for him

οἴκοθεν, ὢν ἀρχαῖος ξένος· ὑπισχνεῖτο
from-home, he-being (an) old guest-friend; and he-promised

αὐτῷ, εἰ ἔλθοι, ποιήσειν αὐτὸν φίλον Κύρῳ,
him, if he-should-come, to-make him (a) friend to-Cyrus,

ὃν αὐτὸς ἔφη νομίζειν κρείττω ἑαυτῷ
whom he said (that) he-considered better to-himself (than)

τῆς πατρίδος. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν μέντοι ἀναγνοὺς
— (his) country. — Xenophon indeed having-read

τὴν ἐπιστολήν, ἀνακοινοῦται Σωκράτει τῷ Ἀθη-
the letter, consults Socrates the Athe-

ναίῳ περὶ τῆς πορείας. Καὶ ὁ Σωκράτης ὑποπ-
nian about the journey. And — Socrates having-

τεύσας μὴ οἱ ἐπαίτιον τι
feared lest — 'they (might) 'criminate (him) in-some (manner)

πρὸς τῆς πόλεως εἴη γενέσθαι φίλον
with — (his) government if-he-were to-become (a) friend

Κύρῳ, ὅτι ὁ Κῦρος ἐδόκει προθύμως συμπολεμῆσαι
to-Cyrus, because — Cyrus seemed zealously to-have-assisted

τοῖς Λακεδαιμονίοις ἐπὶ τὰς Ἀθήνας, συμβουλεύει
the Lacedæmonians against the Athenians, he-advised

τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, ἐλθόντα εἰς Δελφοὺς, ἀνακοι-
— Xenophon, (that) having-gone to Delphos, to-con-

νῶσαι τῷ θεῷ περὶ τῆς πορείας. Δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν
sult the gods about the journey. And — Xenophon

ἐλθὼν ἐπήρετο τὸν Ἀπόλλω, τίνι θεῶν
going inquired-of — Apollo, to-which 'of (the) 'gods

θύων καὶ εὐχόμενος
[sacrificing and praying [he should sacrifice and pray] ](that) 'he

ἂν ἔλθοι τὴν ὁδὸν, ἣν
might go the road, [that he might perform the journey], which

ἐπινοεῖ, κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα, καὶ πράξας
he-intends, most-honourably and most-successfully, and having-performed

καλῶς σωθείη. Καὶ
(it) successfully | might-be-saved [might return in safety]. And

ὁ Ἀπόλλων ἀνεῖλεν αὐτῷ θύειν
— Apollo | unfolded to-him [answered him] to-sacrifice to (the)

θεοῖς οἷς ἔδει. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦλθε πάλιν,
gods to-whom it-was-proper. When indeed he-had-gone back

λέγει τὴν μαντείαν τῷ Σωκράτει. Δ'
to Athens), he-tells the oracle to — Socrates. And

ὁ ἀκούσας ἠτιᾶτο αὐτόν, ὅτι οὐ πρῶτον
who hearing (it) blamed him, that he-did not first

ἠρώτα τοῦτο, πότερον εἴη λῷον αὐτῷ πορεύεσθαι
inquire this, whether it-were better for-him to-go-forth

ἢ μένειν, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς κρίνας εἶναι ἰτέον,
or to-remain, but himself having-decided | (that) it-is to-be-gone,

ἐπυνθάνετο τοῦτ' ὅπως ἄν
[that he would go], he-inquired this how he might

πορευθείη κάλλιστα. Ἐπεὶ μέντοι, ἔφη,
proceed to-the-best-advantage. Since however, said-he,

ἤρου οὕτως, χρὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτ'
you-have-inquired thus, it-becomes (you) to-do those (things)

ὅσα ὁ θεὸς ἐκέλευσε. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν μὲν δὴ
as the god directed (you). — Xenophon indeed —

οὕτω, θυσάμενος οἷς ὁ θεὸς ἀνεῖλεν,
therefore, having-sacrificed (to the gods) that the god told-him-in-reply,

ἐξέπλει, καὶ καταλαμβάνει Πρόξενον καὶ Κῦρον
set-sail, and finds Proxenus and Cyrus

ἐν Σάρδεσι, ἤδη μέλλοντας ὁρμᾶν τὴν ὁδὸν
in Sardis, being now about starting on-the way

ἄνω. καὶ συνεστάθη Κύρῳ. Δὲ τοῦ Προξένου
upward, and he-was-presented to-Cyrus. And — Proxenus

προθυμουμένου, καὶ ὁ Κῦρος συμπροὐθυμεῖτο αὐτόν
being-very-desirous, and — Cyrus joined in the-desire for-him

μεῖναι. Δὲ εἶπε ὅτι, ἐπειδὰν τάχιστα ἡ στρατεία
to-remain. And he-said that, as-soon as the expedition

λήξῃ εὐθὺς ἀποπέμψειν αὐτόν.
may-be-ended (that) he-'would directly 'send him 'back.

Δὲ ἐλέγετο ὁ στόλος εἶναι εἰς
It also was-said (that) the expedition (was intended) to-be against (the)

Πισίδας.
Pisidians.

Μὲν δὴ ἐστρατεύετο οὕτως ἐξαπατηθείς
'He indeed truly 'joined-the-expedition 'being thus 'deceived,

οὐχ ὑπὸ Προξένου (γὰρ οὐ ᾔδει τὴν
not by Proxenus (for he-'did not 'know, (that) the

ὁρμὴν ἐπὶ βασιλέα, οὐδὲ ἄλλος
movement (was) against (the) king, nor (any) other

οὐδείς τῶν Ἑλλήνων πλὴν Κλεάρχου)· ἐπεὶ
(*no-one*) (one) of-the Greeks except Clearchus); when

μέντοι ἦλθον εἰς Κιλικίαν, ἐδόκει ἤδη εἶναι
however they-had-gone to Cilicia, it-seemed now to-be

σαφὲς πᾶσιν, ὅτι ὁ στόλος εἴη ἐπὶ βασιλέα.
manifest to-all, that the expedition was against (the) king.

Δὲ φοβούμενοι τὴν ὁδὸν, καὶ ὅμως
But fearing the (length of the) road, and likewise

ἄκοντες οἱ πολλοὶ δι'
unwilling (to proceed farther, yet) the greater-part (of them) through

αἰσχύνην καὶ ἀλλήλων καὶ Κύρου συνη-
shame both (as respects) one-another and Cyrus accom-

κολούθησαν· καὶ εἷς ὧν Ξενοφῶν ἦν.
panied (him); and one of-whom Xenophon was.

Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἦν ἀπορία, ἐλυπεῖτο
But when (all) was perplexity-and-anxiety, he-was-troubled-and-grieved

μὲν σὺν τοῖς ἄλλοις, καὶ οὐκ ἐδύνατο
indeed with the rest, and he-'was not 'able

καθεύδειν· δὲ λαχὼν μικρὸν ὕπνου εἶδεν
to-sleep; but having-got (a) little sleep ] he-saw (a)

ὄναρ. Ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ, βροντῆς
vision [he had a dream]. It-seemed to-him, (a) thunder (storm)

γενομένης, σκηπτὸς πεσεῖν εἰς τὴν πα-
having-occurred, (that a) thunder-bolt fell on — (his) pa-

τρῴαν οἰκίαν, καὶ ἐκ τούτου πᾶσαν λάμ-
ternal house, and from this it-was all lighted-

πεσθαι. Δὲ περίφοβος εὐθὺς ἀνηγέρθη, καὶ
up. And frightened he immediately awoke, and

τὸ ὄναρ μὲν ἔκρινε πῇ ἀγαθόν, (ὅτι ὢν ἐν
the dream indeed he-judged somewhat favourable, (because being in

πόνοις καὶ κινδύνοις, ἔδοξε ἰδεῖν μέγα
trouble and danger, he-seemed to-have-seen (a) great

φῶς ἐκ Διός)· δὲ καὶ πῇ ἐφοβεῖτο (ὅτι
light from Jupiter); but also he-was somewhat alarmed (because

τὸ ὄναρ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ εἶναι ἀπὸ Διὸς μὲν
the dream appeared to-him to-be from Jupiter (who was) indeed

βασιλέως, δὲ τὸ πῦρ ἐδόκει λάμπεσθαι κύκλῳ,)
(a) king, and the fire seemed to-shine all-around,)

μὴ οὐ δύναιτο ἐξελθεῖν ἐκ τῆς χώρας
lest he-should not be-able to-depart from the territory

τῆς βασιλέως, ἀλλ' εἴργοιτο πάντοθεν ὑπό
of-the king, but should-be-hemmed-in on-all-sides by

τινων ἀπορίων.
some (great) difficulties.

Ὁποῖόν τι ἐστὶ μέντοι ἰδεῖν τὸ τοιοῦτον
What-kind-of thing it-is indeed to-see — such (a)

ὄναρ, ἔξεστι σκοπεῖν ἐκ τῶν συμβάντων
dream, it-is-allowed to-perceive from the (things) occurring

μετα τὸ ὄναρ. Γὰρ γίγνεται τάδε. Εὐθὺς
after the dream. For it-happened thus. Immediately

ἐπειδὴ ἀνηγέρθη ἔννοια πρῶτον μὲν ἐμπίπτει
after he-was-aroused (this) thought first indeed occurs

αὐτῷ· τί κατάκειμαι; ἡ νὺξ δὲ προβαίνει·
to-him: why am-I-lying-down? the night indeed is-passing-away;

δὲ ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ εἰκὸς
and at-the-same-time with-the (break of) day (it is) probable (that)

τοὺς πολεμίους ἥξειν. Εἰ δὲ γενησόμεθα
the enemy will-come. If indeed we shall-get

ἐπὶ βασιλεῖ, τί ἐμποδὼν μὴ οὐχι
into (the power of the) king, | what prevents lest no.

ἀποθανεῖν ὑβριζομένους,
to-die [what prevents us to die] being-treated-insultingly (and

ἐπιδόντας μὲν πάντα τὰ χαλεπώτατα,
ignominiously), after-beholding indeed all the most-grievous-things,

δὲ παθόντας πάντα τὰ δεινότατα; Δ' ὅπως
and suffering all the most-dreadful-things? But how

ἀμυνούμεθα οὐδεὶς παρασκευάζεται οὐδὲ ἐπιμε-
we-shall-defend-ourselves no-one provides nor takes-

λεῖται, ἀλλὰ κατακείμεθα ὥσπερ ἐξὸν ἄγειν
care, but we-repose as-if it-were-allowed-us | to-act

ἡσυχίαν. Οὖν ἐκ ποίας πόλεως ἐγώ
[to enjoy] tranquillity. Therefore from what city I

προσδοκῶ τὸν στρατηγὸν πράξειν ταῦτα; δὲ
expect the general to-do these-things? and

ποίαν ἡλικίαν ἀναμένω ἐλθεῖν ἐμαυτῷ; γὰρ
what age am-I-waiting-for to-come to-myself? for

ἔγωγ' οὐκ ἔσομαι ἔτι πρεσβύτερος, ἐὰν τήμερον
I-at-least will not be yet older, if to-day

προδῶ ἐμαυτὸν τοῖς πολεμίοις. Ἐκ τούτου
I-give myself up to-the enemy. After this

ἀνίσταται, καὶ πρῶτον συγκαλεῖ τοὺς λοχαγούς
he-arose, and first called-together the captains

Προξένου. Δὲ ἐπεὶ συνῆλθον, ἔλεξεν· Ἐγώ, ὦ
of-Proxenus. And when they-assembled, he-said; I, O

ἄνδρες λοχαγοί, οὔτε δύναμαι καθεύδειν (ὥσπερ
men captains, am neither able to-sleep (as

οἶμαι οὐδ' ὑμεῖς), οὔτε ἔτι κατακεῖσθαι, ὁρῶν
I-think neither (are) you), nor yet to-be-still, seeing

ἔν οἵοις ἐσμέν. Γὰρ μὲν δῆλον ὅτ·
in what (circumstances) we-are. For indeed (it is) plain that

οἱ πολέμιοι οὐ πρότερον ἐξέφηναν τὸν πόλεμον
the enemy did not first declare the war

πρὸς ἡμᾶς πρὶν ἐνόμισαν παρασκευάσασθαι
against us, before they-thought (that) they had-arranged

τὰ ἑαυτῶν καλῶς· δ' οὐδεὶς ἡμῶν οὐδὲν
the (things) of-themselves well: but no-one of-us 'takes (*not*)

ἀντεπιμελεῖται, ὅπως ἀγωνιούμεθα ὡς
(any) 'heed-in-return, how we-may-contend (with them) | as

κάλλιστα. Καὶ εἰ μὲν
most-beautiful [in the best possible manner]. And if indeed

ὑφεσόμεθα, καὶ γενησόμεθα ἐπὶ
we-shall-be-remiss, and shall-get into (the power of the)

βασιλεῖ, τί οἰόμεθα πείσεσθαι;
king, what 'may-we (not) 'expect to-suffer (from him)?

ὃς ἀποτεμὼν τὴν κεφαλὴν καὶ τὴν χεῖρα ἀδελφοῦ,
who cutting-off the head and the hand of-his-brother,

καὶ τοῦ ὁμομητρίου καὶ ὁμοπατρίου, καὶ ἤδη
both of-the same-mother and of-the-same-father, and (he) already

τεθνηκότος, ἀνεσταύρωσε· δὲ ἡμᾶς, οἷς
dead, fixed-them-on-a-stake; but (as respects) us, to-whom

μὲν οὐδεὶς πάρεστι κηδεμών,
indeed (there is) no-one present (as a) protector (and supporter),

δὲ ἐστρατεύσαμεν ἐπ' αὐτόν, ὡς ποιήσοντες
and (who) had-marched against him, as (if) making

δοῦλον ἀντὶ βασιλέως,
(a subject and) slave (of him, who) before (was a) king,

καὶ ἀποκτενοῦντες, εἰ δυναίμεθα, τί
and 'putting (him) 'to-death, if we-were-able, what

οἰόμεθα ἂν παθεῖν; Ἆρ' ἂν οὐκ ἔλθοι
do-we-think (that) 'we might 'suffer? Would 'he not 'resort

ἐπὶ πᾶν, ὡς αἰκισάμενος ἡμᾶς τὰ ἔσχατα
to every-thing, that having-punished us to-the utmost

παράσχοι πᾶσιν ἀνθρώποις φόβον
(of severity) he-might-inspire all men (with) fear

ποτε τοῦ στρατεῦσαι ἐπ' αὐτόν; Ἀλλὰ
of-ever | of-the to-have-marched [marching] against him? But

πάντα ποιητέον ὅπως τοι μὴ γενησόμεθα
every-thing is-to-be-done that — we-'may not 'get

ἐπ' ἐκείνῳ. Ἐγὼ μέν οὖν, ἔστε μὲν
into his (power). I indeed therefore, as-long-as indeed

αἱ σπονδαὶ ἦσαν οὔπωτε ἐπαυόμεν μὲν
the truce was (in existence) never ceased —

οἰκτείρων ἡμᾶς, δὲ μακαρίζων βασιλέα καὶ
pitying ourselves, but considering-as-happy (the) king and

τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ, διαθεώμενος μὲν ὅσην
— (those) with him, having-gone-through indeed so-great (a)

χώραν αὐτῶν, καὶ οἵαν ἔχοιεν, ὡς δὲ τὰ
territory of-them, and what they-might-have, as indeed the

ἄφθονα ἐπιτήδεια, ὅσους δὲ θεράποντας,
copious provisions, so-great (a number) indeed (of) servants,

δὲ ὅσα κτήνη, δὲ χρυσόν, δὲ
and how-great (a number of) cattle, and (quantity of) gold, and (of)

ἐσθῆτα. Δὲ αὖ ὁπότε ἐνθυμοίμην τὰ
raiments. But on-the-other-hand when I-reflect on-the

τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ὅτι μετείη ἡμῖν
(condition) of-the soldiers, that there-was-a-share to-us

μὲν οὐδενὸς πάντων τῶν ἀγαθῶν, εἰ
indeed of-nothing of-all — (these) good (things), —

μὴ πριαίμεθα, δ' ἤδειν ὀλίγους
unless we-bought (them), and (when that) I-knew (only) few

ἔχοντας ἔτι οὗτου ὠνησόμεθα, δὲ
(of us) having yet wherewith we-might-buy, and (that our)

ὅρκους ἤδη κατέχοντας ἡμᾶς πορίζεσθαι τὰ
oaths now restraining us to-procure —

ἐπιτήδεια ἄλλως πως ἢ ὠνουμένους· οὖν
provisions (in) any-other manner than buying; therefore

λογιζόμενος ταῦτ', ἐνίοτε ἐφοβούμην τὰς
considering these (things), I sometimes feared the

σπονδὰς μᾶλλον ἢ νῦν τὸν πόλεμον.
truce more than (I) now (do) the war.

Ἐπεὶ μέντοι ἐκεῖνοι ἔλυσαν τὰς σπονδάς, δοκεῖ
Since however they have-broken the truce, it-seems

μοὶ καὶ ἡ ὕβρις ἐκείνων καὶ ἡ ἡμετέρα
to-me (that) both the insolence of-themselves and — our

ὑποψία λελύσθαι. Γὰρ ἐν μέσῳ κεῖται
mistrust is-ended. | For in (the) middle [for between us] lie

ἤδη ταῦτα τὰ ἀγαθὰ, ἆθλα,
now those — good-things (I have mentioned), (as) prizes,

ὁπότεροι ἡμῶν ἂν ὦσιν ἀμείνονες ἄνδρες· δ'
(for) whoever of-us may be the-better men; and

οἱ θεοὶ εἰσιν ἀγωνοθέται, οἳ, ὡς τὸ εἰκὸς,
the gods are judges-of-the-contest, who, as (is) — proper (and just)

ἔσονται σὺν ἡμῖν. Γὰρ μὲν οὗτοι
will-be with us. For indeed these (our enemies)

ἐπιωρκήκασιν αὐτοὺς· δὲ ἡμεῖς ὁρῶντες
have-committed-perjury against-them (the gods); and we seeing

πολλὰ ἀγαθά, στερρῶς ἀπειχόμεθα αὐτῶν,
many good (things), firmly abstained from-them,

διὰ τοὺς ὅρκους τῶν θεῶν· ὥστε δοκεῖ
on-account-of — (our) oath (to) the gods; so-that it-seems

μοι ἐξεῖναι ἰέναι ἐπὶ τὸν ἀγῶνα σὺν
to-me (that) it-has-been-allowed-us to-go to the contest with

πολὺ μείζονι φρονήματι ἢ τούτοις. Δ' ἔτι
much greater confidence than these. And moreover

ἔχομεν σώματα ἱκανώτερα τούτων φέρειν καὶ
we-have bodies better-able (than) theirs to-bear —

ψύχη, καὶ θάλπη, καὶ πόνους· δὲ καὶ ἔχομεν
cold, and heat, and labour; and also we-have

σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ἀμείνονας ψυχάς· δὲ
with (the help of) the gods better minds; and

οἱ ἄνδρες καὶ μᾶλλον τρωτοὶ καὶ θνη-
— (these) men (being) both more vulnerable and exposed-

τοὶ ἡμῶν ἦν οἱ θεοί, ὥσπερ τὸ πρόσθεν,
to-death (than) we (are) if the gods, as — before,

διδῶσιν ἡμῖν νίκην. Ἀλλὰ γὰρ ἄλλοι καὶ
should-grant us victory. But therefore others even

ἴσως ἐνθυμοῦνται ταῦτα, πρὸς τῶν
perhaps meditate-on these-same (things), for (the sake) of-the

θεῶν μὴ ἀναμένωμεν ἄλλους ἐλθεῖν ἐφ'
gods let-us not wait (for) others to-come to

ἡμᾶς, παρακαλοῦντας ἐπὶ τὰ κάλλιστα ἔργα,
us exhorting (us to — (these) most-noble deeds

ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς ἀρξωμεν τοῦ ἐξορμῆσαι καὶ
but we will-begin | the to-impel [to excite] even
τοὺς ἄλλους ἐπὶ τήν ἀρετήν. Φάνητε ἄριστοι
— others to — valour. Show-yourselves the-best
τῶν λοχαγῶν, καὶ τῶν στρατηγῶν
(and bravest) of-the captains, and of-the commanders
ἀξιοστρατηγότεροι. Δὲ κἀγώ, εἰ μὲν ὑμεῖς
the-most-worthy-to-command. And also-I, if indeed you
ἐθέλετε ἐξορμᾶν ἐπὶ ταῦτα, βούλομαι
will give-the-start to these (things), am-willing
ἕπεσθαι ὑμῖν· δ' εἰ ὑμεῖς τάττετέ με ἡγεῖσθαι,
to-follow you; but if you appoint me to-lead,
οὐδὲν προφασίζομαι τὴν ἡλικίαν, ἀλλὰ
I (will) not give-as-an-excuse — (my) age, but
καὶ ἡγοῦμαι ἀκμάζειν ἐρύκειν τὰ κακά ἀπ'
even think-myself to-be-of-sufficient-age to-keep-off — harm from
ἐμαυτοῦ.
myself.

Ταῦτα μὲν ὁ ἔλεξε· δὲ οἱ λοχαγοὶ,
These (things) indeed — (Xenophon) spoke; but the captains,
ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα, πάντες ἐκέλευον
hearing these (things), all requested (him)
ἡγεῖσθαι· πλὴν ἦν τις Ἀπολλωνίδης,
to-be-their-commander; except there-was a-certain Apollonides,
τῇ φωνῇ Βοιωτιάζων· δ' οὗτος εἶπεν,
in — (his) speech resembling-a-Bœotian; and this (person) said,
ὅτι φλυαροίη, ὅστις λέγει ἂν τυχεῖν
that he-speaks-nonsense, who says (that) he might obtain
σωτηρίας ἄλλως πως, ἢ πείσας
safety by-any-other means, than having-persuaded (the)
βασιλέα, εἰ δύνατο· καὶ ἅμα ἤρχετο
king, if he could, (to grant it); and at-the-same-time he-began
λέγειν τὰς ἀπορίας. Ξενοφῶν μέντοι ὑπο-
to-talk (of) the difficulties. Xenophon however having
λαβὼν μεταξὺ ἔλεξεν ὧδε· Ὦ θαυ-
taken-him-up in-the-midst (of his speech) spoke thus· O mosu

μασιώτατε ἄνθρωπε, σὺ δέ γε οὐδὲ ὁρῶν γιγνώ
wonderful man, you indeed — neither seeing under

σκεις, οὐδὲ ἀκούων μέμνησαι. Μέντοι γε ἦσθα
stand, nor hearing have-remembered. However at-least you were

ἐν ταὐτῷ τούτοις ὅτε βασιλεύς,
in the-same (place) with-these (here present), when (the) king,

ὑπεὶ Κῦρος ἀπέθανε, μέγα φρονήσας ἐπὶ
after Cyrus died, [1]being greatly [1]elevated-in-mind at

τούτῳ, πέμπων ἐκέλευε τὰ ὅπλα παραδιδόναι.
this, sending he-ordered the arms to-be-given-up.

Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἡμεῖς οὐ παραδόντες, ἀλλ' ἐξοπλισάμενοι,
But when we not giving-them-up, but being-armed,

ἐλθόντες παρεσκηνήσαμεν αὐτῷ, τί οὐκ
going-forth encamped-opposite him, what did-[1]he not

ἐποίησε, πέμπων πρέσβεις, καὶ αἰτῶν σπονδάς,
[1]do, sending ambassadors, and requesting (a) truce,

καὶ παρέχων τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἕστε ἔτυχεν σπονδῶν;
and supplying the provisions, until he-obtained (a) truce?

Δ' ἐπεὶ αὖ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί,
And when on-the-other-hand the generals and captains,

ὥσπερ σὺ δὴ κελεύεις, ἦλθον εἰς λόγους
as you indeed (now) advise, went to (a) conference

αὐτοῖς ἄνευ ὅπλων, πιστεύσαντες ταῖς
with-them without (their) arms, trusting to-the

σπονδαῖς, οὐ νῦν ἐκεῖνοι παιόμενοι, κεντούμενοι,
truce, [1]are not now they [1]beaten. goaded,

ὑβριζόμενοι, οὐδὲ δύνανται οἱ τλήμονες ἀποθανεῖν,
insulted, not able the wretched-men to-die,

καὶ οἶμαι μάλ' ἐρῶντες τούτου; Πάντα ἃ σὺ
and I-think greatly desiring it? All which you

εἰδὼς φῄς τοὺς μὲν κελεύοντας
having-known (yet) you-say (that) — (those) indeed exhorting (us)

ἀμύνεσθαι φλυαρεῖν, δὲ κελεύεις ἰόντας
to-defend-ourselves talk-foolishly, and do-you-request (us) going

παλιν πείθειν; Ἐμοὶ δέ, ὦ ἄνδρες, δοκεῖ
again to-try-persuasion? To-me indeed, O men, it-seems

μήτε προσίεσθαι τοῦτον τὸν ἄνθρωπον
(that we ought) neither to-admit this — man

εἰς ταὐτὸ ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς, τε ἀφελομένους
into the-same (place) with-us ourselves, but taking-from (him,

τὴν λοχαγίαν, ἀναθέντας σκεύη, χρῆσθαί
— (his) captaincy (and) lying-on (him) baggage, use-him

ὡς τοιούτῳ. Γὰρ οὗτος καταισχύνει καὶ τὴν
as such. For this-man disgraces both — (his)

πατρίδα, καὶ πᾶσαν τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ὅτι ὢν Ἕλλην,
country, and all — Greece, that being (a) Greek,

ἐστι τοιοῦτος.
he-is such (a character).

Ἔνθεν Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος ὑπολαβὼν
Thence Agasias (the) Stymphalian having-taken-up

εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ τούτῳ γε οὐδὲν πανά-
(the discourse) said: But to-this-man at-least nothing at-

πασι προσήκει οὔτε τῆς Βοιωτίας, οὔτε τῆς
all belongs either of — Bœotia, or of —

Ἑλλάδος, ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ εἶδον τὰ ὦτα
Greece, since I perceived (that) — (his) ears

τετρυπημένον ὥσπερ Λυδόν. Καὶ εἶχεν
were-bored as (a) Lydian. | And it-had (itself)

οὕτως Οὖν μὲν ἀπήλασαν τοῦτον.
so [and it was so]. Therefore indeed they-drove him away.

Δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι ἰόντες παρὰ τὰς τάξεις,
But the others going to the (different) ranks (and

ὅπου μὲν εἴη στρατηγὸς
divisions of the army), where indeed there-might-be (a) general

σῶος, παρεκάλουν τὸν στρατηγόν· δὲ ὁπόθεν
saved, they-called-up the general; but where

οἴχοιτο, τὸν ὑποστρατηγόν· δ' ὅπου αὖ
he-had-perished, the lieutenant-general; but where again

εἴη λοχαγὸς, τὸν λοχαγόν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
there-might-be (a) captain, the captain. When indeed

πάντες συνῆλθον ἐκαθέζοντο εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν
all came-together they-seated-themselves in the front

τῶν ὅπλων· καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ
of-the (place) of-arms; and the generals and captains

συνελθόντες ἐγένοντο τοὺς ἀμφὶ ἑκατόν.
assembling were — (in all) about a-hundred.

Ὅτε δὲ ταῦτα ἦν, ἦσαν σχεδὸν
[When indeed this was, [when this occurred], it-was near

μέσαι νύκτες. Ἐνταῦθα Ἱερώνυμος Ἠλεῖος,
mid night. There Hieronymus (the) Elian,

ὢν πρεσβύτατος τῶν λοχαγῶν Προξένου, ἤρχετο
being the-oldest of-the captains of-Proxenus, commenced

λέγειν ὧδε· Ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοί,
to-speak thus: O men generals and captains

ἔδοξε ἡμῖν ὁρῶσι τὰ παρόντα
it-seemed (proper) to-us seeing the present (state of our affairs)

καὶ συνελθεῖν αὐτοῖς, καὶ παρακαλέσαι ὑμᾶς
both to-assemble-together ourselves, and to-call-on you

ὅπως βουλευσαίμεθα εἴ δυναίμεθά τι
(to join us) in-order-that we-may-determine if we-can

τι ἀγαθόν. Δ', ἔφη,
on-something good (and advantageous to ourselves). But, said-he,

σύ, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, λέξον ἅπερ καὶ
do you, O Xenophon, relate what (you have) even (said)

πρὸς ἡμᾶς.
to us.

Ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν λέγει τάδε· Ἀλλὰ δὴ
On this Xenophon speaks thus: But truly

μὲν πάντες ἐπιστάμεθα ταῦτα, ὅτι βασιλεὺς
indeed we all know this, that (the) king

καὶ Τισσαφέρνης συνειλήφασιν ἡμῶν οὓς μὲν
and Tissaphernes have-seized-upon (all) of-us whom indeed

ἐδυνήθησαν· δὲ δῆλον ὅτι ἐπιβουλεύουσι
they-could; and (it is) evident that they-are-plotting

τοῖς ἄλλοις, ὡς ἀπολέσωσιν, ἢν δύνωνται
against-the rest (of us), that they-may-put-us-to-death, if they-can

Δὲ γε οἶμαι πάντα ποιητέα ἡμῖν, ὡς
But at-least I-think every (thing) is-to-be-done by-us, that we-may

μήποτε γενώμεθα ἐπὶ τοῖς βαρβάροις,
never 'get into (the power of) the barbarians,

ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἐκεῖνοι, ἢν δυνώμεθα
but rather (that) they, if we-are-able (to accomplish it)

ἐφ' ἡμῖν. Ἐπίστασθε
(may fall) into us [may fall into our hands]. Know

εὖ τοίνυν, ὅτι ὑμεῖς, ὄντες τοσοῦτοι ὅσοι νῦν
well therefore, that you, being so-many as now

συνεληλύθατε, ἔχετε μέγιστον καιρόν.
have-come-together (of you), have the-greatest opportunity

Γὰρ πάντες οἱ οὗτοι στρα-
(of distinguishing yourselves). For all — these sol-

τιῶται βλέπουσι πρὸς ὑμᾶς, κἂν μὲν ὁρῶσιν
diers look to you, and-if indeed they-see

ὑμᾶς ἀθύμους, πάντες ἔσονται κακοί· δὲ εἰ τε
you dispirited, all will-be cowards; but if not-only

ὑμεῖς αὐτοί φανεροὶ παρασκευαζόμενοι ἦτε ἐπὶ
you yourselves appearing prepared go against

τοὺς πολεμίους, καὶ παρακαλεῖτε τοὺς ἄλλους
the enemy, and-also exhort the others

ἴστε εὖ ὅτι ἕψονται ὑμῖν, καὶ πειρά-
(to the same) know well that they-will-follow you, and will-en-

σονται μιμεῖσθαι. Δὲ τοι ἴσως ἐστι καὶ
deavour to-imitate (you). And — perhaps it-is even

δίκαιον ὑμᾶς διαφέρειν τι τούτων.
right (that) we should-differ somewhat from-these (soldiers).

Γὰρ ὑμεῖς ἐστέ στρατηγοί, ὑμεῖς ταξίαρχοι
For you are generals, you (are) taxiarchs

καὶ λοχαγοί· καὶ ὅτε εἰρήνη ἦν, ὑμεῖς ἐπλεονεκτεῖτε
and captains; and when peace was, you had-a-greater-portion

τούτων καὶ χρήμασι καὶ τιμαῖς· καὶ νῦν
(than) these both of-riches and honours; and now

τοίνυν, ἐπεὶ ἐστί πόλεμος, δεῖ ὑμᾶς ἀξιοῦν
therefore, when there-is war, it-is-proper (that) you exce.

αὐτοὺς εἶναι ἀμείνους τε τοῦ πλήθους,
these, (and that you) be superior not-only to-the mu titude.

καὶ προβουλεύειν καὶ προπονεῖν τούτων
but-also to-plan-and-devise and to-labour-and-exert-yourselves for-these,

ἤν που δέῃ. Καὶ νῦν μὲν πρῶτον
if any-where it-may-be-needed. And now indeed in-the-first (place)

οἶομαι ὑμᾶς ἂν μέγα ὀνῆσαι τὸ στράτευμα,
I-think (that) you may greatly benefit the army,

εἰ ἐπιμεληθείητε, ὅπως στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ
if you-take-care, that generals and captains

ἀντικατασταθῶσιν ὡς τάχιστα ἀντὶ τῶν
be-chosen as speedily-as-possible in-place-of — (those)

ἀπολωλότων. Γὰρ ἄνευ ἀρχόντων οὐδὲν οὔτε
we-are-deprived-of. For without commanders nothing either

καλὸν οὔτε ἀγαθὸν ἂν γένοιτο, ὡς μὲν εἰπεῖν
honourable or good can happen, as indeed to-speak

συνελόντι, οὐδαμοῦ, δὲ δὴ ἐν τοῖς πολε-
in-comprehensive (language), no-where, but truly in — warlike-

μικοῖς παντάπασι. Γὰρ μὲν ἡ εὐταξία δοκε
affairs not-at-all. For indeed — order appears

σώζειν, δὲ ἡ ἀταξία ἤδη ἀπολώλεκε
to-preserve (armies), but — want-of-order has already (destroyed

πολλούς. Δὲ ἐπειδὰν καταστήσησθε τοὺς ἄρ-
many. And after you-have-appointed the com

χοντας, ὅσους δεῖ, καὶ ἢν συλλέγητε
manders, as-many-as it-is-proper (to appoint), and if you-assembled

καὶ παραθαρρύνητε τοὺς ἄλλους στρατιώτας, οἶμαι
and encouraged the other soldiers, I-think

ἂν ὑμᾶς ποιῆσαι πάνυ ἐν καιρῷ. Γὰρ
that you will-have-acted very-much in season-and-to-the-purpose. For

νῦν μὲν ἴσως καὶ ὑμεῖς αἰσθάνεσθε, ὡς ἀθύμως
now indeed likewise even you perceive, how dispiritedly

μὲν ἦλθον ἐπὶ τὰ ὅπλα, δὲ ἀθύμως
indeed they-went to the (place of) arms, and (also how) dejectedly

πρὸς τὰς φυλακάς, ὥστε, ἐχόντων
(they went, on — guard, so-that, having (themselves)

οὕτω γ', οὐκ οἶδα
so at-least, [while they are in this state of mind], I-do not (know

ὅ τι τις ἂν χρήσαιτο αὐτοῖς, τι
for what any-one might use them, 'should any-thing

δέοι εἴτε νυκτὸς εἴτε καὶ ἡμέρας. Δὲ ἤν
'be-required either by-night or even by-day. But if

τις τρέψῃ τὰς γνώμας αὐτῶν, ὡς μὴ
any-one should-turn the thoughts of-them, that they-'may not

μόνον ἐννοῶνται, τί πείσονται, ἀλλὰ καὶ τί
alone 'contemplate, what they-will-suffer, but also what

ποιήσουσι, ἔσονται πολὺ εὐθυμότεροι. Γὰρ δὴ
they-will-do, they-will-be much more-inspirited. For truly

ἐπίστασθε, ὅτι ἐστὶν οὔτε πλῆθός οὔτε ἰσχὺς
you-are-aware, that it-is neither multitude nor strength

ἡ ἐν τῷ πολέμῳ ποιοῦσα νίκας.
which in — war | are-making victories; [produce victories];

ἀλλ' ὁπότεροι, σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ἂν
but which-ever, with the (assistance of the) gods being

ἐῤῥωμενέστεροι ταῖς ψυχαῖς ἴωσιν ἐπὶ τοὺς
more-resolute — in-mind may-go against the

πολεμίους, ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ οἱ ἐναντίοι
enemy, (as) for the most-part the adverse (enemy)

οὐ δέχονται τούτους.
| 'can not 'receive them [can not sustain their attack].

Δ' ἔγωγε, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐντεθύμημαι, καὶ τοῦτο,
But I-at-least, O men, have-considered, also this,

ὅτι ὁπόσοι μὲν μαστεύουσι ζῆν ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου
that those-who indeed desire to-live | by all means

ἐν τοῖς πολεμικοῖς, οὗτοι μὲν ὡς ἐπὶ
[at any rate] in — warlike-affairs, these indeed (as) for

τὸ πολὺ ἀποθνήσκουσι κακῶς τε καὶ αἰσχρῶς·
the most-part die wretchedly and also dishonourably

δὲ ὁπόσοι μὲν ἐγνώκασι θάνατον εἶναι κοινὸν
bu. those-who indeed have-known death to-be common

πᾶσι καὶ ἀναγκαῖον ἀνθρώποις, ἀγωνίζονται δὲ
to-all, and inevitable to-men, contend-in-battle —

περὶ τοῦ καλῶς ἀποθνήσκειν,
'for the honourably to-die. [for an honourable death]

ὁρῶ τούτους μᾶλλόν πως ἀφικνουμένους εἰς τὸ
I-perceive these rather somehow arriving at —

γῆρας, καὶ, ἕως ἂν ζῶσιν διάγοντας
old-age, and, as-long-as they may live passing (their time)

εὐδαιμονέστερον. Καὶ ἃ καταμαθόντας
more-happily. And which (things) having-understood

νῦν δεῖ ἡμᾶς (γὰρ ἐσμεν ἐν τοιούτῳ καιρῷ),
it now becomes us (as we-are in such (a) state)

εἶναι τε ἀγαθοὺς ἄνδρας αὐτούς καὶ
(that) we-be not-only brave men ourselves but-also

παρακαλεῖν τοὺς ἄλλους. Ὁ μὲν εἰπὼν
exhort the others (to be so). Who indeed saying

ταῦτ' ἐπαύσατο.
this ceased (speaking).

Δὲ μετὰ τοῦτον Χειρίσοφος εἶπε· Ἀλλὰ μέν,
But after this Cheirisophus said: But indeed,

ὦ Ξενοφῶν, πρόσθεν ἐγίγνωσκον σε μόνον
O Xenophon, before-this I-knew you only

τοσοῦτον, ὅσον ἤκουον εἶναι Ἀθηναῖον· δὲ
so-much, as-that I-heard you-were (an) Athenian; but

νῦν καὶ ἐπαινῶ σε τε ἐφ' οἷς λέγεις καὶ
now I even praise you not-only for what you-say but-also

πράττεις, καὶ ἂν βουλοίμην ὅτι εἶναι
(for what) you-perform, and could wish that there-were

πλείστους τοιούτους· γὰρ ἂν εἴη τὸ κοινὸν
many such; for it would be — (a) general

ἀγαθόν. Καὶ νῦν, ἔφη, μὴ μέλλωμεν, ὦ
good. And now, said-he, let-us not delay, O

ἄνδρες, ἀλλ' οἱ δεόμενοι ἄρχοντες ἀπελθόντες
men, but — (those) wanting commanders having-retired

ἤδη αἱρεῖσθε, καὶ ἑλόμενοι ἥκετε
now to-choose (them), and having-elected (them) let (them) come

εἰς τὸ μέσον τοῦ στρατοπέδου, καὶ ἄγετε τοὺς
to the middle of-the camp, and bring —

αἱρεθέντας· ἔπειτα συγκαλοῦμεν ἐκεῖ τους
(those) chosen; afterwards we-will-call-together there the

ἄλλους στρατιώτας. Δ', ἔφη, καὶ Τολμίδης ὁ
other soldiers. But, said-he, ¹let also Tolmides the

κῆρυξ παρέστω ἡμῖν. Καὶ ἅμα εἰπὼν ταῦτ'
herald ¹be-present with-us. And at-the-time he-was-saying this

ἀνέστη, ὡς τὰ δέοντα μὴ μέλλοιτο,
he-rose-up, that the (things) necessary ¹might not ¹be-delayed,

ἀλλὰ περαίνοιτο. ³Εκ τούτου ἡρέθησαν ἄρχον-
but be-executed. On this they-chose (as) comman-

τες, ἀντὶ μὲν Κλεάρχου Τιμασίων Δαρδανεύς,
ders, in-place-of — Klearchus Timasion (the) Dardanian,

δὲ ἀντὶ Σωκράτους Ξαντικλῆς ³Αχαιός, δὲ
and in-place-of Socrates Xanticles (the) Achæan, and

ἀντὶ ³Αγίου Κλεάνωρ ³Ορχομένιος, δὲ ἀντὶ
in-place-of Agias Cleanor (the) Orchomenian, and in-place-of

Μένωνος Φιλήσιος ³Αχαιός, δὲ ἀντὶ Πωξένου
Menon Philesius (the) Achæan, and in-place-of Proxenus

Ξενοφῶν ³Αθηναῖος.
Xenophon (the) Athenian.

## CHAPTER II.

Επεὶ δὲ ἥρηντο, τε ἡμέρα
When indeed (the officers) were-chosen, not-only ¹was (the) day

σχεδὸν ὑπέφαινε, καὶ οἱ ἄρχοντες ἦκον εἰς τὸ
just ¹dawning, but-also the commanders had-come to the

μέσον, καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς, προφύ-
middle (of the camp), and it-seemed (necessary) to-them, senti-

λακας καταστήσαντας, συγκαλεῖν τοὺς στρα-
nels being-placed, to-call-together the sol-

τιώτας. ³Επεὶ δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται
diers. When indeed also the other soldiers

συνῆλθον, Χειρίσοφος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος πρῶτον
came-together, Cheirisophus the Lacedæmonian first

μὲν ἀνέστη, καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε· ³Ω ἄνδρες στρα-
indeed rose-up, and spoke thus: O men sol-

τιῶται, τα παρόντα μὲν χαλεπά,
diers, — (our) present-affairs indeed are-fraught-with-difficulties,

ὁπότε στερόμεθα τοιούτω ἀνδρῶν στρατηγῶν,
since we-are-deprived of-such men (our) generals,

καὶ λοχαγῶν, καὶ στρατιωτῶν· δὲ καὶ
and (also) [1]of (our) [2]captains, and soldiers; and also

πρὸς ἔτι οἱ ἀμφὶ [3]Ἀριαῖον, οἳ
of (those) moreover (namely) — (those) with Ariæus, who

ἔντες πρόσθεν σύμμαχοι, προδεδώκασιν ἡμᾶς.
being formerly (our) allies, have-deserted us.

Δὲ ὅμως δεῖ τε ἐλθεῖν ἐκ τῶν παρόν-
But likewise it-becomes (us) not-only to-get-out of — (our) pre-

των ἀγαθούς ἄνδρας, καὶ μὴ ὑφίεσ-
sent (difficulties) (like) brave men, but-also not to-give-

θαι, ἀλλὰ πειρᾶσθαι ὅπως, ἢν μὲν δυνώμεθα,
up, but to-endeavour that, if indeed we-can,

νικῶντες καλῶς, σωζώμεθα· δὲ εἰ μή,
conquering honourably, we-may-save-ourselves, but if not,

ἀλλά γε ἀποθνήσκωμεν καλῶς, δὲ μηδέποτε
yet at-least let-us-die honourably, and never

γενώμεθα ζῶντες ὑποχείριοι
| we-being living [while we live] putting-ourselves-in-the-hands-of

τοῖς πολεμίοις. Γὰρ οἶομαι ἂν ἡμᾶς παθεῖν
the enemy. For I-think that we would-suffer

τοιαῦτα, οἷα οἱ θεοὶ ποιήσειαν τοὺς
such-things, as [1]may the gods [2]do to — (our)

ἐχθρούς. [3]Ἐπὶ τούτῳ Κλεάνωρ [3]Ὀρχομένιος
enemies. After this-one Cleanor (the) Orchomenian

ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε· [3]Ἀλλὰ μέν, ὦ ἄνδρες,
rose-up and spoke as-follows: But indeed, O men,

ὁρᾶτε τὴν ἐπιορκίαν καὶ ἀσέβειαν βασιλέως,
you-see the perjury and impiety [1]of (the) [2]king,

δὲ ὁρᾶτε τὴν ἀπιστίαν Τισσαφέρνους, ὅστις λέγων
and you-see the faithlessness of-Tissaphernes, who saying

ὡς εἴη τε γείτων τῆς Ἑλλάδος, καὶ ἂν
that he-was not-only (a) neighbour of-the Greeks, but-also would

ποιήσαιτο περὶ πλείστου σῶσαι ἡμᾶς, καὶ
make-it of much (account) to-have-saved us, and

αὐτὸς ὀμόσας ἐπὶ τούτοις ἡμῖν, αὐτὸς
he-himself having-sworn to these (things) to-us, he

δούς δεξιὰς, αὐτός ἐξαπατήσας συνέλαβε
having-given (the) right-hand, he having-deceived (us) took

τοὺς στρατηγούς, καὶ οὐδὲ ἠδέσθη
(prisoners) — (our) generals, and neither has-he-respected

Δία ξένιον, ἀλλὰ γενόμενος καὶ
Jupiter (the god of) hospitality, but having-become also (a)

ὁμοτράπεζος Κλεάρχῳ, αὐτοῖς τούτοις
table-companion to-Clearchus, by-these same (means)

ἐξαπατήσας τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀπολώλεκεν. Ἀριαῖος
having-deceived — men he-destroyed (them). Ariæus

δὲ, ὃν ἡμεῖς ἠθέλομεν καθιστάναι βασιλέα, καὶ
also, whom we wished to-have-constituted king, and

ἐδώκαμεν καὶ ἐλάβομεν πιστὰ μὴ προδώσειν
we-gave and received pledges not to-betray

ἀλλήλους, καὶ οὗτος, οὔτε δείσας τοὺς θεοὺς
one-another, (yet) even this-one, neither having-feared the gods

οὔτε αἰδεσθείς τεθνηκότα Κῦρον, τιμώμενος
or having-respected (the) departed Cyrus, (though) honoured

μάλιστα ὑπὸ Κύρου ζῶντος, νῦν
in-the-highest-degree by Cyrus (while) living, now having

ἀποστὰς πρὸς τοὺς ἐχθίστους ἐκείνου,
gone-over to the bitterest-enemies of (Cyrus) himself.

πειρᾶται ποιεῖν κακῶς ἡμᾶς τοὺς φίλους Κύρου.
he-endeavours to-do ill to-us the friends of-Cyrus.

Ἀλλὰ μὲν οἱ θεοὶ ἀποτίσαιντο τούτους·
But indeed may the gods repay these (men);

δὲ δεῖ ἡμᾶς ὁρῶντας ταῦτα μήποτε ἔτ
but it-becomes us seeing these (things) never more

ἐξαπατηθῆναι ὑπὸ τούτων, ἀλλὰ, μαχομένους
to-be-deceived by these (men), but, fighting

κράτιστα ὡς ἂν δυνώμεθα, πάσχειν
in-the-bravest (manner) that we may be-able, to-bear

τοῦτο ὅ τι ἂν δοκῇ τοῖς θεοῖς.
that which may seem (proper) to-the gods.

Ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν ἀνίσταται, ἐσταλμένος ἐπὶ
After this Xenophon stood-up, equipped for

πόλεμον ὡς κάλλιστα ἐδύνατο, νομίζων, εἴτε
war as handsomely (as) he-was-able, thinking, that-if

οἱ θεοὶ διδοῖεν νίκην τὸν κάλλιστον κόσμον
the gods should-grant victory (that) the most-beautiful ornaments

πρέπειν τῷ νικᾶν, εἴτε δέοι
became | to-the to-conquer [victory], (or) that-if it-might-be-so (that he

τελευτᾶν, ἔχειν ὀρθῶς,
was) to-die, | to-have (itself) properly, [it would be well] (that

ἑαυτὸν ἀξιώσαντα τῶν καλλίστων
he should think) himself as-having-been-worthy of-the most-beautiful

ἐν τούτοις τυγχάνειν τῆς τελευτῆς·
(equipments, and) in these to-meet — (his) end

δὲ τοῦ λόγου ἤρχετο ὧδε· Μὲν τε τὴν ἐπιορκίαν
but — (his) speech he-began thus: Indeed not-only the perjury

καὶ ἀπιστίαν τῶν βαρβάρων Κλεάνωρ μὲν
but-also (the) perfidy of-the barbarians Cleanor indeed

λέγει, δὲ οἶμαι ὑμεῖς καὶ ἐπίστασθε
has (just now) mentioned, and I-think you also are-aware-of-it

Εἰ μὲν οὖν βουλευόμεθα πάλιν ἰέναι διὰ
If indeed therefore we-deliberate | again to-go through

φιλίας αὐτοῖς
friendship with-them [of again coming to terms of friendship with them]

ἀνάγκη ἡμᾶς ἔχειν πολλὴν ἀθυμίαν,
(it is of) necessity (that) we (must) have much mistrust,

καὶ ὁρῶντας τοὺς στρατηγούς, οἷα
having also seen — (our) generals, what (they)

πεπόνθασιν, οἳ διὰ πίστεως αὐτοῖς ἑαυτοὺς
suffered, who through faith in-them put themselves

ἐνεχείρισαν· εἰ μέντοι διανοούμεθα σὺν τοῖς
into-their-hands; if however we-intend with — (our

ὅπλοις τε ἐπιθεῖναι δίκην αὐτοῖς
arms not-only | to-impose justice on-them [to inflict punish-

ὧν πεποιήκασι, καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν
ment on them] (for that) which they-have-done, but-also (for) the future

ἰέναι διὰ παντὸς πολέμου αὐτοῖς, σὺν
to-go through all (kinds) of-warfare with-them, with (the help of)

τοῖς θεοῖς εἰσὶ πολλαὶ καὶ καλαὶ ἐπίδες σωτηρίας.
the gods there-are many and fair hopes of-safety

Δὲ αὐτοῦ λέγοντος τοῦτο τις πτάρνυται· δ'
But he saying this some-one sneezes; and

οἱ στρατιῶται ἀκούσαντες πάντες μιᾷ ὁρμῇ
the soldiers hearing (it) all with-one impulse

προσεκύνησαν τὸν θεόν· καὶ Ξενοφῶν εἶπε·
worshipped the god; and Xenophon said (As)

Ἐπεὶ ἡμῶν λεγόντων περὶ σωτηρίας, οἰωνὸς
while we were-speaking about safety, (an) omen

τοῦ Διὸς τοῦ Σωτῆρος ἐφάνη, δοκεῖ μοι, ὦ ἄνδρες,
of — Jupiter the Preserver appeared, it-seems to-me, O men,

εὔξασθαι τῷ τούτῳ θεῷ θύσειν σωτή-
(that) we-vow to — that god to-sacrifice (the) offerings-of-

ρια, ὅπου πρῶτον ἀφικώμεθα εἰς φιλίαν χῶραν,
safety, when first we-arrive in (a) friendly country,

δὲ καὶ συνεπεύξασθαι θύσειν τοῖς ἄλλοις
and also (that) we-vow-together to-sacrifice-hereafter to-the other

θεοῖς κατὰ δύναμιν. Καὶ ἔφη, ὅτ,ῳ
gods according-to (our) ability. And he-said, to-whomsoever

ταῦτα δοκεῖ ἀνατεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. Καὶ
this seems (right) hold-up — (your) hand And

ἅπαντες ἀνέτειναν. Ἐκ τούτου εὔξαντο
all held-up (their hands). Upon this they-made

καὶ ἐπαιάνισαν. Δὲ ἐπεὶ τὰ
(their) vows and sang-a-pean. | And when the things

τῶν θεῶν εἶχεν καλῶς,
of-the gods had (themselves) well, [and when the religious

ἤρχετο πάλιν ὧδε·
ceremonies were duly performed], he-commenced again thus·

Ἐτύγχανον λέγων ὅτι εἶεν πολλαὶ καὶ
I-happened (to be) saying that there-were many and

καλαὶ ἐλπίδες ἡμῖν σωτηρίας. Γὰρ πρῶτον μὲν
fair hopes to-us of-safety. For first indeed

ἡμεῖς μὲν ἐμπεδοῦμεν τοὺς ὅρκους τῶν θεῶν,
we 'have truly 'observed | the oaths of-the gods,

δὲ οἱ πολέμιοι τε
[our oaths made to the gods], but the enemy 'have not-only

ἐπιωρκήκασι, καὶ λελύκασι τὰς σπονδὰς
'perjured (themselves), but-also have-broken the truce

καὶ τοὺς ὅρκους. Δ' ἐχόντων
and — (their) oaths. But (things) having (themselves)

οὕτω, εἰκὸς μὲν τοὺς θεοὺς εἶναι ἐναντίους
thus, it-is-proper indeed (for) the gods to-be against

τοῖς πολεμίοις, δὲ συμμάχους ἡμῖν, οἵπερ εἰσι
— (our) enemies, but auxiliaries to-us, who are

ἱκανοί, ὅταν βούλωνται καὶ ταχὺ ποιεῖν τοὺς
competent, when they-will both speedily to-make the

μεγάλους μικροὺς, καὶ εὐπετῶς σῴζειν τοὺς μικρούς,
great little, and easily to-save the little,

κἂν ὦσι ἐν δεινοῖς. Δὲ ἔπειτα,
although they-may-be in dangers. But (next) after (this),

(γὰρ ἀναμνήσω ὑμᾶς καὶ τοὺς κινδύνους τῶν
(for I-shall-remind you even (of) the dangers of—

ἡμετερων τῶν προγόνων, ἵνα εἰδῆτε ὡς
our — ancestors, in-order-that you-may-perceive that

τε προσήκει ὑμῖν εἶναι ἀγαθοῖς, τε σὺν
— it-becomes you to-be brave, and-that with (the help of)

τοῖς θεοῖς οἱ ἀγαθοὶ σῴζονται καὶ ἐκ πάνυ
the gods the brave are-saved even from the greatest

δεινῶν·) γὰρ μὲν Περσῶν καὶ τῶν σὺν
dangers;) for indeed (the) Persians and — (those) with

αὐτοῖς ἐλθόντων παμπληθεῖ στόλῳ, ὡς
them coming 'with (a) 'numerous host, as 'making

τὰς Ἀθήνας ἀφανιούντων αὖθις, Ἀθηναῖοι
— Athens 'disappearing again, (but the) Athenians

τολμήσαντες ὑποστῆναι αὐτοῖς ἐνίκησαν αὐτούς.
daring to-withstand them conquered them.

Καὶ εὐξάμενοι τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι ὁπόσους τῶν
And having-vowed to Diana (that) as-many of-the

πολεμίων ἂν κατακάνοιεν τοσαύτος χιμαίρας
enemy as they might kill so-many she-goats

καταθύσειν τῇ θεῷ, ἐπεὶ εἶχον οὐκ
they-would-sacrifice to-the goddess, (but) when they-had not (a)

ἱκανὰς εὑρεῖν,
sufficient-number to-find, [they could not find a sufficient number],

ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς θύειν πεντακοσίας κατ'
it-seemed (good) to-them to-sacrifice five-hundred every

ἐνιαυτὸν, καὶ ἔτι καὶ νῦν ἀποθύουσιν. Ἔπειτα
year, and also even now they-sacrifice (them). (*Afterwards*)

ὅτε Ξέρξης ὕστερον, ἀγείρας τὴν ἀναρίθ-
when Xerxes after-this, having-collected — (that) innumer-

μητον στρατιάν, ἦλθεν ἐπὶ την Ἑλλάδα, καὶ
able army, went against the Greeks, and

τότε οἱ ἡμέτεροι πρόγονοι ἐνίκων τοὺς προγόνους
then — our ancestors conquered the ancestors

τούτων, καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν.
of-these (barbarians), both by land and by sea.

Τεκμήρια μὲν ὧν ἔστι τὰ τρόπαια ὁρᾶν,
(The) proofs indeed of-which are the trophies | to-see,

δὲ μέγιστον μαρτύριον ἡ ἐλευθερία των
[to be seen], but the-greatest witness (is) the liberty of-the

πόλεων, ἐν αἷς ὑμεῖς ἐγένεσθε καὶ ἐτράφητε·
states, in which you were-born and bred.

γὰρ προσκυνεῖτε οὐδένα ἄνθρωπον δεσπότην,
for you-worship no man (as) master,

ἀλλὰ τοὺς θεοὺς Τοιούτων προγόνων μὲν
but the gods (only). Of-such ancestors indeed

ἐστε. Μὲν δὴ γε οὐκ ἐρῶ τοῦτο,
are-you. I indeed certainly at-least will not say this,

ὡς ὑμεῖς καταισχύνετε αὐτούς· ἀλλ' οὔπω πολλαὶ
that you disgrace them; but not-yet many

ἡμέραι, ἀφ' οὗ ἀντιταξά
days, | from which [since] having-been-drawn-up-in-order-of-battle

μενοι τούτοις τοῖς ἐκγόνοις ἐκείνων,
against these — descendants of-those (barbarians),

ἐνικᾶτε αὐτῶν πολλαπλασίους
you-conquered (a force) of-them many-times-more-numerous (than)

ὑμῶν σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς. Καὶ τότε μὲν
yourselves with (the assistance of) the gods. And then —

δὴ ἦτε ἀγαθοὶ ἄνδρες περὶ τῆς βασιλείας
truly you-were brave men | (contending) about the kingdom

Κύρου· δὲ νῦν ὁπότε
of-Cyrus; [contending to elevate Cyrus to the throne]; but now when

ὁ ἀγών ἐστι περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρας σωτηρίας, δήπου
the contest is about — your-own safety, 'it certainly

προσήκει ὑμᾶς πολύ, καὶ εἶναι ἀμείνονας καὶ
'becomes you much, both to-be more (brave) and

προθυμοτέρους. Ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ νῦν πρέπει
more-daring. But certainly 'it even now becomes

εἶναι θαῤῥαλεωτέρους πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους.
you) to-be more-confident-and-daring against the enemy

Γὰρ μὲν τότε ὄντες ἄπειροι αὐτῶν, τε ὁρῶντες
For indeed then being inexperienced of-them, and seeing

τὸ ἄμετρον πλῆθος, ὅμως ἐτολμήσατε σὺν τῷ
the immense multitude, however you-dared with the

φρονήματι πατρίῳ ἰέναι εἰς αὐτούς· δὲ
spirit derived-from-your-ancestors to-go against them; but

νῦν, ὁπότε καὶ ἤδη ἔχετε πεῖραν αὐτῶν, ὅτι
now, when 'you even already 'have experience of-them, that

θέλουσι καὶ ὄντες πολλαπλάσιοι
they-wish even (though) being many-times (more numerous

μὴ δέχεσθαι ὑμᾶς, τί ἔτι
than you) not to-receive you (attacking them), how then

προσήκει ὑμῖν φοβεῖσθαι τούτους; Μηδὲ μέντοι
does-it-become you to-fear these (men)? | Nor indeed

δόξητε ἔχειν τοῦτο μεῖον,
think to-have this less, [nor think this to be a disadvantage]

εἰ οἱ Κυρεῖοι, πρόσθεν ταττόμενοι σὺν ἡμῖν,
if the followers-of-Cyrus, formerly drawn-up with us,

νῦν ἀφεστήκασι. Γὰρ ἔτι οὗτοι εἰσι
(have) now deserted (us). For also these (men) are

κακίονες τῶν ἡττημένων ὑφ' ἡμῶν.
more-cowardly (than) — (those) defeated by us.

Γοῦν ἔφευγον πρὸς ἐκείνους καταλιπόντες ἡμᾶς.
For-indeed they-fled to them deserting us.

Δὲ πολὺ κρεῖττον ὁρᾶν τοὺς θέλοντας
And (it is) much better to-see — (those) wishing

ἄρχειν φυγῆς ταττομένους σὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις,
to-commence flight arranged with the enemy,

ἢ ἐν τῇ ἡμετέρᾳ τάξει. Δὲ εἴ τις ὑμῶν
than in — our ranks. But if any-one of-you

ἀθυμεῖ, ὅτι μὲν εἰσὶν οὐκ ἱππεῖς ἡμῖν,
is-disheartened, that indeed there-are no horsemen to-us, [that

δὲ πολλοὶ πάρεισι τοῖς πολεμίοις,
we have no cavalry], but (that) many are-present to-the enemy,

ἐνθυμήθητε ὅτι
[but that the enemy have a large force of cavalry], consider that

οἱ μύριοι ἱππεῖς εἰσὶν οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ μύριοι
— ten-thousand horsemen are nothing else than ten-thousand

ἄνθρωποι· γὰρ μὲν οὐδεὶς πώποτε ἀπέθανεν ἐν
men; for indeed no-one ever died in

μάχῃ οὔτε δηχθεὶς οὔτε λακτισθεὶς ὑπὸ
battle (*neither*) (either) bitten — (or) kicked by

ἵππου, δὲ οἱ ἄνδρες εἰσὶν οἱ ποιοῦντες ὅ τι
(a) horse, but the men are (those) who do whatever

ἂν γίγνηται ἐν ταῖς μάχαις. Οὐκοῦν ἡμεῖς ἐσμεν
may happen in — battles. Therefore we are

ἐπὶ πολὺ ἀσφαλεστέρου ὀχήματος γε τῶν ἱππέων·
on (a) much safer vehicle (than) at-least the cavalry;

γὰρ μὲν οἱ κρέμανται ἐφ' ἵππων, φοβούμενοι
for indeed — (those) hang on horses, fearing

οὐχ ἡμᾶς μόνον, ἀλλὰ καὶ τὸ καταπεσεῖν·
not us alone, but also [the to-have-fallen; [falling]

δ' ἡμεῖς βεβηκότες ἐπὶ γῆς
but we having-gone on (the) ground [but we marching on the

παίσομεν μὲν πολὺ ἰσχυρότερον ἦν τις
ground] shall-strike indeed much more-violently if any-one

προσίῃ, ἢ πολὺ μᾶλλον τευξόμεθα ὅτου βουλώ-
approach, and much more shall-we-attain-the-aim which we-de-

μεθα. Δὲ ἐνὶ μόνῳ οἱ ἱππεῖς προέχουσιν
sired. But in-one (thing) alone the cavalry have-the-advantage-of

ἡμᾶς· φεύγειν ἐστὶν ἀσφαλέστερον αὐτοῖς ἢ ἡμῖν.
us. to-flee is safer for-them than for-us.

Εἰ δὲ δὴ θαῤῥεῖτε μὲν τὰς μάχας,
If indeed truly you-are-confident-and-courageous — for — battle,

δὲ ἄχθεσθε τοῦτο, ὅτι Τισσαφέρνης οὐκέτι
but you-are-troubled at-this, that Tissaphernes 'will no-longer

ἡγήσεται ὑμῖν, οὐδὲ βασιλεὺς παρέξει
'guide you, nor 'will (the) king 'provide (you a)

ἀγοράν, σκέψασθε πότερον κρεῖττον ἔχειν Τισσα-
market consider whether (it is) better to-have Tissa-

φέρνην ἡγεμόνα, ὃς ἐστι φανερὸς ἐπιβουλεύων
phernes (as) guide, who is evidently plotting-against

ἡμῖν, ἢ ἄνδρας οὓς ἡμεῖς λαβόντες ἂν
us, or (the) men whom, we having-seized-them, may

κελεύωμεν ἡγεῖσθαι, οἳ εἴσονται ὅτι, ἢν ἁμαρ-
order to-guide (us), who will-know that, if they

τάνωσι περὶ ἡμᾶς, ἁμαρτάνουσι περὶ τὰς
err with-respect-to us, they-err with-respect-to the

ψυχὰς καὶ σώματα ἑαυτῶν. Δὲ τὰ
lives and bodies of-themselves. But (as respects) —

ἐπιτήδεια πότερον κρεῖττον ὠνεῖσθαι ἐκ τῆς
provisions whether (it is) better to-purchase from the

ἀγορᾶς, ἧς οὗτοι παρεῖχον, μικρὰ μέτρα
market, which these (people) provide, small measures

πολλοῦ ἀργυρίου, μηδὲ ἔτι ἔχοντας τοῦτο,
for-much money, neither yet having this (money),

ἢ, ἥνπερ κρατῶμεν, λαμβάνειν αὐτοὺς, χρωμένους
or, if we-are-victorious, to-take them, using

ὁπόσῳ μέτρῳ ἕκαστος ἂν βούληται. Εἰ δε
such measure (as) each might wish. If however

μὲν γιγνώσκετε ταῦτα
indeed you-know these (things respecting guides and provisions)

ὅτι κρείττονα, δὲ νομίζετε τοὺς ποταμοὺς
that (it would now be) better, but think the rivers

εἶναι ἄπορον, καὶ ἡγεῖσθε
to-be (a thing) impassable, and think (yourselves) to-be

μεγάλως ἐξαπατηθῆναι διαβάντες, σκέψασθε
greatly misled crossing (them), consider

εἰ ἄρα οἱ βάρβαροι καὶ πεποιήκασι
whether the barbarians have (not) even done (a)

μωρότατον. Γὰρ μὲν πάντες οἱ ποταμοί,
most-foolish (thing). For indeed all the rivers,

εἰ καὶ ὧσι ἄποροι πρόσω τῶν πηγῶν,
if even they-may-be impassable at-a-distance-from — (their) sources),

προιοῦσι πρὸς τὰς πηγὰς γίγνονται διαβατοὶ,
(but) going to the sources they-become passable,

οὐδὲ βρέχοντες τὸ γόνυ. Εἰ δὲ μήδ' οἱ ποταμοὶ
not-even wetting the knee. If indeed neither the rivers

διοίσουσι, τε μεδεὶς ἡγεμῶν φανεῖται
should-differ (in their breadth), and no guide appear

ἡμῖν, οὐδ' ὡς ἀθυμητέον ἡμῖν γε. Γὰρ
to-us, nor thus is-there-to-be-discouragement to-us at-least. For

ἐπιστάμεθα Μυσοὺς, οὓς ἂν οὐκ φαίημεν
we-know (that the) Mysians, whom we should not assert

εἶναι βελτίους ἡμων, οἳ, βασιλέως
to-be braver (than) ourselves, who, (the) king (being)

ἄκοντος, οἰκοῦσι πολλάς τε καὶ εὐδαίμονας καὶ
unwilling, inhabit many also both rich and

μεγάλας πόλεις ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ βασιλέως·
large cities in the country of (the) king

ἐπιστάμεθα δὲ Πισίδας ὡσαύτως·
we-know also (that the) Pisidians (have acted) in-like-manner

δὲ καὶ αὐτοὶ εἴδομεν Λυκάονας, ὅτι
and also we-have ourselves seen (the) Lycaonians, that

καταλαβόντες τὰ ἐρυμνὰ ἐν τοῖς πεδίοις καρ
seizing the fortified-places in the plains they-en-

ποῦνται τὴν χώραν τούτου. Καὶ δ'
joy-the-fruits (in) the territory of-this (king). And indeed

'γωγε ἂν ἔφην ἡμᾶς χρῆναι μήπω εἶναι
-at-least would have-said (that) we ought not-yet to-be

φανεροὺς ὡρμημένους οἴκαδε, ἀλλὰ κατασκευ-
appearing (as) having-started for-home, but to-be-getting-

άζεσθαι ὡς οἰκήσοντας που αὐτοῦ.
ourselves-ready as (if) about-taking-up-our-abode some-where here.

Γὰρ οἶδα ὅτι καὶ βασιλεὺς μὲν ἂν δοίη πολλοὺς
For I-know that even (the) king indeed would give many

ἡγεμόνας Μυσοῖς, δ' ἂν πολλοὺς ὁμήρους
guides 'to (the) 'Mysians, and would (give) many hostages

τοῦ ἐκπέμψειν ἀδόλως καὶ
(to them) | of-the to-send-away [to send them away] without-treachery and

γ' ἂν ὁδοποιήσειε αὐτοῖς, καὶ εἰ βούλοιντο
also would make-roads for-them, even if they-wished

ἀπιέναι σὺν τεθρίπποις. Καὶ οἶδ' ὅτι γ' ἂν
to-depart with four-horse-chariots. And I-know that 'he also would

ἐποίει ταῦτα τρισάσμενος ἡμῖν, εἰ ἑώρα
'do these (things) most-willingly for-us, if he-saw

ἡμᾶς παρασκευαζομένους μένειν. Ἀλλὰ γὰρ
us making-preparations to-remain. But (not so) for

δέδοικα, μή, ἂν ἅπαξ μάθωμεν ζῆν ἀργοί,
I-fear, lest 'we may once 'have-learned to-live idle,

καὶ βιοτεύειν ἐν ἀφθόνοις, καὶ ὁμιλεῖν
and to-pass-our-lives in plenty, and to-associate 'with (the)

καλαῖς καὶ μεγάλαις γυναιξὶ καὶ παρθένοις
'handsome and large women and virgins 'of (the)

Μήδων δὲ καὶ Περσῶν, μή, ὥσπερ οἱ
Medes and also 'of (the) 'Persians, (that) lest, like the

λωτοφάγοι, ἐπιλαθώμεθα τῆς ὁδοῦ οἴκαδε. Δοκεῖ
lotus-eaters, we-might-forget the road homewards. It-seems

οὖν μοι εἶναι εἰκὸς καὶ δίκαιον πρῶτον
therefore to-me to-be proper and just first

πειρᾶσθαι ἀφικνεῖσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα καὶ πρὸς
to-attempt to-return to — Greece and to

τοὺς οἰκείους, καὶ ἐπιδεῖξαι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν,
the members-of-our-families, and to-show the Greeks,

ὅτι ἑκόντες πένονται, ἐξὸν αὐτοῖς ὁρᾶν
that voluntarily they-are-poor, when-it-is-allowed them to-see

κομισαμένους ἐνθάδε πλουσίους, τοὺς
those) having-come hither rich, (but) — (those)

νῦν οἴκοι πολιτεύοντας ἐκεῖ σκληρῶς. Ἀλλά,
now at-home living there with-difficulty. But (why

γάρ, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἐστί δῆλον ὅτι, πάντα ταῦτα
more), for, O men, it-is evident that, all these

τἀγαθὰ τῶν κρατούντων. Δὴ
good (things belong to) the conquerors. It certainly

δεῖ λέγειν ταῦτο, πῶς ἂν πορευοίμεθά τε
is-proper to-mention this, how we may proceed not-only

ὡς ἀσφαλέστατα, καὶ εἰ δέοι μάχεσθαι, ὡς
as safely-as-possible, but-also if it-be-necessary to-fight, that

μαχοίμεθα κράτιστα. Πρῶτον μὲν τοίνυν,
we-may-fight (to the) best-advantage. First indeed therefore,

ἔφη, δοκεῖ μοι κατακαῦσαι τὰς ἁμάξας,
said-he, it-seems to-me (that we ought) to-burn the carriages,

ἃς ἔχομεν, ἵνα τὰ ζεύγη ἡμῶν μὴ
which we-have, in-order-that the cattle of-us may not

στρατηγῇ,
be-the-leader-of-the-army, [in order that our baggage may not influence

ἀλλὰ πορευώμεθα ὅπῃ
the movements of our army], but (that) we-may-march whithersoever

ἂν συμφέρῃ τῇ στρατιᾷ· ἔπειτα καὶ
it may be-convenient for-the army (to march); afterwards also

συγκατακαῦσαι τὰς σκηνάς. Γὰρ αὗται
to-burn the tents with (them). For these

αὖ μὲν παρέχουσιν ὄχλον ἄγειν, δὲ συνωφε-
(tents) again — give trouble to-carry, and contri-

λοῦσι οὐδὲν οὔτε εἰς τὸ μάχεσθαι
ute nothing — (either) to the to-fight [and are of no

οὔτ' εἰς τὸ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.
use in battle] | or to the to-have — provisions [or in pro-

Ἔτι δὲ καὶ ἀπαλλάζωμεν τὰ
curing provisions]. Moreover — also let-us-get-rid-of the

περιττὰ τῶν ἄλλων σκευῶν, πλὴν ὅσα
superfluous (things) of — (our) other furniture, except what

ἔχομεν ἕνεκεν πολέμου, ἢ σίτου ἢ ποτῶν, ἵνα
we-have for-the-purpose of-war, or of-food, or of-drink, in-order-that

ὡς πλεῖστοι ἡμῶν ὦσιν ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις δὲ ὡς
as many-as-possible of-us may-be under — arms and as

ἐλάχιστα σκευοφορῶσι. Γὰρ μὲν ἐπίστασθε ὅτι
few-as-possible may-carry-baggage. For indeed you-know that

πάντα κρατουμένων ἀλλότρια·
all (things) [1]of (the) [2]conquered (become the) property-of-others;

δὲ ἢν κρατῶμεν δεῖ νομίζειν καὶ τοὺς
and if we-conquer it-becomes (you) to-think (that) even the

πολεμίους ἡμετέρους σκευοφόρους. Λοιπόν
enemy (are to be) our baggage-carriers. (It) remains

μοι εἰπεῖν ὅπερ καὶ νομίζω εἶναι μέγιστον.
for-me to-mention what [1]I even [2]consider to-be (of the) greatest

Γὰρ ὁρᾶτε καὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, ὅτι
(importance). For you-see even the enemy, that

οὐ ἐτόλμησαν πρόσθεν ἐξενεγκεῖν
[1]they-did not [2]dare first to-bring-on (the)

πόλεμον πρὸς ἡμᾶς, πρὶν συνέλαβον τοὺς στρα-
war against us, before they-had-seized the gene-

τηγοὺς ἡμῶν, νομίζοντες μὲν ὄντων
rals of-us, thinking (that) [1]we indeed (*[2]being*) (having)

τῶν ἀρχόντων, καὶ ἡμων πειθομένων
– commanders, and we being-obedient (to them, that)

ἡμᾶς εἶναι ἱκανοὺς περιγενέσθαι τῷ πολέμῳ·
we were competent to-conquer in — battle;

δε λαβόντες τοὺς ἄρχοντας ἐνόμιζον ἡμᾶς
but taking — (our) commanders they-thought (that) we

ἂν ἀπολέσθαι ἀναρχίᾳ καὶ ἀταξίᾳ. Οὖν
would perish in-anarchy and confusion. Therefore

δεῖ μὲν τοὺς ἄρχοντας τοὺς νῦν
it-is-proper — (that) the commanders — (our) present (commanders)

γενέσθαι πολὺ ἐπιμελεστέρους τῶν
be much more-vigilant (than) — (those who)

πρόσθεν, δὲ τοὺς ἀρχομένους
before (were commanders), and (that) the commanded (should be)

πολὺ μᾶλλον εὐτακτοτέρους καὶ πειθομένους τοῖς
much more orderly and obedient to-the

ἄρχουσι νῦν ἢ πρόσθεν. Δὲ ἤν τις ἀπει-
commanders now than formerly. And if any-one might-be-disobe-

θῇ, ἤν ψηφίσησθε τὸν ὑμῶν ἀεὶ ἐντυγ-
dient, if you-decree (that) — (he) of-you at-any-time meet-

χάνοντα σὺν τῷ ἄρχοντι κολάζειν,
ing (such a one, is to assist) with the commander to-punish

οὕτως οἱ πολέμιοι ἔσονται πλεῖστον ἐψευσ-
(him), thus the enemy will-be very-much de-

μένοι· γὰρ τῇδε τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ὄψονται
ceived (in what they expected); for in-that — day they-will-see

μυρίους Κλεάρχους ἀνθ' ἑνὸς, τοὺς ἐπιτρέ-
ten-thousand Clearchuses in-place-of one, — (who) will-per

ψοντας οὐδενὶ εἶναι κακῷ. Ἀλλὰ
mit no-one to-be bad (disobedient or cowardly). But

γὰρ καὶ ἤδη ὥρα περαίνειν· γὰρ οἱ
(enough), for (it is) even now time to-finish; for the

πολέμιοι ἴσως αὐτίκα παρέσονται. Ὅτῳ
enemy will perhaps immediately be-present. To-whom

οὖν δοκεῖ ταῦτα ἔχειν
therefore it-may-seem | (that) these (things) hold (themselves)

καλῶς ἐπικυρωσάτω
well [that what I have said is just and reasonable] let-them-approve

ὡς τάχιστα, ἵνα περαίνητα
(them) as speedily-as-possible, in-order-that they-may-be-accomplishe

ἔργῳ. Δὲ εἴ τι ἄλλο βέλτιον ἢ ταύτῃ.
in-fact. But if any-thing else (is) better than this,

καὶ ὁ ἰδιώτης τολμάτω
let-him (though) even — (a) private (soldier) be-bold (enough

διδάσκειν· γὰρ πάντες δεόμεθα κοινῆς
to-instruct (us); for we all seek (a) common

σωτηρίας.
safety.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· Ἀλλ' εἰ μὲν
After this Cheirisophus said: But if indeed

δεῖ τινος ἄλλου πρὸς τούτοις, οἷς
it-is-needed of-any-thing else for these (affairs), which

Ξενοφῶν λέγει, καὶ αὐτίκα ἐξέσται ποιεῖν·
Xenophon mentions, it-will even speedily be-allowed-us to-do (it);

δὲ ἃ νῦν εἴρηκε, δοκεῖ μοι
and what he-has now said, it-seems to-me (that we ought)

ψηφίσασθαι ὡς τάχιστα εἶναι ἄριστον· καὶ
to-vote as speedily-as-possible to-be the-best, and

ὅτῳ δοκεῖ ταῦτα ἀνατεινάτω τὴν
to-whom it-seems these (things to be right) let-him-hold-up —

χεῖρα. Ἅπαντες ἀνέτειναν. Δὲ
(his) hand. All held-up (their hands). But

Ξενοφῶν πάλιν ἀναστὰς εἶπε· Ὦ ἄνδρες,
Xenophon again rising said: O men,

ἀκούσατε ὧν δοκεῖ μοι προς-
hear (me respecting that) which seems to-me to-be-necessary-

δεῖν. Δῆλον ὅτι δεῖ ἡμᾶς πορεύ-
in-addition. (It is) evident that it-is-proper (that) we march-

εσθαι ὅπου ἔξομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· δὲ ἀκούω
to where we-shall-have — provisions; and I-hear (that)

εἶναι καλὰς κώμας, οὐ πλεῖον
there-are (some) considerable villages, being not more (than)

εἴκοσι σταδίων ἀπεχούσας. Ἂν οἶν οὖν θαυ-
twenty stadia distant. I would not therefore won-

μάζοιμι, εἰ οἱ πολέμιοι, ὥσπερ οἱ δειλοὶ κύνες,
der, if the enemy, like — cowardly dogs,

μὲν τε διώκουσι τοὺς παριόντας καὶ
indeed not-only follow — (those) passing-by but-also

δάκνουσιν, ἢν δύνωνται, δὲ φεύγουσι τοὺς
bite (them), if they-can, but flee-from — (those)

διώκοντας, καὶ εἰ αὐτοὶ
following (them), and (I would not be surprised) if they

ἐπακολουθοῖεν ἡμῖν ἀπιοῦσιν. Ἴσως οὖν
follow us departing. Perhaps therefore (it will be)

ἀσφαλέστερον ἡμῖν πορεύεσθαι ποιησαμένους
safer for-us to-march-forth having-formed (a hollow)

πλαίσιον τῶν ὅπλων, ἵνα τὰ σκευοφόρα
square of-the heavy-armed-men, in-order-that the baggage,

καὶ ὁ πολὺς ὄχλος εἴη ἐν ἀσφαλεστέρῳ.
and the many camp-followers may-be in the-greatest-safety (within it).

Εἰ νῦν οὖν ἀποδειχθείη, τίνα χρὴ ἡγεῖσθαι
If now therefore it-should-be-designated, whom it becomes to-lead

τοῦ πλαισίου, καὶ κοσμεῖν τὰ πρόσθεν,
the square, and to-regulate-and-arrange the front,

καὶ τίνας εἶναι ἐπὶ τῶν ἑκατέρων πλευρῶν,
and who (are) to-be on — each flank,

δὲ τίνας ὀπισθοφυλακεῖν, ἂν οὐ δέοι,
and who are-to-take-charge-of-the-rear, 'it may not 'be-necessary, (that)

ἡμᾶς βουλεύεσθαι ὁπότε οἱ πολέμιοι ἔλθοιεν,
we deliberate (about this) when the enemy may-come,

ἀλλὰ ἂν εὐθὺς χρῴμεθα τοῖς τεταγ-
but 'we might immediately 'make-use-of the (things) ar-

μένοις. Εἰ οὖν μὲν τις ἄλλος ὁρᾷ
ranged. If therefore indeed any-one else sees (something)

βέλτιον, ἐχέτω ἄλλως. Δὲ
better, | let-it-have-itself otherwise [let it be arranged otherwise]. But

εἰ μή, Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἡγείσθω, ἐπειδὴ καὶ ἔστι
if not, 'let Cheirisophus indeed 'lead, since also he-is

Λακεδαιμόνιος· δὲ δύο στρατηγὼ τῶν πρεσ-
(a) Lacedæmonian; but 'let two generals of-the old-

βυτάτων ἐπιμελείσθων ἑκατερῶν τῶν πλευρῶν·
est (generals) 'take-charge of-each of-the flanks,

δὲ ἡμεῖς οἱ νεώτεροι, τε ἐγώ καὶ Τιμασίων,
and 'let us the younger, namely I and Timasius,

ὀπισθοφυλακῶμεν, τὸ νῦν εἶναι. Δὲ
'take-command-of-the-rear, | the now to-be [for the present]. And (for)

τὸ λοιπόν, πειρώμενοι ταύτης τῆς τάξεως, ἀεὶ
the rest, having-tried this — arrangement, always

βουλευσόμεθα ὅ τι ἂν δοκῇ εἶναι
(or at any time) we-can-consider what may seem to-be (the)

κράτιστον. Εἰ δὲ τις ὁρᾷ ἄλλο
best. If indeed any-one perceives (any thing) else

βέλτιον, λεξάτω. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγεν,
better, let-him-mention (it). But when no-one objected,

εἶπε· Ὅτῳ δοκεῖ ταῦτα, ἀνα-
he-said: To-whom it-seems (that) these (things are right), let-him-

τεινάτω τὴν χεῖρα. Ἐδόξε ταῦτα. Νῦν
hold-up — (his) hand. He-approved these (things). Now

τοίνυν, ἔφη, ἀπιόντας δεῖ ποιεῖν τὰ
therefore, said-he, departing it-becomes (you) to-perform — (things

δεδογμένα· καὶ ὅστις τε
that) have-seemed-good (and been determined on); and whoever —

ὑμῶν ἐπιθυμεῖ ἰδεῖν τοὺς οἰκείους, μεμ-
of-you desires to-see — (their) homes-and-families, let-him-

νήσθω εἶναι ἀγαθὸς ἀνήρ· γὰρ ἔστιν οὐ τυχεῖν
remember to-be (a) brave man; for it-is not to-obtain

τούτου ἄλλως·
of-this otherwise; [for in no other manner can this be obtained];

ὅστις τε ἐπιθυμεῖ ζῆν, πειράσθω νικᾶν· γὰρ μὲν
whoever — desires to-live, let-him-strive to-conquer; for indeed

τὸ κατακαίνειν ἐστί τῶν νικώντων, δὲ
the to-kill [killing] is (the part) of-the conquering, but

τὸ ἀποθνήσκειν τῶν ἡττωμένων· δὲ
the to-die [dying] (is the part) of-the conquered; and

καὶ εἴ τις ἐπιθυμεῖ χρημάτων πειράσθω κρατεῖν·
also if any-one desires property let-him-strive to-vanquish;

γὰρ ἐστὶ τῶν νικώντων καὶ σώζειν
for it-is (the part) of — (those) conquering also to-save

τὰ ἑαυτῶν, καὶ λαμβάνειν τὰ
the (property belonging) to-themselves, and to-take the (property)

τῶν ἡττωμένων.
of-the conquered.

## CHAPTER III.

Τούτων λεχθέντων ἀνέστησαν, καὶ
These (things) having-been-spoken they-rose-up, and

ἀπελθόντες κατέκαιον τὰς ἁμάξας καὶ τὰς σκηνάς·
departing they-burned the carriages and the tents;

δὲ μὲν τῶν περιττῶν ὅτου τις δέοιτο,
and indeed of-the superfluous-things of-which any-one might-want,

μετεδίδοσαν ἀλλήλοις, δὲ τὰ ἄλλα ἐῤῥίπτουν
they-distributed-among one-another, but the rest they-threw

εἰς τὸ πῦρ. Ποιήσαντες ταῦτα ἠριστοποι-
into the fire. Having-done these (things) they-break-

οῦντο. Δὲ ἀριστοποιουμένων Μιθραδάτης
fasted. But (while) breakfasting Mithradates

ἔρχεται σὺν ὡς τριάκοντα ἱππεῦσι, καὶ καλε-
came with about thirty horsemen, and having-

σάμενος τοὺς στρατηγοὺς εἰς ἐπήκοον λέγει
called the generals to (a) place-of-hearing he-speaks

ὧδε· Ἐγώ, ὦ Ἕλληνες ἄνδρες, ἦν καὶ πιστὸς
thus. I, O Grecian men, was even faithful

Κύρῳ, ὡς ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε, καὶ νῦν εὔνους
to-Cyrus, as you know, and (am) now well-disposed

ὑμῖν· καὶ εἰμὶ ἐνθάδε διάγων σὺν πολλῷ φόβῳ.
to-you; and I-am here living with much fear.

Εἰ οὖν ὁρῴην ὑμᾶς βουλευομένους τι
If therefore I-perceive (that) you are-concerting any-thing

σωτήριον, ἄν ἔλθοιμι πρὸς ὑμᾶς, ἔχων
salutary, I might go to you, having (with me)

καὶ πάντας τοὺς θεραπόντας. Οὖν λέξατε
also all — (my) followers. Therefore tell

με τί ἔχετε ἐν νῷ ὡς φίλον τε καὶ εὔνουν
me what you-have in mind as to (a) friend and also well-disposed

καὶ βουλόμενον ποιεῖσθαι τὸν στόλον
(to you), and wishing to-make the march

κοινῇ σὺν ὑμῖν. Τοῖς στρατηγοῖς βουλευομένοις
in-common with you. The generals consulting-together

ἔδοξεν ἀποκρίνασθαι τάδε· καὶ Χειρίσοφος
it-seemed (best) to-have-answered thus; and Cheirisophus

ἔλεγε· Δοκεῖ ἡμῖν, εἴ τις ἐᾷ ἡμᾶς ἀπιέναι
spoke: It-seems (good) to-us, if any-one allows us to-depart

οἴκαδε, διαπορεύεσθαι τὴν χώραν ὡς ἀσινέστατα
for-home, to-proceed-through the country as harmlessly-as

ἂν δυνώμεθα· δὲ ἤν τις ἀποκωλύῃ ἡμᾶς
[1]we may [1]be-able; but if any-one prohibit us

τῆς ὁδοῦ, διαπολεμεῖν τούτῳ ὡς
the road, to-[1]fight (our way) [1]against this-one as

κράτιστα ἂν δυνώμεθα. [2]Ἐκ τούτου Μιθραδάτης
bravely-as [1]we may [1]be-able. On this Mithradates

ἐπειρᾶτο διδάσκειν ὡς ἄπορον εἴη σωθῆναι,
endeavoured to-instruct (them) how impossible it-would-be to-be-saved,

βασιλέως ἄκοντος. [2]Ἐνθα δὴ ἐγιγ-
(the) king (being) unwilling. Hereupon indeed it-was-

νώσκετο ὅτι εἴη ὑπόπεμπτος· γὰρ καὶ τις
perceived that he-might-be insidiously-sent; for also some-one

τῶν οἰκείων Τισσαφέρνους παρηκολούθει ἕνεκα
of-the followers of-Tissaphernes attended for-the-sake-of

πίστεως. Καὶ ἐκ τούτου ἐδόκει τοῖς
(securing his) fidelity. And from this it-seemed to-the

στρατηγοῖς εἶναι βέλτιον ποιήσασθαι δόγμα,
commanders to-be best to-make (a) decree, (that)

ἔστ' εἶεν ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ τὸν
as-long-as they-might-be in the territory-of-the-enemy, (that) the

πόλεμον εἶναι ἀκήρυκτον. Γὰρ προς-
war (was) to-be without-heralds (and implacable). For coming-

ιόντες διέφθειρον τοὺς στρατιώτας, καὶ
to (them) they-were-corrupting the soldiers, and

διέφθειραν γε ἕνα λοχαγὸν Νίκαρχον
they-corrupted at-least one captain (namely) Nicarchus (the)

Αρκάδα· καὶ ὥχετο ἀπιὼν νυκτὸς
Arcadian; | and he-went-away departing [and he went off] by-nigh

σὺν ὡς εἴκοσι ἀνδρώποις.
with about thirty men.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἀριστήσαντες, καὶ διαβάντες
After this having-taken-their-first-meal, and having-crossed

τὸν ποταμόν Ζαπάταν, ἐπορεύοντο τεταγμένοι
the river Zapata, they-marched-forth drawn-up-in-order,

ἔχοντες τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὸν ὄχλον ἐν μέσῳ.
having the baggage-cattle and the camp-followers in (the) middle

Δὲ αὐτῶν οὐ προεληλυθότων πολύ,
(of the square). But they not having-gone far,

ὁ Μιθραδάτης πάλιν ἐπιφαίνεται ἔχων ὡς δια-
— Mithradates again appeared having about two-

κοσίους ἱππέας, καὶ ὡς τετρακοσίους τοξότας καὶ
hundred horsemen, and about four-hundred archers and

σφενδονήτας, μάλα ἐλαφροὺς καὶ εὐζώνους· καὶ
slingers, very light and active; and

προσῄει μὲν ὡς ὢν φίλος πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας.
approached indeed as being (a) friend to the Greeks.

Δ' ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο ἐγγύς, ἐξαπίνης οἱ μὲν
But when he-was near, suddenly — (those) indeed

αὐτῶν καὶ ἱππεῖς καὶ πεζοί ἐτόξευον,
of-them both horse and foot commenced-discharging-arrows,

δ' οἱ ἐσφενδόνων, καὶ ἐτίτρωσκον. Δὲ
and — (others) slinging-stones, and wounded (our men). But

οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔπασχον μὲν
the rear-guard of-the Greeks suffered indeed

κακῶς, δ' ἀντεποίουν οὐδέν. Γὰρ
badly, and could-'do nothing 'against (the enemy). For

τε οἱ Κρῆτες ἐτόξευον βραχύτερα
not-only 'did the Cretans 'shoot (their) 'arrows a-shorter-distance

τῶν Περσῶν, καὶ ἅμα ὄντες φιλοὶ
(than) the Persians, but-also at-the-same-time being light-armed

κατεκέκλειντο εἴσω τῶν ὅπλων· οἱ ἀκοντισταὶ
they-were-included within the heavy-armed-men; the javelin-men

τε ἠκόντιζον βραχύτερα ἢ ὡς ἐξικνεῖσθαι
indeed threw (their) javelins shorter than so-as to-reach

τῶν σφενδονητῶν. Ἐκ τούτου ἐδόκει Ξενοφῶντι
the slingers. Upon this it-seemed to-Xenophon

εἶναι διωκτέον· καὶ οἱ τῶν ὁπλιτῶν
to-be necessary-to-pursue; and —(those) of-the heavy-armed-men

καὶ τῶν πελταστῶν ἔτυχον σὺν αὐτῷ
and of-the targeteers (who) happened (to be) with him

ὀπισθοφυλακοῦντες ἐδίωκον· δὲ διώκοντες κατε-
guarding-the-rear pursued, but pursuing they-

λάμβανον οὐδένα τῶν πολεμίων. Γὰρ οὔτε ἦσαν
overtook no-one of-the enemy. For neither were-there

ἱππεῖς τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, οὔτε ἐδύναντο οἱ πεζοὶ
horsemen to-the Greeks, nor could — (our) infantry

καταλαμβάνειν, ἐν ὀλίγῳ χωρίῳ, τοὺς πεζοὺς
overtake, in (a) small space, the infantry

φεύγοντας ἐκ πολλοῦ· γὰρ
(of the enemy) fleeing from (a) (*much*) (distance); for

ἦν οὐχ οἷόν τε διώκειν πολὺ ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄλλου
it-was not possible to-follow far from the rest (of the)

στρατεύματος. Δὲ οἱ βάρβαροι ἱππεῖς καὶ ἅμα
army. And the barbarian cavalry even while

φεύγοντες ἐτίτρωσκον τοξεύοντες ἀπὸ
fleeing wounded (our men) shooting-their-arrows from

τῶν ἵππων εἰς τοὔπισθεν· δὲ ὁπόσον οἱ Ἕλληνες
the horses backwards; and as-much-as the Greeks

προδιώξειαν τοσοῦτον ἔδει πάλιν ἐπαναχω-
advanced-in-pursuit so-much it-was-necessary again to-re-

ρεῖν μαχομένους. Ὥστε τῆς ὅλης ἡμέρας
treat fighting. So-that (during) the entire day

οὐ διῆλθον πλέον πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι
they-did not pass-through more (than) five and twenty

σταδίων, ἀλλὰ δείλης ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὰς
stadia, but late-in-the-afternoon they-arrived at the

κώμας. Ἐνθα δὴ ἦν πάλιν ἀθυμία. Καὶ
villages. Here truly there-was again dejection-of-mind. And

Χειρίσοφος καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν στρατηγῶν
Cheirisophus and the oldest of-the generals

ἠτιῶντο Ξενοφῶντα, ὅτι ἐδίωκεν
blamed Xenophon, that he-pursued (the enemy), (departing)

ἀπὸ τῆς φάλαγγος, καὶ τε αὐτός ἐκινδύνευε
from the phalanx, and so-indeed he endangered

καὶ οὐδὲν μᾶλλον ἐδύνατα βλάπτειν
(himself) and 'was none the-more 'able to-injure

τοὺς πολεμίους. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἀκούσας ἔλεγεν
the enemy. But Xenophon having-heard (this) said

ὅτι ἠτιώντο ὀρθῶς, καὶ τὸ ἔργον αὐτὸ
that they-blamed (him) justly, and (that) the act itself

μαρτυροίη αὐτοῖς. Ἀλλ' ἐγώ, ἔφη,
(in its results) bore-testimony for-them. But I, said-he,

ἀναγκάσθην διώκειν, ἐπειδὴ ἑώρων ἡμᾶς μὲν
was-forced to-pursue, after I-saw (that) we indeed

ἐν τῷ μένειν πάσ-
|in the to-remain [in keeping our stations in the hollow square] were-

χοντας κακῶς, δὲ οὐ δυναμένους ἀντιποιεῖν. Δὲ
suffering badly, and not being-able to-retaliate. But

ἐπειδὴ ἐδιώκομεν, ἔφη, ἀληθῆ ὑμεῖς
when we-pursued, said-he, (the things were) true (as) you

λέγετε· γὰρ μὲν ἐδυνάμεθα ποιεῖν οὐδὲν μᾶλλον
say, for indeed we-were-able to-do not-any more

κακῶς τοὺς πολεμίους, δὲ ἀνεχωροῦμεν πάνυ
injury (to) the enemy, but we-returned very

χαλεπῶς. Χάρις οὖν τοῖς θεοῖς ὅτι οὐκ
difficultly. Thanks therefore to-the gods, that they-'did not

ἦλθον σὺν πολλῇ ῥώμῃ ἀλλὰ σὺν ὀλίγοις,
'come with (a) great force but (only) with (a) few

ὥστε μὲν μὴ βλάψαι μεγάλα, δὲ
(troops), so-as indeed not to-have-injured (us) much, and (yet

δηλῶσαι ὧν δεόμεθα. Γὰρ νῦν μὲν οἱ
to-have-shown (us) what we-needed. For now indeed the

πολέμιοι τοξεύουσι καὶ σφενδονῶσιν
enemy 'shoot (their) 'arrows and sling-stones

ὅσον οὔτε οἱ Κρῆτες δύνανται ἀντιτοξεύειν,
'so (far) 'as (that) neither the Cretans are-able to-shoot-back,

οὔτε οἱ βάλλοντες ἐκ χειρὸς ἐξικνεῖσθαι,
nor —(those) throwing from (the) hand (are able) to-reach,

δὲ ὅταν διώκωμεν αὐτούς, μὲν οὐχ οἷόν τε
and when we-pursue them, (it is) indeed not proper —

διώκειν πολὺ χωρίον ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος,
to-follow (a) great distance from the army,

δὲ οὐδ' ἐν ὀλίγῳ, εἰ ταχὺς πεζός
but neither in (a) small (space), if (ever so) swift (the) foot-soldier

εἴη, ἂν διώκων καταλάβοι πεζὸν
might-be, could 'he pursuing 'overtake (a) foot-soldier | (he be-

ἐκ ῥύματος τόξου.
ing distant) from (the) drawing 'of (a) 'bow [starting from the

Εἰ οὖν ἡμεῖς μέλλομεν
distance of a bow-shot from him]. If therefore we intend

εἴργειν τούτους, ὥστε μὴ δύνασθαι
to-keep-off these (our enemies), so-as not to-be-able

βλάπτειν ἡμᾶς πορευομένους, δεῖ τὴν τα-
to-hurt us marching-forth, it-is-necessary — as-

χίστην τε σφενδονητῶν καὶ ἱππέων.
speedily-as-possible (to procure) not-only slingers but-also cavalry.

Ἀκούω δ' εἶναι ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι ἡμῶν
I-hear indeed (that) there-are in the army of-us

Ῥοδίους, φασιν τοὺς πολλοὺς ὧν ἐπίστασθαι
Rhodians, they-say (that) the great-part of-them know

σφενδονᾶν, καὶ τὸ βέλος αὐτῶν καὶ
(how) to-use-the-sling, and (that) the weapon of-them also

φέρεσθαι διπλάσιον τῶν Περσικῶν σφενδονῶν.
carries double (the distance) of-the Persian slings

Γὰρ ἐκεῖναι διὰ σφενδονᾶν τοῖς λίθοις
For these (Persian slings) on-account-of slinging — stones

χειροπληθέσι ἐξικνοῦνται ἐπὶ βραχύ·
filling-the-hands reach (only) to (a) short (distance),

δὲ γε οἱ Ῥόδιοι καὶ ἐπίστανται χρῆσθαι
but — the Rhodians even know (how) to-use

μολυβδίσιν. Ἢν οὖν ἐπισκεψώμεθα τίνες αὐτῶν
leaden-bullets. If then we-ascertain which-ones of-them

πέπανται σφενδόνας, καὶ μὲν δῶμεν ἀργύριον
have-acquired slings, and (that) indeed we-give money

τούτῳ αὐτῶν, δὲ τῷ ἐθέλοντι πλέκειν
to-that-one for-them. and — (to him) willing to-plait

ἄλλας τελῶμεν ἄλλο ἀργύριον, καὶ τῷ
other (slings) we-might-give other money, and — (for him)

ἐθέλοντι σφενδονᾶν ἐν τῷ τεταγμένῳ
willing to-use-the-sling in the rank-or-place-assigned-to (him)

εὑρίσκωμεν τινὰ ἄλλην ἀτέλειαν, ἴσως τινὲς
we-may-find some other privileges, probably some

ἱκανοὶ ὠφελεῖν ἡμᾶς φανοῦνται.
capable to-aid us will-appear (and offer their services).

Δὲ καὶ ὁρῶ ἵππους ὄντας ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι,
And also I-see horses (*being*) in the army,

τοὺς τινας μὲν παρ' ἐμοί δὲ τοὺς
— some indeed (are) with me and — (others)

καταλελειμμένους τῷ Κλεάρχῳ, δὲ καὶ πολλοὺς
left by — Clearchus, and also many

ἄλλους αἰχμαλώτους σκευοφοροῦντας. Ἂν
others taken-from-the-enemy (used in) carrying-baggage. If

οὖν ἐκλέξαντες πάντας τούτους, μὲν
therefore, collecting all these (horses), we indeed

ἀντιδῶμεν σκευοφόρα, δὲ κατασκευάσωμεν
give-in-place (of them) ordinary-baggage-cattle. and equip

τοὺς ἵππους εἰς ἱππέας, ἴσως καὶ οὗτοι ἀνιάσουσί
the horses for cavalry, perhaps even these will-annoy

τι τοὺς φεύγοντας. Ταῦτα
somewhat the (enemy) fleeing. (Respecting) these (things)

ἔδοξε. Καὶ τῆς ταύτης
it-seemed-right. [These things were approved of] And the same

νυκτὸς μὲν ἐγένοντο σφενδονῆται εἰς
night indeed there-became slingers to (the number of)

διακοσίους, δὲ καὶ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἵπποι δὲ καὶ
two-hundred, and also on-the next-day horses and also

ἱππεῖς εἰς πεντήκοντα ἐδοκιμάσθησαν,
horsemen to (the number of) fifty were-judged-fit

καὶ σπολάδες καὶ θώρακες ἐπορίσθησαν
(for service), and leathern-jackets and breastplates were-provided

αὐτοῖς· καὶ Λύκιος ὁ Πολυστράτου Ἀθηναῖος
for-them and Lycius the son-of-Polystratus (the) Athenian

δὲ ἐπεστάθη ἵππαρχος.
was also appointed (their) commander.

## CHAPTER IV.

Δὲ μείναντες τὴν ταύτην ἡμέραν, τῇ ἄλλῃ
AND halting for — that-same day, on-the next

ἀναστάντες πρωϊαίτερον ἐπορεύοντ ο·
(day) rising-up earlier-in-the-morning (than usual) they-marched-forth;

γὰρ ἔδει αὐτοὺς διαβῆναι χαρά-
for it-was-necessary (that) they should-cross (a) ravine-formed-

δραν, ἐφ' ᾗ ἐφοβοῦντο μὴ οἱ πολέμιοι
by-a torrent, at which they-were-afraid lest the enemy

ἐπιθοῖντο αὐτοῖς διαβαίνουσι. Δὲ αὐτοὶ διαβε-
might-attack them crossing-over. But they having-

βηκόσιν ὁ Μιθραδάτης πάλιν φαίνεται ἔχων
crossed-over — Mithradates again appeared having (a)

χιλίους ἱππέας δὲ καὶ τοξότας σφενδονήτας
thousand horsemen and also archers (and) slingers

εἰς τετρακισχιλίους· γὰρ ᾔτησε Τισσα-
to (the number of) four-thousand; for he-solicited Tissa-

φέρνην τοσούτους, καὶ ἔλαβεν, ὑποσχόμενος
phernes (for) so-many, and obtained (them), promising

ἂν λάβῃ τούτους, παραδώσειν τοὺς Ἕλληνας
if-he should receive these, to-deliver the Greeks

αὐτῷ, καταφρονήσας, ὅτι, ἐν τῇ πρόσθεν
to-him, having-despised (them), because, in the former

προσβολῇ ἔχων ὀλίγους ἔπαθε μὲν οὐδέν,
attack having (only) few (men) he-suffered indeed no (loss)

δὲ ἐνόμιζε ποιῆσαι πολλὰ κακὰ
and thought (that) he-had-occasioned (them) much annoyance

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες διαβεβηκότες
When indeed the Greeks having (now) crossed (the ra-

ἀπεῖχον τῆς χαράδρας ὅσον ὀκτὼ στα-
vine, and) were-distant from-the ravine about eight sta-

δίους, καὶ ὁ Μιθραδάτης διέβαινεν ἔχων τὴν
dia, also — Mithradates crossed-over having the

δύναμιν. Δὲ παρήγγελτο τε
force (above mentioned). And instructions-had-been-given not-only

τῶν πελταστῶν, καὶ τῶν ὁπλιτῶν,
(to those) of-the targeteers, but-also (to those) of-the heavy-armed-men,

οὓς ἔδει διώκειν, καὶ εἴρητο τοῖς ἱππεῦσι
whom it-became to-pursue, and-also it-was-told to-the horsemen

διώκειν θαῤῥοῦσι, ὡς ἱκανῆς δυνάμεως ἐφε-
to-pursue being-confident-and-bold, as (a) sufficient force would

ψομένης. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Μιθραδάτης κατειλήφει
be-following (them). When indeed — Mithradates had-overtaken

καὶ ἤδη σφενδόναι καὶ τοξεύματα
(them), and already (the) slings and arrows

ἐξικοῦντο ἐσήμηνε τοῖς Ἕλλησι
began-to-reach (them) (then) the-signal-was-given to-the Greeks

τῇ σάλπιγγι, καὶ εὐθὺς, οἷς εἴρητο,
with-the trumpet, and directly they, of-whom it-was-requested,

ἔδεον ὁμόσε, καὶ οἱ ἱππεῖς ἤλαυνον·
ran there (to meet the enemy), and the cavalry charged;

δὲ οἱ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο ἀλλ' ἔφευγον
but the (enemy) did not receive (them) but fled

ἐπὶ τὴν χαράδραν. Ἐν τῇ ταύτῃ διώξει τε
to the ravine. In — this pursuit not-only

πολλοί τῶν πεζῶν τοῖς βαρβάροις ἀπέθανον,
many of-the foot-soldiers (of) the barbarians died,

καὶ ἐν τῇ χαράδρᾳ ἐλήφθησαν ζωοὶ εἰς
but-also in the ravine were-taken alive to (the number of)

ὀκτωκαίδεκα τῶν ἱππέων. Οἱ Ἕλληνες δὲ
eighteen of-the horsemen. The Greeks indeed

αὐτοκέλευστοι ἠκίσαντο τοὺς ἀποθανόντας, ὡς
of-their-own-accord mutilated the dying, so

ὅτι εἴη φοβερώτατον τοῖς πολεμίοις ὁρᾶν.
that it-might-be most-frightful for-the enemy to-see.

Καὶ μὲν οἱ πολέμιοι πράξαντες οὕτω ἀπῆλθον·
And indeed the enemy having-fared thus departed;

δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες πορευόμενοι ἀσφαλῶς τὸ λοιπὸν
but the Greeks proceeding safely (for) the rest

τῆς ἡμέρας, ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν Τίγρητα.
of-the day, arrived at the river Tigris.

Ἐνταῦθα ἦν μεγάλη ἐρήμη πόλις, δ'
Here there-was (a) large deserted city, and (the)

ὄνομα αὐτῇ ἦν Λάρισσα· δὲ Μῆδοι τὸ παλαιὸν
name to-it was Larissa; and (the) Medes — formerly

ᾤκουν αὐτήν. Τὸ εὖρος δὲ τοῦ τείχους αὐτῆς
inhabited it. The breadth indeed of-the wall of-it

ἦν πέντε καὶ εἴκοσι πόδες, δ' ὕψος ἑκατόν·
was five and twenty feet, and (the) height a-hundred;

ἡ περίοδος δὲ τοῦ κύκλου δύο παρασάγγαι·
the circuit indeed of-the enclosure (was) two parasangs;

ᾠκοδόμητο δὲ πλίνθοις κεραμίαις· δ' ὑπῆν
it-was-built — of-bricks made-of-clay; and there-was-under (it)

λιθίνη κρηπὶς τὸ ὕψος εἴκοσι ποδῶν.
(a) stone foundation the height (of it being) twenty feet.

Ὁ βασιλεὺς Περσῶν, ὅτε Πέρσαι ἐλάμβανον
The king of (the) Persians, when (the) Persians were-wresting

τὴν ἀρχὴν παρὰ Μήδων, πολιορκῶν ταύτην,
the empire from (the) Medes, besieging this (city),

ἐδύνατο οὐδενὶ πρόπῳ ἑλεῖν· δὲ νεφέλη
could in-no manner take (it); but (a) cloud

προκαλύψασα ἥλιον ἠφάνισε, μέχρι οἱ ἄνθρωποι
having-covered (the) sun made-it-disappear, until the people

ἐξέλιπον, καὶ οὕτως ἑάλω. Παρὰ ταύτην
deserted (it), and so it-was-taken. Near this

τὴν πόλιν ἦν λιθίνη πυραμὶς, τὸ εὖρος
— city there-was (a) stone pyramid, the breadth

μὲν ἑνὸς πλέθρου, δὲ τὸ ὕψος δύο πλέθρων.
indeed (of it was) of-one plethra, and the height of-two plethra.

Ἐπὶ ταύτης ἦσαν πολλοὶ τῶν βαρβάρων
On this (pyramid) there-were many of-the barbarians

ἀποπεφευγότες ἐκ τῶν κωμῶν πλησίον. Ἐντεῦθεν
having-fled from the villages near. Hence

ἐπορεύθησαν ἕνα σταθμὸν, ἓξ παρασάγγας,
they-proceeded one day's-march, (making) six parasangs,

πρὸς μέγα ἔρημον τεῖχος, κείμενον πρὸς τῇ
to (a) large deserted fortress, situated near — (a)

πόλει· δὲ ὄνομα τῇ πόλει ἦν Μέσπιλα·
city; and (the) name (*to-the*) (of the) city was Mespila;

δὲ Μῆδοι ποτε ᾤκουν αὐτήν. Δὲ ἡ κρηπὶς
and (the) Medes formerly inhabited it. And the foundation

μὲν ἦν ξεστοῦ λίθου κονχυλιάτου, τὸ εὖρος
indeed was of-polished stone (full of) shells, the breadth

πεντήκοντα ποδῶν, καὶ τὸ ὕψος
(thereof was) fifty feet, and the height

πεντήκοντα. Ἐπὶ δὲ ταύτῃ ἐπῳκοδόμητο
fifty (feet). On — this was-constructed (a)

πλίνθινον τεῖχος, τὸ εὖρος μὲν πεντήκοντα
brick wall, the breadth indeed (thereof being) fifty

ποδῶν, δὲ τὸ ὕψος ἑκατόν· δὲ ἡ περίοδος τοῦ
feet, and the height a-hundred; and the circuit of-the

κύκλου ἓξ παρασάγγαι. Ἐντεῦθα Μηδία
enclosure (was) six parasangs. Here Media (the)

γυνὴ βασιλέως ἐλέγετο καταφυγεῖν ὅτε Μῆδοι
wife (of the) king it-is-said took-refuge when (the) Medes

ἀπώλεσαν τὴν ἀρχὴν ὑπὸ Περσῶν. Δὲ ὁ
were-deprived (of) the empire by (the) Persians. But the

βασιλεὺς Περσῶν πολιορκῶν ταύτην τὴν πόλιν
king (of the) Persians besieging this city was

οὐκ ἐδύνατο ἑλεῖν οὔτε χρόνῳ, οὔτε βίᾳ·
not able to-take (it) either by-length-of-time, or by-force

δὲ Ζεὺς ποιεῖ τοὺς ἐνοικοῦντας ἐμβροντήτους,
but Jupiter made the inhabitants (as it were) thunder-struck,

καὶ οὕτως ἑάλω.
and so (the place) was-taken

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν ἕνα σταθμὸν,
Hence — they-proceeded one day's-march, (making

τέτταρας παρασάγγας. Εἰς δὲ τοῦτον τὸν
four parasangs. In — this —

σταθμὸν Τισσαφέρνης ἐπεφάνε, ἔχων τε
day's-march Tissaphernes appeared, having not-only (the)

ἱππέας οὓς αὐτὸς ἦλθε, καὶ τὴν δύναμιν
cavalry (with) which he came, but-also the force

Ὁρόντου τοῦ ἔχοντος τὴν θυγατέρα
of-Orontes — (he) having (with him) the daughter

βασιλέως, καὶ ἔχων βαρβάρους
of (the) king (in marriage), and having (the) barbarians

οὓς Κῦρος ἀνέβη, καὶ ἔχων οὓς ὁ
whom Cyrus went-up (with), and having (the troops) which the

ἀδελφὸς βασιλέως ἐβοήθει βασιλεῖ, καὶ,
brother of (the) king assisted (the) king (with), and,

πρὸς τούτοις, ὅσους βασιλεὺς ἔδωκεν αὐτῷ·
besides these, as-many-as (the) king had-given him;

ὥστε τὸ στράτευμα ἐφάνη πάμπολυ. Δ'
so-that the army appeared exceeding y (large). But

ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο ἐγγὺς, μὲν καταστήσας τὰς
when he-came near, (then) indeed having-placed — (some)

τῶν τάξεων ὄπισθεν εἶχε, δὲ παρα-
of — (his) ranks in-the-rear he-kept (them there), but lead-

γαγών τὰς ἐμβάλλειν εἰς τὰ
ing — (others) (obliquely) to-throw (them) to the

πλάγια, μὲν οὐκ ἐτόλμησεν οὐδ'
flanks, (though) indeed he-did not dare (to attack) nor

ἐβούλετο διακινδυνεύειν· δὲ παρήγγειλε
did-he-wish to-risk (any thing); but he-ordered

σφενδονᾶν καὶ τοξεύειν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ
(his men) to-use-their-slings and bows. When indeed the

Ῥόδιοι διαταχθέντες ἐσφενδόνησαν, καὶ οἱ Σκύ-
Rhodians dispersed-along-the-ranks used-their-slings, and the Scy-

θαι τοξόται ἐτόξευσαν, καὶ οὐδεὶς ἡμάρτανεν
thian archers used-their-bows, | and no-one failed (a)

ἀνδρός, (γὰρ οὐδὲ εἷ
man, [no one failed to hit a man], (for neither if he had

πάνυ προθυμοῖτο ἦν ῥᾴδιον,) καὶ ὁ Τισ
very-much desired (to do so) was it easy,) and — Tis-

σαφέρνης μάλα ταχέως ἀπεχώρει ἔξω βελῶν,
saphernes very speedily retreated beyond (the) missiles,

καὶ αἱ ἄλλαι τάξεις ἀπεχώρησαν.
and the other divisions (of the Persians) (also) retreated.

Καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας οἱ μὲν ἐπορεύ-
And the rest of-the day the (Greeks) indeed continued

οντο, δ' οἱ εἵποντο· καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι
their-march, and the (enemy) followed, and the barbarians

οὐκέτι ἐσίνοντο τότε τῇ ἀκροβολίσει·
no-longer harassed (them) then with — (their) skirmishing

γὰρ οἱ Ῥόδιοι ἐσφενδόνων μακρότερον τῶν
for the Rhodians threw-stones farther (than) the

Περσῶν καὶ πλείστων τοξοτῶν. Δὲ καὶ τὰ
Persians, and the-most of-the-bowmen. And also the

τόξα, τὰ Περσικά, ἐστι μεγάλα· ὥστε ὁπόσα
bows, (namely) the Persian, are large; so-that as-many

τῶν τοξευμάτων ἁλίσκοιτο ἦν χρήσιμα τοῖς
of-the arrows as-were-taken (up) were useful to-the

Κρηθσί· καὶ διετέλουν χρώμενοι τοὺς τοξεύμασι
Cretans, and they-continued using the arrows

τῶν πολεμίων, καὶ ἐμελέτων τοξεύειν ἄνω ἱέντες
of-the enemy, | and they-practised shooting upwards going

μακράν.
far [and they practised shooting these arrows high into the air]

Δὲ καὶ εὑρίσκετο πολλὰ νεῦρα ἐν ταῖς κώμαις,
And also they-found many bow-strings in the villages

καὶ μόλυβδος, ὥστε χρῆσθαι εἰς τὰς σφενδόνας.
also lead, so-as to-be-used for the slings

Καὶ μὲν ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ, ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες
And indeed on-that — day, when the Greeks

ἐπιτυχόντες κώμαις κατεστρατοπεδεύοντο, οἱ
arriving at (the) villages encamped, the

βάρβαροι ἀπῆλθον, ἔχοντες τότε μεῖον ἐν τῇ
barbarians departed, having then the-worst in the

ἀκροβολίσει· δὲ τὴν ἐπιοῦσαν ἡμέραν οἱ Ἕλληνες
skirmish; but on-the following day the Greeks

ἔμειναν, καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο· γὰρ ἦν πολὺς σῖτος
remained, and collected-provisions; for there-was much corn

ἐν ταῖς κώμαις. Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐπορεύοντο
in the villages. But on-the next-day they-marched

διὰ τοῦ πεδίου, καὶ Τισσαφέρνας εἵπετο ἀκροβο-
through the plain, and Tissaphernes followed throwing-

λιζόμενος. Ἔνθα δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔγνωσαν,
at-them-from-a-distance. Here indeed the Greeks perceived,

ὅτι πλαίσιον ἰσόπλευρον εἴη πονηρὰ τάξις,
that (a) column of-equal-sides was (a) bad arrangement

πολεμίων ἑπομένων. Γὰρ ἦν μὲν τὰ κέρατα
the) enemy following For if indeed the wings

τοῦ πλαισίου συγκύπτῃ, ἢ ὁδοῦ οὔσης
(or flanks) of-the square close-together, or (the) road being

στενωτέρας, ἢ ὀρέων ἀναγκαζόντων, ἢ γεφύρας,
narrow, or mountains forcing, or (a) bridge

ἔστιν ἀνάγκη τοῦς ὁπλίτας
to be passed), it is a-necessity (that) the heavy-armed-men

ἐκθλίβεσθαι, καὶ πορεύεσθαι πονήρως,
be-pushed-out-of-their places, and march with-difficulty,

ἅμα μὲν πιεζομένους, δὲ καὶ ἅμα
at-the-same-time indeed (being) pressed-upon, and also at-the-same-time

ταραττομένους· ὥστε ἐνάγκη εἶναι
thrown-into-confusion so-that (from) necessity (they were) to-be

δυσχρήστους, ὄντας ἀτάκτους. Δ' αὖ ὅταν τὰ
useless, being in-confusion. And again when the

κέρατα διασχῇ, ἀνάγκη τότε τοὺς ἐκθλι-
wings divide, it is-necessary then (that) — (those) pushed

βομένους διασπᾶσθαι, καὶ τὸ μέσον
out-of-their-places 'be (now) 'drawn-asunder, and the middle

τῶν κεράτων γίνεσθαι κενόν, καὶ τοὺς
(between) the wings becomes empty, and —

ταῦτα πάσχοντας ἀθυμεῖν, τῶν
(those) 'being thus 'affected must-become-dispirited, the

πολεμίων ἑπομένων. Καὶ ὁπότε δέοι
enemy following (them). And whenever it-might-be-necessary

διαβαίνειν γέφυραν ἢ τινὰ ἄλλην διάβασιν,
to-go-over (a) bridge or any other crossing-place,

ἕκαστος ἔσπευδε βουλόμενος φθάσαι πρῶτος·
each-one hastened desiring to-have-arrived the-first;

καὶ ἦν ἐνταῦθα εὐεπίθετον τοῖς πολεμίοις.
and there-was here a-fine-opportunity-of-attack for-the enemy.

Δ' ἐπεὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἔγνωσαν ταῦτα, ἐποίησαν
But when the generals knew this, they-formed

ἓξ λόχους ἀνὰ ἑκατὸν ἄνδρας, καὶ ἐπέστησαν
six companies each-of a-hundred men, and they-appointed

λοχαγοὺς καὶ ἄλλους πεντη-
captains (over these) and (they appointed) others command-

κοντῆρας, καὶ ἄλλους ἐνωμοτάρχας.
ing-fifty (men), and others commanding-five-and-twenty (men).

Οὗτοι λοχαγοὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι,
These captains indeed (with their companies) on-the-march,

ὁπότε μὲν τὰ κέρατα συγκύπτοι,
whenever indeed the wings (or flanks of the square) closed,

ὑπέμενον ὕστεροι, ὥστε μὴ ἐνοχλεῖν τοῖς κέρασι,
remained behind, so-as not to-disturb the flanks,

δὲ τότε παρῆγον ἔξωθεν τῶν κεράτων.
and then | they-led-on [defiled] outside the flanks.

Δὲ ὁπότε αἱ πλευραὶ τοῦ πλαισίου διάσχοιεν
But whenever the flanks of-the square might-open

ἀνεξεπίμπλασαν τὸ μέσον, εἰ μὲν τὸ διέχον εἴη
they-filled-up the middle, if indeed the separating was

στενώτερον κατὰ λόχους· δὲ εἰ πλατύτερον κατὰ
narrow by companies; but if somewhat-wide by

πεντηκοστῦς, δὲ εἰ πάιυ πλατύ κατ' ἐνωμοτιας
fifties, and if very wide by twenty-fives.

ὥστε τὸ μέσον ἀεὶ εἶναι ἔκπλεων. Εἰ δὲ καὶ
so-as (for) the middle always to-be full. If indeed also

δέοι διαβαίνειν τινὰ διάβασιν ἢ
it-might be-necessary to-go-through any passage-or-crossing or (over a)

ἔφυραν, οὐκ ἐταράττοντο, ἀλλ' οἱ λοχαγοὶ
bridge, they-were not thrown-into-confusion, but the captains

διέβαινον ἐν τῷ μέρει· καὶ εἴ
(with their companies) went-over in — succession; and if

τι δέοι που τῆς φάλαγγος, οὗτοι
any-thing was-wanted any-where (in) the phalanx, these

ἐπιπαρῆσαν. Τούτῳ τῷ τρόπῳ ἐπορεύθησαν
were-at-hand. In-this — order they-proceeded

τέτταρας σταθμοὺς. Δὲ ἡνίκα ἐπορεύοντο τὸι
four days'-march. But when they-were-proceeding on-the

πέμπτον, εἶδον τι βασίλειον, καὶ περὶ
fifth (day's march), they-saw a-kind-of palace, and around

αὐτὸ πολλὰς κώμας, δὲ τὴν ὁδὸν πρὸς
it (there were) many villages, and the road to

τὸ τοῦτο χωρίον γιγνομένην διὰ ὑψηλῶν γηλόφων,
— this place lying over high hills,

οἳ καθῆκον ἀπὸ ὄρους ὑφ' ᾧ ἦν ἡ
which reached-down from (a) mountain at (the foot of) which was the

κώμη. Καὶ μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἄσμενοι εἶδον τοὺς
village. And indeed the Greeks rejoicing saw the

γηλόφους, ὡς εἰκός, τῶν πολεμίων
hills, as (was) natural, (the forces) of-the enemy

ὄντων ἱππέων. Ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι ἐκ τοῦ
being cavalry. When indeed proceeding from the

πεδίου ἀνέβησαν ἐπὶ τὸν πρῶτον γήλοφον, καί
plain they-ascended on-to the first hill, and (then)

κατέβαινον ὡς ἀναβαίνειν ἐπὶ τὸν ἕτερον.
they-commenced-descending so-as to-ascend on-to the next.

Ἐνταῦθα οἱ βάρβαροι ἐπίγιγνονται, καὶ ἀπο
Here the barbarians came-upon (them), and from

τοῦ ὑψηλοῦ ἔβαλλον εἰς τὸ πηκινές,
the high (ground) they-threw to the places-below, (and)

ἐσφενδόνων ἐτόξευον ὑπὸ μαστίγων. Καὶ
used-their-slings (and) shot-their-arrows, under (the) lash. And

ἐτίτρωσκον πολλοὺς καὶ ἐκράτησαν τῶν γυμ-
they-wounded many, and they-had-the-advantage of-the light-

νήτων Ἑλλήνων, καὶ κατέκλεισαν αὐτοὺς εἴσω
armed Greeks, and shut them up within

τῶν ὅπλων, ὥστε ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ
the heavy-armed-men, so-that on-that — (same) day both

οἱ σφενδονῆται καὶ οἱ τοξόται ἦσαν παντάπασι
the slingers and the archers were entirely

ἄχρηστοι, ὄντες ἐν τῷ ὄχλῳ. Δὲ
useless, being among the crowd (of camp-followers). But

ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες πιεζόμενοι ἐπεχείρησαν διώκειν
when the Greeks hard-pressed attempted to-pursue

μὲν ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον σχολῇ, ὄντες
indeed they-arrived at the summit (but) slowly, being

ὁπλῖται, δὲ οἱ πολέμιοι ταχὺ ἀπεπήδων. Δὲ
heavy-armed, but the enemy speedily sprang-down. And

πάλιν, ὁπότε ἀπίοιεν πρὸς τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα,
again, when they-went-back to the rest (of the) army,

ἔπασχον ταὐτά· καὶ ἐπὶ τοῦ δευτέρου γηλόφου
they-suffered the-same; and at the second hill

ταὐτὰ ἐγίγνετο· ὥστε ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς μὴ
the-same-things occurred; so-that it-seemed (proper) to-them not

κινεῖν τοὺς στρατιώτας ἀπὸ τοῦ τρίτου γηλόφου,
to-move the soldiers from the third hill,

πρὶν ἀνήγαγον πελταστὰς ἀπὸ τῆς δεξιᾶς πλευρᾶς
before they-had-led-up targeteers from the right flank

τοῦ πλαισίου πρὸς τὸ ὄρος. Ἐπεὶ δ' οὗτοι
of-the square on-to the mountain. When indeed these

ἐγένοντο ὑπὲρ τῶν ἑπομένων πολεμίων, οἱ πολέμιοι
had-got above the pursuing enemy, the enemy

οὐκέτι ἐπετίθεντο τοῖς καταβαίνουσι, δεδοι-
no-longer attacked the (Greeks) descending, having

κότες μὴ ἀποτμηθείησαν, καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι
feared lest they-might-be-cut-off, and the enemy [the Greeks]

γένοιντο αὐτῶν ἀμφοτέρωθεν. Πορευ-
might-be-on them [the Persians] from-both-sides. March-

όμενοι οὕτω τὸ λοιπὸν τῆς ἡμέρας, οἱ μὲν
ng thus for-the rest of-the day, — (some) indeed

τῇ ὁδῷ κατὰ τοὺς γηλόφους, οἱ δὲ
on-the road over the hills, — (others) however

ἐπιπαριόντες κατὰ τὸ ὄρος, ἀφίκοντο εἰς
marching-along (them) over the mountain, they-arrived at

τὰς κώμας, καὶ κατέστησαν ὀκτὼ ἰατροὺς· γὰρ
the villages, and they-appointed eight surgeons; for

ἦσαν πολλοὶ τετρωμένοι.
there-were many wounded.

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας, καὶ ἕνεκα
Here they-remained three days, both on-account

τῶν τετρωμένων, καὶ εἶχον ἅμα
of-the wounded, and (because) they-had at-the-same-time

πολλὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἄλευρα, οἶνον, καὶ πολλάς
much provisions, (namely) wheat-flour, wine, and much

κριθὰς συμβεβλημένας ἵπποις. Δὲ ταῦτα
barley having-been-laid-up for-horses. For this (barley)

ἦν συνενηνεγμένα τῷ σατραπεύοντι τῆς
was collected for-the (person) being-satrap of-the

χώρας. Δὲ τετάρτῃ ἡμέρᾳ καταβαίνουσιν εἰς
country. But on-the-fourth day they-went-down to

τὸ πεδίον. Ἐπεὶ δὲ Τισσαφέρνης κατέλαβεν
the plain. When however Tissaphernes overtook

αὐτοὺς σὺν τῇ δυνάμει, ἡ ἀνάγκη ἐδίδαξεν
them with — (his) force, — necessity taught

αὐτοὺς κατασκηνῆσαι οὗ πρῶτον εἶδον κώμην,
them to-encamp where first they-saw (a) village,

καὶ μὴ πορεύεσθαι ἔτι μαχομένους· γὰρ ἦσαν
and not to-march-on still fighting; for there-were

πολλοὶ ἀπόμαχοι, οἱ τετρωμένοι, καὶ
many unfit-for-action, (namely) — (those) wounded, and

οἱ φέροντες ἐκείνους καὶ οἱ δεξά-
— (those) carrying those (wounded), and — (those) having-re-

μενοι τα ὅπλα τῶν φερόντων. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
ceived the arms of — (those) carrying. When indeed

κατεσκήνησαν, καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι προσιόντες πρὸς
they-encamped, and the barbarians coming-up to

τὴν κώμην ἐπεχείρησαν ἀκροβολίζεσθαι αὐτοῖς,
the village attempted to-skirmish with-them,

οἱ Ἕλληνες πολὺ περιῆσαν· γὰρ διέφερε
the Greeks had greatly the-advantage; for it-differed

πολὺ ὁρμῶντες ἐκ χώρας ἀλέξασθαι,
much (that) rushing from (their own) ground they-repelled

ἢ πορευόμενοι μάχεσθαι τοῖς πολε-
(an attack), or (that) marching-along they-fought the ene-

μίοις ἐπιοῦσι. Ἡνίκα δ' ἦν ἤδη δεί-
my coming-upon (them). When indeed it-was now late-in-the

λη, ἦν ὥρα τοῖς πολεμίοις ἀπιέναι· γὰρ οἱ
afternoon, it-was time for-the enemy to-depart; for the

βάρβαροι οὔποτε ἀπεστρατοπεδεύοντο μεῖον
barbarians never encamped at-a-less (distance

τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ ἑξήκοντα σταδίων, φοβού-
from-the Grecian (camp) (than) sixty stadia, fear-

μενοι μὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπιθῶνται αὐτοῖς τῆς
ing lest the Greeks might-attack them (in) the

νυκτὸς. Γὰρ Περσικόν στράτευμα ἐστι πονηρὸν
night. For (a) Persian army is (a) miserable

νυκτός· γὰρ τε οἱ ἵπποι αὐτοῖς
(thing) at-night; for not-only are — (their) horses —

δέδενται, καὶ ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ πεποδισμένοι
tied, but-also (as) for the most (part) have-been-tied-by-

εἰσὶ ἕνεκα τοῦ μὴ φεύγειν
the-feet | on-account the not to-run-away [to prevent them running

εἰ λυθείησαν· ἐάν τέ τις θόρυβος γίγνηται,
away] if they-were-let-loose, if also any alarm should-occur,

δεῖ Πέρσῃ ἀνδρὶ ἐπισάξαι
it-becomes-necessary for (the) Persian man to-put-the-housings

τὸν ἵππον, καὶ δεῖ χαλινῶσαι, καὶ
on-the horse, and it-is-necessary to-bridle (him), and

θωρακισθέντα ἀναβῆναι ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον. Δὲ
having-put-on-armour to-mount on the horse. But

πάντα ταῦτα χαλεπὰ ποιεῖν νύκτωρ,
all these (things) (are) difficult to-perform by-night,

καὶ ὄντος θορύβου. Ἕνεκα
[and there-being (an) alarm [when there is an alarm]. On-account

τούτου ἀπεσκήνουν πόρρω τῶν Ἑλλήνων.
of-this they-encamped-at-a-distance far-from the Greeks.

Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐγίγνωσκον αὐτοὺς
But when the Greeks knew (that) they

βουλομένους ἀπιέναι καὶ διαγγελλομένους,
were-desiring to-depart and announcing (the same),

ἐκήρυξε τοῖς Ἕλλησι συσκευάζεσθαι, τῶν
it-was-proclaimed to-the Greeks to-collect-their-baggage, the

πολεμίων ἀκουόντων. Καὶ οἱ βάρβαροι μὲν
enemy hearing (it). And the barbarians indeed

τινα χρόνον ἐπέσχον τῆς πορείας· δὲ ἐπειδὴ
for-some time retarded the march; but when

ἐγίγνετο ὀψὲ ἀπῄεσαν. Γὰρ οὐ ἐδόκει
it-became late they-went-away. For it-did not seem

λυσιτελεῖν αὐτοῖς πορεύεσθαι, καὶ κατάγεσθαι
to-be-expedient to-them to-march, and arrive

ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον νυκτός. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ
at the camp by-night. When indeed the

Ἕλληνες ἤδη ἑώρων σαφῶς ἀπιόντας, καὶ
Greeks now saw (them) evidently departing, also

αὐτοὶ ἀναζεύξαντες, καὶ διῆλθον ὅσον
they-themselves having-decamped, even passed-over as-much-as

ἑξήκοντα σταδίους. Καὶ γίγνεται τοσοῦτον
sixty stadia. And there-became such (an)

μεταξὺ τῶν στρατευμάτων, ὥστε τῇ ὑστε-
interval (between) the armies, that on-the next-

ραίᾳ οὐ πολέμιοι οὐκ ἐφάνησαν, οὐδὲ τῇ
day the enemy did not appear, nor on-the

τρίτῃ· δὲ τῇ τετάρτῃ οἱ βάρβαροι προελθόντες
third, but on-the fourth the barbarians having-gone-forward

νυκτὸς καταλαμβάνουσι χωρίον ὑπερδέξιον,
in-the-night occupied (a) place above-on-the-right,

ᾗ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔμελλον παριέναι ἀκρωνυχίον
by-which the Greeks had to-pass on-the-brow

ὄρους, ὑφ' ἣν ἦν ἡ κατάβασις εἰς
of (the) mountain, beneath which was the descent to

τὸ πεδίον. Δὲ ἐπειδὴ Χειρίσοφος ἑώρα τὴν
the plain. But when Cheirisophus saw the

ἀκρωνυχίαν προκατειλημμένην, καλεῖ Ξενοφῶντα
eminence pre-occupied, he-calls-for Xenophon

ἀπὸ τῆς οὐρᾶς, καὶ κελεύει λαβόντα τοὺς
from the rear, and orders (him that) taking the

πελταστὰς παραγενέσθαι εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν. Ὁ δὲ
targeteers to-advance to the front. — But

Ξενοφῶν μὲν οὐκ ἦγε τοὺς πελταστάς, (γὰρ
Xenophon indeed did not bring the targeteers, (for

ἑώρα Τισσαφέρνην ἐπιφαινόμενον, καὶ πᾶν τὸ
he-saw Tissaphernes appearing, and all — (his)

στράτευμα,) αὐτὸς δὲ προσελάσας ἠρώτα· Τί
army,) he-himself indeed having-ridden-up inquired: Why

καλεῖς; Δὲ ὁ λέγει αὐτῷ· Ἔξεστιν
do-you-call (me)? But — (Cheirisophus) said to-him: You-may

ὁρᾶν· γὰρ ὁ λόφος ὑπὲρ τῆς καταβάσεως προκα-
see; for the eminence above the descent has-been-

τείληπται ἡμῖν, καὶ ἔστι οὐ παρελθεῖν,
pre-occupied against-us, and it-is not (possible) to-pass (it),

εἰ μὴ ἀποκόψομεν τούτους Ἀλλὰ τί
— unless we-cut-off those (on it). But why did-you

οὐκ ἦγες τοὺς πελταστάς; Δὲ ὁ λέγει,
not bring the targeteers? But — (Xenophon) replies,

ὅτι οὐκ ἐδόκει αὐτῷ καταλιπεῖν τὰ ὄπισθεν
that it did not seem-right to-him to-leave the rear

ἔρημα, πολεμίων ἐπιφαινομένων. Ἀλλὰ
destitute (of defence), (the) enemy appearing. But

μεν ἔφη ὥρα γε βουλεύεσθαι πῶς τις
indeed said-he (it is) time at-least to-consider how some

ἀπελᾷ τοὺς ἄνδρας ἀπὸ τοῦ λόφου
(of us) will-drive — (these) men from the hill.

Ἐνταῦθα Ξενοφῶν ὁρᾷ τὴν κορυφὴν τοῦ
Here Xenophon perceives the summit of-the

ὄρους οὖσαν ὑπὲρ τοῦ στρατεύματος
mountain (as) being above the army (of the Per-

ἑαυτῶν, καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης ἔφοδον
sians) themselves, and from this (place) (there was) (an) approach

ἐπὶ τὸν λόφον, ἔνθα οἱ πολέμιοι ἦσαν, καὶ λέγει·
to the hill, where the enemy were, and he-says:

Κράτιστον, ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἡμῖν ἰέσθαι ὡς
(It is) best, O Cheirisophus, for-us to-go as

τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον· γὰρ ἢν
quick-as-possible on-to the summit (of the mountain); for if

λάβωμεν τοῦτο, οἱ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ οὐ
we-take this, — (those) above the road will not

δυνήσονται μένειν. Ἀλλά, εἰ βούλει, μένε ἐπὶ
be-able to-remain. But, if you-wish, remain with

τῷ στρατεύματι, ἐγὼ δ' ἐθέλω πορεύεσθαι· εἰ
the army, I indeed wish to-go-forward; if

δέ χρῄζεις, πορεύου ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος, δὲ ἐγὼ
indeed you-want-it, proceed on-to the mountain, and I

μενῶ αὐτοῦ. Ἀλλὰ δίδωμι σοι, ἔφη ὁ Χειρί-
will-remain here. But I-allow you, said — Cheiri-

σοφος, ἑλέσθαι ὁπότερον βούλει. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν
sophus, to-choose which-of-the-two you-wish. — Xenophon

εἰπὼν ὅτι ἔστιν νεώτερος αἱρεῖται πορεύεσθαι,
replying that (as) he-is the-younger it-becomes (him) to-proceed,

δὲ κελεύει συμπέμψαι οἱ ἄνδρας ἀπὸ τοῦ
and he-requests to-have-sent (with himself) — men from the

στόματος· γὰρ ἦν μακρὸν λαβεῖν ἀπὸ
front; for it-was (a) long (way) to-take (them) from

τῆς οὐρᾶς. Καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος συμπέμπει τοὺς
the rear. And — Cheirisophus sends-with (him) the

πελταστάς ἀπὸ τοῦ στόματος· ἔλαβε δὲ τοὺς
targeteers from the front; he-took also the

κατὰ μέσον τοῦ πλαισίου. Δ' ἐκέλευσε
(targeteers) in (the) middle of-the square And he-ordered

καὶ συνέπεσθαι αὐτῷ τοὺς τριακοσίους, οὓς
also to-follow him the three hundred, (men) whom

αὐτὸς εἶχε τῶν ἐπιλέκτων ἐπὶ τῷ στόματι τοῦ
he-himself had of-the picked-men in the front of-the

πλαισίου
square

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο ὡς τάχιστα ἐδύναντο.
Hence they-marched-forward as speedily-as they-could.

Δ' οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου, ὡς ἐνόησαν τὴν
But the enemy on the eminence, when they-perceived the

πορείαν αὐτῶν ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, εὐθὺς καὶ αὐτοὶ
march of-these towards the summit, directly also they

ὥρμησαν ἁμιλλᾶσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα
rushed to-contend for the summit And here

ἦν μὲν πολλὴ κραυγὴ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ στρατεύ-
was indeed (a) great shout from-the Grecian ar-

ματος, διακελευομένων τοῖς ἑαυτῶν, δὲ
my, cheering-on — (those) of-their-men, and

πολλὴ κραυγὴ τῶν ἀμφὶ Τισσαφέρνην
much shouting | from — (those) about Tissaphernes [from the

διακελευομένων τοῖς ἑαυτῶν.
army of Tissaphernes] cheering-on — (those) of-their-men.

Δὲ Ξενοφῶν παρελαύνων ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου παρε-
But Xenophon riding-along on — (a) horse en-

κελεύετο· Νομίζετε, Ἄνδρες, νῦν
couraged (his men): Consider, O men, (that) now (you are)

ἁμιλλᾶσθαι ἐπὶ τὴν Ἑλλάδα, νῦν πρὸς τοὺς
to-contend for — Greece, now for — (your)

παῖδας καὶ τὰς γυναῖκας, νῦν πονήσαντες
children and — (your) wives, now having-laboured

ὀλίγον πορευσόμεθα τὴν λοιπὴν ἀμαχεί.
a-little we-shall-march the rest (of the way) without-fighting

Δὲ Σωτηρίδης ὁ Σικυώνιος εἶπεν· Ἐσμέν οὐκ ἐξ
But Soterides the Sicyonian said: We are not on

ἴσου, ὦ Ξενοφῶν· γὰρ σὺ μὲν ὀχεῖ ἐφ'
an equality, O Xenophon; for you indeed are carried on (a)

ἵππου, ἐγὼ δὲ κάμνω χαλεπῶς, φέρων τὴν
horse, I however labour grievously, carrying — (my)

ἀσπίδα Καὶ ὅς, ἀκούσας ταῦτα, καταπηδήσας
shield. And who, hearing this, having-leaped

ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου, ὠθεῖται αὐτὸν ἐκ τῆς τάξεως,
from — (his) horse, pushed him from the ranks,

καὶ ἀφελόμενος τὴν ἀσπίδα, ἐπορεύετο ἔχων
and taking — (his) shield, he-proceeded, having (it),

ὡς τάχιστα ἐδύνατο. Ἐτύγχανε δὲ καὶ ἔχων
as speedily as he-was-able. He-happened — also having (a)

θώρακα τὸν ἱππικόν· ὥστε
corselet (on) (namely, that peculiar to) the cavalry; so that

ἐπιέζετο. Καὶ μὲν παρεκελεύετο τοῖς
he-was-oppressed. Yet however he-continued-to-exhort — (those)

ἔμπροσθεν ὑπάγειν, δὲ τοῖς ὄπισθεν, ἐπο-
in-front to-lead-on-gently, and — (those) in-the-rear, fol-

μένοις μόλις παριέναι. Δ' οἱ ἄλλοι στρατιῶται
lowing with-difficulty to-come-up. But the other soldiers

παίουσι, καὶ βάλλουσι καὶ λοιδοροῦσι τὸν Σωτη-
beat, and throw-at and revile — Sote-

ρίδην, ἔστε ἠνάγκασαν λαβόντα τὴν ἀσπίδα
rides, until they-obliged (him) taking — (his) shield

πορεύεσθαι. Δὲ ὁ ἀναβάς ἕως
to-march-forward. But — (Xenophon) having-remounted as-long-as

μὲν ἦν βάσιμα ἦγεν ἐπὶ τοῦ ἵππου,
indeed it-was passable (for a horse) led-the-way on horse-back,

δὲ ἐπεὶ ἦν ἄβατα, καταλιπὼν τὸν ἵππον
but when it-was impassable, leaving — (his) horse

ἔσπευδε πεζῇ. Καὶ γενόμενοι ἐπὶ τῷ ἄκρῳ
he-hastened-along on-foot. And having-got on to-the summit

φθάνουσι τους πολεμίους.
they-occupy (it) (before) the enemy

## CHAPTER V.

Ἔνθα δὴ μὲν οἱ βάρβαροι στραφέντες ἔφευγον
Then truly indeed the barbarians having-turned fled

ᾗ ἕκαστος ἐδύνατο, δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες
(by the way) which each-one could, and the Greeks

εἶχον τὸ ἄκρον. Οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Τισ-
held the summit. | — (Those) indeed about [the armies of] Tis-

σαφέρνην καὶ Ἀριαῖον ἀποτραπόμενοι ᾤχοντο
saphernes and Ariæus having-turned-aside went-off

ἄλλην ὁδόν. Οἱ δὲ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον κατα-
another way. — (Those) indeed about Cheirisophus de-

βάντες ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο ἐν κώμῃ μεστῇ
scending encamped in (a) village filled (with)

πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν. Δὲ καὶ ἦσαν ἄλλαι
many good (things). And also there-were other

κῶμαι, ἐν τούτῳ τῷ πεδίῳ παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν
villages in this — plain along the river

Τίγρητα, πλήρεις πολλῶν ἀγαθῶν. Δ' ἡνίκα
Tigris, full of-many good (things). But, when

ἦν δείλη οἱ πολέμιοι ἐξατίνης ἐπιφαί-
it-was late-in-the-afternoon, the enemy suddenly ap-

νονται ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ, καὶ κατέκοψάν τινας τῶν
pear in the plain, and cut-off some of-the

Ἑλλήνων ἐσκεδασμένων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ καθ' ἁρπα-
Greeks dispersed in the plain for plun-

γήν· γὰρ καὶ πολλαὶ νομαὶ βοσκημάτων
der; for also many herds of-cattle

κατελήφθησαν διαβιβαζόμεναι εἰς τὸ
were-seized (that were about) to-have-been-transported to the

πέραν τοῦ ποταμοῦ. Ἐνταῦθα Τισσαφέρνης
opposite-side of-the river. Here Tissaphernes

καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ ἐπεχείρησαν καίειν τὰς
and — (those) with him attempted to-burn the

κώμας. Καὶ τινες τῶν Ἑλλήνων μάλα ἠθύ-
villages. And some of-the Greeks were much dis-

μησαν, ἐννοούμενοι μή, εἰ καίοιεν
heartened, being-apprehensive lest, if they-burned (the villages) they-

οὐκ ἔχοιεν ὁπόθεν λαμβάνοιεν τὰ
would not have (a place) whence they-might-procure —

ἐπιτήδεια. Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον
provisions. | And — (those) indeed about Cheirisophus

ἀπῆσαν ἐκ τῆς βοηθείας
[Cheirisophus and his men] returned from (giving) — assistance;

ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν, ἐπεὶ κατέβη, παρελαύνων τὰς
but Xenophon, when he-came-down, riding-past the

τάξεις, ἡνίκα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀπήντησαν ἀπὸ
ranks, when the Greeks came-back from (giving)

τῆς βοηθείας, ἔλεγεν· Ὁρᾶτε, ὦ Ἕλληνες ἄνδρες,
— assistance, said: You-see, O Grecian men,

ὑφιέντας τὴν χώραν εἶναι ἤδη
(the enemy) conceding (that) the country is now

ἡμετέραν· γὰρ ἅ, ὅτε ἐσπένδοντο, διεπρά-
ours, for that-which, when they-made-the-truce, they-stipu-

τοντο, μὴ καίειν τὴν χώραν βασιλέως, νῦν
lated-for, not to-burn the country of (the) king. now

αὐτοὶ καίουσιν ὡς ἀλλοτρίαν.
they-themselves burn (it) as (if it belonged to) another.

Ἀλλ' ἐάν γε που καταλίπωσι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
But if at-least any-where they-leave — provisions

αὐτοῖς ὄψονται καὶ ἡμᾶς πορευομένους ἐνταῦθα.
for-themselves they-will-see even us proceeding thither

Ἀλλ', ὦ Χειρίσοφε, ἔφη, δοκεῖ μοι
But O Cheirisophus, said-he, it-seems to-me (that we ought

βοηθεῖν ἐπὶ τοὺς καίοντας, ὡς ὑπὲρ τῆς
to-give-assistance against — (those) burning, as for — (our)

ἡμετέρας. Ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· Οὐκ οὖν
own-country — But Cheirisophus said. It-does not therefore

δοκε ἔμοιγε· ἀλλὰ, ἔφη, ἡμεῖς καίωμεν,
seem (so) to-me-at-least; but, said-he, ¹let us ¹burn,

καὶ οὕτω θᾶττον παύσονται.
and so they-¹will the-sooner ¹cease.

Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἀπῆλθον ἐπὶ τὰς σκηνὰς οἱ
But when they-went-away to — (their) tents the

ἄλλοι ἦσαν μὲν
rest (of the army, being the private soldiers,) were indeed (occupied)

περὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, δὲ στρατηγοὶ καῖ λοχαγοὶ
about the provisions, but (the) generals and (the) captains

συνῆλθον. Καὶ ἦν πολλὴ ἀπορία
convened-together (in council). And there-was much perplexity

ἐνταῦθα. Γὰρ μὲν ἔνθεν ἦν ὄρη ὑπερύ-
here. For indeed from-here there-were mountains exceeding-

ψηλα, δὲ ἔνθεν ὁ ποταμὸς τοσοῦτος τὸ
high, but from-there — (a) river (having) so-great — (a)

βάθος, ὡς μηδὲ τὰ δόρατα ὑπερέχειν
depth, so-that not-even the spears were-above (the water)

πειρωμένοις τοῦ βάθους. Δὲ τις ἀνὴρ
(to those) making-trial of-the depth. But a-certain man

Ῥόδιος προσελθὼν αὐτοῖς ἀπορουμένοις εἶπεν·
(a) Rhodian coming-to them (thus) perplexed said:

Ἐγὼ θέλω, ὦ ἄνδρες, διαβιβάσαι ὑμᾶς κατὰ
I will, O men, have-¹crossed you ²over ³by

τετρακισχιλίους ὁπλίτας, ἂν ὑπηρετήσητε
four-thousand heavy-armed-men ³at-a-time, if you-will-supply

ἐμοὶ ὧν δέομαι, καὶ πορίσητε τάλαντον
me with-what I-want, and will-furnish (me) (a) talent (as a)

μισθὸν. Δὲ ἐρωτώμενος ὅτου δέοιτο· Δεήσομαι,
recompense. But being-asked what he-might-require: I-shall-want,

ἔφη, δισχιλίων ἀσκῶν· δ' ὁρῶ πολλὰ πρόβατα
said-he, two-thousand hides-for-bags; and I-see many sheep

καὶ αἶγας καὶ βοῦς καὶ ὄνους, ἃ, ἀποδαρέντα
and goats and oxen and asses, which, having-been-skinned

καὶ φυσηθέντα, ἂν ῥᾳδίως παρέχοι τὴν
and blown-out, might easily furnish the (means of

διάβασιν. Δὲ καὶ δεήσομαι τῶν δεσμῶν, οἷς
crossing. And also I-shall-want the cords, which

χρῆσθε περὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια· τούτοις ζεύξας τοὺς
you-use about the baggage-cattle; with-these having-joined the

ἀσκοὺς πρὸς ἀλλήλους, ὁρμίσας ἕκαστον ἀσκὸν
bags to one-another, having-stretched each bag,

λίθους ἀρτήσας, καὶ ἀφεὶς
stones (having-been-suspended (from it), and having-'let (them) 'down

ὥσπερ ἀγκύρας εἰς τὸ ὕδωρ, διαγαγὼν
like anchors into the water, having-'extended (the bags) 'across

καὶ δήσας ἀμφοτέρωθεν, ἐπιβαλῶ
and having-secured (them) to-both (banks), I-will-'put

ὕλην, καὶ ἐπιφορήσω γῆν. Ὅτι
wood 'on (them), and will-'throw earth 'over (the wood). That

οὖν μὲν οὐ καταδύσεσθε, μάλα
therefore indeed you-'will not 'be-sunk, | (as) you-'will much

αὐτίκα εἴσεσθε· γὰρ πᾶς
immediately 'see; [as you will at once perceive;] for every

ἀσκὸς ἕξει δύο ἄνδρας τοῦ μὴ καταδῦναι·
skin | will-keep two men from-the not to-be-sunk; [will

δὲ ἡ ὕλη καὶ ἡ γῆ
keep two men from sinking,] and the wood and the earth

σχήσει ὥστε μὴ ὀλισθάνειν. Τοῖς στρατηγοῖς,
will-keep (them) so-as not to-fall-off. To-the generals,

ἀκούσασι ταῦτα, τὸ ἐνθύμημα μὲν ἐδόκει εἶναι
having-heard this, the contrivance indeed seemed to-be

χάριεν, δὲ τὸ ἔργον ἀδύνατον· γὰρ ἦσαν πέ-
ingenious, but the execution impossible; for there-were on-the

ραν πολλοὶ ἱππεῖς οἳ κωλύσοντες,
other-side many horsemen —(those) would-be-disputing (their pas-

οἳ εὐθὺς ἂν ἐπέτρεπον τοῖς πρώτοις
sage), (and) who immediately would permit the first (or

ποιεῖν οὐδὲν τούτων. Ἐνταῦθα μὲν
(foremost) to-do none of-these (things). Thence indeed

τὴν ὑστεραίαν ὑπανεχώρουν εἰς τοὔμπαλιν.
on-the next-day they-slowly-began-to-retreat — back-again

τῇ πρὸς Βαβυλῶνα, εἰς τὰς ἀκαύστους
by-the (road) towards Babylon, to the unburnt

κώμας, κατακαύσαντες ἔνδεν ἐξήεσαν· ὥστε
villages, having-burnt (those) whence they-departed; so-that

οἱ πολέμιοι οὐ προσέλαυνον, ἀλλὰ ἐδε-
the enemy did not come-up (to them), but continued-

ῶντο. καὶ ἦσαν ὅμοιοι θαυμάζειν
observing (them), and they-were like to-wonder [and they won-

ὅποι ποτὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες πρέψονται, καὶ
dered] where at-any-time the Greeks would-turn-themselves, and

τί ἔχοιεν ἐν νῷ. Ἐνταῦθα μὲν οἱ ἄλλοι
what they-might-have in (their) mind. There indeed the rest

στρατιῶται ἦσαν ἀμφὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια·
(of the) soldiers were (occupied) about — provisions,

δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ πάλιν συνῆλθον,
but the generals and the captains again assembled

καὶ συναγαγόντες τοὺς ἁλωκότας,
(in council), and having-brought-together — (those) taken-prisoners,

ἤλεγχον πᾶσαν τὴν χώραν κύκλῳ,
they-questioned (them about) all the country in-a-circle (round

τίς ἑκάστη εἴη. Δὲ οἱ ἔλεγον,
about them) what each (part) might-be. And — (they) said,

ὅτι τὰ μὲν πρὸς μεσημβρίαν εἴη τῆς
that the (parts) indeed towards (the) south were — (those

ἐπὶ Βαβυλῶνα καὶ Μηδίαν δι' ἧσπερ
towards Babylon and Media through which they (the Greeks)

ἥκοιεν· δὲ ἡ πρὸς ἕω φέροι ἐπὶ Σοῦσά
had-come; and — (that) towards (the) east led to Susa

τε καὶ Ἐκβάτανα ἔνδα βασιλεύς λέγεται
— and Ecbatana where (the) king is-said

θερίζειν καὶ ἐαρίζειν· δὲ ἡ διαβάντι τὸν
to-spend-the summer and spring; and the (road) going-across the

ποταμὸν πρὸς ἑσπέραν φέροι ἐπὶ Λυδίαν καὶ
river towards (the) west led to Lydia and

Ἰωνίαν δὲ ὅτι ἡ διὰ τῶν ὀρέων καὶ τετραμμένη
Ionia; and that the (road) over the mountains and winding

πρὸς ἄρκτον ἄγοι εἰς Καρδούχους. Δὲ ἔφασαν
to (the) north might-lead to (the) Carduchi. And they-said

τούτους οἰκεῖν ἀνὰ τὰ ὄρη,
(that) these (people) dwell (scattered) over the mountains,

καὶ εἶναι πολεμικοὺς, καὶ οὐκ ἀκούειν
and are warlike, and 'do not 'obey (the)

βασιλέως· ἀλλὰ καὶ ποτε βασιλικὴν
king, but (that) even once (a) royal

στρατιάν, δώδεκα μυριάδας, ἐμβαλεῖν
army, (of) twelve ten-thousand [120,000] (men), attacked

εἰς αὐτούς· δὲ οὐδένα τούτων ἀπονοστῆσαι
— them; but (that) not-one of-them returned

διὰ τὴν δυσχωρίαν. Ὁπότε μέντοι
on-account-of the difficulties-of-the-country. When however

σπείσαιντο πρὸς τὸν σατράπην τὸν ἐν
they-made-a-treaty with the satrap — (he who dwelt) in

τῷ πεδίῳ, καὶ σφῶν ἐπιμιγνύναι
the plain, (that) also some-of-those (of the plain) had-intercourse

τε πρὸς ἐκείνους καὶ ἐκείνων
— with those (mountaineers) and some-of-these (mountaineers)

πρὸς ἑαυτούς.
with those (of the plain).

Οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐκάθισαν
The generals having-heard these (things) placed

χωρὶς τοὺς φάσκοντας εἰδέναι
apart — (those) saying (that) they-knew (the road)

ἑκασταχόσε, ποιήσαντες οὐδὲν δῆλον, ὅποι ἔμελλον
in-each-direction, making no-one certain, whither they-intended

πορεύεσθαι. Ἐδόκει δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς εἶναι
to-proceed. It-seemed however to-the generals to-be

ἀναγκαῖον ἐμβάλλειν διὰ τῶν ὀρέων εἰς
necessary to-force-their-way over the mountains into (the coun

Καρδούχους· γὰρ ἔφασαν διελθόντας
try of the) Carduchi; for they-said (that) having-passed-through

τούτους ἥξειν εἰς Ἀρμενίαν πολλῆς
these (that) they-would-come into Armenia (it being) large

καὶ εὐδαίμονος, ἧς Ὀρόντας ἦρχε. Δ' ἐντεῦθεν
and rich, (and) which Orontes governed. And whence

ἔφασαν εἶναι εὔπορον πορεύεσθαι
they-said (that it would) be an-easy-thing (for-them) to-proceed

τις ὅποι ἐθέλοι Ἐπὶ τούτοις ἐθύ-
any where they-might-wish. With-reference to-these (things) they-

σαντο, ὅπως ὁπηνίκα καὶ δοκοίη τῆς
sacrificed, in-order-that when it-might even seem (to be) the

ὥρας ποιοῖντο τὴν πορείαν (γὰρ
time they-might (begin to) make the march (for

ἐδεδοίκεσαν μὴ τὴν ὑπερβολὴν τῶν ὀρέων
they-feared lest the passage-over the mountains

προκαταληφθείη) καὶ παρήγγειλαν
might-be-pre-occupied) (by the enemy); and they-announced (that)

ἐπειδὴ δειπνήσαιεν πάντας συνεσκευ-
when (the soldiers) had-supped (that) all having-packed-

ασμένους ἀναπαύεσθαι, καὶ ἕπεσθαι
up-their-baggage are-to-go-to-rest, and to-follow (their leaders)

ἡνίκα τις ἄν παραγγελθῇ.
when any signal might be-given.

# BOOK IV.

## CHAPTER I.

Ὅσα μὲν δὴ ἐγένετο ἐν τῇ ἀναβάσει
WHAT indeed really happened in the expedition-up-the-country

μέχρι τῆς μάχης, καὶ ὅσα μετὰ τὴν μάχην
till the battle, and what (occurred) after the battle

ἐν ταῖς σπονδαῖς, ἃς βασιλεὺς καί οἱ Ἕλληνες
during the truce, which (the) king and the Greeks

ἀναβάντες σὺν Κύρῳ ἐποιήσαντο, καὶ ὅσα,
going-up with Cyrus made, and what, (the)

βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους παραβάντος τας
king and Tissaphernes having-broken the

σπονδὰς, ἐπολεμήθη πρὸς τοὺς Ἕλληνας, τοῦ
truce, war-was-waged against the Greeks, the

Περσικοῦ στρατεύματος ἐπακολουθοῦντος
Persian army pursuing (them),

δεδήλωται ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ.
has-been-related in the preceding discourse.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο, ἔνθα μὲν ὁ ποταμὸς Τίγρης
But when they-arrived, where indeed the river Tigris

ἦν παντάπασιν ἄπορος διὰ τὸ βάθος
is altogether impassable on-account-of — (its great) depth

καὶ μέγεθος, δὲ ἦν οὐ πάροδος
and size, and there-was no passage (along the banks),

ἀλλὰ τὰ Καρδούχια ὄρη ἐκρέματο ἀπότομα
as-indeed the Carduchian mountains hung steep

ὑπὲρ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἐδόκει δὴ τοῖς
over this — river, it-seemed truly (therefore) to-the

στρατηγοῖς εἶναι πορευτέον διὰ τῶν ὀρέων.
generals to-be necessary-to-march over the mountains.

Γὰρ ἤκουον τῶν ἁλισκομένων, ὅτι, εἰ
For they-had-heard — (from those) made-prisoners, that, if

διέλθοιεν τὰ Καρδούχια ὄρη, διαβήσονται τὰς
they-should-cross the Carduchian mountains, they-might-ford the

πηγὰς τοῦ ποταμοῦ Τίγρητος ἐν τῇ Ἀρμενίᾳ,
sources of-the river Tigris in — Armenia,

ἢν μὲν βούλωνται, δὲ ἢν βούλωνται μή,
if indeed they-wished (to do so), but if they-wished not

περιίασι. Καὶ τε ἐλέγετο
(to do so), they (might) go-round (them). And also it-was-said

τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ Εὐφράτου εἶναι οὐ πρόσω
(that) the sources of-the Euphrates were not far

τοῦ Τίγρητος, καὶ ἔστιν οὕτως ἔχον.
from-the Tigris, and it-is so having [and it is

Δὲ ποιοῦνται ἐμβολὴν εἰς τοὺς
really so]. And they-make (the) irruption into the (terri-

Καρδούχους ὧδε, πειρώμενοι ἅμα
tory of the) Carduchi in-this-manner, endeavouring at-the-same-time

μὲν λαθεῖν δὲ ἅμα φθα-
indeed to-have-concealed (their march) and-also at-the-same-time to-anti-

σαι τοὺς πολεμίους πρὶν καταλαβεῖν τὰ
cipate the enemy before (that) they-have-occupied the

ἄκρα. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦν ἀμφὶ τὴν τελευταίαν
heights. When indeed it-was about the last

φυλακήν, καὶ ἐλείπετο ὅσον τῆς νυκτὸς
watch, and there-was-left as-much of-the night (as)

διελθεῖν τὸ πεδίον σκοταίους, τηνικαῦτα ἀναστάν-
to-pass-over the plain in-the-dark, then rising-

τες, ἀπὸ παραγγέλσεως πορευόμενοι ἀφικ
up, (and) at the-word-of-command marching-forth they

νοῦνται ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ πρὸς
arrived at-the-same-time with-the (break of) day at

τὸ ὄρος.
the mountain.

Ἔνθα δὴ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἡγεῖτο τοῦ
Here indeed Cheirisophus — took-the-lead of-the

στρατεύματος, λαβὼν τὸ ἀμφ' αὐτὸν
army, taking (with him) — (those) about him

καὶ πάντας τοὺς γυμνῆτας. δὲ Ξενοφῶν
and all the light-armed-men, but Xenophon

εἵπετο σὺν τοῖς ὁπλίταις ὀπισθοφύλαξιν, ἔχων
followed with the heavy-armed rear-guard, having

οὐδένα γυμνῆτα· γὰρ ἐδόκει εἶναι οὐδεὶς
not-one light-armed-man; for there-seemed to-be no

κίνδυνος, μή τις ἐπισποιτο ἐκ τοῦ ὄπισθεν,
fear, lest any-one might-pursue from — behind,

πορευομένων ἄνω. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν
(they) marching upwards. And Cheirisophus indeed

ἀναβαίνει ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, πρίν τινα τῶν
went-up on-to the summit, before (that) any-one of-the

πολεμίων αἰσθέσθαι. Δ' ἔπειτα ὑφηγεῖτο·
enemy perceived (him). But then led-forward-slowly:

δὲ τὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος ἀεὶ ὑπερ-
and the (part) of-the army from-time-to-time passing-

βάλλον ἐφείπετο, εἰς τὰς κώμας
over (the summit) continued-following (him), into the villages

τὰς ἐν τοῖς ἄγκεσι τε καὶ μυχοῖς
(namely) — (those) in the narrow-valleys and also in (the) recesses

τῶν ὀρέων.
of-the mountains.

Ἔνθα δὴ μὲν οἱ Καρδοῦχοι, ἐκλιπόντες τὰς
Then truly indeed the Carduchi, having-left —

οἰκίας, καὶ ἔχοντες γυναῖκας καὶ παῖδας,
(their) dwellings, and having (their) wives and children,

ἔφευγον ἐπὶ τὰ ὄρη. Ἦν δὲ πολλὰ τὰ
fled on to the mountains. There-was indeed much —

ἐπιτήδεια λαμβάνειν· δὲ καὶ αἱ οἰκίαι ἦσαν
provisions to-take; and also — (their) dwellings were

κατεσκευασμέναι παμπόλλοις χαλκώμασι, ὧν οἱ
furnished with-a-great-many brazen-utensils, of-which the

Ἕλληνες ἔφερον οὐδέν, οὐδὲ ἐδίωκον τοὺς
Greeks took-away none, nor did-they-pursue the

ἀνθρώπους, ὑπορειδόμενοι, εἰ οἱ
people, sparing (them), as-if (to try whether) the

Καρδοῦχοι ἐθελήσειαν πως αὐτοὺς διέναι
Carduchi would by-any-means let them pass-through

ὡς διὰ τῆς φιλίας χώρας ἐπείπερ ἦσαν
as through — (a) friendly country in-as-much-as they-were

πολέμιοι βασιλεῖ. Μέντοι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια,
enemies to (the) king. However the provisions,

ὅτῳ τις ἐπιτυγχάνοι,
to-which any-one might-arrive, [which any one might obtain,]

ἐλάμβανον· γὰρ ἦν ἀνάγκη. Δὲ οἱ
they-took; for it-was (a) necessity (to do so). But the

Καρδοῦχοι οὔτε ὑπήκουον, καλούντων, οὔτε ἐποί-
Carduchi neither listened, being-called-on, nor did-they-

ουν οὐδὲν ἄλλο φιλικόν. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ
make any-one other friendly (demonstration). But when the

τελευταῖοι τῶν Ἑλλήνων κατέβαινον εἰς τὰς κώμας
rear of-the Greeks were-descending into the villages

ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου ἤδη σκοταῖοι (γὰρ διὰ
from the eminence (it being) now somewhat-dark (for on-account-of

τὴν ὁδὸν τὸ εἶναι στενὴν ἡ ἀνάβασις καὶ κατάβασις
the road — being narrow, the ascent and descent

εἰς τὰς κώμας ἐγένετο αὐτοις
to the villages happened for-them (to be the occupation of)

τὴν ὅλην ἡμέραν)· τότε δὴ τινὲς τῶν Καρδοῦχων
the entire day), then indeed some of-the Carduchi

συλλεγέντες ἐπέθεντο τοῖς τελευταίοις, καὶ
collecting-together attacked the hindmost, and

ἀπέκτειναν τινας, καὶ κατέτρωσαν λίθοις
they-killed some, and wounded (them with) stones

καὶ τοξεύμασι, ὄντες ὀλίγοι, γὰρ
and arrows, (they, the Carduchi,) being few, for

τὸ Ἑλληνικὸν ἐπέπεσε ἐξ ἀπροσδοκήτου.
the Grecian (army) had-come-on (them) — suddenly

Εἰ μέντοι τότε συνελέγησαν πλείους
If however then they-had-assembled more (numerously) (a)

πολὺ τοῦ στρατεύματος ἐκινδύνευσεν ἂν
great (part) of-the army would-have-been-in-danger —

διαφθαρῆναι. Καὶ οὕτω μὲν τὴν νύκτα
to-have-been-destroyed And so indeed — (that) night

ηὐλίσθησαν ἐν ταῖς κώμαις· δὲ οἱ Καρδοῦχοι
they-lodged in the villages; and the Carduchi

ἔκαιον πολλὰ πυρὰ κύκλῳ ἐπὶ τῶν ὀρέων, καὶ
burned many fires in-a-circle on the mountains, and

συνεώρων ἀλλήλους. Ἅμα δὲ
observed (the position of) one-another. At-the-same-time indeed

τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ
with-the (break of) day it-seemed (best) to-the generals and

λοχαγοῖς τῶν Ἑλλήνων συνελθοῦσι,
captains of-the Greeks having-assembled-in-council,

πορεύεσθαι ἔχοντας τε τὰ ἀναγκαῖα καὶ
to-march-forth having also (only) the necessary and

δυνατώτατα τῶν ὑποζυγιῶν, καταλιπόντας τἄλλα,
strongest of-the baggage-cattle, leaving-behind the-rest,

καὶ ὁπόσα ἀνδράποδα ἦν νεωστὶ αἰχμάλωτα
and as-many slaves (as) were recently captured,

ἀφεῖναι πάντα ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ. Γὰρ τὰ
to-dismiss all (these) in the army. For the

ὑποζύγια καὶ τὰ αἰχμάλωτα ὄντα πολλὰ
baggage-cattle and — (those) captured being many

ἐποίουν τὴν πορείαν σχολαίαν· δὲ οἱ πολλοὶ
made the march slow; and the many (men)

ὄντες ἐπὶ τούτοις ἦσαν ἀπόμαχοι, ἔδει
being (in charge) over these were unfit-for-action, it-was-necessary

τε διπλάσια ἐπιτήδεια πορίζεσθαι
also (that) double (the quantity of) provisions be-procured

καὶ φέρεσθαι, τῶν ἀνθρώπων ὄντων πολλῶν. Δ'
and carried, the men being many. And

δόξαν ταῦτα ἐκήρυξαν ποιεῖν οὕτω.
they-approved these (things), (and) proclaimed to-do so.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀριστήσαντες ἐπορεύοντο,
When indeed having-breakfasted they-proceeded (on their **march**),

οἱ στρατηγοὶ ὑποστάντες ἐν τῷ στενῷ,
the generals standing-secretly in — (a) narrow (part of the

εἰ εἰρίσκοιεν τι τῶν εἰρημένων μὴ
road) if they-found any-thing of-the (things) mentioned not

ἀφειμένον, ἀφῃροῦντο· οἱ δὲ
left, they-took (them) away, the (men) indeed

ἐπείθοντο, πλὴν εἴ τις ἔκλεψε τι, οἷον ἢ
obeyed, unless if any-one was-smitten-with any-thing, as if

ἐπιθυμήσας παιδὸς ἢ γυναικὸς τῶν εὐτρεπῶν.
having-desired (a) boy or woman of-the handsome-ones.

Καὶ μὲν ἐπορεύθησαν οὕτω ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν,
And indeed they-proceeded thus that — day,

τὰ μὲν μαχόμενοι τι, δὲ καὶ τὰ
— (sometimes) indeed fighting somewhat, and also — (sometimes)

ἀναπαυόμενοι. Δὲ εἰς τὴν ὑστεραίαν πολύς
resting. But on the next-day (a) great

χειμὼν γίγνεται, δ' ἦν ἀναγκαῖον πορεύεσθαι·
storm happened, but (yet) it-was necessary to-proceed;

γὰρ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἦν οὐ ἱκανά. Καὶ μὲν
for the provisions were not sufficient. And indeed

Χειρίσοφος ἡγεῖτο δὲ Ξενοφῶν ὠπισθοφυλάκει.
Cheirisophus continued-to-lead and Xenophon brought-up-the-rear.

Καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπετίθεντο ἰσχυρῶς καὶ
And the enemy pressed greatly on (them) and

τῶν χωρίων ὄντων στενῶν, προσιόντες
the places being narrow, (the enemy) coming-up

ἐγγὺς ἐτόξευον καὶ ἐσφενδόνων· ὥστε οἱ Ἕλληνες
near they-shot-arrows and slung-stones; so-that the Greeks

ἐπιδιώκοντες καὶ πάλιν ἀναχάζοντες ἠναγκάζοντο
pursuing and again retreating were-compelled

πορεύεσθαι σχολῇ· καὶ θαμινὰ ὁ Ξενοφῶν
to-march slowly; and frequently — Xenophon

παρήγγελλεν ὑπομένειν, ὅτε οἱ πολέμιοι ἐπικέοιντο
passed-the-word to-halt, when the enemy might-press

ἰσχυρῶς. Ἐνταῦθα ὁ Χειρίσοφος ὅτε
hard on (them). Then — Cheirisophus when

παρεγγυῶτο ἄλλοτε μὲν ὑπέμενε, δὲ τότε
the-word-was-passed at-*other*-times indeed halted, but once he-did

οὐκ ὑπέμενεν, ἀλλ' ἦγε ταχέως, καὶ παρηγγύα
not halt, but led-on rapidly, and ordered

ἕπεσθαι· ὥστε ἦν δῆλον ὅτι εἴη τι
(them) to-follow; so-that it-was evident that there-was some

πρᾶγμα· δ' ἦν οὐκ σχολὴ
thing (to do); but there-was not leisure for (a person)

παρελθόντι ἰδεῖν τὸ αἴτιον τῆς
moving-along (to the front) to-have-ascertained the cause of-the

σπουδῆς· ὥστε ἡ πορεία ἐγίγνετο ὁμοία φυγῇ
haste; so-that the march became like to (a) flight

τοῖς ὀπισθοφύλαξι. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα ἀγαθὸς ἀνὴρ
for-the rear-guard. And here (a) brave man

Κλεώνυμος Λακωνικὸς ἀποθνήσκει, τοξευθεὶς
Cleonymus (a) Lacedæmonian died, being-shot-with-an-arrow

διὰ τῆς ἀσπίδος καὶ τῆς στολάδος εἰς τὰς
through the shield and the corselet on the

πλευράς, καὶ Βασίας Ἀρκάς διαμπερὲς εἰς
side, and-also Basias (an) Arcadian (shot) right-through —

τὴν κεφαλήν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ σταθμόν,
the head. When indeed they-arrived at (the) station

ὁ Ξενοφῶν εὐθὺς ἐλθὼν ὥσπερ
(or place of encampment) — Xenophon immediately having-gone as

εἶχε πρὸς τὸν Χειρίσοφον
he-had (himself) [just as he was] to — Cheirisophus

ᾐτιᾶτο αὐτὸν, ὅτι οὐχ ὑπέμεινεν ἀλλ'
he-blamed him, that he-did not halt but (that)

φεύγοντες ἠναγκάζοντο ἅμα μάχεσθαι.
fleeing they-were-compelled at-the-same-time to-fight

Καὶ νῦν δύο καλώ τε καὶ ἀγαθὼ ἄνδρε τέθνατον,
And now two honourable and also brave men have-died,

καὶ ἐδυνάμεθα οὔτε ἀνελέσθαι οὔτε
and we-could neither carry-away (their bodies) nor

θάψαι. Ὁ Χειρίσοφος ἀποκρίνεται πρὸς ταῦτα·
bury (them). — Cheirisophus answered to these

Βλέψον, ἔφη, προς τὰ ὄρη, καὶ ἴδε
(things), Look, said-he, at — (these) mountains, and see

ὡς ἄβατα πάντα ἐστί· ἡ δὲ αὕτη μία ὁδός,
how impassable (they) all are; and this one (only) road,

ἣν ὁρᾷς, ὀρθία, καὶ ἐπὶ ταύτῃ ἔξεστί σοι
which you-see, (is) steep, and on this it-is-allowed to-you

ὁρᾶν τοσοῦτον ὄχλον ἀνθρώπων οἳ κατει-
to-see how-great (a) multitude of-men (there are) who having-

ληφότες φυλάττουσι τὴν ἔκβασιν. Ταῦτ'
occupied guard the pass. For-these (reasons)

ἐγὼ ἔσπευδον, καὶ διὰ τοῦτο οὐχ ὑπέμενον
I hastened-on, and for this I-did not wait-for

σε, εἴ πως δυναίμην φθάσαι τὴν
you, (but strove) if by-chance I-could reach the

ὑπερβολὴν πρὶν κατειλῆφθαι·
passage-over (the mountain) before it-had-been-occupied (by the enemy);

δ' οἱ ἡγεμόνες οὓς ἔχομεν, φασιν εἶναι οὐκ
for the guides whom we-have, say (that) there-is no

ἄλλην ὁδόν. Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν λέγει· Ἀλλ' ἐγὼ
other road. — But Xenophon says: But I

ἔχω δύο ἄνδρας. Γὰρ ἐπεὶ παρεῖχον
have two men. | For when (the enemy) presented

πράγματα ἡμῖν, ἐνηδρεύ-
things to-us, [for when the enemy annoyed us,] we-placed-an-

σαμεν, (ὅπερ καὶ ἐποίησε ἡμᾶς ἀναπνεῦσαι,)
ambush, | (which also made us breathe,) [and

καὶ ἀπεκτείναμέν τινας
which gave us time to breathe,] and we-killed some

αὐτῶν, καὶ προὐθυμήθημεν λαβεῖν ζῶντας,
of-them, and we-were-eager to-take (them) alive,

ἕνεκεν αὐτοῦ τούτου ὅπως χρησαίμεθα
on-account-of this very-same (thing) that we-might-use (them as)

ἡγεμόσιν εἰδόσι τὴν χώραν.
guides knowing the country.

Καὶ εὐθὺς ἀγαγόντες τοὺς ἀνθρώπους, διαλα
And immediately leading-forward the men, having-

βόντες ἤλεγχον, εἰ εἰδεῖεν τινα
taken (them) apart they-questioned (them), if they-knew any

ἄλλην ὁδὸν ἢ τὴν φανεράν. Ὁ
other road than the (one) apparent (before them). The (one)

μὲν οὖν ἔφη οὐκ ἕτερος, καὶ μάλα
indeed — said (that there was) not another, and very

πολλῶν φόβων προσαγομένων· δὲ ἐπεὶ ἔλεγεν
many fearful-threats were-brought-forward; but when he-said

οὐδὲν ὠφέλιμον, κατεσφάγη, τοῦ ἑτέρου ὁρῶντος.
nothing useful he-was-put-to-death, the other-one seeing (it).

Δὲ ὁ λοιπὸς ἔλεξεν ὅτι οὗτος μὲν
But the (one) remaining said that this (other one) indeed would

οὐ φαίη εἰδέναι διὰ ταῦτα
not say (any thing about another road) | to-appear through this

ὅτι θυγάτηρ τυγχάνει αὐτῷ
[for the reason] that (a) daughter happens (to be) to-him

ἐκεῖ παρ' ἀνδρὶ ἐκδεδομένη· δ'
there with (a) man having-been-given (to him in marriage); but

αὐτὸς ἔφη ἡγήσεσθαι ὁδὸν δυνατὴν
he said (that) he-would-lead (them) by (a) road possible

πορεύεσθαι καὶ ὑποζυγίοις. Δ' ἐρωτώμενος, εἰ
to-be-passed-through even by-beasts-of-burden. But being-asked, if

εἴη τι χωρίον ἐν αὐτῇ δυσπάριτον, ἔφη
there-were any place in it difficult-to-pass, he-said (that)

εἶναι ἄκρον, ὃ εἰ μή τις προκαταλήψοιτο
there-was (a) height, which — unless some-one should-take-possession-of

ἔσεσθαι ἀδύνατον παρελθεῖν Ἐνταῦθα
(it) beforehand it-would-be impossible to-pass-over (it). Then

ἐδόκει συγκαλέσαντας λοχαγοὺς καὶ
it-seemed-proper having-called-together (the) captains (being) also

πελταστὰς καὶ τῶν ὁπλιτῶν, τε λέγειν
targeteers, and (those) of-the heavy-armed-men, | and to-tell

τα παρόντα,
them the (things) being-present, [and inform them of the state of affairs,]

καὶ ἐρωτᾶν εἰ ἔστι τις αὐτῶν, ὅστις ἂν ἐθέλοι
and to-inquire if there-is any-one of-them, who might wish

γενέσθαι ἀγαθὸς ἀνήρ, καὶ
(to prove himself) to-be (a) courageous man, and

ὑποστὰς πορεύεσθαι
having-engaged (himself) to-go-on (this expedition as a)

ἐθελοντής. Τῶν ὁπλιτῶν μὲν Ἀριστώνυμος
volunteer. Of-the heavy-armed-men indeed Aristonymus (of)

Μεθυδριεὺς Ἀρκάς ὑφίσταται, καὶ Ἀγασίας
Methydrium (an) Arcadian offered-himself, and (also) Agasias

Στυμφάλιος Ἀρκάς· δὲ Καλλίμαχος Παρ-
(of) Stymphalus (an) Arcadian; but Callimachus (of) Par

ράσιος, Ἀρκάς, ἀντιστασιάζων αὐτοῖς,
rhasia, (an) Arcadian, contesting (the honour) with them,

ἔφη οὗτος ἐθελεῖν πορεύεσθαι προσλωβῶν
said (that) he-himself wished to-go taking (with him)

ἐθελοντὰς ἐκ παντὸς τοῦ στρατεύματος. Γὰρ
volunteers from all the army. For

ἐγώ, ἔφη, οἶδα ὅτι πολλοὶ τῶν νέων ἕψονται,
I, said-he, know that many of-the young-men will-follow,

ἐμοῦ ἡγουμένου. Ἐκ τούτου ἐρωτῶσι, εἴ τις καὶ
I leading. After this they-inquired, if any also

τῶν γυμνήτων ταξιαρχῶν ἐθέλοι συμπορεύεσθαι.
of-the light-armed taxiarchs might-wish to-go-with

Ἀριστέας Χῖος ὑφίσταται, ὃς
(the volunteers). Aristeas (of) Chios offers-himself, (a man) who

πολλαχοῦ ἐγένετο ἄξιος πολλοῦ τῇ στρατιᾷ
often had-been worthy of-much in-the army

εἰς τὰ τοιαῦτα.
on (occasions) — like-these.

## CHAPTER II.

Καὶ ἦν ἤδη μεν δείλη, δ' οἱ
And it-was now indeed late-in-the-afternoon, and the (generals,

ἐκέλευον αὐτοὺς ἐμφαγόντας
Cheirisophus and Xenophon,) ordered them having-eaten-something

πορεύεσθαι. Καὶ δήσαντες τὸν ἡγεμόνα παρα-
to-march-forth. And having-bound the guide they-

διδόασιν αὐτοῖς, καὶ συντίθενται ἢν
deliver (him) to-them, and they-arrange-with (them) if

λάβωσι τὸ ἄκρον, φυλάττειν τὸ
they-should-take (possession of) the summit, to-guard the

χωρίον μὲν τὴν νύκτα, δὲ ἅμα τῇ
place (during) indeed the night, but at-the-same-time with-the

ἡμέρᾳ σημαίνειν σάλπιγγι· καὶ
(dawn of) day to-give-the-signal 'with (the) 'trumpet; and (that,

μὲν τοὺς ὄντας ἄνω ἰέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς
indeed — (those) being above to-go against — (those)

κατέχοντας τὴν φανερὰν ἔκβασιν, δὲ αὐτοὶ
having-possession-of the apparent egress, and they (the

ἐκβαίνοντες συμβοηθήσειν ὡς
generals) coming-forth (from below) altogether-to-assist (them) 'as

τάχιστα δύνωνται. Συνθέμενοι ταῦτα οἱ
speedily 'as they-could. They-having-arranged these (things) the

μὲν ἐπορεύοντο πλῆθος ὡς δισ-
(detachment) indeed proceeded (being a) multitude-of about two-

χίλιοι· καὶ ἦν πολὺ ὕδωρ ἐξ οὐρανοῦ.
thousand; | and there-was much water from heaven [and there

Δὲ Ξενοφῶν, ἔχων τοὺς
was a heavy rain at the time]. And Xenophon, having the

ὀπισθοφύλακας, ἡγεῖτο πρὸς τὴν φανερὰν
rear-guard, led (them) to the apparent

ἔκβασιν, ὅπως οἱ πολέμιοι προσέχοιεν τὸν νοῦν
egress, so-that the enemy might-direct — (their) mind

ταύτῃ τῇ ὁδῷ, καὶ ὡς οἱ περιόντες
to-that — road, and so (that) — (those) going-round-about

μάλιστα λάθοιεν. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες
'might the-best 'escape-notice. But when the rear-guard

ἦσαν ἐπὶ χαράδρᾳ, ἣν ἔδει δια-
were at (the) ravine, | which it-was-necessary they-having-

βάντ ς ἐκβαίνειν πρὸς τὸ ὄρθιον,
passed through (it) to-come-out on the acclivity, [which they

τηνικαῦτα οἱ βάρβαροι
had to cross to ascend the acclivity,] then the barbarians

ἐκυλίνδουν ὁλοιτρόχους ἁμαξιαίους καὶ
rolled (down) round-stones large-enough-to-load-a-wagon, and

μείζους καὶ ἐλάττους, οἱ φερόμενοι
(other stones also) greater and smaller, which being-borne-along

πταίοντες πρὸς τὰς πέτρας διεσφενδονῶντο·
(and) striking against the rocks were-slung-about,

καὶ παντάπασιν ἦν οὐδὲ οἷόν τε πελάσαι
and altogether it-was not-even possible to-have-approached

τῇ εἰσόδῳ. Ἔνιοι δὲ τῶν λοχαγῶν εἰ
the entrance (of the pass). Some indeed of-the captains, as

μὴ δύναιντο ταύτῃ ἐπειρῶντο
the 'could not 'effect (a passage) in-this (way) endeavoured

ἄλλῃ· καὶ ἐποίουν ταῦτα μέχρι
(to approach) in-another; and they-did these (things) until

ἐγ ένετο σκότος· δὲ ἐπεὶ ᾤοντο ἀπιόντες εἶναι
it became dark, but when they-thought (that) retiring to-be

ἀν ανεῖς, τότε ἀπῆλθον ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον· καὶ
un bserved, then they-went-away to — (their) supper; for

δι ἐτύγχανον ὄντες ἄνάριστοι οἱ
in eed they-happened being dinnerless, — (those, namely,)

α τῶν ὀπισθοφυλακήσαντες. Οἱ πολέμιοι μέντοι
of them guarding-the-rear. The enemy however

δηλονότι φοβούμενοι, οὐδὲν ἐπαίσαντο
evidently fearing (something), 'did not cease

διὰ τῆς ὅλης νυκτος κυλινδοῦντες τοὺς λίθους
through the whole night rolling (down) — stones,

δ' ἦν τεκμαίρεσθαι τῷ ψόφῳ. Δ' οἱ
as it-was (easy) to-be-conjectured by-the noise. But — (those,

ἔχοντες τὸν ἡγεμόνα περιιόντες κύκλῳ,
having the guide | going-around in-a-circle, [taking a

καταλαμβάνουσι τοὺς φύλακας καθη-
circuitous route,] surprise the guard sit

μένους ἀμφὶ πῦρ· καὶ μὲν κατακανόντες τοὺς,
ting round (a) fire; and indeed having-killed — (some),

δὲ καταδιώξαντες τοὺς, αὐτοὶ
and having-followed-after — (others) (in their flight), they

ἔμενον ἐνταῦθ' ὡς κατέχοντες τὸ ἄκρον. Δ' οἱ
remained there as-if occupying the summit. But —

οὐ κατεῖχον, ἀλλὰ μαστὸς ἦν
they-did not occupy (the summit), but (a) knoll was

ὑπὲρ αὐτῶν, παρ' ὃν ἦν ἡ αὕτη στενὴ ὁδός,
above them, by which was the same narrow road,

ἐφ' ᾗ οἱ φύλακες ἐκάθηντο. Μέντοι ἦν
at which the guard were-seated. However there-was (an)

ἔφοδος αὐτόθεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, οἱ
approach thence to the enemy, — (those namely)

ἐκάθηντο ἐπὶ τῇ φανερᾷ ὁδῷ.
stationed on the open way.

Καὶ ἐνταῦθα μὲν διήγαγον τὴν νύκτα· δὲ
And here indeed they-passed the night; but

ἐπεὶ ἡμέρα ὑπέφαινε συντεταγμένοι
when (the) day was-beginning-to-dawn (they) drawn-up-in-order

ἐπορεύοντο σιγῇ ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους· γὰρ καὶ
proceeded in-silence against the enemy; for —

ἐγένετο ὁμίχλη, ὥστε προσελθόντες ἐγγὺς
there-was (a) mist, so-that advancing near

ἔλαθον. Δὲ ἐπεὶ εἶδον ἀλλήλους, καὶ
they-escaped-observation. But when they saw one-another, and

τε σάλπιγξ ἐπεφθέγξατο, καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες
the trumpet sounded-the-attack, and the Greeks

ἀλαλάξαντες ἴεντο ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους, οἱ δὲ
raising-the-shout-of-battle rushed against the men, but the

οὐκ ἀδέξαντο, ἀλλὰ λιπόντες τὴν
(enemy) did not receive (them), but leaving the

ὁδόν, ὀλίγοι φεύγοντες ἀπέθνησκον· γὰρ
road, (a) few (only) fleeing died; for

ἦσαν εὔζωνοι. Δὲ
they-were well-girt [for they were active in their movements]. But

οἱ ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον, ἀκούσαντες τῆς σάλπιγγος,
— (those) with Cheirisophus, hearing the trumpet,

εὐθὺς ἴεντο ἄνω κατὰ τὴν φανερὰν ὁδόν· ἄλλοι
immediately rushed up along the open road; others

δὲ τῶν στρατηγῶν ἐπορεύοντο κατὰ
indeed of-the generals (with their men) proceeded by

ἀτριβεῖς ὁδοὺς ᾗ ἕκαστοι ἔτυχον ὄντες, καὶ
untrodden paths wherever each happened (as) being, and

ἀναβάντες ὡς ἐδύναντο, ἀνίμων ἀλλήλους
ascending as (well as) they-could, drew-up one-another

τοῖς δόρασι. Καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι συνέμιξαν
with — (their) spears. And these first-ones joined

τοῖς προκαταλαβοῦσι τὸ χωρίον. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν
— (those) having-secured the place. But Xenophon

ἔχων τοὺς ἡμίσεις τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων, ἐπορεύετο
having the half of-the rear-guard, proceeded

ᾗ οἱ ἔχοντες τὸν ἡγεμόνα·
(by the road) in-which — (those) having the guide (did);

(γὰρ ἦν εὐοδωτάτη τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις·) δὲ τοὺς
(for it-was the-most-practicable for-the baggage-cattle;) but the

ἡμίσεις ἔταξε ὄπισθεν τῶν ὑπο-
(other) half he-ordered (to be stationed) behind the baggage-

ζυγίων Δὲ πορευόμενοι ἐντυγχάνουσι λόφῳ
cattle. And proceeding-forward they-happened-to-find (a) hill

ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ κατειλημμένῳ ὑπὸ τῶν
(hanging) over the road occupied by the

πολεμίων, οὓς ἦν ἀνάγκη ἦν ἀποκόψαι ἢ
enemy, whom it-was (a) necessity either to-have-dislodged or

διεζεῦχθαι ἀπὸ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων. Καὶ
to have-been-separated from the other Greeks. And

αὐτοὶ μὲν ἂν ἐπορεύθησαν
(the men) themselves indeed might have-proceeded (in the same

ᾗ οἱ ἄλλοι, δὲ τὰ ὑποζύγια ᾗ οὐκ
road) in-which the others (did), but (for) the baggage-cattle it-was not

ἐχὸν ἐξελθεῖν ἄλλῃ ἢ ταύτῃ.
(possible) to-go-from (the valley) in-any-other (way) than this

Ἔνθα δὴ παρακελευσάμενοι ἀλλήλοις, προσβάλ-
Then indeed having-encouraged one-another, they-make-an-

λουσι πρὸς τὸν λόφον τοῖς ὀρθίοις λόχοις,
attack against the hill [in-the straight companies, [in

οὐ κύκλῳ, ἀλλὰ καταλιπόντες
columns of companies,] not in (a) circle, but leaving

ἄφοδον τοῖς πολεμίοις, εἰ βούλοιντο φεύγειν.
(a) way-of-escape for-the enemy, if they-wished to-flee.

Καὶ τέως μὲν, αὐτοὺς ἀναβαίνοντας ὅπῃ
And for-a-while indeed, they ascending in-whatever-manner

ἕκαστος ἐδύναντο, οἱ βάρβαροι ἐτόξευον καὶ
each could, the barbarians shot-arrows and

ἔβαλλον, δ' οὐ προσίεντο ἐγγὺς, ἀλλὰ
threw-stones, but they-did not let-them-come near, but

φυγῇ λείπουσι τὸ χωρίον. Καὶ τε οἱ Ἕλληνες
in-flight they-leave the place. And — the Greeks

παρεληλύθεσαν τοῦτον, καὶ ὁρῶσιν ἕτερον
having-passed-over this (hill), — they-see another

λόφον ἔμπροσθεν κατεχόμενον.
hill before (them) occupied (by the enemy)

Ἐδόκει αὖθις πορεύεσθαι ἐπὶ τοῦτον.
It-seemed (necessary) again to-proceed against this.

Δ' ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐννοήσας, μή, εἰ κατα-
But — Xenophon having-been-apprehensive, lest, if he-should-

λείποι τὸν ἡλωκότα λόφον ἔρημον, καὶ
leave the captured hill destitute (of troops), and

οἱ πολέμιοι πάλιν λαβόντες ἐπιθοῖντο τοῖς
the enemy again taking (it) might-attack the

ὑποζυγίοις παριοῦσι, (δὲ τὰ ὑποζύγια ἦν ἐπὶ πολὺ
baggage-cattle passing-by, (for the baggage-cattle were on much

ἅτε πορευόμενα διὰ τῆς στενῆς
[formed a long train] as-when proceeding through the narrow

ὁδοῦ,) καταλείπει ἐπὶ τοῦ λόφου
(defiles 'of (the) 'road,) he-leaves on the hill (the)

λοχαγοὺς Κηφισόδωρον Κηφισοφῶντος,
captains Cephisodorus (the son) of-Cephisophon, (an)

Ἀθηναῖον, καὶ Ἀμφικράτην Ἀμφιδήμου,
Athenian, and Amphicrates (the son) of-Amphidemus, (an)

Ἀθηναῖον, καὶ Ἀρχαγόραν, φυγάδα Ἀργεῖον·
Athenian, and Archagoras, (an) exile (from) Argos;

αὐτὸς δὲ σὺν τοῖς λοιποῖς ἐπορεύετο ἐπὶ τὸν
himself indeed with the rest marched against the

δεύτερον λόφον, καὶ αἱροῦσι τοῦτον καὶ τῷ αὐτῷ
second hill, and they-capture this-one even in-the same

τρόπῳ. Ἔτι δ' ἦν τρίτος μαστὸς λοιπὸς
manner. Still however there-was (a) third hill remaining

αὐτοῖς, πολὺ ὀρθιώτατος, ὁ ὑπὲρ τῆς φυλακῆς
for-them, much the-steepest, that above (where) the guard

ἐπὶ τῷ πυρὶ καταληφθείσης τῆς νυκτὸς
at the fire was-taken (by surprise) — at-night

ὑπὸ τῶν ἐθελοντῶν. Ἐπεὶ δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες
by the volunteers. When indeed the Greeks

ἐγένοντο ἐγγὺς οἱ βάρβαροι λείπουσι τὸν μαστόν
got near the barbarians leave the hill

ἀμαχητί, ὥστε γενέσθαι θαυμαστὸν πᾶσι, καὶ
without-fighting, so-as to-be wonderful to-all, and

ὑπώπτευον δείσαντες αὐτούς ἀπολιπεῖν,
they-suspected (that) having-been-in-fear (that) they left

μὴ κυκλωθέντες πολιορκοῖντο. Δ' ἄρα
(the place), lest being-surrounded they-might-be-besieged. But indeed

οἱ καθορῶντες ἀπὸ τοῦ ἄκρου τὰ
— (they) looking-down from the height (upon) the (things)

γιγνομενα ὄπισθεν, πάντες ἐχώρουν ἐπὶ τοὺς
occurring behind, all went-off against the

ὀπισθοφύλακας.
rear-guard.

Καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν σὺν τοῖς νεωτάτοις ἀνέβαινεν
And Xenophon indeed with the youngest-men ascended

ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον, δὲ τοὺς ἄλλους ἐκέλευσεν ὑπάγειν,
on-to the summit, and the rest he-ordered to-march-slowly,

ὅπως οἱ τελευταῖοι λόχοι προσμίξειαν καὶ
so-that the rear companies might-come-up-with (them) and

εἶπε προελθόντας κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν θέσθαι
he-told (them) having-advanced along the road to-halt

τὰ ὅπλα ἐν τῷ ὁμαλῷ. Καὶ ἐν τῷ τούτῳ
under-arms on the level (ground). And at the same

χρόνῳ Ἀρχαγόρας ὁ Ἀργεῖος ἦλθε πεφευγώς,
time Archagoras the Argive came having-fled,

καὶ λέγει ὡς ἀπεκόπησαν ἀπὸ τοῦ πρώτου λόφου,
and says that they-had-been-cut-off from the first hill,

καὶ ὅτι Κηφισόδωρος καὶ Ἀμφικράτης τεθνᾶσι,
and that Cephisodorus and Amphicrates were-dead,

καὶ ὅσοι ἄλλοι μὴ ἁλλόμενοι κατὰ τῆς
and-also how-many others (who) not having-leaped down the

πέτρας ἀφίκοντο πρὸς τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας
rocks (and) arrived at the rear-guard

Οἱ βάρβαροι δὲ διαπραξάμενοι ταῦτα
The barbarians indeed having-accomplished these (things,

ἦκον ἐπὶ λόφον ἀντίπορον τῷ μαστῷ· καὶ
came on (a) hill opposite the knoll; and

Ξενοφῶν διελέγετο αὐτοῖς δι' ἑρμηνέως
Xenophon commenced-treating with-them through (an) interpreter

περὶ σπονδῶν, καὶ ἀπῄτει τοὺς νεκρούς. Οἱ
about (a) truce, and demanded the dead. — (They)

δὲ ἔφασαν ἀποδώσειν ἐφ' ᾧ
indeed said (that) they-would-give-them-up on — (this con-

μὴ καίειν τὰς κώμας. Ὁ
dition), (that) he-would not burn the villages. —

Ξενοφῶν συνωμολόγει ταῦτα. Δὲ ἐν ᾧ
Xenophon agreed-to this. | But in which [but while]

μὲν τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα παρῄει,
indeed the remaining (part of the) army was-passing along,

δὲ οἱ διελέγοντο ταῦτα, πάντες οἱ
and — they-were-discussing these (things), all — (those)

ἐκ τούτου τοῦ τόπου συνεῤῥύησαν. Ἐνταῦθα
from that (part of) the country flocked-together. There

οἱ πολέμιοι ἵσταντο· καὶ ἐπεὶ
the enemy made-a-stand; and when they (the Greeks with

ἤρξαντο καταβαίνειν ἀπὸ τοῦ μαστοῦ
Xenophon) began to-descend from the knoll

πρὸς τοὺς ἄλλους, ἔνθα τὰ ὅπλα ἔκειντο,
towards the others, | where the arms lay, [where

οἱ πολέμιοι δὴ ἵεντο
the heavy armed men were drawn up,] the enemy truly hurried-on

πολλῷ πλήθει καὶ θορύβῳ· καὶ
in-great multitude and with (much) noise-and-tumult; and

ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τῆς κορυφῆς τοῦ μαστοῦ, ἀφ'
when they-got on the vertex of-the knoll, from

οὗ Ξενοφῶν κατέβαινεν, ἐκυλίνδουν πέτρας·
which Xenophon was-descending, they-commenced-rolling (down) stones;

καὶ μὲν κατέαξαν τὸ σκέλος ἑνός, δὲ ὁ
and indeed broke the leg of-one (man), and the

ὑπασπιστής ἔχων τὴν ἀσπίδα ἀπέλιπε
shield-bearer having the shield (of Xenophon) deserted

Ξενοφῶντα· δὲ Εὐρύλοχος Ἀρκὰς Λουσιεὺς
Xenophon; but Eurylochus (an) Arcadian of-Lusia (a)

ὁπλίτης προσέδραμεν αὐτῷ, καὶ προβεβλημένος
heavy-armed-soldier ran-to him, and having-thrown

πρὸ ἀμφοῖν ἀπεχώρει, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀπῆλθον
before both (his shield) they-departed, and the others went

πρὸς τοὺς συντεταγμένους.
to — (those) drawn-up (on the level ground).

Ἐκ τούτου δὲ τὸ πᾶν Ἑλληνικὸν ἐγένετο
From this indeed the entire Grecian (force) got

ὁμοῦ, καὶ ἐσκήνησαν αὐτοῦ
alike-together (on the level ground), and they-encamped there

ἐν πολλαῖς καὶ καλαῖς οἰκίαις καὶ δαψιλέσι
among many and fine houses and abundant

ἐπιτηδείοις· γὰρ καὶ ἦν πολὺς οἶνος, ὥστε
provisions; for also there-was much wine, so-that

εἶχον ἐν κονιατοῖς λάκκοις. Ξενοφῶν δὲ καὶ
they-kept (it) in plastered cisterns. Xenophon and also

Χειρίσοφος διεπράξαντο, ὥστε λαβόντες τοὺς
Cheirisophus effected (this), that having-taken the

νεκρους ἀπέδοσαν τὸν ἡγεμόνα·
dead (from the enemy) they-would-deliver-up the guide,

καὶ ἐποίησαν πάντα ἐκ τῶν δυνατῶν
and they-performed all (things) in — (their) power

τοῖς ἀποθανοῦσιν, ὥσπερ νομίζεται ἀγαθοῖς
for — (those) having-died, such-as is-usual-and-appropriate for-brave

ἀνδράσι. Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐπορεύοντο ἄνευ
men. And on-the next-day they-proceeded without (a)

ἡγεμόνος· δ' οἱ πολέμιοι μαχόμενοι, καὶ ὅπῃ
guide; but the enemy fighting, and where

εἴη στενὸν χωρίον προκαταλαμβάνοντες
there-might-be (a) narrow place pre-occupying (it)

ἐκώλυον τὰς παρόδους. Ὁπότε οὖν μὲν κωλύ-
obstructed the passes. When therefore indeed they-im-

οιεν τοὺς πρώτους, Ξενοφῶν ἐκβαίνων
peded | — (those) first, [the front,] Xenophon going-from

ὄπισθεν πρὸς τὰ ὄρη, ἔλυε τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς
behind to the mountain, opened the obstructions of-the

παρόδου τοῖς πρῶτοις πειρώμενος γίγνεσθαι
passes for-the front endeavouring to-get

ἐνωτέρω τῶν κωλυόντων· δὲ ὁπότε ἐπι-
higher (than) — (those) obstructing; but when they-

σθοῖντο τοῖς ὄπισθεν, Χειρίσοφος ἐκβαίνων
attacked — (those) behind, Cheirisophus departing

καὶ πειρώμενος γίγνεσθαι ἀνωτέρω
(from his place) and endeavouring to-get higher (than)

τῶν κωλυόντων, ἔλυε τὴν ἀπόφραξιν τῆς
— (those) obstructing, opened the obstruction of-the

παρόδου τοῖς ὄπισθεν· καὶ οὕτως ἀεὶ ἐβοήθουν
passes for — (those) behind; and thus always they-assisted

ἀλλήλοις, καὶ ἰσχυρῶς ἐπεμέλουτο ἀλλήλων. Δὲ
each-other, and strenuously took-care of-each-other. And

καὶ ὁπότε ἦν οἱ βάρβαροι παρεῖχον πολλὰ
also sometimes it-was (that) the barbarians | exhibited many

πράγματα τοῖς ἀναβᾶσι
things to — (those) [annoyed very much those] having-ascended

πάλιν καταβαίνουσι· γὰρ ἦσαν ἐλαφροὶ
(when) again descending; for they-were nimble

ὥστε ἀποφεύγειν καὶ φεύγοντες ἐγγύθεν, γὰρ
so-as to-escape even fleeing from-near, for

εἶχον οὐδὲν ἄλλο ἢ τόξα καὶ σφενδόνας. Δὲ
they-had nothing else than bows and slings. And

καὶ ἦσαν ἄριστοι τοξόται· εἶχον δὲ τόξα ἐγγὺς
also they-were the-best archers; they-had indeed bows nearly

τριπήχη, δὲ τὰ τοξεύματα πλέον ἢ διπήχη·
three-cubits (long), and the arrows more than two-cubits;

εἵλκον δὲ τὰς νευράς, ὁπότε τοξεύοιεν προβαί-
they-drew indeed the strings, when they-shot stepping-

νοντες τῷ ἀριστερῷ ποδὶ πρὸς τὸ κάτω τοῦ
forward with-the left foot against the lower (part) of-the

τόξου. Δὲ τὰ τοξεύματα ἐχώρει διὰ τῶν
bow. And the arrows went through the

ἀσπίδων καὶ διὰ τῶν θωράκων. Δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες,
shields and through the corselets. But the Greeks,

ἐπεὶ λάβοιεν, ἐχρῶντο αὐτοῖς ἀκοντίοις,
after they-took (them up), made-use-of them for-javelins,

ἐναγκυλῶντες. Ἐν τούτοις τοῖς
having-fitted-a-poise-to-the-middle-like-a-javelin. In these —

χωρίοις οἱ Κρῆτες ἐγένοντο χρησιμώτατοι. Δὲ
places the Cretans were the-most-useful. And

Στρατοκλῆς Κρής ἦρχε αὐτῶν
Stratocles (a) Cretan commanded them

## CHAPTER III

Δὲ ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν αὖ ηὐλίσθησαι
And this — day likewise (the Greeks) were-lodge

ἐν ταῖς κώμαις ταῖς ὑπερ τοῦ πεδίοι
in the villages (namely) — (those) above the plain

τοῦ παρὰ τὸν ποταμόν Κεντρίτην,
— (that is situated) along the river Centrites, (the)

εὖρος ὡς δίπλεθρον, ὃς ὁρίζει τὴν
breadth (thereof is) about two-hundred-feet, which (river) bounds —

Ἀρμενίαν καὶ τὴν χώραν τῶν Καρδούχων. Καὶ
Armenia and the country of-the Carduchi. And

οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀνεπαύσαντο ἐνταῦθα ἄσμενοι
the Greeks rested here rejoiced (at)

ἰδόντες πεδίον· δὲ ὁ ποταμὸς ἀπεῖχε τῶν
seeing (a) plain; and the river was-distant from-the

ὀρέων τῶν Καρδούχων ἓξ ἢ ἑπτὰ στάδια.
mountains of-the Carduchi six or seven stadia.

Τότε μὲν οὖν ηὐλίσθησαν μάλα ἡδέως,
Then indeed therefore they-were-lodged very pleasantly, [here

ἔχοντες καὶ τἀπι-
they stayed with great pleasure,] having also (plenty of) pro-

τήδεια καὶ μνημονεύοντες πολλὰ τῶν
visions and were-reflecting much — (on their)

παρεληλυθότων πόνων. Γὰρ ἑπτὰ ἡμέρας
past labours. For (during) seven days

ὅσαπερ ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ τῶν Καρ
however-many-that they-marched through (the country) of-the Car.

δούχων, μαχόμενοι διετέλεσαν πάσας, καὶ
duchi, fighting they-passed (them) all, and

ἔπαθον κακά ὅσα οὐδὲ τὰ σύμπαντα
suffered evils so-many-that not all — (those) together

ὑπο βασιλέως καὶ Τισσαφέρνους.
received) from (the) king and Tissaphernes (would

Ὡς οὖν ἀπηλλαγμένοι τούτων
equal them). So-that therefore freed from-these (dangers)

ἡδέως ἐκοιμήθησαν.
they gladly were-made-to-take-repose.

Ἅμα δὲ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ὁρῶσιν
At-the-same-time indeed with-the (break of) day they-perceive

ἐξωπλισμένους ἱππέας που πέραν τοῦ
completely-armed horsemen some-where on-the-other-side of-the

ποταμοῦ, ὡς κωλύσοντας διαβαί-
river, so-as (that) they-would-be-hindering (the Greeks) to-cross-

νειν, δὲ πεζοὺς παρατεταγμένους
over, and (also they perceived) foot-soldiers drawn-up-in-order-of-battle

ἐπὶ ταῖς ὄχθαις ἄνω τῶν ἱππέων, ὡς κωλύ-
on the high-banks above the horsemen, so-as (that) they-

σοντας ἐκβαίνειν εἰς τὴν Ἀρμενίαν.
would-be-hindering (the Greeks) to-cross-over into — Armenia.

Δ' οὗτοι ἦσαν Ἀρμένιοι καὶ Μάρδοι καὶ Χαλδαῖοι
And these were Armenians and Mardians and Chaldæans

μισθοφόροι Ὀρόντου καὶ Ἀρτούχου. Δὲ οἱ Χαλ-
mercenaries of-Orontes and Artuchus. And the Chal-

δαῖοι ἐλέγοντο εἶναι ἐλεύθεροί τε καὶ ἄλκιμοι·
dæans were-said to-be (a) free and also (a) brave

δ' εἶχον ὅπλα μακρὰ γέρρα καὶ
(people); and they-had (for) arms long shields and

λόγχας. Δὲ αἱ αὗται ὄχθαι, ἐφ' ὧν οὗτοι
spears. But the same elevated-banks, on which these

ἦσαν παρατεταγμένοι, ἀπεῖχον ἀπὸ
(foot-soldiers) were drawn-up-in-order-of-battle, were-distant from

τοῦ ποταμοῦ τρία ἢ τέτταρα πλέθρα·
the river three or four plethra (the plethra

δὲ μία ὁδὸς ἡ ὁρωμένη
being about a hundred feet); and (the) one (only) road which was-visible

ἦν ἄγουσα ἄνω, ὥσπερ χειροποίητος· οἱ Ἕλληνες
was (one) leading upwards, as-if made-by-hand; the Greeks

ἐπειρῶντο διαβαίνειν ταύτῃ. Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὸ
endeavoured to-cross in-this (place). When indeed the

τε ὕδωρ ἐφαίνετο ὑπὲρ τῶν μαστῶν πειρωμένοις
— water appeared above the breasts to-those-making-trial

καὶ ὁ ποταμὸς ἦν τραχὺς μεγάλοις
(to cross over) and the river was rough with-large

καὶ ὀλισθηροῖς λίθοις, καὶ οὔτ' ἦν ἔχειν
and slippery rocks, and neither was-it (possible) to-have

τὰ ὅπλα ἐν τῷ ὕδατι· δὲ εἰ μή ὁ ποταμός
— (their) arms in the water; | but if not [or else] the river

ἥρπαζεν· εἴ τις φέροι τὰ ὅπλα ἐπὶ
swept (them) away; if any-one carried — (his) arms on

τε τῆς κεφαλῆς ἐγίγνοντο γυμνοὶ πρὸς τὰ
— — (his) head he-became bare-and-exposed to the

τοξεύματα καὶ τἄλλα βέλη· οὖν
arrows and the-other missiles (of the enemy); therefore

ἀνεχώρησαν, καὶ ἐστρατοπεδεύσαντο αὐτοῦ παρὰ
they-retreated, and encamped there along

τὸν ποταμόν. Ἔνθα δὲ αὐτοὶ ἦσαν
the river. There indeed (where) they-themselves had-been

τὴν πρόσθεν νύκτα, ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους, ὥρων τοὺς
on-the previous night, on the mountain, they-saw the

Καρδούχους συνειλεγμένους πολλοὺς ἐν τοῖς
Carduchi assembled-together (in) great-numbers in —

ὅπλοις. Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἦν πολλὴ ἀθυμία τοῖς
arms. Here truly there-was great despondency to-the

Ἕλλησιν ὁρῶσι μὲν τὴν δυσπορίαν τοῦ
Greeks (as) they-perceive indeed the difficult-passage of-the

ποταμοῦ, δὲ ὁρῶσι τοὺς
river, and (as) they-perceive — (those on the other side of the

κωλύσοντας διαβαίνειν, δὲ ὁρῶσι τοὺς
river) opposed to-crossing-over, and (as) they-perceive the

Καρδούχους ἐπικεισομένους ὄπισθεν τοῖς
Carduchi hanging-on (the) rear (of) — (those)

διαβαίνουσιν. Οὖν μὲν ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν καὶ
crossing-over. Therefore indeed on-that-same — day and

τὴν νύκτα ἔμειναν ὄντες ἐν πολλῇ ἀπορίᾳ. Λὲ
— night they-remained, being in great perplexity. But

Ξενοφῶν εἶδεν ὄναρ· ἔδοξε
Xenophon saw (a) dream [but Xenophon had a dream]: he-seemed

δεδέσθαι ἐν πέδαις, δὲ αὗται περιῤῥυ-
to-have-been-bound in fetters, but these (seemed) to-have-

ῆναι αὐτῷ αὐτόμαται, ὥστε λυθῆ-
dropped-off from-him of-their-own-accord, so-that (he seemed) to-have

ναι, καὶ διαβαίνειν, ὁπόσον ἐβούλετο.
been-loosened, and (able) to-stride-about, as-much-as he-pleased.

Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἦν ὄρθρος, ἔρχεται πρὸς τὸν Χειρί-
But when it-was near-the-dawn-of-day, he-went to — Cheiri-

σοφον, καὶ λέγει, ὅτι ἔχει ἐλπίδας ἔσεσθαι
sophus, and says, that he-has hopes (that all) will-be

καλῶς, καὶ διηγεῖται αὐτῷ τὸ ὄναρ. Ὁ
well, and relates to-him — (his) dream. — (He)

δὲ ἥδετό τε, καὶ ὡς τάχιστα ἕως ὑπέ-
indeed was-delighted, — and, as speedily-as (the) dawn began-

φαινε πάντες οἱ στρατηγοὶ παρόντες ἐθύοντο·
to-appear, all the generals being-present sacrificed;

καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ ἦν καλὰ εὐθὺς ἀπὸ τοῦ πρώτου.
and the victims were favourable immediately from the first.

Καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ καὶ λοχαγοὶ ἀπιόντες ἀπὸ τῶν
And the generals and captains going-away from the

ἱερῶν παρήγγελλον τῇ στρατιᾷ ἀριστο-
sacrifices gave-orders in-the army (for the troops) to-break-

ποιεῖσθαι. Καὶ δύο νεανίσκω προσέτρεχον τῷ
fast. And two young-men came-running to —

Ξενοφῶντι ἀριστῶντι· γὰρ πάντες ᾔδεσαν
Xenophon (while) breakfasting; for all knew

ὅτι ἐξείη προσελθεῖν αὐτῷ καὶ
that it-might-be-allowed (to them) to-approach him even

ἀριστῶντι καὶ δειπνοῦντι, καὶ εἰ καθεύδοι,
breakfasting and supping, and (also) if he-were-asleep,

ἐπεγείραντα εἰπεῖν, εἴ τις ἔχοι τι
having-been-awakened to-speak (to him), if any-one might-have any-thing

τῶν πρὸς τὸν πόλεμον.
of — (those things) (relating) to the war (to say)

Καὶ τότε ἔλεγον, ὅτι τυγχάνοιεν συλλέγοντες
And then they-said, | that they-might-happen gathering

φρύγανα ὡς ἐπὶ πῦρ,
sticks as for (the) fire, [that as they were gathering sticks

κἄπειτα κατίδοιεν, ἐν τῷ πέραν
for the fire,] (*and then*) they-saw, on the other-side (of the river)

ἐν πέτραις καθηκούσαις ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν
on (the) rocks reaching-down to the river

αὐτὸν, γέροντά τε καὶ γυναῖκας καὶ παιδίσκας,
itself, an-old-man and also women and girls,

ὥσπερ κατατιθεμένους μαρσίπους ἱματίων ἐν
as-if depositing bags of-clothes in (a)

ἀντρώδει πέτρᾳ. Δὲ δόξαι σφισι ἰδοῦσι
cavernous rock. And (that) it-appeared to-them seeing

εἶναι ἀσφαλὲς διαβῆναι· γὰρ οὐδὲ εἶναι
(this) to-be safe to-cross-over; for (that) neither was-it

πρόσβατον τοῖς πολεμίοις ἱππεῦσι κατὰ τοῦτο.
accessible for-the hostile cavalry at this (place)

Δ' ἔφασαν ἐκδύντες ἔχοντες τὰ
And they-said, (that) having-undressed (and) having — (their)

ἐγχειρίδια διαβαίνειν γυμνοὶ ὡς νευσούμενοι, δὲ
daggers they-crossed-over naked as being-about-to-swim, and

πορευόμενοι πρόσθεν διαβῆναι πρὶν
proceeding forwards (that) they-crossed-over before (that)

βρέξαι τὰ αἰδοῖα, καὶ διαβάντες καὶ λαβόντες
they-wetted the middle, and crossing-over and taking

τὰ ἱμάτια ἥκειν πάλιν.
the clothes (that) they-came (back) again.

Ὁ Ξενοφῶν αὐτός οὖν τε εὐθὺς
— Xenophon himself therefore not-only immediately

ἔσπενδε καὶ ἐκέλευε τοῖς νεανίσκοις
made (a) libation, but-also ordered the young-men

ἐγχεῖν. καὶ
to-pour-in (wine into the cups to make a libation themselves), and

ἐὐχεσθαι τοῖς θεοῖς φήνασι τε τὰ ὀνείρατα
to-pray to-the gods having-shown not-only the dreams

καὶ τὸν πόρον, καὶ ἐπιτελέσαι τὰ ἀγαθὰ
but-also the passage, even (that) they-would-complete the good-things

λοιπά. Δὲ σπείσας εὐθὺς ἦγε τοὺς
remaining. And (the) libations-made he immediately led the

νεανίσκους παρὰ τὸν Χειρίσοφον, καὶ διηγοῦντα
young-men to — Cheirisophus, and relates

ταῦτα. Δὲ καὶ ὁ Χειρίσοφος ἀκούσας
these-same (things). And also — Cheirisophus having-heard (them)

ἐποίει σπονδάς. Δὲ μὲν σπείσαντες
made (a) libation. And indeed having-made-the-libations

παρήγγελλον ἄλλοις σύσκευάζεσθαι·
they-ordered | the-others [the soldiers] to-collect-their-baggage-together;

αὐτοὶ δὲ συγκαλέσαντες τοὺς στρατηγοὺς
they-themselves indeed calling-together the generals

ἐβουλεύοντο ὅπως ἂν διαβαῖεν
consulted-with (them) how they might cross (the river)

κάλλιστα, καὶ τε νικῷεν τούς
to-the-best-advantage, and not-only (that) they-might-conquer —

ἔμπροσθεν, καὶ πάσχοιεν μηδὲν κακόν
(those) in-front-of (them), but-also suffer no evil

ὑπὸ τῶν ὄπισθεν. Καὶ ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς
from — (those) in (their) rear. And it-seemed to-them

Χειρίσοφον μὲν ἡγεῖσθαι, καὶ διαβαί-
good) (that) Cheirisophus indeed should-take-the-lead, and to-cross-

νειν ἔχοντα τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ στρατεύματος, δὲ
over having the half of-the army, and

ἔτι τὸ ἥμισυ ὑπομένειν σὺν Ξενο-
moreover (that) the (other) half should-remain-behind with Xeno-

φῶντι, δὲ τὰ ὑποζύγια καὶ τὸν ὄχλον
phon, and (that) the baggage-cattle and the crowd (of camp-

διαβαίνειν ἐν μέσῳ τούτων.
followers) to-cross-over in (the) middle of-these (two divisions).

Ἐπει δὲ ταῦτα εἶχε καλῶς,
When indeed these (things) had (themselves) well

ἐπορεύοντο· δ᾽ οἱ νεανίσκοι
(and in good order), they-proceeded-forward; and the young-men

ἡγοῦντο ἔχοντες τὸν ποταμὸν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ
guided (them) having the river on (the) left,

δὲ ὁδὸς ἐπὶ τὴν διάβασιν ἦν ὡς τέτταρες
and (the) way to the ford was about four

στάδιοι. Δὲ, αὐτῶν πορευομένων, αἱ τάξεις τῶν
stadia. But, they proceeding, the lines of-the

ἱππέων ἀντιπαρήεσαν. Δὲ
cavalry passed-along-opposite (them, on the other side of the river). And

ἐπειδὴ ἦσαν κατὰ τὴν διάβασιν καὶ τὰς ὄχθας
when they-were at the ford and the shores

τοῦ ποταμοῦ, ἔθεντο τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ Χειρίσοφος
of-the river, they-stacked — (their) arms, and Cheirisophus

αὐτὸς πρῶτος στεφανωσάμενος καὶ ἀποδὺς
himself first having-crowned-himself and taking-off-his-clothes

ἐλάμβανε τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ παρήγγελλε πᾶσι
he-took — (his) arms, and he-ordered all

τοῖς ἄλλοις, καὶ ἐκέλευε τοὺς λοχαγοὺς
the rest (to do the same), and he-ordered the captains

ἄγειν τοὺς λόχους ὀρθίους, τοὺς μὲν
to-lead the companies drawn-up-in-columns, — (some) indeed

ἐν ἀριστερᾷ, δὲ τοὺς
(of these columns being) on (the) left-hand, and — (others)

ἐν δεξιᾷ ἑαυτοῦ. Καὶ οἱ μάντεις μὲν ἐσφα-
on (the) right-hand of-himself. And the augurs indeed sacri-

γιάζοντο εἰς τον ποταμόν· οἱ
ficed-victims (so that the blood flowed) into the river; the

πολέμιοι δὲ ἐτόξευόν τε καὶ
enemy indeed (at the same time) kept-shooting-arrows and also

ἐσφενδόνων· ἀλλ᾽ οὔτω ἐξικνοῦντο.
kept-slinging-stones; but they-[1]did (not) as-yet [1]reach (the Greeks).

Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ σφάγια ἦν καλὰ πάντες οἱ στρα-
When indeed the victims were favourable all the sol

τιῶται καὶ ἀνηλάλαζον, δὲ καὶ ἅπασι αἱ γυναῖκες
diers even raised-the-war-cry, and also all the women

συνωλόλυζον. Γὰρ ἦσαν πολλαὶ ἑταῖραι
cried-out-and-shouted-with (them). For there-were many mistresses

ἐν τῷ στρατεύματι. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἐνέβαινε
in the army And Cheirisophus indeed entered

καὶ οἱ σὺν ἐκείνῳ· δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν
(the river), and —(those) with him (also); but — Xenophon,

λαβὼν τοὺς εὐζωνοτάτους τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων,
taking the most-active of-the rear-guard,

ἔδει ἀνὰ κράτος πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸν πόρον
ran at (the) utmost (speed) back to the ford,

τὸν κατὰ τὴν ἔκβασιν τὴν εἰς τὰ
— (to that) opposite the outlet — (that led) to the

ὄρη τῶν Ἀρμενίων, προσποιούμενος διαβὰς
mountains of — Armenia, making-a-feint (as) crossing

ταύτῃ ἀποκλείσειν τοὺς ἱππεῖς παρὰ τὸν
in-that (place) to-cut-off the cavalry along the

ποταμόν. Δ' οἱ πολέμιοι μὲν ὁρῶντες τοὺς
river. But the enemy indeed seeing — (those)

ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον εὐπετῶς περῶντας τὸ ὕδωρ,
with Cheirisophus easily crossing-over the water,

ὁρῶντες δὲ τοὺς ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα θέοντας
seeing likewise — (those) with Xenophon | running

εἰς τοὔμπαλιν, δείσαντες μὴ ἀποκλεισθεί-
to the-contrary [running back,] fearing lest they-might-be-in-

ησαν, φεύγουσιν ἀνὰ κράτος ὡς πρὸς
tercepted, they-flee at (their utmost) power as-if to

τὴν ἔκβασιν ἀπὸ τοῦ ποταμοῦ ἄνω. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
the outlet from the river upwards. When indeed

ἐγένοντο κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἔτεινον ἄνω πρὸς
they-got to the road (or outlet) they-stretched upwards to

τὸ ὄρος. Λύκιος δὲ, ὁ ἔχων τὴν
the mountain. Lycius indeed, who having (the command of) the

τάξιν τῶν ἱππέων, καὶ Αἰσχίνης, ὁ ἔχων
body of — cavalry, and Æschines, who having (the

τὴν τάξιν τῶν πελταστῶν τῶν
command of) the body of — targeteers (name'y) — (those)

ἀμφὶ Χειρίσοφον ἐπεὶ ἑώρων, φεύγοντας,
with Cheirisophus, when they-saw (the enemy) fleeing

ἀνὰ κράτος εἵποντο· οἱ στρατιῶται
at (their utmost) power commenced-pursuing; the soldiers

δὲ ἐβόων μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι, ἀλλὰ
also called-out (that they should) not be-left-behind, but

συνεκβαίνειν ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος. Δ᾽
to-go-through-with (the pursuing cavalry) to the mountain. But

αὖ Χειρίσοφος ἐπεὶ διέβη, οὐ μὲν
on-the-contrary Cheirisophus when he-crossed-over, did not indeed

ἐδίωκε τοὺς ἱππέας, δὲ εὐθὺς ἐξέβαινεν ἐπὶ
follow the cavalry, but immediately went-forth against

τοὺς πολεμίους ἄνω κατὰ τὰς ὄχθας προς-
the enemy above (stationed) along the banks extend-

ηκούσας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν. Δὲ οἱ ἄνω
ing-down to the river. But —(those) above (on these

ὁρῶντες μὲν τοὺς ἱππέας ἑαυτῶν φεύγοντας,
nigh banks) seeing indeed the cavalry of-themselves fleeing,

δ᾽ ὁρῶντες ὁπλίτας ἐπιόντας σφίσιν
and seeing (the) heavy-armed-soldiers advancing-against themselves

ἐκλείπουσι τὰ ἄκρα ὑπὲρ τοῦ ποταμοῦ.
they-abandon the heights above the river.

Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἐπεὶ ἑώρα τὰ πέραν γιγνό-
Xenophon indeed when he-saw (things) on-the other-side be-

μενα καλῶς ἀπεχώρει τὴν ταχίστην
coming prosperous-and-well departed (with) the greatest-speed

πρὸς τὸ διαβαῖνον στράτευμα· (γὰρ καὶ οἱ Καρ-
to the crossing army; (for also the Car-

δοῦχοι ἦσαν ἤδη φανεροὶ καταβαίνοντες εἰς τὸ
duchi were now evidently descending to the

πεδίον ὡς ἐπιθησόμενοι τοῖς τελευταίοις.)
plain as-if about-attacking — (those) behind.)

Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν κατεῖχε τὰ ἄνω,
And Cheirisophus indeed (now) occupied the (place) above,

δὲ Λύκιος, σὺν ὀλίγοις ἐπιχειρήσας ἐπι-
and Lycius, with (his) few (men) having-undertaken to

διῶξαι, ἔλαβε τὰ ὑπολειπόμενα τῶν σκευο-
pursue, captured the (portions) left-behind of-the bag

φόρων, καὶ μετὰ τούτων τε καλὴν ἐσθῆτα
gage, and among these not-only fine garments

καὶ ἐκπώματα. Καὶ μὲν τὰ σκευοφόρα τῶν
but-also drinking-cups. And — the baggage of-the

Ἑλλήνων καὶ ὁ ὄχλος ἀκμὴν διέ
Greeks and the crowd (of camp-followers) 'were yet 'pass-

βαινε, δὲ Ξενοφῶν στρέψας πρὸς τοὺς Καρδούχους,
ing, and Xenophon having-turned towards the Carduchi,

ἔθετο ἀντία τὰ ὅπλα· καὶ παρήγγειλε
halted over-against (them) under-arms; and he-ordered

τοῖς λοχαγοῖς ποιήσασθαι ἕκαστον τὸν λόχον
the captains to-form each — company

ἑαυτοῦ κατ' ἐνωμοτίας, παραγαγόντας
of-theirs into divisions-of-five-and-twenty-men, having-wheeled

τὴν ἐνωμοτίαν παρ' ἀσπίδας ἐπὶ φάλαγγος·
the division-of-twenty-five-men by the-left into line

καὶ μὲν τοὺς λοχαγοὺς καὶ ἐνωμοτάρχας
and (he ordered) — the captains and (the) commanders-'of

ἰέναι πρὸς τῶν Καρδούχων, δὲ
(these) 'divisions to-go against the Carduchi, and (the)

οὐραγοὺς καταστήσασθαι πρὸς τοῦ ποταμοῦ.
commanders-of-the-rear to-halt at the river.

Δ' οἱ Καρδοῦχοι, ὡς ἑώρων τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας
But the Carduchi, as they-perceived the rear-guard

τοῦ ὄχλου ψιλουμένους, καὶ ἤδη φαινου-
of-the crowd (of camp-followers) diminished, and now ap-

μένους ὀλίγους, δὴ ἐπήεσαν θᾶττον ᾄδοντες
peared few, 'they indeed 'advanced more-quickly singing

τινας ᾠδάς. Ὁ Χειρίσοφος δὲ, ἐπεὶ εἶχε τὰ
certain songs. — Cheirisophus indeed, when he-had the

παρ' αὐτῷ ἀσφαλῶς, πέμπει τοὺς πελταστὰς
(things) about himself safe, sends the targeteers

καὶ σφενδονήτας καὶ τοξότας παρὰ Ξενοφῶντα,
and slingers and archers to Xenophon

καὶ κελεύει ποιεῖν ὅ τι ἂν παραγγέλλῃ
and he-commanded (them) to-do whatever he might [1]order

Δ' ὁ Ξενοχῶν ἰδὼν αὐτοὺς διαβαίνοντας πέμψας
But — Xenophon having-seen them crossing having-sen[1]

ἄγγελον κελεύει μεῖναι αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τοῦ
a) messenger to-request (them) to-remain there at the

ποταμοῦ, μὴ διαβάντας. Ὅταν δ' αὐτοὶ
river, not having-crossed. When indeed they [Xenophon

ἄρξωνται διαβαίνειν ἐμβαίνειν
and his men] begin to-cross (that they should) enter

ἐναντίους ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν σφῶν ὡς
(the river) opposite on-this-side and on-that-side of-them as-if

διαβησομένους, τοὺς ἀκοντιστὰς διηγκυλωμέ-
about-to-cross, the javelin-men holding-the-javelin-by-the-

νους, καὶ τοὺς τοξότας ἐπιβεβλημένους·
poise, and the archers having-[1]placed (their) [1]arrows-on-

δὲ μὴ προβαίνειν πρόσω τοῦ ποταμοῦ.
the-string; but not to-advance far-into the river.

Παρήγγειλε δὲ τοῖς παρ' ἑαυτῷ
[He-ordered — — (those) about himself [he ordered his

ἐπειδὰν σφενδόνη ἐξικνῆται,
own men] (that) when (a stone from a) sling shall-reach

καὶ ἀσπὶς ψοφῇ παιανίσαντας
(them), and (a) shield resounded (that) having-sung-the-pæan

θεῖν εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους· δὲ ἐπειδὰν οἱ
they-should-rush on the enemy; and when the

πολέμιοι ἀναστρέψωσι, καὶ ὁ σαλπιγκτὴς σημή-
enemy should-turn-to-flee, and the trumpeter should-sound-the-

νῃ τὸ πολεμικόν ἐκ τοῦ ποταμοῦ, τοὺς
signal the warlike-one (of attack) from the river, (that) the

οὐραγούς μὲν ἀναστρέψαντας ἐπὶ δόρυ
leaders-of-the-rear — having-turned to (the) right

ἡγεῖσθαι, δὲ πάντας θεῖν, καὶ διαβαίνειν ὅτι
to-take-the-lead, and all to-run, and to-cross-over as

τάχιστα, ᾗ ἕκαστος εἶχεν τὴν τάξιν,
fast-as-possible, where each-one had — (his) file

ὡς μὴ ἐμποδίζειν ἀλλήλους· ὅτι οὗτος ἔσοιτο
so-as not to-impede one-another, (and) that that-one would-be

ἄριστος ὃς ἂν πρῶτος γένηται ἐν τῷ
the-best (man) who might first get on the

πέραν.
other-side.

Δ' οἱ Καρδοῦχοι ὁρῶντες τοὺς λοιποὺς
But the Carduchi seeing — (those) remaining

ἤδη ὀλίγους, (γὰρ καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν τεταγμένων
now few, (for also many of — (those) ordered

μένειν ᾤχοντο ἐπιμελόμενοι, οἱ μὲν ὑποζυ-
to-remain departed taking-care, — (some indeed of-the-baggage-

γίων, οἱ δὲ σκευῶν, δ' οἱ
cattle, — (some) also 'of (their) 'utensils (and baggage), and — (others)

ἑταιρῶν,) ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐπέκειντο θρασέως,
of (their) 'mistresses,) here indeed 'pressed 'boldly 'on,

καὶ ἤρχοντο σφενδονᾶν καὶ τοξεύειν.
and began to-'use (their) 'slings and bows.

Δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες παιανίσαντες ὥρμησαν δρόμῳ
But the Greeks having-sung-the-pæan started-forward 'in (a) 'run

ἐπ' αὐτούς· οἱ δὲ οὐκ ἐδέξαντο·
'upon them; — 'they indeed 'did not 'receive (the 'charge

of the Greeks); γὰρ καὶ ἦσαν ὡπλισμένοι, ὡς μὲν ἐν
for though they-were armed, as indeed in

τοῖς ὄρεσιν, ἱκανῶς πρὸς τὸ ἐπιδραμεῖν καὶ
— (their) mountains, fit for — attacking and

φεύγειν, δὲ πρὸς δέχεσθαι τὸ εἰς χεῖρας
fleeing, but for receiving (any enemy) | the to hand

οὐκ ἱκανῶς. Ἐν τούτῳ
[hand to hand] (they were) not fit. At this (time)

ὁ σαλπιγκτής σημαίνει· καὶ οἱ μὲν πολέμιοι
the trumpeter sounds; and the — enemy

ἔφευγον ἔτι πολὺ θᾶττον, δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες στρέ-
fled yet much faster, but the Greeks having

ψαντες τἀναντία ἔφευγον ὅτι τάχιστα διὰ τοῦ
turned to-the-contrary fled as fast-as-possible over the

ποταμοῖ Οἱ τινες δὲ μὲν τῶν πολεμίων, αἰσθο-
river. — Some however of-the enemy, per-

μενοι ἔδραμον πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμὸν, καὶ
ceiving (this) ran back to the river, and

τοξεύοντες ἔτρωσαν ὀλίγους,
using (their) bows wounded (a) few (of our men,

δ' οἱ πολλοὶ, καὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ὄντων
but the greater (number of them), even the Greeks being

πέραν, ἔτι ἦσαν φανεροὶ φεύγοντες Δ' οἱ
on-the-other-side, yet were evidently fleeing. But —

ὑπαντήσαντες, ἀνδριζό-
(those who) had-come-to-meet (them), priding-themselves-on-their-man-

μενοι καὶ προϊόντες προσωτέρω τοῦ καιροῦ,
hood-and-courage, and advancing farther (than) — proper,

πάλιν διέβησαν ὕστερον τῶν μετὰ
again crossed (the river) behind — (those) with

Ξενοφῶντος· καὶ ἐτρώθησαν καὶ
Xenophon; and they (the Carduchi) wounded even

τινες τούτων.
some of-those.

## CHAPTER IV

Ἐπεὶ δὲ διέβησαν, συνταξά-
When indeed they-had-crossed, (and) having-drawn-themselves-up-

μενοι ἀμφὶ μέσον ἡμέρας, ἐπορεύθησαν,
in-order about (the) middle of-(the) day, they-proceeded,

οὐ μεῖον ἢ πέντε παρασάγγας, διὰ τῆς Ἀρμενίας,
not less than five parasangs, through — Armenia,

ἅπαν πεδίον καὶ γηλόφους λείους·
(it being) altogether (a) plain, and (having) hills of-gentle-ascent;

γὰρ ἦσαν οὐ κῶμαι ἐγγὺς τοῦ ποταμοῦ διὰ
for there-were not villages near the river on-account-of

τοὺς πολέμους τοὺς πρὸς τοὺς Καρδούχους
the wars (namely) — (those) with the Carduchi.

Δὲ εἰς ἣν κώμην ἀφίκοντο ἦν τε μεγάλη.
But (the village) at which village they-arrived was not-only large,

καὶ εἶχε βασίλειον τῷ σατραπῃ, καὶ ἐπὶ ταῖς
but-also had (a) palace for-the satrap, and on the

πλείσταις οἰκίαις ἐπῆσαν τύρσεις· ἐπιτήδεια δ'
most houses there-were towers; provisions indeed

ἦν δαψιλῆ. Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν δύο
were abundant. Thence — they-proceeded two

σταθμός, δέκα παρασάγγας, μέχρι ὑπερῆλ-
days'-march, (making) ten parasangs, until they-passed-

θον τὰς πηγὰς τοῦ ποταμοῦ Τίγρητος. Ἐντεῦθεν
beyond the sources of-the river Tigris. Thence

δ' ἐπορεύθησαν τρεῖς σταθμοὺς πεντεκαίδεκα
— they-proceeded three days'-march (making) fifteen

παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν Τηλεβόαν. Οὗτος
parasangs to the river Teleboas. This

δ' ἦν μὲν καλός, δ' οὐ μέγας· δ' ἦσαν
(river) — was indeed beautiful, but not large; and there-were

πολλαὶ κῶμαι περὶ τὸν ποταμόν. Δὲ ὁ οὗτος
many villages along — (this) river. And — this

τόπος ἐκαλεῖτο Ἀρμενία ἥ πρὸς
place was-called Armenia (that namely) which (was) towards (the)

ἑσπέραν. Δ' ὕπαρχος αὐτῆς ἦν Τηρίβαζος,
west. And (the) lieutenant-governor of-it was Teribazus,

ὁ καὶ γενόμενος φίλος βασιλεῖ (καὶ ὁπότε
who even had-become (a) friend to (the) king (and when

παρείη οὐδεὶς ἄλλος ἀνέβαλλε βασιλέα
he-might-be-present no-one else put (the) king

ἐπὶ τὸν ἵππον. Οὗτος προσήλασεν ἔχων
on — (his) horse. This (person) came-forward having

ἱππέας, καὶ προπέμψας ἑρμηνέα εἶπεν,
cavalry (with him), and having-sent-forward (an) interpreter to-say,

ὅτι βούλοιτο διαλεχθῆναι τοῖς ἄρχουσι. Ἔδοξε
that he-wished to-have-spoken-with the commanders. It-seemed

δὲ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς ἀκοῦσαι. Καὶ προ-
indeed (good) to-the generals to-hear (him). And ad

ελθόντες εἰς ἐπήκοον ἠρώτων τί θέλοι.
vancing within hearing (distance) they-inquired what he-might-wish.

Ὁ δὲ εἶπεν, ὅτι βούλοιτο σπείσασθαι,
Who — (then) said, that he-desired to-make-a-treaty (with them),

ἐφ' ᾧ μήτε αὐτὸς ἀδικεῖν τοὺς
on which [on the condition] (that) neither he-himself should-injure the

Ἕλληνας, μήτε ἐκείνους καίειν τὰς
Greeks, nor (that) they (the Greeks) should-burn the

οἰκίας, τε λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
houses, also (that they might) take — provisions

ὅσων δέοιντο. Ταῦτα ἔδοξε
(*of*)-as-much-as they-wanted. These (proposals) seemed (good)

τοῖς στρατηγοῖς, καὶ ἐσπείσαντο ἐπὶ τούτοις.
to-the generals, and they-made-a-treaty on these (terms).

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ πεδίου τρεῖς
Thence indeed they-proceeded through (the) plain three

σταθμοὺς πεντεκαίδεκα παρασάγγας· καὶ
days'-march (making) fifteen parasangs; and

Τηρίβαζος παρηκολούθει, ἔχων τὴν δύναμιν ἑαυτοῦ,
Teribazus followed, | having the force of-himself,

ἀπέχων ὡς δέκα σταδίους·
[having his own troops,] (and) being-distant about ten stadia;

καὶ ἀφίκοντο εἰς βασίλεια, καὶ πολλὰς
and they-arrived at (a) palace, (there being) also many

κώμας πέριξ μεστὰς πολλῶν τῶν ἐπιτηδείων.
villages round-about (it) filled-with much — provisions.

Δ' αὐτῶν στρατοπεδευομένων γίγνεται τῆς νυκτὸς
But they having-encamped there-happened in-the night

πολλὴ χιών· καὶ ἕωθεν ἔδοξε διασκη-
much snow; and in-the-morning it-seemed-best to-distribute-in

νῆσαι τας τάξεις καὶ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς κατὰ τὰς
quarters the troops and the generals among the

κώμας· γὰρ οὐ ἑώρων οὐδένα πολέμιον,
villages; for they did not see (*no*) (any) enemy

καὶ ἐδόκει εἶναι ἀσφαλὲς διὰ τὸ πλῆθος τῆς
and it-seemed to-be safe on-account-of the quantity of —

χιόνος. Ἐνταῦθα εἶχον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ὅσα ἐστὶν
snow. Here they-had — provisions such-as are

ἀγαθά, ἱερεῖα, σῖτον, εὐώδεις
good, (namely) | victims, [animals used for food,] corn, fragrant

παλαιοὺς οἴνους, ἀσταφίδας, παντοδαπά ὄσπρια.
old wines, dried-grapes, all-kinds (of) pulse.

Τινὲς δὲ τῶν ἀποσκεδαννυμένων ἀπὸ τοῦ
Some — of — (those) scattered-about from the

στρατοπέδου ἔλεγον, ὅτι κατίδοιεν στράτευμα,
camp said, that they-saw (an) army,

καὶ πολλὰ πυρὰ φαίνοιτο νύκτωρ. Ἐδόκει
and (that) many fires appeared during-the-night. It-seemed

δὴ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς οὐκ εἶναι ἀσφαλὲς διασκη-
indeed to-the generals not to-be safe to-quarter

νοῦν, ἀλλὰ συναγαγεῖν πάλιν τὸ
dispersed, but (that they ought) to-bring-together again the

στράτευμα. Ἐντεῦθεν συνῆλθον· γὰρ ἐδόκει καὶ
army. Thereupon they-assembled; for it-seemed even

συναθροίζειν. Δ' αὐτῶν νυκτερευόντων ἐνταῦθα
to-be-clearing-up. But they passing-the-night here

ἄπλετος χιὼν ἐπιπίπτει, ὥστε ἀπέκρυψε καὶ
(a) vast-quantity (of) snow falls, so-that it-covered both

τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τοὺς ἀνθρώπους κατακειμένους
the arms and the men lying

καὶ ἡ χιὼν συνεπόδισε τὰ ὑποζύγια·
(on the ground); and the snow benumbed the baggage-cattle;

καὶ ἦν πολὺς ὄκνος ἀνίστασθαι· γὰρ ἡ χιὼν
and there-was much sluggishness to-rise-up; for the snow

ἐπιπεπτωκυῖα κατακειμένων ἦν ἀλεεινόν,
having-fallen-on (them) lying down was warm (to them),

μὴ παραῤῥουεῖν ὅτῳ. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
(provided) it-'did not 'fall-off from-them. When however

Ξενοφῶν ἐτόλμησε ἀναστὰς γυμνὸς
Xenophon | dared having-risen-up naked [dared to rise up

σχίζειν ξύλα, τάχ' ἂν καὶ
divested of his outer garments] to-split wood, speedily — also

τις ἄλλος ἀναστὰς ἀφελόμενος ἐκείνου
some other-one having-risen-up (and) having-taken (the wood) from-him

ἔσχιζεν. Ἐκ τούτου δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀναστάντες
split (it). After this — also the others having-risen-up

ἔκαιον πῦρ καὶ ἐχρίοντο. Γὰρ εὑρίσκετο
lit (the) fire and anointed-themselves. For they-found

πολὺ χρῖσμα ἐνταῦθα, ᾧ ἐχρῶντο ἀντ' ἐλαίου,
much ointment there, which they-used in-place-of oil,

σύειον, καὶ σησάμινον, καὶ ἀμυγδάλινον
(it being made of) hog's-lard, and sesame, and almonds

ἐκ τῶν πικρῶν, καὶ τερεβίνθινον. Δὲ
of the bitter (kind), and turpentine. And

ἐκ τῶν αὐτῶν τούτων καὶ μύρον
of the self same (substances) also an-odoriferous-unguent

εὑρίσκετο.
was-found.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδόκει πάλιν εἶναι διασκη-
After this it-seemed again to-be necessary-to-be-dis-

νητέον εἰς τὰς κώμας εἰς στέγας. Ἔνθα δὴ
persed-in-quarters in the villages under shelter. Here indeed

οἱ στρατιῶται ἦσαν σὺν πολλῇ κραυγῇ καὶ
the soldiers went with much shouting and

ἡδονῇ ἐπὶ τὰς στέγας, καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια·
delight to the shelter-under-roofs, and (to) — provisions,

δὲ ὅσοι, ὅτε πρότερον ἀπῄεσαν,
but as-many-as, when before they-departed (from the villages),

ἐνέπρησαν τὰς οἰκίας ὑπὸ ἀτασθαλίας ἐδίδοσαν
set-fire-to the houses through folly gave

δίκην σκηνοῦντες κακῶς.
justice [suffered punishment] (by) encamping uncomfortably (in the

Ἐντεῦθεν ἔπεμψαν νυκτὸς Δημοκράτην
open air). Thence they-sent at-night Democrates (or)

Τεμενίτην, δόντες ἄνδρας, ἐπὶ τὰ
Temenos, giving (him a detachment of) men, to the

ὄρη, ἔνθα οἱ ἀποσκεδαννύμενοι
mountains, where — (those) having-straggled (from the camp)

ἔφασαν καθορᾶν τὰ πυρά· γὰρ οὗτος
said (that) they-saw the fires; for this (man)

ἐδόκει καὶ ἤδη πρότερον ἀληθεῦσαι πολλὰ
seemed also already before to-have-truly-reported many

τοιαῦτα, τε τὰ ὄντα ὡς ὄντα, καὶ
such (things), not-only the (things) being as being, but-also

τὰ μὴ ὄντα ὡς οὐκ ὄντα. Δὲ πορευθείς,
the (things) not being as not being. And having-gone-forth,

ἔφη μὲν οὐκ ἰδεῖν τὰ πυρά, δὲ συλλαβών
he-said (that he) indeed did not see the fires, but having-captured

ἄνδρα ἧκεν ἄγων, ἔχοντα Περ-
(a) man he-came bringing (him), (this man) having (a) Per-

σικόν τόξον καὶ φαρέτραν, καὶ σάγαριν
sian bow and quiver, and (a) kind-of-battle-axe

οἵανπερ αἱ Ἀμαζόνες ἔχουσιν. Ἐρωτώμενος δὲ
such-as the Amazons have. Being-asked —

ποδαπὸς εἴη, ἔφη μὲν εἶναι Πέρσης,
of-what-country he-might-be, he-said indeed (that) he-was (a) Persian,

δὲ πορεύεσθαι ἀπὸ τοῦ στρατεύματος Τηρι-
and (that) he-was-proceeding from the army of-Teri-

βάζου, ὅπως λάβοι ἐπιτήδεια· δ' οἱ ἠρώτων
bazus, that he-might-procure provisions; and — they-asked

αὐτόν, τε ὁπόσον τὸ στράτευμα εἴη. καὶ
him, not-only how-great the army might-be, but-also

ἐπὶ τίνι συνειλεγμένον. Δὲ ὁ εἶπεν, ὅτι
for what it-had-been-assembled. And — (he) said, that

Τηρίβαζος εἴη ἔχων τε τὴν δύναμιν ἑαυτοῦ
Teribazus might-be having not-only the force of-himself,

καὶ Χάλυβας καὶ
[that Teribazus had not only his own army,] but-also Chalybian and

Ταόχους μισθοφόρους· δὲ ἔφη αὐτὸν παρεσκευ-
Taochan mercenaries; and he-said (that) he was-pre-

άσθαι ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ τοῦ ὄρους, ἐν τοῖς στενοῖς,
pared at the crossing of-the mountain, in the narrow

ἥπερ μοναχῇ εἶη πορεία, ὡς ἐνταῦθα
(parts) by-which alone there-was (a) passage, that there

ἐπιθησόμενον τοῖς Ἕλλησιν. Ἔδοξε τοῖς
he-was-about-attacking the Greeks. It-seemed (good) to-the

στρατηγοῖς ἀκούσασι ταῦτα συναγαγεῖν τὸ
generals (after) having-heard this to-collect-together the

στράτευμα· καὶ εὐθὺς καταλιπόντες φύλακας,
army; and immediately leaving sentinels,

καὶ Σοφαίνετον Στυμφάλιον στρατηγὸν ἐπὶ
and Sophrænetus (the) Stymphalian (as) commander over

τοῖς μένουσι, ἐπορεύοντο, ἔχοντες
— (those) remaining (behind). they-proceed, having (a)

ἡγεμόνα τὸν ἁλόντα ἄνθρωπον. Ἐπειδὴ
guide (namely) the captured man. When

δὲ ὑπερέβαλλον τὰ ὄρη, οἱ πελτασταὶ προϊ-
however they-crossed-over the mountains, the targeteers going-

όντες καὶ κατιδόντες τὸ στρατόπεδον
before and having-perceived the camp (of the enemy)

οὐκ ἔμειναν τοὺς ὁπλίτας, ἀλλ' ἀνακρα-
they-did not wait-for the heavy-armed-men, but having-raised

γόντες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. Δ' οἱ βάρβαροι
a-shout they-ran against the camp. But the barbarians

ἀκούσαντες τὸν θόρυβον, οὐχ ὑπέμειναν, ἀλλ'
hearing the noise, did not remain, but

ἔφευγον· ὅμως δὲ καὶ ἀπέθανόν τινες τῶν βαρ-
fled; likewise — also they-killed some of-the bar-

βάρων· καὶ ἵπποι ἥλωσαν εἰς εἴκοσι, καὶ
barians; and horses were-taken about twenty (in number), and

ἡ σκηνὴ ἡ Τηριβάζου ἑάλω, καὶ ἐν αὐτῇ
the tent — (that) of-Teribazus was-taken, and in it

εἶναι ἀργυρόποδες κλῖναι καὶ ἐκπώ-
(there were found) to-be silver-footed couches and drinking-

ματα, καὶ οἱ φάσκοντες ἀρτοκόποι,
cups, and — (those) saying (that they were) bakers,

καὶ οἱ οἰνοχόοι. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ
and — (those) (saying that they were) cup bearers When indeed

οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν ὁπλιτῶν ἐπύθοντο ταῦτα,
the commanders of-the heavy-armed-men heard these

ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς ἀπιέναι τὴν ταχίστην·
(things), it-seemed to-them (best) to-depart | the fastest

ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον, μή τις
[as fast as possible] to — (their own) camp, lest any

ἐπίθεσις γένοιτο τοῖς καταλελειμμένοις. Καὶ
attack might-happen to — (those) having-been-left-behind. And

εὐθὺς ἀνακαλεσάμενοι τῇ σάλ-
immediately having-recalled (the men) by-the (sound of the) trum-

πιγγι ἀπῄεσαν, καὶ ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸ
pet they-departed, and they-arrived at — (their)

στρατόπεδον αὐθημερόν.
camp the-same-day.

## CHAPTER V.

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐδόκει εἶναι πορευτέον,
But on-the next-day it-was-thought to-be necessary-to-proceed,

ὅπῃ δύναιντο τάχιστα, πρὶν ἢ τὸ στράτευμα
in-what-way they-could most-speedily, before that the army

συλλεγῆναι πάλιν, καὶ καταλαβεῖν τὰ
(of the enemy) was-collected again, and to-have-seized the

στενά. Δ' εὐθὺς συσκευασάμενοι ἐπορεύ-
defiles. And immediately having-collected-their-baggage they-pro-

οντο διὰ πολλῆς χιόνος ἔχοντες πολλούς
ceeded through much snow having many

ἡγεμόνας· καὶ αὐθημερὸν ὑπερβαλόντες τὸ ἄκρον,
guides; and on-the-same-day having-passed-over the height,

ἐφ' ᾧ Τηρίβαζος ἔμελλεν ἐπιτίθεσθαι,
on which Teribazus intended to-attack (them-

κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν
they-encamped. Hence they-proceeded

τρεῖς σταθμοὺς ἐρήμους πεντεκαίδεκα
three days'-march (in a) desert (making) fifteen

παρασάγγας ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν Εὐφράτην, καὶ
parasangs to the river Euphrates, and

διέβαινον αὐτὸν βρεχόμενοι πρὸς τὸν ὀμφαλόν.
they-crossed-over it being-wet to the navel.

Δὲ ἐλέγοντο αἱ πηγαὶ αὐτοῦ οὐ εἶναι πρόσω.
And they-say the sources of-it not to-be far.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο διὰ πολλῆς χιόνος καὶ
Hence they-advanced through much snow and

πεδίου τρεῖς σταθμούς, πεντεκαίδεκα
(through a) plain three days'-march, (making) fifteen

παρασάγγας. Ὁ δὲ τρίτος ἐγένετο
parasangs. The — third (day's march) was

χαλεπός καὶ βορρᾶς ἄνεμος ἔπνει ἐναν-
difficult-and-severe and (the) north wind blew against-them-

τίος, παντάπασιν ἀποκαίων πάντα, καὶ
in-their-faces, entirely parching-up every-thing, and

πηγνὺς τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. Ἔνθα δή τις τῶν
benumbing the men. Then indeed some-one of-the

μάντεων εἶπε σφαγιάσασθαι τῷ ἀνέμῳ, καὶ
augurs said (that) it-was-to-be-sacrificed to-the wind, and

σφαγιάζεται· καὶ δὴ ἔδοξε περιφανῶς πᾶσι
it-was-sacrificed, and indeed it-seemed evidently to-all (that)

τὸ χαλεπὸν τοῦ πνεύματος λῆξαι. Δὲ τὸ βάθος
the violence of-the wind ceased. And the depth

τῆς χιόνος ἦν ὀργυιά· ὥστε καὶ πολλὰ τῶν
of-the snow was (a) fathom; so-that even many of-the

ὑποζυγίων καὶ τῶν ἀνδραπόδων ἀπώλετο, καὶ
baggage-cattle and of-the slaves perished, and

τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὡς τριάκοντα. Δὲ διεγένοντο
of-the soldiers about thirty. And they-passed

τὴν νύκτα καίοντες πῦρ· δ' ἦν πολλὰ ξύλα
the night burning fire; for there-was much wood

ἐν τῷ σταθμῷ· οἱ δὲ προσιόντες ὀψὲ
in the place-where-they-halted; — (those) indeed coming late

εἶχον οὐ ξύλα. Οἱ οὖν ἥκοντες πάλαι
had no wood. — (Those) therefore coming before

καὶ καίοντες τὸ πῦρ οὐ τοὺς ὀψίζοντας
and burning the fire (would) not (let) — (those) coming-late

προσίεσαν πρὸς τὸ πῦρ, εἰ μὴ μεταδοῖεν αὐτοῖς
approach to the fire, unless they-shared with-them

πυροὺς, ἤ τι ἄλλο, εἴτι ἔχοιεν βρωτόν.
wheat, or any-thing else, if-any-thing they-might-have eatable.

Ἔνθα δὴ μετεδίδοσαν ἀλλήλοις ὧν ἕκαστοι
So-then indeed they-shared with-one-another what each

εἶχον. Ἔνθα δὲ τὸ πῦρ ἐκαίετο, τῆς χιόνος
had. There-where indeed the fire was-burning, the snow

διατηκομένης, ἐγίγοντο μεγάλοι βόθροι ἕστε
(being) melted, there-became large pits until

ἐπὶ τὸ δάπεδον· οὗ δὴ παρῆν
to the ground; where indeed there-was-present (an opportunity)

μετρεῖν τὸ βάθος τῆς χιόνος.
to-measure the depth of-the snow.

Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἐπορεύοντο τὴν ὅλην ἐπιοῦσαν
Hence — they-proceeded (during) the entire following

ἡμέραν διὰ χιόνος, καὶ πολλοὶ τῶν ἀνθρώπων
day through snow, and many of-the men

ἐβουλιμίασαν. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν ὀπισθοφυλακῶν, καὶ
got-the-bulimy. But Xenophon commanding-the-rear, and

καταλαμβάνων τοὺς πίπτοντας τῶν ἀνθρώπων
finding — (those) fallen-down of-the men

ἠγνόει ὅ τι τὸ πάθος εἴη. Δὲ ἐπειδή τις
knew-not what the disease might-be. But when some-one

τῶν ἐμπείρων εἶπε αὐτῷ ὅτι σαφῶς
of — (those) acquainted-with (it) told him that evidently

βουλιμιῶσι, κἂν φάγωσί τι, ἀναστήσονται.
they-had-the-bulimy, and-if they-eat something, they-would-get-up,

περιιὼν περὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια, εἴ πού ὁρῴη τι
going-about among the baggage-cattle, if any-where he-saw any thing

βρωτὸν ἢ ποτόν, διεδίδου, καὶ διδόντας
eatable or drinkable, he-distributed (it), and giving (it)

διέπεμπε τοῖς βουλιμιῶσι τοὺς δυναμένους
he sent-about to — (those) having-the-bulimy — (those) being-able

παρατρέχειν. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐμφάγοιεν τι,
to-run-about. When — they-might-have-eaten any-thing,

ἀνίσταντο καὶ ἐπορεύοντο. Δὲ πορευομένων
they-stood-up and proceeded-forth. But proceeding (on

Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἀμφὶ κνέφας ἀφικνεῖται
their march) Cheirisophus indeed about dark arrives

πρὸς κώμην, καὶ καταλαμβάνει πρὸς τῇ κρήνῃ
at (a) village, and finds at the spring

ἔμπροσθεν τοῦ ἐρύματος γυναῖκας καὶ κόρας ἐκ
in-front of-the rampart women and girls from

τῆς κώμης ὑδροφορούσας. Αὗται ἠρώτων αὐτοὺς
the village carrying-water. These asked them

τίνες εἶεν. Δ' ὁ ἑρμηνεὺς εἶπε Περσιστί,
who they-might-be. And the interpreter said in (the) Persian-language,

ὅτι πορεύονται παρὰ βασιλέως πρὸς τὸν
that they-were-proceeding from (the) king to the

σατράπην. Αἱ δὲ ἀπεκρίναντο, ὅτι εἴη οὐκ
satrap. — (they) — replied, that he-was not

ἐνταῦθα, ἀλλ' ἀπέχει ὅσον παρασάγγην.
there, but was-distant as-much-as (a) parasang.

Δ' οἱ ἐπεὶ ἦν ὀψὲ συνεισέρχονται σὺν ταῖς
But — (they) because it-was late enter-together with the

ὑδροφόροις εἰς τὸ ἔρυμα πρὸς τὸν κωμάρχην.
water-carriers into the fort to the head-man-of-the-village.

Ἐνταῦθα οὖν μὲν Χειρίσοφος καὶ ὅσοι τοῦ
There therefore indeed Cheirisophus and as-many of-the

στρατεύματος ἐδυνήθησαν ἐστρατοπεδεύ-
army (as) were-enabled (to come up) en-

σαντο· δ' οἱ τῶν ἄλλων στρατιωτῶν
camped; and — (those) of-the other soldiers that-were

μὴ δυνάμενοι διατελέσαι τὴν ὁδὸν ἐνυκτέρευσαν
not able to-have-completed the route passed-the-night

ἄσιτοι καὶ ἄνευ πυρός· καὶ ἐνταῦθά τινες τῶν
fasting and without fire; and there some of-the

στρατιωτῶν ἀπώλοντο. Δὲ τινὲς τῶν πολεμίων
soldiers perished. And some of-the enemy

συνειλεγμένοι ἐφείποντο, καὶ ἥρπαζον τὰ
being-collected-together pursued (the rear), and seized —

τῶν ὑποζυγίων μὴ δυνάμενα, καὶ
(those) of-the baggage-cattle not being-able (to proceed), and

ἐμάχοντο ἀλλήλοις περὶ αὐτῶν. Δὲ καὶ
fought with-one-another for them. And also

ἐλείποντο τῶν στρατιωτῶν τε οἱ διεφθαρ-
there-were-left-behind of-the soldiers both — (those) having-

μένοι τοὺς ὀφθαλμούς ὑπὸ τῆς χιόνος,
been-ruined (as respects) the eyes by the snow,

τε οἱ ἀποσεσηπότες τοὺς δακτύλους
and — (those) having-been-mortified (as respects) the fingers

τῶν ποδῶν ὑπὸ τοῦ ψύχους.
of-the feet by the cold [and those who had their toes

Δὲ μὲν ἦν ἐπικούρημα τοῖς
mortified by the cold]. But indeed it-was (a) defence to-the

ὀφθαλμοῖς τῆς χιόνος, εἴ τις πορεύοιτο
eyes from-the snow, if any-one (when) he-proceeded (on)

ἔχων τι μέλαν πρὸ τῶν ὀφθαλμῶν,
the march) (*having*) (had) something black before the eyes,

δὲ τῶν πωδῶν, εἴ τις κινοῖτο, καὶ
and (a defence) of-the feet, if any-one moved-about, and

μηδέποτε ἔχοι ἡσυχίαν, καὶ εἰ τὴν νύκτα
never might-have rest, and if at — night

ὑπολύοιτο. Δὲ ὅσοι ἐκοιμῶντο ὑποδε-
they-loosened-their-sandals. But (as many) as slept having-their-

δεμένοι, οἱ ἱμάντες εἰςεδύοντο εἰς τοὺς πόδας
sandals-on, the straps penetrated into the feet

καὶ τὰ ὑποδήματα περιεπήγνυντο·
and the soles (of the sandals) were-frozen-about (the feet);

γὰρ καὶ, ἐπειδὴ τὰ ἀρχαῖα ὑποδήματα ἐπήλιπε,
for indeed, when — (their) old sandals failed

πεποιημένοι ἦσαν καρβάτινας ἐκ τῶν
(them), they-had-made (for themselves) rough-sandals from the

νεοδάρτων βοῶν. Διὰ τὰς ἀνάγκας οὖν
raw-hides of-oxen. Through — (such) necessity therefore

τοιαύτας τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν ὑπελείποντο· καὶ
as-these some of-the soldiers were-left-behind; and

ἰδόντες τι μέλαν χωρίον, διὰ τὸ ἐκλελοιπέναι
seeing a black place, [on-account-of the to-have disappeared

αὐτόθι τὴν χιόνα,
there (as respects) the snow, [on account of the disappear-

εἰκαζον τετηκέναι· καὶ
ance there of the snow,] they-conjectured (that it) had-melted; and

ἐτετήκει διὰ τινὰ κρήνην, ἣ ἦν ἀτμίζουσα
it-had-melted through some spring, which was smoking

πλησίον ἐν νάπῃ. Ἐνταῦθ' ἐκτραπόμενοι
near in (a) woody-vale. There turning-aside

ἐκάθηντο, καὶ ἔφασαν οὐ πορεύεσθαι.
they-sat-down, and said (that they would) not proceed.

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔχων ὀπισθοφύλακας,
— But Xenophon having (the command of) rear-guard,

ὡς ᾔσθετο ἐδεῖτο αὐτῶν πάσῃ τέχνῃ καὶ
as he-perceived (this) begged of-them by-every art and

μηχανῇ μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι, λέγων, ὅτι πολλοὶ
means not to-be-left-behind, saying, that many (of the)

πολέμιοι συνειλεγμένοι ἕπονται, καὶ τελευτῶν
enemy being-assembled-together pursued (them), and finishing

ἐχαλέπαινε. Οἱ δὲ ἐκέλευον σχάζειν
he-grew-angry. — (They) indeed requested (him) to-kill

γαρ ἄν οὐ δύνασθαι πορευθῆναι.
(them); for (that) ¹they — ²were not ³able to-proceed.

Ἐνταῦθα ἔδοξε εἶναι κράτιστον φοβῆσαι
Then it-seemed (to him) to-be the-best to-have-scared

τοὺς ἑπομένους πολεμίους, εἴ τις δύναιτο, μὴ
the pursuing enemy, if any-thing could-be-done, lest

ἐπιπέσοιεν τοῖς κάμνουσι. Καὶ μὴν ἦν
they should-fall-upon — (those) being-exhausted. And indeed it-was

ἤδη σκότος, οἱ δὲ προσῄεσαν πολλῷ θορύβῳ
now dark, — they indeed advanced with-much noise

διαφερόμενοι ἀμφὶ ὧν εἶχον. Ἔνθα δὴ
disputing about what they-had (of the booty). Then truly

μὲν οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ἅτε ὑγιαίνον-
indeed — (those of the) rear-guard as being-in-good-condition-

τες, ἐξαναστάντες ἔδραμον εἰς τοὺς πολεμίους·
and-able, starting-up ran to the enemy;

δ' οἱ κάμνοντες, ἀνακραγόντες ὅσον μέγιστον
and the exhausted (men), having-shouted as-much as-the-greatest

ἠδύναντο, ἔκρουσαν
they-could, [having shouted as loud as they possibly could,] struck

τὰς ἀσπίδας πρὸς τὰ δόρατα. Οἱ πολέμιοι δὲ
the shields against the spears. The enemy indeed

δείσαντες, ἦκαν ἑαυτοὺς κατὰ τῆς χιόνος
having-become-alarmed, threw themselves among the snow

εἰς τὴν νάπην, καὶ οὐδεὶς ἔτι ἐφθέγξατο
into the woody-vale, and no-one (of them) afterwards made-a-noise

οὐδαμοῦ.
any-where.

Καὶ Ξενοφῶν μὲν καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, εἰπόντες
And Xenophon indeed and — (those) with him, telling

τοῖς ἀσθενοῦσιν, ὅτι τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ τινες
— (those) being-weak-and-helpless, that on-the next-day some

ἥξουσί ἐπ' αὐτούς, πορευόμενοι,
would-come to them, (then) proceeding (on their march, but)

πρὶν διελθεῖν τέτταρα στάδια ἐντυγχάνουσιν
before (that) they-had-gone-over four stadia they-found

ἐν τῇ ὁδῷ τοῖς στρατιῶταις ἀναπαυομένοις
on the road — soldiers resting

ἐπὶ τῆς χιόνος ἐγκεκαλυμμένοις, καὶ οὐδὲ
on the snow (and) having-been-covered (by it), and neither

οὐδεμία φυλακὴ καθειστήκει, καὶ
had (no) (any) guard been-placed-over (them), and

ἀνίστασαν αὐτούς. Δ' οἱ ἔλεγον ὅτι οἱ
they-roused them up. And — they-said that — (those)

ἔμπροσθεν οὐχ ὑποχωροῖεν. Ὁ δὲ
before ¹did not ¹make-progress. — (Xenophon) indeed

παριών, καὶ παραπέμπων τοὺς ἰσχυροτάτους τῶν
going-past, and sending-on the strongest of-the

πελταστῶν, ἐκέλευε σκέψασθαι τί εἴη
targeteers, ordered (them) to-see-and-ascertain what might-be

τὸ κωλῦον. Οἱ δὲ ἀπήγγελλον, ὅτι τὸ
the hindrance. — ¹They indeed ¹announced that the

ὅλον στράτευμα οὕτως ἀναπαύοιτο.
whole army might-¹be thus (in a manner) ¹taking-rest.

Καὶ οἱ ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα ἐνταῦθα ηὐλίσθησαν
And — (those) with Xenophon then took-up-their-quarters

αὐτοῦ ἄνευ πυρὸς καὶ ἄδειπνοι, καταστησάμενοι
there without fire and supperless, stationing

φυλακὰς οἵας ἐδύναντο. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦν
(such) guards as they-were-able. When indeed it-was

πρὸς ἡμέραν, ὁ μὲν Ξενοφῶν πέμψας τοὺς νεω-
towards day, — — Xenophon having-sent the young-

τάτους πρὸς τοὺς ἀσθενοῦντας
est (of his men) to — (those) being-weak-and-sick

ἐκέλευεν ἀναστήσαντας ἀναγκάζειν
ordered (them) having-¹roused (them) ¹up to-compel (them)

προϊέναι. Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ Χειρίσοφος πέμπει
to-go-forward. At — this (time) Cheirisophus sends

τῶν ἐκ τῆς κώμης σκεψομένους πῶς οἱ
¹some) of — (those) from the village | about-seeing how the

τελευταῖοι ἔχοιεν. Δ'
last might-have (themselves) [to see how the rear fared]. But

οἱ ἄσμενοι ἰδόντες
— (the young men sent by Xenophon) rejoiced (at) seeing (them)

παρέδοσαν τούτοις ἀσθενοῦντας κομίζειν ἐπι
gave-over to-these (the) weak-and-sick to-conduct to

τὸ στρατόπεδον, αὐτοὶ δ' ἐπορεύοντο, καὶ
the camp, they-themselves — proceeded-forward, and

πρὶν διεληλυθέναι εἴκοσι στάδια ἦσαν πρός
before (that) they-had-completed twenty stadia they-were at

τῇ κώμῃ ἔνθα Χειρίσοφος ηὐλίζετο. Ἐπεὶ δε
the village where Cheirisophus was-quartered. When indeed

συνεγένοντο ἀλλήλοις, ἔδοξε εἶναι ἀσφαλές
they-got-together among-one-another, it-seemed to-be safe

σκηνοῦν τὰς τάξεις κατὰ τὰς κώμας. Καὶ
to-quarter the troops up-and-down the villages. And

Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἔμενεν αὐτοῦ, οἱ ἄλλοι
Cheirisophus indeed remained there (where he was), the others

δὲ διαλαχόντες κώμας ἃς ἑώρων, ἐπορεύ-
indeed having-drawn-lots (for the) villages which they-saw, pro-

οντο, ἕκαστοι ἔχοντες τοὺς ἑαυτῶν.
ceeded, | each having the (men) of-themselves [each having their respective command].

Ἔνθα δὴ Πολυβώτης Ἀθηναῖος λοχαγὸς
Here indeed Polybotes (an) Athenian captain

ἐκέλευσεν ἑαυτὸν ἀφιέναι· καὶ
requested (that) they-would-'allow him 'to-go-away; | and

λαβὼν τοὺς εὐζώνους,
taking the well-girt, [and taking with him the most active

θέων ἐπὶ τὴν κώμην, ἣν Ξενοφῶν
of his men], running to the village, which Xenophon

εἰλήχει, καταλαμβάνει πάντας τοὺς κωμή-
obtained-by-lot, he-surprises all the inhabitants-of-

τας ἔνδον, καὶ τὸν κωμάρχην, καὶ ἑπτακαίδεκα
the-village at-home, and the village-chief, and seventeen

πώλους τρεφομένους εἰς δασμὸν βασιλεῖ, καὶ
colts bred for (a) tribute 'to (the) king, and

τὴν θυγατέρα τοῦ κωμάρχου γεγαμημένην
the daughter of-the village-chief married (the)

ἐνάτην ἡμέραν· δ' ὁ ἀνὴρ αὐτῆς ᾤχετο
ninth day; and the husband of-her had-gone-ou'

θηράσων λαγῶς, καὶ οὐχ ἥλω ἐν ταῖς κώμαις.
hunting hares, and 'was not 'found in the villages

Αἱ δ' οἰκίαι ἦσαν κατάγειοι, τὸ μὲν στόμα
The — houses were under-ground, the — mouth (o'

ὥσπερ φρέατος, δὲ κάτω εὐρεῖαν.
entrance was) like (that) ¹of (a) ²well, but below spacious.

Δὲ αἱ εἴσοδοι μὲν τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις ὀρυκταί,
And the entrances — for-the cattle (were) dug,

δὲ οἱ ἄνθρωποι κατέβαινον ἐπὶ κλίμακος. ³Εν δὲ
but the men descended on ladders. In —

ταῖς οἰκίαις ἦσαν αἶγες, οἶες, βόες, ὄρνιθες,
the houses there-were goats, sheep, cows, fowls,

καὶ τὰ ἔκγονα τούτων· δὲ πάντα τὰ κτήνη
and the young of-these; and all the cattle

ἐτρέφοντο χιλῷ ἔνδον. Δὲ καὶ ἦσαν
were-nourished on-hay within (the houses). And also there-was

πυροί, καὶ κριθαί, καὶ ὄσπρια, καὶ κρίθινος οἶνος
wheat, and barley, and legumes, and barley wine

ἐν κρατῆρσι· δὲ καὶ αἱ αὐταὶ κριθαὶ ἐνῆσαν
in large-bowls; and also — (these) same barley-grains floated

ἰσοχειλεῖς, καὶ κάλαμοι ἐνέκειντο,
even-with-the-brims (of the vessels), and reeds lay-in (them),

οἱ μὲν μείζους, δὲ οἱ ἐλάττους, οὐκ
— (some) indeed larger, but — (others) smaller, (and) not

ἔχοντες γόνατα· δ' ἔδει ὁπότε τις διψῴη
having joints; and it-was-proper when any-one might-be-thirsty

λαβόντα τούτους εἰς τὸ στόμα μύζειν. Καὶ
having-taken these into — (his) mouth to-suck. And

ἦν πάνυ ἄκρατος, εἰ μή τις ἐπιχέοι
it-was very strong, | if not [unless] some-one poured-in

ὕδωρ· καὶ τὸ κπόμα ἦν πάνυ ἡδὺ συμμα-
water; and the drink was very pleasant to-one-accus-

θόντι.
tomed-to (it).

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐποιήσατο τὸν ἄρχοντα τῆς
— And Xenophon made-for-himself the ruler of —

ταύτης κώμης σύνδειπνον, καὶ ἐκέλευε αὐτὸν
this village his-guest-at-supper, and he-exhorted him

θαῤῥεῖν, λέγων, ὅτι οὔτε στερήσοιτο
to-be-of-good-courage, saying, that he-¹should not ²be-deprived

τῶν τέκνων, τε ἀπίασιν ἀντεμπλήσαντες τὴν
of — (his) children, and (as) they-depart they-would-be-about-filling the

οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ τῶν ἐπιτηδείων, ἣν φαίνηται
house of-himself with — provisions, if he-show-himself (as)

ἐξηγησάμενος τι ἀγαθὸν τῷ στρατεύματι,
having-been-the-leader (in) some good for-the army,

ἔστ' ἂν γέγωνται ἐν ἄλλῳ ἔθνει. Ὁ δὲ
until they might get with another tribe. — And

ταῦτα ὑπισχνεῖτο, καὶ, φιλοφρονούμενος, ἔφρασεν
this he-promised, and, being-kindly-disposed, he-told

οἶνον ἔνθα ἦν κατωρυγμένος. Οὖν
(them respecting) wine where it-was buried. Therefore

μὲν ταύτην τὴν νύκτα, πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται
indeed this — (same) night, all the soldiers

διασκηνήσαντες οὕτως, ἐκοιμήθησαν ἐν πᾶσιν
having-been-quartered-dispersedly thus, were-made-to-rest in great

ἀφθόνοις, ἔχοντες τὸν κωμάρχην ἐν φυλακῇ, καὶ
abundance, having the village-chief under guard, and

τὰ τέκνα αὐτοῦ ὁμοῦ ἐν ὀφθαλμοῖς. Δὲ τῇ
the children of-him likewise under eye. And on-the

ἐπιούσῃ ἡμέρᾳ Ξενοφῶν λαβὼν τὸν κωμάρχην
next day Xenophon taking the village-chief

ἐπορεύετο πρὸς Χειρίσοφον· ὅπου δὲ παρίοι
proceeded to Cheirisophus; wherever indeed he-might-pass-by

κώμην, ἐτρέπετο πρὸς τοὺς ἐν ταῖς κώμαις,
(a) village, he-turned-aside to — (those) in the villages,

καὶ πανταχοῦ κατελάμβανε εὐωχουμένους καὶ
and everywhere he-found (them) feasting and

εὐθυμουμένους, καὶ οὐδαμόθεν ἀφίεσαν
enjoying-themselves, and nowhere did-they-'allow (them) 'to-

πρὶν παραθεῖναι ἄριστον αὐτοῖς.
depart before (that) they-had-'placed dinner 'before them

Δ' ἦν οὐχ ὅπου οὐ παρετίθεσαν ἐπὶ
And there-was not anywhere (where) they-'did not 'place on

τὴν αὐτὴν τράπεζαν κρέα ἄρνεια, ἐρίφεια,
the same table flesh (of) lamb, kid

χοίρεια, μόσχεια, ὀρνίθεια, σὺν πολλοῖς ἄρτοις,
pork, veal, fowl, with much bread,

τοῖς μὲν πυρίνοις, δὲ τοῖς κριθίνοις.
— (that) namely (of) wheat, and — (that of) barley.

Ὁπότε δὲ τις φιλοφρονούμενος βούλοιτο προπιεῖν
Whenever — any-one being-friendly-disposed | wished to-drink-before

τῷ εἵλκεν ἐπὶ τὸν κρατῆρα,
to-the [wished to drink to another] he-drew (him) to the large-bowl,

ἔνθεν ἔδει ἐπικύψαντα ῥοφοῦντα πίνειν
there it-was-necessary having-stooped-down sucking to-drink

ὥσπερ βοῦν. Καὶ ἐδίδοσαν τῷ κωμάρχῃ λαμ-
like (an) ox. And they-granted to-the village-chief to-

βάνειν ὅ τι βούλοιτο. Ὁ δὲ ἐδέχετο οὐδὲν
take whatever he-might-wish. Who however accepted nothing

ἄλλο μέν, ὅπου δὲ ἴδοι τινα τῶν συγ-
else indeed, where however he-may-have-seen any of — (his) re-

γενῶν ἀεὶ ἐλάμβανεν πρὸς ἑαυτόν.
lations he always took (them) with him.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθον πρὸς Χειρίσοφον, κατε-
When however they-came to Cheirisophus, they-

λάμβανον κἀκείνους σκηνοῦντας,
found also-these (his men feasting) being-in-their-quarters,

ἐστεφανωμένους στεφάνοις τοῦ ξηροῦ χιλοῦ,
crowned with-crowns (made) of — dry grass,

καὶ Ἀρμενίους παῖδας σὺν ταῖς βαρβαρικαῖς
and Armenian boys — (in) — (their) barbarian

στολαῖς διακονοῦντας. Δὲ ἐδείκνυσαν τοῖς παισὶν
dresses waiting-on-them. And they-showed the boys

ὥσπερ ἐνεοῖς ὅ τι δέοι ποιεῖν.
(by signs) as-if (they were) deaf-and-dumb what they-ought to-do.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν ἐφιλοφρονήσαντ
When — Cheirisophus and Xenophon had-saluted

ἀλλήλους, κοινῇ δὴ ἀνηρώτων τὸν κωμάρχην,
one-another, in-common — they-questioned the village-chief,

διὰ τοῦ ἑρμηνέως περσίζοντος, τίς ἡ χώρα
through the interpreter speaking-the-Persian-language, what the country

εἴη. Δ' ὁ ἔλεγεν, ὅτι Ἀρμενία. Καὶ
might-be. And who said, that (it was) Armenia. And

πάλιν ἠρώτων τίνι οἱ ἵπποι τρέφοιντο. Δ'
again asking for-whom the horses might-be-bred And

ὁ ἔλεγεν, ὅτι δασμός βασιλεῖ· ἔφη δε,
— (he) said, as (a) tribute to (the) king, he-said also, (that)

τὴν πλησίον χώραν εἶναι Χάλυβας, καὶ
the neighbouring country was (that of the) Chalybes, and

ἔφραζεν τὴν ὁδὸν ᾗ εἴη.
mentioned the road in-what it-might-be [and he told them the

Καὶ τότε μὲν Ξενοφῶν ᾤχετο
direction of the road]. And then indeed Xenophon departed

ἄγων αὐτὸν πρὸς τοὺς οἰκέτας ἑαυτοῦ,
conducting him to the family of-himself, [to his own family,]

καὶ δίδωσι ἵππον ὃν εἱλήφει παλαι-
and he-gave (the) horse which he-had-taken (and which was) rather-

τερον τῷ κωμάρχῃ ἀναθρέψαντι καταθῦσαι,
old to-the village-chief (he) having-fattened (it) to-offer-it-in-sacrifice,

ὅτι ἤκουσεν αὐτὸν εἶναι ἱερὸν τοῦ Ἡλίου,
because he-had-heard (that) it was (a) victim of-the Sun,

δεδιὼς μὴ ἀποθάνῃ· γὰρ ἐκεκάκωτο ὑπὸ τῆς
having-feared lest it-might-die; for it-had-been-injured by the

πορείας· αὐτὸς δὲ λαμβάνει τῶν πώλων.
journey; he indeed himself takes (some) of-the colts,

καὶ ἑκάστῳ τῶν ἄλλων στρατηγῶν καὶ λοχαγῶν
and to-each of-the other generals and captains

ἔδωκε πῶλον. Οἱ δ' ἵπποι ταύτῃ ἦσαν
he-gave (a) colt. The — horses in-this (country) were

μείονες μὲν τῶν Περσικῶν, δὲ πολύ
smaller indeed (than those) of-the Persians, but much

θυμοειδέστεροι. Καὶ δὴ ἐνταῦθα ὁ κωμάρχης
more-spirited. And indeed here the village-chief

διδάσκει περιειλεῖν σακία περὶ τοὺς πόδας
instructs (them) to-tie small-bags about the feet

τῶν ἵππων καὶ τῶν ὑποζυγίων· ὅταν ἄγωσι
of-the horses and of-the cattle; when they-drove (them)

διὰ τῆς χιόνος· γὰρ ἄνευ τῶν σακίων κατεδύοντο
through the snow; for without the little-bags they-sunk

μέχρι τῆς γαστρός.
up-to the belly.

## CHAPTER VI.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ὀγδόη ἡμέρα ἦν, μὲν παραδίδωσι
When — (the) eighth day was, he indeed delivered-over

τὸν ἡγεμόνα Χειρισόφῳ, δὲ καταλείπει τοὺς
the guide to-Cheirisophus, but he-left the

οἰκέτας τῷ κωμάρχῃ, πλὴν τοῦ
members-(his) family to-the chief-of-the-village, except — (his)

υἱοῦ τοῦ ἄρτι ἡβάσκοντος· δὲ τοῦτον
son — (who was) just coming-to-age; and him

παραδίδωσι Ἐπισθένει Ἀμφιπολίτῃ φυλάττειν
he-gave-over to-Episthenes (of) Amphipolis to-guard

ὅπως, εἰ ἡγήσοιτο καλῶς. ἀπίοι
that, if (the father) should-guide (them) fairly, he-might-return

ἔχων καὶ τοῦτον. Καὶ εἰσεφόρησαν εἰς τὴν
(home) having also this-one. And they-brought to the

οἰκίαν αὐτοῦ ὡς πλεῖστα ἐδύναντο, καὶ ἀνα-
house of-him as many-things (as) they-could, and having

ζεύξαντες ἐπορεύοντο. Δ' ὁ κωμάρ-
broken-up-their-camp they-proceeded-on-their-march. And the village-

χης λελυμένος ἡγεῖτο αὐτοῖς διὰ χιόνος·
chief unbound guided them through (the) snow;

καὶ ἤδη τε ἦν ἐν τῷ τρίτῳ σταθμῷ, καὶ
and now also it-was in the third day's-march, and

Χειρίσοφος ἐχαλεπάνθη αὐτῷ ὅτι οὐκ
Cheirisophus became-angry with-him that he-did no-

ἦγεν εἰς κώμας. Δ' ὁ ἔλεγεν ὅτι εἶεν οὐκ
led (them) to villages. But who said that there-was not

ἐν τῷ τούτῳ τόπῳ. Ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος ἔπαισε
(any) in — this region. — And Cheirisophus struck

αὐτὸν μέν, δ' οὐκ ἔλησε. Δ' ἐκ τούτου
him indeed, but did not bind (him). | And from this

ἐκεῖνος ἀποδρὰς ᾤχετο τῆς νυκτός,
he having-fled went-away (in) the night, [and on this ac-

καταλιπὼν τὸν υἱόν. Τόδε
count he ran off at night,] leaving-behind — (his) son. This

δὴ ἡ κάκωσις καὶ ἀμέλεια τοῦ
truly-indeed, (namely) the ill-treatment and neglect of-the

ἡγεμόνος, ἐγένετο μόνον διάφορον Χειρι-
guide, was (the) only dissension (between) Cheiri-

σόφῳ καὶ Ξενοφῶντι ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ. Δὲ Ἐπισ-
sophus and Xenophon on the route. But Epis-

θένης τε ἡράσθη τοῦ παιδός, καὶ κομίσας
thenes not-only became-fond of-the boy, but-also having-taken

οἴκαδε ἐχρῆτο πιστοτάτῳ.
(him) home | made-use-of (him as) the-most-faithful [found him very

Μετὰ τοῦτο ἐπορεύθησαν ἑπτὰ
much attached to himself]. After this they-proceeded seven

σταθμούς, ἀνὰ πέντε παρασάγγας τῆς ἡμέρας,
days'-march, always five parasangs the day,

παρὰ τὸν ποταμὸν Φᾶσιν, εὖρος πλε-
to the river Phasis, (the) breadth (of which is) equal-

θριαῖον. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν δύο σταθμούς
to-a-plethrum. Hence they-proceeded two days'-march

δέκα παρασάγγας· ἐπὶ δὲ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ
(making) ten parasangs; at — the pass-over

εἰς τὸ πεδίον Χάλυβες καὶ Ταόχοι.
(the mountains) on-to the plain (the) Chalybes and (the) Taochi,

καὶ Φασιανοὶ ἀπήντησαν αὐτοῖς. Χειρί-
and (the) Phasians had-come-to-oppose them. Cheiri-

σοφος δ', ἐπεὶ κατεῖδε τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπὶ τῇ
sophus indeed when he-saw the enemy on the

ὑπερβολῇ, ἐπαύσατο πορευόμενος, ἀπέχων
pass, ceased proceeding (on the march), being-distant

εἰς τριάκοντα σταδίους, ἵνα μὴ πλησιάσῃ
about thirty stadia, that he-might not approach

τοῖς πολεμίοις ἄγων κατὰ κέρας· δὲ
the enemy | leading by (a) wing; [in column,] and

καὶ παρήγγειλε τοῖς ἄλλοις παράγειν τοὺς
also announced to-the other (officers) to-bring-up the

λόχους, ὅπως τὸ στράτευμα γένοιτο ἐπὶ φάλαγγος.
companies, so-that the army might-get into line.

Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ἦλθον, συνεκάλεσε
And when the rear-guard came, he-called-together

τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγούς, καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε·
the generals and captains, and spoke thus:

Οἱ μέν πολέμιοι ὡς ὁρᾶτε κατέχουσι τὰς ὑπερβολὰς
The — enemy as you-see possess the passes

τοῦ ὄρους, δὲ ὥρα βουλεύεσθαι, ὅπως
of-the mountain, (it is) indeed time to-consider, how

ἀγωνιούμεθα ὡς κάλιστα. Δοκεῖ
we-may-encounter (them) to-the-best-advantage-possible. It-seems

οὖν μὲν ἐμοὶ παραγγεῖλαι μὲν τοῖς στρατιώταις
therefore indeed to-me to-direct — the soldiers

ἀριστοποιεῖσθαι, δὲ ἡμᾶς βουλεύεσθαι, εἴτε
to-take-their-dinners, and (that) we should-consult, whether

δοκεῖ ὑπερβάλλειν τὸ ὄρος εἴτε τήμερον εἴτε
it-seems (best) to-cross-over the mountain either to-day or

αὔριον. Ἐμοὶ δὲ γε, ἔφη ὁ Κλεάνωρ, δοκεῖ,
to-morrow. To-me indeed at-least, said — Cleanor, it-seems

ἐπὰν ἀριστήσωμεν τάχιστα ἐξο-
(best), after we-have-dined as-speedily-as-possible (and) having-

πλισαμενους ὡς τάχιστα ἰέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας.
armed-ourselves as speedily-as-possible to go against the men.

Γὰρ εἰ διατρίψομεν τὴν τήμερον ἡμέραν, τε
For if we-shall-waste the present day, not-only

οἱ πολέμιοι νῦν ὁρῶντες ἡμᾶς ἔσονται θαῤῥα-
the enemy now seeing us will-be more

λεώτεροι, καὶ ἄλλους εἰκός, τούτῶν θαῤῥ-
old, and (that) others as-is-natural, these becoming-confi-

-ούντων, προσγενέσθαι πλείους.
dent-and-bold, will-join (them in) greater (numbers).

Μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ δὲ
After this-one Xenophon said: I indeed

γιγνώσκω οὕτω· εἰ μὲν ἐστὶ ἀνάγκη μάχεσθαι,
think thus: if indeed it-is necessary to-fight,

τοῦτο δεῖ παρασκευσάσθαι ὅπως ὡς μαχούμεθα
this ought to-be-arranged how — we-may-fight

κράτιστα. Εἰ δὲ βουλόμεθα ὑπερβάλλειν
to-the-best (advantage). If indeed we-wish to-cross-over

ὡς ῥᾷστα, τοῦτο δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι
(the mountain) as easily-as-possible, this seems to-me to-be

σκεπτέον ὅπως λάβωμεν μὲν ἐλάχιστα
necessary-to-be-considered how-that we-may-receive — the-fewest

τραύματα, δὲ ὡς ἀποβάλωμεν ἐλάχιστα σώματα
wounds and so-that we-may-lose the-fewest (*bodies*)

ἀνδρῶν. Οὖν μὲν τὸ ὄρος ἐστὶ τὸ
(*of-*) men. Therefore indeed the mountain is — (as far as)

ὁρώμενον πλέον ἢ ἐφ' ἑξήκοντα στάδια,
is-to-be-seen more than (*to*) sixty stadia (in length),

δ' ἄνδρες φανεροί εἰσιν φυλάττοντες ἡμᾶς
but (the) men manifestly are watching us

οὐδαμοῦ, ἀλλ' ἢ κατ' αὐτὴν τὴν ὁδόν· οὖν
nowhere, except along this-same — road; therefore (it is)

πολὺ κρεῖττον, καὶ πειρᾶσθαι κλέψαι λαθόντας
much better, both to-endeavour to-seize, being-concealed,

τι τοῦ ἐρήμου ὄρους, καὶ εἰ δυναίμεθα
some (part) of-the desert mountain, and if we-can

ἁρπάσαι φθάσαντας, μᾶλλον
to take-forcible-possession, having-occupied (it before the enemy), rather

ἢ μάχεσθαι πρὸς ἰσχυρὰ χωρία καὶ ἄνδρας
(than) to-fight against strong places and men

παρεσκευασμένους. Γὰρ πολὺ ῥᾷον
prepared (to resist) For (it is) much easier

ἰέναι ὄρθιον ἀμαχὶ, ἢν ὁμαλες
to-go (up a) steep (place) without-fighting, than (along) level (road)

πολεμίων ὄντων ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν· καὶ νύκτωρ
(the) enemy being here and there; and at-night

τις ἂν ὁρῴη τὰ πρὸ ποδῶν μᾶλλον
any-one may see — (things) before (his) feet more

ἀμαχὶ, ἢ μεθ' ἡμέραν
(distinctly when) not-fighting, than in (the) day (time) (while)

μαχόμενος· καὶ ἡ τραχεῖα εὐμενεστέρα τοῖς
fighting; and the rough (road is) kinder to-the

ποσὶν ἰοῦσιν ἀμαχὶ, ἢ ἡ ὁμαλὴ
feet to-those-marching without-fighting, than the smooth (one)

βαλλομένοις τὰς κεφαλάς. Καὶ οἱ
to-those-being-struck on-the head (with stones). And it-does not

δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι ἀδύνατον κλέψαι ἐξὸν
seem to-me to-be impossible to-steal (a march) it-being-allowed

μὲν ἰέναι νυκτὸς, ὡς μὴ ὁρᾶσθαι, δὲ
(us) indeed to-go by-night, so-as not to-be-seen, it-being also

ἐξὸν ἀπελθεῖν τοσοῦτον ὡς μὴ παρέχειν
allowed (us) to-go-away so-far as not to-suffer (a)

αἴσθησιν. Δὲ
being-heard [as to allow no opportunity of being heard or perceived]. And

μοι ἂν δοκοῦμεν, προσποιούμενοι προσβάλλειν
to-me — we-seem-likely, pretending to-attack

ταύτῃ ἂν χρῆσθαι τῷ ἄλλῳ ὄρει
in-this (manner) — to-have the rest (of the) mountain

ἐρημοτέρῳ· γὰρ οἱ πολέμιοι μᾶλλον μένοιεν
more-deserted; for the enemy would rather remain

αὐτοῦ ἀθρόοι. Ἀτὰρ ἐγὼ συμβάλλομαι
here collected-together. But-why should I conjecture

τί περὶ κλοπῆς; γὰρ ἔγωγε, ὦ Χειρίσοφε,
any-thing about stealing? for I-at-least, O Cheirisophus,

ἀκούω ὑμᾶς, τοὺς Λακεδαιμονίους, ὅσοι
hear, (that) you, the Lacedæmonians, as-many (of you as)

ἐστὲ ὁμοίων, εὐθὺς ἐκ
are (of (the class of) equals (or higher order), immediately from

παίδων μελετᾶν κλέπτειν, καὶ εἶναι οὐκ
boys (commence) to-practice to-steal, and (that) it-is not

αἰσχρὸν, ἀλλὰ καλὸν κλέπτειν, ὅσα
shameful, but commendable to-steal, as-many-things-as (the

νόμος μὴ κωλύει. Δὲ ὅπως κλέπτητε ὡς
law does not forbid. And so-that you-may-steal as

κράτιστα, καὶ πειρᾶσθε λαν-
best-possible, [as adroitly as possible,] and have-exerted-yourselves to-

θάνειν, ἄρα ἐστιν νόμιμον ὑμῖν, ἐὰν ληφθῆτε
conceal (it), now-then it-is lawful for-you, if you-are-caught

κλέπτοντες, μαστιγοῦσθαι. Νῦν οὖν ἐστιν
stealing, to-be-scourged. Now therefore (this) is

μάλα καιρός σοι ἐπιδείξασθαι τὴν
(the) very (best) opportunity for-you to-show — (your)

παιδείαν, καὶ φυλάξασθαι μέντοι, μὴ ληφθῶμεν
education, and to-guard moreover, lest we-may-be-caught

κλέπτοντες τοῦ ὄρους, ὡς μὴ λάβωμεν
stealing the mountain, (and) so-that we-may not receive

πληγάς. Ἀλλὰ μέντοι, ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, κἀγὼ
stripes. But also, said — Cheirisophus, and-I

ἀκούω ὑμᾶς, τοὺς Ἀθηναίους, εἶναι δεινοὺς
have-heard (that) you, the Athenians, are clever

κλέπτειν τὰ δημόσια, καὶ μάλα δεινοῦ
(*to-steal*) (at stealing) the public-money, and-though very great

κινδύνου ὄντος τῷ κλέπτοντι, καὶ τοὺς
danger being to — (him) stealing, and (that) — (your)

κρατίστους μέντοι μάλιστα, εἴπερ οἱ
best (men) moreover (steal) the-most, if-indeed the

κράτιστοι ἀξιοῦνται ἄρχειν ὑμῖν· ὥστε
best (men) are-thought-worthy to-rule you; so-that (it is)

ὥρα καὶ σοὶ ἐπιδείκνυσθαι τὴν παιδείαν.
time also for-you to-show — (your) education.

Ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, εἰμι ἕτοιμος,
I indeed therefore, said — Xenophon, am ready,

ἔχων τοὺς ὀπισθοφύλακας, ἐπειδὰν δειπνή-
having the rear-guard (with me), after we-shall-have-

τωμεν, ἰέναι καταληψόμενος τὸ ὄρος. Δὲ καὶ
upped, to-go about-taking-possession (of) the mountain. And also

ἔχω ἡγεμόνος· γὰρ οἱ γυμνῆτες ἐνεδρεύσαντες
I-have guides; for the light-armed-men having-laid-in-ambush

ἔλαβόν τινας τῶν κλωπῶν ἑφεπομένων ἡμῖν· καὶ
took some of-the marauders following us; and

πυνθάνομαι τούτων, ὅτι τὸ ὄρος ἐστι οὐκ ἄβατον,
I-hear from-these, that the mountain is not impassable,

ἀλλὰ νέμεται αἰξὶ καὶ βουσίν· ὥστε ἐάνπερ
but (that) it-is-grazed-on by-goats and oxen; so-that if

ἅπαξ λάβωμέν τι τοῦ ὄρους ἔσται
once we-take-possession-of any (part) of-the mountain there-will be

βατὰ καὶ τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις. Δὲ ἐλπίζω
passable (places) even for-the cattle. And I-expect (that)

τοὺς πολεμίους οὐδὲ ἔτι μενεῖν ἐπειδὰν
the enemy will not-indeed longer remain after

ὦσιν ἡμᾶς ἐν τῷ ὁμοίῳ ἐπὶ τῶν ἄκρων.
they-see us on the level (with them) on the heights.

Γὰρ ἐθέλουσι οὐδὲ νῦν καταβαίνειν εἰς τὸ ἴσον
For they-will not-indeed now come-down to (an) equality

ἡμῖν. Ὁ δὲ Χειρίσοφος εἶπε· Καὶ τί δεῖ σὲ
with-us. — And Cheirisophus said: And why is-it-proper (that) you

ἰέναι, καὶ λιπεῖν τὴν ὀπισθοφυλακίαν; ἀλλὰ
(should) go, and leave the command-of-the-rear-guard? but

πέμψον ἄλλους, μὴ ἄν τινες ἐθελούσιοι φαίνωνται.
send others, unless that some volunteers may-make

Ἐκ τούτου Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυ-
(their) appearance. Upon this Aristonymus (the) Methy-

δριεὺς ἔρχεται, ἔχων ὁπλίτας, καὶ Ἀρισ-
drian came-forward, having (his) heavy-armed-men, and Aris

τέας Χῖος, γυμνῆτας, καὶ Νικόμαχος
teas (the) Chian, (having his) light-armed-men, and Nicomachu

Οἰταῖος, γυμνῆτας· καὶ σύνθημα
(the) Œtean, (with his) light-armed-men; and (an) agreement

ἐποιήσαντο, ὁπότε ἔχοιεν τὰ ἄκρα
was-made, (that) when they-might-have-possession-of the heights

καίειν πολλὰ πυρά. Ταῦτα συνθέμενοι
to-burn many fires. These (things) being-agreed-on

ἠρίστων· ἐκ δὲ τοῦ ἀρίστου ὁ Χειρίσοφος προ-
they-dined; after — the dinner — Cheirisophus led-

ήγαγε τὸ πᾶν στράτευμα πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους
forward the whole army against the enemy

ὡς δέκα σταδίους, ὅπως δοκοίη ὡς μάλιστα
about ten stadia, so-that he-might-seem as-much-as-possible

προσάξειν ταύτῃ.
to-be-about-to-lead-against (them) in-that (direction).

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἐδείπνησαν, καὶ ἐγένετο νὺξ
When indeed they-had-supped, and it-was night

οἱ μὲν ταχθέντες ᾤχοντο, καὶ
— (those) indeed appointed (for this service) departed, and

καταλαμβάνουσι τὸ ὄρος· οἱ δὲ ἄλλοι
take-possession-of the mountain; and the other (troops)

ἀνεπαύοντο αὐτοῦ. Οἱ πολέμιοι δὲ,
reposed there (where they were). The enemy indeed,

ὡς ᾔσθοντο τὸ ὄρος ἐχόμενον, ἐγρηγόρεσαν, καὶ
as they-perceived the mountain occupied, kept-watch, and

ἔκαιον πολλὰ πυρὰ διὰ νυκτός. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ
burned many fires during (the) night. When indeed

ἐγένετο ἡμέρα, Χειρίσοφος μὲν θυσάμενος ἦγε
it-was day, Cheirisophus — having-offered-sacrifice led

κατὰ τὴν ὁδόν· οἱ δὲ καταλαβόντες
(the army) along the road; — (those) — having-taken-possession-of

τὸ ὄρος ἐπῄεσαν κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα. Δὲ τῶν
the mountain advanced along the heights. But of-the

πολεμίων τὸ πολὺ μὲν ἔμενεν ἐπὶ τῇ ὑπερβολῇ
enemy the great (part) indeed remained at the pass

τοῦ ὄρους, δὲ μέρος αὐτῶν ἀπήντα τοῖς
of-the mountain, but (a) part of-them went (against) — (those)

κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα. Δὲ πρὶν τοὺς πολλοὺς,
along the heights. But before (that) | the many, [the

εἶναι ὁμοῦ, οἱ κατὰ τὰ
main bodies of the armies,] were together, — (those) along the

ἄκρα συμμιγνύασιν ἀλλήλοις, καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες
heights met one-another, and the Greeks

νικῶσι καὶ διώκουσιν. Ἐν τούτῳ
conquered and drove-back (their opponents). At this (time)

δὲ καὶ οἱ ἐκ τοῦ πεδίου, μὲν οἱ πελτασταὶ
— also — (those) from the plain, namely the targeteer

τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἔδεον δρόμῳ πρὸς τοὺς
of-the Greeks ran in (a) race against — (those)

παρατεταγμένους, δὲ Χειρίσοφος ἐφείπετο ταχὺ
drawn-up-against (them), and Cheirisophus followed quickly

βάδην σὺν τοὶς ὁπλίταις. Δ' οἱ πολέμιοι
step-by-step with the heavy-armed-men. But the enemy (namely)

οἱ ἐπὶ τῇ ὁδῷ, ἐπειδὴ ἑώρων τὸ ἄνω
— (those) on the road, when they-saw — (those) above

ἡττώμενον, φεύγουσι· καὶ οὗ πολλοὶ μὲν αὐτῶν
defeated, flee-away; and not many indeed of-them

ἀπέθανον. Δὲ πάμπολλα γέρρα ἐλήφθη, ἃ
died. But (a) great-many shields were-taken, which

οἱ Ἕλληνες κόπτοντες ταῖς μαχαίραις,
the Greeks cutting — (with their) swords,

ἐποίουν ἄχρεῖα. Δ' ὡς ἀνέβησαν,
made useless. And as they-arrived-on (the heights),

θύσαντες, καὶ στησάμενοι τρόπαιον, κατέβησαι
having-sacrificed, and having-erected (a) trophy, they-descended

εἰς τὸ πεδίον, καὶ ἦλθον εἰς κώμας γεμούσας
into the plain, and they-went to villages stored-with

πολλῶν καὶ ἀγαθῶν.
many and good (things).

## CHAPTER VII

Ἐκ δὲ τούτων ἐπορεύθησαν πέντε σταθ-
FROM — these (villages) they-proceeded five days'-

μοὺς, τριάκοντα παρασάγγας, εἰς Ταόχους·
march, (making) thirty parasangs, to (the) Taochi;

καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐπέλιπε· γὰρ οἱ Ταόχοι
and — provisions began-to-fail (them); for the Taochi

ᾤκουν ἰσχυρὰ χωρία, καὶ ἐν οἷς εἶχον πάντα
inhabited strong places, and in which they-had all

τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἀνακεκομισμένοι.
— (their) provisions having-carried (them) up (and stored

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἀφίκοντο εἰς χωρίον, ὃ
them there) When however they-arrived at (a) place, which

μὲν εἶχεν οὐ πόλιν οὐδ' οἰκίας, δ' αὐτόσε καὶ
indeed had no town nor houses, and there both

ἄνδρες καὶ γυναῖκες καὶ πολλὰ κτήνη ἦσαν
men and women and many cattle were

συνελήλυθότες, Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἥκων εὐθὺς
included, Cheirisophus indeed having-come immediately

προσέβαλλε πρὸς τοῦτο· ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ πρώτη
made-an-attack against this (place), when — the first

τάξις ἀπέκαμεν, ἄλλη προσῄει καὶ αὖθις
division began-to-grow-tired, another succeeded and again

ἄλλη· γὰρ ἦν οὐ ἀθρόοις
another; for it-was not (possible for them) drawn-up-in-a-body

περιστῆναι, ἀλλὰ ἦν ποταμὸς κύκλῳ.
to-stand-around (it), as there-was (a) river in (a) circle

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἦλθε σὺν τοῖς ὀπισθο-
(around it). When — Xenophon came with the rear-

φύλαξι καὶ πελτασταῖς καὶ ὁπλίταις, ἐνταῦθα
guard and targeteers and heavy-armed-men, then

δὴ Χειρίσοφος λέγει· Ἥκετε εἰς καλόν· γὰρ
truly Cheirisophus says You-have-come most-opportunely· for

τὸ χωρίον αἱρετέον· γὰρ ἔστι οὐ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
— (this) place must-be-taken; for there-is no — provisions

τῇ στρατιᾷ εἰ μὴ ληφόμεθα τὸ
for the army | if not [unless] we-shall-take — (this)

χωρίον. Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἐβουλεύοντο κοινῇ· καὶ
place. Then indeed they-deliberated in-common; and

τοῦ Ξενοφῶντος ἐρωτῶντος, τί εἴη τὸ κωλῦον
— Xenophon having-asked, what might-be the hindrance

εἰσελθεῖν, ὁ Χειρίσοφος εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ αὕτη
to-enter (the place), — Cheirisophus said: But this

ἐστιν μία πάροδος ἣν ὁρᾷς· ὅταν δέ
is (the) one (only) passage which you-see; whenever indeed

τις πειρᾶται παριέναι ταύτῃ, κυλινδοῦσι
any-one should-attempt to-pass-along this, they-roll (down)

λίθους ὑπὲρ ταύτης τῆς ὑπερεχούσης πέτρας·
stones over this — impending rock;

δ' ὃς ἄν καταληφθῇ, οὕτω διατίθεται.
(he) indeed who may have-been-struck, is thus disposed-of.

Δ' ἅμα ἔδειξε ἀνθρώπους συντετριμμένους
And at-the-same-time he-showed men crushed

καὶ σκέλη καὶ πλευράς. Δὲ ἦν ἀναλώσωσιν
both (as respects) legs and ribs. But if they-should-expend

τοὺς λίθους, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, τι ἢ οὐδὲν ἄλλο
— (their) stones, said — Xenophon, is-there nothing else

κωλύει παριέναι; γὰρ δὴ οὐχ ὁρῶμεν
(that) prevents (us) to-advance? for indeed we-do not see

ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου, εἰ μὴ τούτους ὀλίγους
(any) of — (those) opposed-to-us, unless these few

ἀνθρώπους, καὶ τούτων δύο ἢ τρεῖς ὡπλισμένους.
men, and of-these (only) two or three are-armed.

Δὲ τὸ χωρίον, ὃ δεῖ διελθεῖν βαλλο-
And the space, which it-is-necessary to-pass-through (while) being-

μένους ἐστιν, ὡς καὶ σὺ ὁρᾷς, σχεδὸν τρία
thrown-at is, as even you see, about three

ἡμιπλέθρα. Δὲ τούτου ὅσον
half-plethra [about 150 feet]. And of-this (space) as-much as (a)

πλέθρον δασὺ μεγάλαις πίτυσι διαλει-
plethrum [about 100 feet] (is) thick with-great pine-trees standing-

πούσαις ἀνδ' ὧν ἄνδρες ἑστηκότες ἂν
apart-from-one-another against which men standing —

τί πάσχοιεν ἢ ὑπὸ τῶν φερομένων λίθων ἢ
what will-they-suffer either from the thrown stones or

ὑπὸ τῶν κυλινδουμένων; τὸ λοιπὸν
from the rolled (ones)? the rest (of the space)

ἤδη οὖν γίγνεται ὡς ἡμίπλεθρον,
now therefore becomes about (a) half-plethrum [about 50 feet], (over)

ὃ δεῖ, ὅταν οἱ λίθοι λωφήσωσι, παρα-
which it-is-necessary, when the stones may-cease, to-run-

δραμεῖν. Ἀλλά, ἔφη ὁ Χειρίσοφος, εὐθὺς
past. But, said — Cheirisophus, immediately

ἐπειδὰν ἀρξώμεθα προιέναι εἰς τὸ δασύ,
when we-commence to-advance to the (part) thick (with trees)

πολλοὶ οἱ λίθοι φέρονται. Αὐτό, ἔφη,
many — stones are-thrown. That, said (Xenophon),

ἂν εἴη τὸ δέον γὰρ θᾶττον ἀναλώσουσι
would be the thing-wanted, for the-more-speedily will-they-expend

τοὺς λίθους. Ἀλλὰ πορευώμεθα,
— (their) stones. But let-us-advance (to the place),

ἔνθεν ἔσται τι μικρὸν ἡμῖν παραδραμεῖν,
whence there-will-be some small (place) for-us to-run-past,

ἢν δυνώμεθα, καὶ ῥᾴδιον ἀπελθεῖν,
if we-can, and (from which we may) easily depart,

ἢν βουλώμεθα.
if we-please.

Ἐντεῦθεν Χειρίσοφος καὶ Ξενοφῶν, καὶ Καλλί-
Thence Cheirisophus and Xenophon, and Calli-

μαχος Παρράσιος λοχαγός, (γὰρ ἡ ἡγεμονία
machus (the) Parrhasian (a) captain, (for the lead

τῶν λοχαγῶν τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων
of-the captains of-the rear-guard (was in possession)

τούτου ἐκείνῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ,) ἐπορεύοντο· δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι
of-this-one on-that — day,) proceeded-forward; but the other

λοχαγοὶ ἔμενον ἐν τῷ ἀσφαλεῖ. Μετὰ τοῦτο
captains remained in — safety. After this

οὖν ὡς ἑβδομήκοντα ἄνδρωποι ἀπῆλθον ὑπὸ
therefore about seventy men went-off under

τὰ δένδρα, οὐκ ἀθρόοι, ἀλλὰ καθ' ἕνα,
the trees, not collected-in-a-body, but one-by-one,

ἕκαστος φυλαττόμενος ὡς ἐδύνατο. Ἀγασίας
each-one guarding-himself as (well as) he-could. Agasias

δὲ ὁ Στυμφάλιος καὶ Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεύς
— the Stymphalian and Aristonymus (the) Methydrian

καὶ οὗτοι ὄντες λοχαγοὶ τῶν ὀπισθοφυλάκων, καὶ
and these being captains of-the rear-guard, and

ἄλλοι δέ, ἐφέστασαν ἔξω τῶν δένδρων· γὰρ ἦν
others also, standing-near without the trees; for it-was

οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς πλεῖον ἢ τὸν ἕνα λόχον ἑστάναι
not safe (for) more than — one company to-stand

ἐν τοῖς δένδροις. Καλλίμαχος ἤνδα δὴ μηχανᾶ-
under the trees. Callimachus then indeed con-

ταί τι· προέτρεχεν ἀπὸ τοῦ δένδρου,
trived something (thus)· he-ran-forward from the tree,

ἐφ ᾧ αὐτός ἦν, δύο ἢ τρία βήματα· δὲ ἐπεὶ
under which he was, two or three times; but when

οἱ λίθοι φέροιντο, ἀνεχάζετο εἰπετῶς· ἐφ' ἑκάστης
the stones were-hurled, he-retired expeditiously; at each

δὲ προδρομῆς πλέον ἢ δέκα ἅμαξαι πετρῶν
sally more than ten wagon (loads) of-stone

ἀνηλίσκοντο. Δὲ ὁ Ἀγασίας, ὡς ὁρᾷ τὸν
were-consumed. But — Agasias, as he-perceives —

Καλλίμαχον, ἃ ἐποίει, καὶ πᾶν τὸ στράτευμα
Callimachus, what he-was-doing, and all the army

θεώμενον, δείσας μὴ οὐ πρῶτος παρα-
beholding (it), fearing lest (he might) not (be) the-first run-

δράμοι εἰς τὸ χωρίον, οὐδὲ παρακαλέσας τὸν
ning-by into the place, neither calling-to —

Ἀριστώνυμον ὄντα πλησίον, οὐδὲ Εὐρύλοχον
Aristonymus (he) being near, nor (to) Eurylochus

τον Λουσιέα ὄντας ἑταίρους, οὐδὲ οὐδένα
the Lusian (both) being (his) comrades, nor (to) no-one

ἄλλον, αὐτός χωρεῖ, καὶ παρέρχεται
else, he went-on (by himself), and passed-by

πάντας. Ὁ δὲ Καλλίμαχος, ὡς ἑώρα αὐτὸν
all. — But Callimachus, as he-saw him

παριόντα ἐτιλαμβάνεται τῆς ἴτυος αὐτοῦ·
passing-by seizes the rim (of the shield) of-him;

δ' ἐν τούτῳ Ἀριστώνυμος Μεθυδριεύς παρέδει
but at this (time) Aristonymus (the) Methydrian ran-by

αὐτούς, καὶ μετὰ τοῦτον Εὐρύλοχος Λουσιεύς.
them, and after this (one) Eurylochus (the) Lusian.

Γὰρ πάντες οὗτοι ἀντεποιοῦντο ἀρετῆς, καὶ
For all these claimed-for-themselves valour, and

διηγωνίζοντο πρὸς ἀλλήλους· καὶ οὕτως
contended with one-another (as respects it); and thus

ἐρίζοντες αἱροῦσι τὸ χωρίον. Γὰρ ὡς ἅπαξ
contending they-take the place. For as [1]they once

εἰσέδραμον, οὐδεὶς πέτρος ἠνέχθη ἄνωθεν.
[1]had-run-in, not (a) stone was-thrown from-above

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἦν δεινὸν θέαμα. Γὰρ αἱ
Then indeed there-was (a) dreadful spectacle. For the

γυναῖκες ῥίπτουσαι τὰ παιδία,
women throwing — (their) children (over the precipice),

καὶ εἶτα ἐπικατερρίπτουν, καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες
(and) then threw-themselves-down-upon (them), and the men

ὡσαύτως. Ἔνθα δὴ καὶ Αἰνείας
in-like-manner (did the same). Then indeed also Æneas (the)

Στυμφάλιος, λοχαγός, ἰδών τινα, ἔχοντα
Stymphalian, (a) captain, seeing some-one (of them), having (a)

καλὴν στολήν, θέοντα ὡς ῥίψοντα ἑαυτὸν
handsome dress, running as being-about-[1]throwing himself [1]over,

ἐπιλαμβάνεται ὡς κωλύσων. Δὲ
laid-hold (of him) as being-about-hindering (him). But

ὁ ἐπισπᾶται αὐτόν, καὶ ἀμφότεροι ᾤχοντο
— (he) [1]drags him [1]along, and both went [1]over

φερόμενοι κατὰ τῶν πετρῶν, καὶ ἀπέθανον.
being-borne down the rocks, and died

Ἐντεῦθεν μὲν πάνυ ὀλίγοι ἄνθρωποι ἐλήφθησαν,
Therefore indeed very few men were-captured,

δὲ καὶ πολλοὶ βόες καὶ ὄνοι καὶ πρόβατα.
but — many oxen and asses and sheep.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ Χα-
Thence they-proceeded through (the country) of (the) Cha-

λύβων ἑπτά σταθμούς, πεντήκοντα παρα-
lybians seven days'-march, (making) fifty para-

σάγγας. Οὗτοι ἦσαν ἀλκιμώτατοι ὧν
sangs. These were the-bravest (of those people) whose

διῆλθον. καὶ ἦεσαν εἰς χεῖρας.
(country) they-passed-through, | and they-went to hands [and they

Εἶχον δὲ λινοῦς θώρακας
came to close combat]. They-had also linen cuirasses (reaching)

μέχρι τοῦ ἤτρου, δ' ἀντὶ τῶν πτερύγων
just to-the groin, and in-place of — skirts (they had)

πυκνὰ σπάρτα ἐστραμμένα. Εἶχον δὲ καὶ
thick cords twisted. They-had also —

κνημῖδας, καὶ κράνη, καὶ μαχαίριον παρὰ
greaves, and helmets, and (a) knife at

τὴν ζώνην ὅσον Λακωνικήν ξυήλην,
— (their) girdle as-long-as (a) Spartan (dagger) sickle-shaped,

ᾧ ἔσφαττον, ὧν δύναιντο κρατεῖν·
with-which they-cut-the-throats, of — (those) they-could master,

καὶ ἀποτέμνοντες τὰς κεφαλὰς ἂν ἔχοντες
and cutting-off — (their) heads — (and) having

ἐπορεύοντο· καὶ ᾖδον, καὶ ἐχόρευον,
(them) they-proceeded (on their march); and they-sang, and danced,

ὁπότε οἱ πολέμιοι ἔμελλον ὄψεσθαι.
when (they thought) the enemy were-about to-see (them)

Καὶ εἶχον δὲ δόρυ ὡς πεντεκαίδεκα πηχῶν,
And they-had also (a) spear about fifteen cubits (in length)

ἔχον μίαν λόγχην. Οὗτοι ἐμεινον
(but) having (only) one spike. These (people) remained

ἐν τοῖς πολίσμασιν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες
in — (their) towns. When however the Greeks

παρέλθοιεν, εἵποντο ἀεὶ μαχόμενοι.
may-have-passed-by, they-followed continually fighting (with them).

Ὤικουν δὲ ἐν τοῖς ὀχυροῖς, καὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
They-dwelt — in — strongholds, and — (their) provisions

ἀνακεκομισμένοι ἦσαν ἐν τούτοις, ὥστε
were-brought-up in these (strongholds), so (that)

τοὺς Ἕλληνας λαμβάνειν μηδὲν αὐτόθεν, ἀλλὰ
the Greeks took nothing from-that-place, but

διετράφησαν τοῖς κτήνεσιν, ἃ ἔλαβον ἐκ τῶν
were-nourished by-the cattle, which they-took from the

Ταόχων. Ἐκ τούτου οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ
Taochi After this the Greeks arrived at

τὸν ποταμόν Ἅρπασαν, εὖρος
the river Harpasus, (the) breadth (of which being)

τεττάρων πλέθρων. Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ
four plethra. Thence they-proceeded through

Σκυθινῶν τέτταρας σταθμούς,
(the country of the) Scythini four days'-march, (making)

εἴκοσι παρασάγγας, διὰ πεδίου εἰς κώμας,
twenty parasangs, through (a) plain to villages,

ἐν αἷς ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας, καὶ ἐπεσιτίσαντο.
in which they-remained three days, and collected-provisions.

Ἐντεῦθεν δὲ ἦλθον τέτταρας σταθμοὺς
Thence indeed they-went four days'-march (making)

εἴκοσι παρασάγγας, πρὸς μεγάλην καὶ εὐδαίμονα,
twenty parasangs, to (a) large and wealthy

καὶ οἰκουμένην πόλιν, ἣ ἐκαλεῖτο Γυμνίας. Ἐκ
and populous city, which was-called Gymnias From

ταύτης ὁ ἄρχων τῆς χώρας πέμπει ἡγεμόνα
this (place) the ruler of-the country sends (a) guide

τοῖς Ἕλλησιν, ὅπως ἄγοι αὐτούς διὰ τῆς
to-the Greeks, that he-might-conduct them through the

χώρας πολεμίας ἑαυτῶν. Δ' ἐκεῖνος
country inimical (to his people) themselves. And he

ἐλθὼν λέγει, ὅτι ἄξει αὐτοὺς πέντε ἡμερῶν
having-come says, that he-will-lead them (in) five days

εἰς χωρίον, ὅθεν ὄψονται θάλατταν· δὲ εἰ
to (a) place, whence they-would-see (the) sea; and if

μή ἐπηγγέλλετο τεθνάναι. Καὶ ἡγούμενος,
not announced-himself (willing) to-die. And leading

ἐπειδὴ ἐνέβαλεν εἰς τὴν πολεμίαν
(them), when he-entered into the (country) inimical

ἑαυτοῖς, παρεκελεύετο αἴθειν καὶ φθείρειν τὴν
to-themselves, he-exhorted (them) to-burn and lay-waste the

χώραν· καὶ ᾧ ἐγένετο δῆλον ὅτι ἔλθοι
country; and by-which it-became evident that he-had-come (by)

ἕνεκα τούτου, οὐ τῆς εὐνοίας τῶν
reason of-this, (and) not — (from any) good-will (for) the

Ἑλλήνων. Καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος τῇ
Greeks. And they-arrived at the mountain on-the

πέμπτῃ ἡγέρᾳ· ὄνομα δὲ τῷ ὄρει ἦν Θήχης.
fifth day; (the) name — (of) the mountain was Theches

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ οἱ πρῶτοι ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τοῦ ὄρους,
When indeed the foremost got on the mountain,

καὶ κατεῖδον τὴν θάλατταν, πολλὴ κραυγὴ
and looked-down (on) the sea, (a) great noise

ἐγένετο. Δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες
occurred. But — Xenophon and the rear-guard

ἀκούσας ᾠήθησαν ἄλλους πολεμίους ἔμπροσθεν
having-heard (it) thought (that) other enemies in-front

ἐπιτίθεσθαι· γὰρ εἵποντο ὄπισθεν ἐκ τῆς
were-assailing (them); for they-followed behind from the

καιομένης χώρας, καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες ποιησάμενοι
burnt places, and the rear-guard by-forming

ἐνέδραν τε ἀπέκτειναν τινας καὶ ἐζώγρησαν.
(an) ambuscade not-only killed some, but-also made

καὶ ἔλαβον ἀμφὶ τὰ εἴκοσιν γέρρα
(others) prisoners; and they-took about — twenty shields

ὠμοβόεια δασειῶν βοῶν.
made of raw-hides of-thick-haired oxen.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ βοὴ τε ἐγίγνετο πλείων καὶ
When indeed the noise not-only became greater but-also

ἐγγύτερον, καὶ οἱ ἀεὶ ἐπιόντες ἔδεον
nearer, and — (those) continually running-up kept-running

δρόμῳ ἐπὶ τοὺς ἀεὶ βοῶντας, καὶ ἡ βοὴ
in-haste to — (those) continually shouting, and the noise

ἐγίγνετο πολλῷ μείζων, ὅσῳ δὴ πλείους
became much greater, by-how-much indeed more-numerous

ἐγίγνοντο, ἐδόκει τῷ Ξενοφῶντι δὴ εἶναι τι
they-became, it-seemed to — Xenophon indeed to-be something

μεῖζον. Καὶ ἀναβὰς ἐφ' ἵππον,
greater (than common). And (he) having-mounted on (his) horse,

καὶ ἀναλαβὼν Λύκιον καὶ τοὺς ἱππέας,
and having-taken-with (him) Lucius and the cavalry,

παρεβοήθει· καὶ τάχα δὴ
(he went forward, that) he-might-give-assistance; and quickly indeed

ἀκούουσι τῶν στρατιωντῶν βοώντων, Θάλαττα!
they-hear the soldiers shouting, (The) sea!

Θάλαττα! καὶ παρεγγυώντων.
(the) sea! and cheering-on (those in the rear).

Ἔνθα δὴ ἅπαντες ἔδεον καὶ οἱ ὀπισθοφύλακες,
Then indeed all commenced-running and the rear-guard,

καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια ἠλαύνετο καὶ οἱ
and the baggage-cattle were-excited (to their full speed) and (also) the

ἵπποι. Δὲ ἐπεὶ πάντες ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον,
horses. And when all arrived on the summit,

ἐνταῦθα δὴ περιέβαλλαν ἀλλήλους καὶ στρατη-
then indeed they-embraced one-another, also (the) gene-

γοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς, δακρύοντες. Καὶ ἐξαπίνης,
rals and captains, shedding-tears. And suddenly,

ὅτου δὴ παρεγγυήσαντος, οἱ
whoever indeed (it might be) having-exhorted (them to it), the

στρατιῶται φέρουσι λίθους, καὶ ποιοῦσι μέγαν
soldiers bring stones, and make (a) large

κολωνὸν. Ἐνταῦθα ἀνετίθεσαν πλῆθος
mound. Then they-placed-on (this mound a) multitude

δερμάτων ὠμοβοείων, καὶ βακτηρίας, καὶ τὰ γέρρα
of-skins of-raw-ox-hides, and staves, and the shields

αἰχμάλωτα, καὶ ὁ ἡγεμὼν τε αὐτὸς κατέτεμνε
captured (from the enemy), and the guide not-only himself cut-to-pieces

τὰ γέρρα, καὶ διεκελεύετο τοῖς ἄλλοις.
the shields, but-also exhorted the others (to do the same).

Μετὰ ταῦτα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀποπέμπουσι τὸν ἡγεμόνα,
After thus the Greeks sent-away the guide,

δόντες δῶρα ἀπὸ κοινοῦ ἵππον,
giving (him) presents from (the) common (stock, namely, a) horse,

καὶ ἀργυρᾶν φιάλην, καὶ Περσικὴν σκευήν,
and (a) silver cup, and (a) Persian robe,

καὶ δέκα δαρεικούς· δ' μάλιστα ᾔτει τοὺς
and ten darics, but most-of-all he-asked-for the

δακτυλίους, καὶ ἔλαβε πολλοὺς παρὰ τῶν
finger-rings, and he-obtained many (of them) from the

στρατιωτῶν. Δὲ δείξας κώμην αὐτοῖς οὗ
soldiers And he-having-pointed-out (a) village to-them where

σκηνήσουσι, καὶ
they-might-encamp (or take up their quarters), and (he also having showed

τὴν ὁδόν, ἣν πορεύσονται εἰς Μάκρωνας,
them) the road, on-which they-were-to-proceed to (the) Macrones,

ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο ἑσπέρα, ᾤχετο ἀπιών τῆς νυκτός.
when it-was evening, he-departed, proceeding during-the night.

## CHAPTER VIII.

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπορεύθησαν διὰ
Hence — the Greeks proceeded through

Μακρώνων τρεῖς σταθμούς,
(the country) of (the) Macrones three days'-march, (making)

δέκα παρασάγγας. Δὲ τῇ πρώτῃ ἡμέρᾳ
ten parasangs. And on-the first day

ἥκοντο ἐπὶ τὸν ποταμόν, ὃς ὥριζε τὴν
they arrived at the river, which bounded-and-divided the

τῶν Μακρώνων καὶ τὴν τῶν Σκι-
territories of-the Macrones — (from) — (those) of-the Sky-

θινῶν. Εἶχον δ' ὑπερδέξιον χωρίον οἷον
thini. They-had — on (their) right (a) place such-as

χαλεπώτατον, καὶ ἐξ ἀριστερᾶς
(to be) the-most-difficult (of access), and on (their) left

ἄλλον ποταμόν, εἰς ὃν ὁ ὁρίζων, δι' οὗ
another river, into which the bounding (river), through where

ἔδει διαβῆναι, ἐνέβαλλεν. Οὗτος
it-was-necessary to-cross, emptied (itself). This (river)

δὲ ἦν δασὺς δένδροις οὐ μὲν παχέσι,
— was thick-set (on its shores) with-trees not indeed thick (or large)

δὲ πυκνοῖς. Ταῦτα οἱ Ἕλληνες, ἐπεὶ
but (growing) close-together. These (trees) the Greeks, after

προσῆλθον, ἔκοπτον, σπεύδοντες ἐξελθεῖν ἐκ τοῦ
they-arrived, cut-down, hastening to-go-out from the

χωρίου ὡς τάχιστα. Δ' οἱ Μάκρωνες, ἔχοντες
country as speedily-as-possible. But the Macrones, having

γέρρα καὶ λόγχας καὶ τριχίνους χιτῶνας
wicker-shields and spears and hair tunics,

παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν καταντιπέρας τῆς διαβάσεως,
had-been-drawn-up on-the-opposite-side of-the crossing-place,

καὶ διεκελεύοντο ἀλλήλοις, καὶ ἔῤῥιπτον λίθους
and encouraged one-another, and they-threw stones

εἰς τὸν ποταμόν, δὲ οὐ ἐξικνοῦντο, οὐδ'
in the river, but they-did not reach (our men), (*nor*) (or)

ἔβλαπτον οὐδένα.
hurt none (of-them).

Ἔνθα δή τις ἀνὴρ τῶν πελταστῶν προσέρχεται
Then indeed some man of-the targeteers comes-up

τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, φάσκων δεδουλευκέναι
to — Xenophon, affirming (that he) had-been-a-slave

Ἀθήνησι, λέγων, ὅτι γιγνώσκοι τὴν φωνήν
at-Athens, (and) saying, that he-knew the language

τῶν ἀνθρώπων. Καὶ οἶμαι, ἔφη, ταύτην εἶναι
of — (these) men. And I-think, said-he, this to-be

ἐμὴν πατρίδα· καὶ εἰ μή τι κωλύει, ἐθέλω
my country; and | if not [unless] something hinders, I-wish

διαλεχθῆναι αὐτοῖς. Ἀλλ' οὐδὲν κωλύει, ἔφη·
to-speak with-them. But nothing hinders, said

ἀλλὰ διαλέγου, καὶ μάθε πρῶτον
(Xenopho.); but speak (with them), and ascertain first

τίνες εἰσίν. Ἐρωτήσαντος, οἱ δ'
what (people) they-may-be. He-inquiring, — (they) —

εἶπον, ὅτι Μάκρωνες. Ἐρώτα αὐτοὺς
said, that (they were) Macrones. Ask them

τοίνυν, ἔφη, τί ἀντιτετάχαται, καὶ
then, said (Xenophon), why drawn-up-against (us), and

χρήζουσιν εἶναι πολέμιοι ἡμῖν. Δ' οἱ
wish to-be enemies to-us. But — (they)

ἀπεκρίναντο· Ὅτι καὶ ὑμεῖς ἔρχεσθε ἐπὶ
answered· (Because) that even you come against

ἡμετέραν χώραν. Οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐκέλευον
our country. The generals (then) ordered (him,

λέγειν, ὅτι οὐ ποιήσοντες κακῶς γε,
to-say, | that not making evil at-least, [that not in the

ἀλλὰ πολεμήσαντες
least intending to injure you,] but having-been-making-war [with (the)

βασιλεῖ, ἀπερχόμεθα εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, καὶ
king, we-were-returning to — Greece, and (that,

βουλόμεθα ἀφικέσθαι ἐπὶ θάλατταν. Ἐκεῖνοι
we-desire to-arrive to (the) sea. They

ἠρώτων, εἰ ἂν δοῖεν τὰ πίστα τούτων.
asked, if (they) would give — pledges of these (things)

Δ' οἱ ἔφασαν ἐθέλειν καὶ δοῦναι
And — (they) said (that they) wished both to-give

καὶ λαβεῖν. Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ Μάκρωνες διδόασι
and to-receive (them) Then the Macrones gave

τοῖς Ἕλλησι βαρβαρικὴν λόγχην, δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες
the Greeks (a) barbarian lance, and the Greeks

ἐκείνοις Ἑλληνικήν· γὰρ ἔφασαν
(gave) them (a) Grecian (one); for they-said (that)

ταῦτα εἶναι πιστὰ· δὲ ἀμφότεροι
these were (their) pledges; and both (parties called on the)

θεοὺς ἐπεμαρτύραντο.
gods (that) they-might-witness (it).

Δὲ μετὰ τὰ πιστὰ, οἱ Μάκρωνες εὐθὺς
And after the pledges, the Macrones immediately

συνεξέκοπτον τὰ δένδρα, τε ὡδοποίουν
cut-down-with (them) the trees, not-only to-make-a-road (for

ὁδὸν ὡς διαβιβάσοντες, ἀναμε·
them, for a) path as about-'passing (them) 'through min-

μιγμένοι ἐν μέσοις τοῖς Ἕλλησι· καὶ
gling (at the same time) among the Greeks; but-also

παρεῖχον ἀγορὰν οἵαν ἐδύναντο· καὶ
provided (a) market (for them) such-as they-were-able; and

παρήγαγον ἐν τρισὶν ἡμέραις, ἕως κατέ-
they-'led (them) 'along for three days, until they-set-

στησαν τοὺς Ἕλληνας ἐπὶ τὰ ὅρια Κόλχων.
down the Greeks on the borders (of the) Colchians.

Ἐνταῦθα ἦν μέγα ὄρος, δὲ προσβατὸν· καὶ
Here was (a) large mountain, but accessible; and

οἱ Κόλχοι παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν ἐπὶ τούτου.
the Colchians had-been-drawn-up on this (mountain).

Καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες μὲν τὸ πρῶτον ἀντιπαρετάζαντο
And the Greeks indeed — (at) first drew-up-against

κατὰ φάλαγγα, ὡς οὕτως ἄξοντες πρὸς
(them) in line, as thus about-leading (the men) against

τὸ ὄρος· δὲ ἔπειτα ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατηγοῖς
the mountain; but when it-seemed to-the generals (that)

συλλεγεῖσι βουλεύσασθαι ὅπως ἀγωνιοῦνται
they-should-assemble to-deliberate how they-should-contend

ὡς κάλλιστα. Ξενοφῶν οὖν ἔλεξεν, ὅτι δοκεῖ,
to-the-greatest-advantage. Xenophon therefore said, that it-seemed

παύσαντας τὴν φάλαγγα,
to him), ceasing (to have the troops) — 'in (a) 'line,

ποιῆσαι ὀρθίους λόχους· γὰρ μὲν
to-form | straight companies; [columns of companies;] for indeed

ἡ φάλαγξ εὐθὺς διασπασθήσεται· γὰρ μὲν
the line 'will immediately 'be-broken; for indeed

ᾗ εὑρήσομεν ἄνοδον, δὲ τῇ
in — (some places) we-will-find (an) impassable-road, but in — (others)

εὔοδον τὸ ὄρος· καὶ εὐθὺς τοῦτο ποιήσει ἀθυ-
a) good-road to-the mountain; and immediately this will-cause despon-

μίαν, ὅταν τεταγμένοι εἰς φάλαγγα, ὁρῶσι
dency (in the men), when drawn-up in line, they-see

ταύτην διεσπασμένην. Ἔπειτα, ἢν μὲν προσάγωμεν
this (line) broken. Then, if indeed we-advance

τεταγμένοι ἐπὶ πολλούς, οἱ πολέμιοι περιττεύσουσιν
drawn-up many-deep, the enemy will-reach-beyond

ἡμῶν, καὶ χρήσονται τοῖς περιττοῖς,
us (on the wings), and will-use the superfluous

τι ὅ ἂν βούλωνται. Δὲ ἐὰν
(men), (in) any (manner) which 'they may 'desire. And if

ἴωμεν τεταγμένοι ἐπ' ὀλίγων, ἂν εἴη οὐδὲν
we-go (forward) drawn-up few-deep, it-would be nothing

θαυμαστόν, εἰ ἡ φάλαγξ ἡμῶν διακοπείη
wonderful, | if the line of-us [if our line] be-cut-through

ὑπὸ καὶ ἀθρόων βελῶν καὶ πολλῶν ἀνθρώπων
by both collected missiles and many men

ἐμπεσόντων· εἰ δὲ πῃ τοῦτο ἔσται, ἔσται
falling-upon (it); if indeed by-any-means this should-be, it-will-be

κακὸν τῇ ὅλῃ φάλαγγι. Ἀλλὰ δοκεῖ μοι,
bad for-the whole line. But it-seems to-me, (that)

ποιησαμένους τοὺς λόχους ὀρθίους, κατασχεῖν
having-formed the companies (in) columns, to-separate

τοῖς λόχοις διαλιπόντας τοσοῦτον χωρίον,
the companies, being-distant (from one another), so-much space,

ὅσον τοὺς ἐσχάτους λόχους γενέσθαι
as-that the extreme companies (on the right and left) will-be

ἔξω κεράτων τῶν πολεμίων. Καὶ οὕτως ὁ
beyond (the) wings of-the enemy. And thus 'we th

ἔσχατοι λόχοι ἐσόμεθα τε ἔξω τῆς φάλαγγος
extreme companies, 'will-be not-only beyond the line

τῶν πολεμίων, καὶ ἄγοντες ὀρθίους οἱ
of-the enemy, but-also leading (forward) in-column the

κράτιστοι ἡμῶν προσίασι πρῶτον, τε ᾗ
bravest of-us advance first, and (in the place) in-which

ἂν ᾖ εὔοδον ταύτῃ ὁ ἕκαστος λόχος
there may 'be (a) good-road, in-that — each company

ἄξει. Καὶ οὐ τε ἔσται ῥᾴδιον τοῖς πολεμίοις
will-lead. And it-'will not indeed 'be easy for-the enemy

εἰσελθεῖν εἰς τὸ διαλεῖπον
to-penetrate into the (space) left (vacant between the com-

ὄντων λόχων ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν, τε
panies in column) there-being companies here and there, and-indeed

οὐ ἐσται ῥᾴδιον διακόψαι λόχον ὀρθιον
it-'will not 'be easy to-break-through (a) company in-column

προσιόντα. Τε ἐάν τις τῶν λόχων πιέζηται
advancing-forward. And if any of-the companies be-hard-pressed

ὁ πλησίον βοηθήσει. Τε ἢν πῃ εἷς τῶν
the nearest will-give-assistance. And if by-any-means one of-the

λόχων δυνηθῇ ἀναβῆναι ἐπὶ τὸ ἄκρον οὐδεὶς τῶν
companies may-be-able to-ascend on the height none of-the

πολεμίων μηκέτι μείνῃ. Ταῦτα ἔδοξε καὶ
enemy after-this may-remain. This seemed-good, and

ἐποίουν τοὺς λόχους ὀρθίους. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν
they-formed the companies (in) columns. And Xenophon

ἀπιὼν ἀπὸ τοῦ δεξιοῦ ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον
departing from the right (wing of the enemy) to the left

ἔλεγε τοῖς στρατιώταις· Οὗτοι εἰσιν, οὓς ὁρᾶτε,
said to-the soldiers: These are, whom you-see, (the)

μόνοι ἄνδρες ἔτι ἐμποδὼν ἡμῖν τὸ μὴ ἧδη
only men yet in-the-way (to prevent) us — not soon

εἶναι, ἔνθα πάλαι ἐσπεύδομεν·
to-be, there (where) we-'have long 'desired-and-hastened (to be);

τοῦτους, ἤν πως δυνώμεθα, δεῖ καὶ κατα
these, if in-any-way we-can, it-becomes (us) even | to

φαγεῖν ὠμούς.
eat-up raw [to exterminate].

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἕκαστοι ἐγένοντο ἐν ταῖς χώραις,
When indeed each had-got in — (their) places,

καὶ τοὺς λόχους ἐποιήσαντο ὀρθίους, ἐγένοντο
and the companies were-formed (in) columns, there-were

μὲν λόχοι τῶν ὁπλιτῶν ἀμφὶ τοὺς
— companies of-the heavy-armed-men (to) about the (number of)

ὀγδοήκοντα, δ' ὁ ἕκαστος λόχος σχεδὸν
eighty, and — each company (amounted) nearly

εἰς τοὺς ἑκατόν· δ' ἐποιήσαντο τοὺς πελ-
to — (a) hundred (men); and they-formed the tar-

ταστὰς καὶ τοὺς τοξότας τριχῇ τοὺς
geteers and the archers | threefold [in three divisions] —

μὲν ἔξω τοῦ εὐωνύμου δὲ τοὺς τοῦ
(one) indeed beyond the left-wing and the (other beyond) the

δεξιοῦ δὲ τοὺς κατὰ μέσον, ἑκάστους
right-wing and the (third) in (the) centre, each (divi-

σχεδὸν ἑξακοσίους. Ἐκ τούτου οἱ
sion being) nearly six-hundred (men). After this the

στρατηγοὶ παρηγγύησαν εὔχεσθαι·
generals ordered (the soldiers) to-make (their)

εὐξάμενοι δὲ καὶ παιανίσαντες
vows; having-made (their) vows, and also having-sung-the-pæan,

ἐπορεύοντο. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν καὶ Ξενοφῶν
they-proceeded (forward). And Cheirisophus indeed and Xenophon

καὶ οἱ πελτασταὶ σὺν αὐτοῖς, γενόμενοι ἔξω τῆς
and the targeteers with them, being beyond the

φάλαγγος τῶν πολεμίων ἐπορεύοντο.
line of-the enemy, proceeded (on their march).

Οἱ πολέμιοι δὲ, ὡς εἶδον αὐτούς, ἀντιπαραθέοντες,
The enemy indeed, as they-saw them, running-against

οἱ μὲν ἐπί τε δεξιόν, δὲ οἱ ἐπὶ τό
them), — (some) in front to the right, but — (others) to the

εὐώνυμον, διεσπάσθησαν, καὶ ἐποιησαν πολὺ
left, were-drawn-asunder, and they-made (a) great

κενὸν ἐν τῷ μέσῳ τῆς φάλαγγος ἑαυτῶν. Δὲ οἱ
void in the middle of-the line of-them. But the

πελτασταί κατὰ τὸ Ἀρκαδικὸν,
targeteers in the Arcadian (division in the centre),

ὧν Αἰσχίνης ὁ Ἀκαρνάν ἦρχεν ἰδόντες αὐτοὺς
whom Æschines the Acarnanian commanded seeing them

διαχάζοντας, νομίσαντες φεύγειν, ἔδεον
separating, having-thought (them) to-be-fleeing, ran (forward)

ἀνὰ κράτος, καὶ οὗτοι πρῶτοι ἀναβαίνουσι
with (all their) might, and these first ascended

ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος· δὲ καὶ τὸ Ἀρκαδικὸν ὁπλιτικόν,
on the mountain; and also the Arcadian heavy-armed (troops),

ὧν Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος ἦρχε, συνεφείπετο.
whom Cleanor the Orchomenian commanded, followed-together (after).

Δ' οἱ πολέμιοι, ὡς ἤρξαντο θεῖν οὐκέτι
But the enemy, as (the Greeks) began to-run no-longer

ἔστησαν, ἀλλὰ φυγῇ ἄλλος ἄλλῃ ἐτράπετο.
stood, but fled, | other in-other turned [some

Δ' οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀνα-
going one way and some another]. But the Greeks de-

βάντες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἐν
scending (from the mountain) encamped among

πολλαῖς κώμαις ἐχούσαις πολλὰ τἀπιτήδεια.
many villages having much (of) provisions.

Καὶ τὰ μὲν ἄλλα ἦν
|And the indeed other (things) [and as respects other things] there-was

οὐδὲν, ὅ τι καὶ ἐθαύμασαν· δὲ ἦν πολλὰ
nothing, that even they-were-surprised-at; but there-were many

τα σμήνη αὐτόθι, καὶ ὅσοι τῶν στρατιωτῶν
— bee-hives there, and as-'many of-the soldiers 'as

ἔφαγον τῶν κηρίων, πάντες τε ἐγίγνοντο ἄφρονες,
ate of-the combs, all not-only became delirious,

καὶ ἤμουν, καὶ διεχώρει αὐτοῖς κάτω,
but-also vomited, | and it-passed-through them downwards. [and they

καὶ οὐδεὶς ἠδύνατο ἵστασθαι ὀρθός,
were purged,] and no-one was-able to-stand straight

ἀλλ' οἱ μὲν ἐδηδοκότες ὀλίγον σφόδρα ἐῴκεσαν
but —(those) indeed having-eaten little very-much resembled

μεθύουσι, δ' οἱ πολὺ
(persons) being-drunk, but — (those having eaten) much (resembled

μαινομένοις, δὲ καὶ οἱ ἀποθνήσκουσι.
those) being-mad, and also (resembled) — (those) dying

Πολλοί δὲ ἔκειντο οὕτω, ὥσπερ τροπῆς
Many indeed lay (on the ground) so, as-though (a) rout

γεγενημένης, καὶ ἡ ἀθυμία ἦν πολλή. Δὲ τῇ
had-taken-place, and the dejection was great. But on-the

ὑστεραίᾳ οὐδεὶς μὲν ἀπέθανε, δ' ἀνεφρόνουν
next-day no-one indeed had-died, but they-recovered (their)

ἀμφὶ που τὴν αὐτὴν ὥραν· δὲ
senses about perhaps the same hour (they lost them); and

τρίτῃ καὶ τετάρτῃ ἀνίσταντο, ὥσπερ ἐκ
on (the) third and fourth (days) they-got-up, as-if from

φαρμακοποσίας.
taking-physic.

Ἐντεῦθεν δ' ἐπορεύθησαν δύο σταθμούς,
Hence indeed they-proceeded two days'-march, (making)

ἑπτὰ παρασάγγας, καὶ ἦλθον ἐπὶ θάλατταν
seven parasangs, and came to (the) sea

εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα, Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν, οἰκουμένην,
at Trapezus, (a) Greek city, populous,

ἐν τῷ Εὐξείνῳ Πόντῳ, ἀποικίαν
(and situated) on the Euxine Sea, (being a) colony

Σινωπέων, ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ Κόλχων.
of (the) Sinopians, in the territory of (the) Colchians.

Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν ἀμφὶ τὰς τριάκοντα ἡμέρας
There they-remained about — thirty days

ἐν ταῖς κώμαις τῶν Κόλχων. Κἀντεῦθεν ὁρμώ-
in the villages of-the Colchians. And-hence making-

μενοι ἐλῄζοντο τὴν Κολχίδα. Δὲ Τραπεζούντιοι
incursi — they-plundered — Colchis. And (the) Trapezians

παρεῖχον ἀγορὰν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ, καὶ τε ἐδέξαντο
provide (a) market for-the camp, and not-only received

τοὺς Ἕλληνας καὶ ἔδοσαν
the Greeks (hospitably in their city), but-also gave (them)

ζένια βοῦς καὶ ἄλφιτα
gifts-of-hospitality-and-friendship, (namely) oxen and barley-meal

καὶ οἶνον. Δὲ καὶ συνδιεπράττοντο ὑπὲρ
and wine. And also they-negotiated (with them) for

τῶν πλησίον Κόλχων, μάλιστα τῶν
(and in behalf) of-the neighbouring Colchians, especially — (those)

οἰκούντων ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ· καὶ ζένια καὶ ἦλθον
dwelling in the plain; and gifts-of-hospitality also came

παρ' ἐκείνων βόες. Μετὰ τοῦτο δὲ παρεσ-
from them (namely) oxen. After this indeed they-pre

κευάζοντο τὴν θυσίαν, ἣν εὔξαντο· δ' ἱκανοὶ
pared the sacrifice, which they-had-vowed; and sufficient

βόες ἦλθον αὐτοῖς ἀποθῦσαι τῷ Διὶ τῷ σωτῆρι,
oxen came to-them to-sacrifice to — Jupiter the Preserver,

καὶ τῷ Ἡρακλεῖ ἡγεμόσυνα, καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις θεοῖς
and to — Hercules for-safe-conduct, and to-the other gods

ἃ εὔξαντο. Δὲ καὶ ἐποίησαν γυμνικὸν
(that) which they-had-vowed. And also they-made (a) gymnastic

ἀγῶνα, ἐν τῷ ὄρει, ἔνθαπερ ἐσκήνουν. Δ' εἵλοντο
contest, on the hill, where they-were-encamped. And they-chose

Δρακόντιον Σπαρτιάτην (ὃς ἔφυγε οἰκοθεν
Dracontius (the) Spartan (who became-an-exile from-home

ὢν παῖς, ἄκων κατακτανών παῖδα,
being (a) boy, (he) unwillingly killing (a) boy,

πατάξας ξυήλῃ) τ' ἐπιμεληθῆναι
having-struck (him) with (a) dagger) not-only to-take-care (to pro-

δρόμου, καὶ προστατῆσαι τοῦ ἀγῶνος.
vide) for (a) race, but-also to-preside-over the contest

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἡ θυσία ἐγένετο,
(and games). When indeed the sacrifice was (performed),

παρέδοσαν τὰ δέρματα τῷ Δρακοντίῳ, καὶ ἐκέλευον
they-gave the skins to — Dracontius, and they-requested

ἡγεῖσθαι. ὅπου πεποιηκὼς εἴη τὸν
(him) to-lead (to the place) where he-may-have-made the

δρόμον. Ὁ δὲ δείξας, ὅπερ
course. — But (he) having-pointed (to the place), where

ἐτύγχανον ἑστηκότες, ἔφη, ὁ οὗτος λόφος
they-happened (to be) standing, said, — this hill (is)

κάλλιστος τρέχειν ὅπου τις ἂν βού-
most excellent for-running (in) whatever-direction any-one may de-

ληται. Πῶς οὖν, ἔφασαν, δυνήσονται πα-
sire. (But) how then, said-they, will-they-be-able to-

λαίειν ἐν οὕτως σκληρῷ καὶ δασεῖ;
wrestle in (a place) so hard and bushy (and rough)?

ὁ δ', εἶπε, ὁ καταπεσών, ἀνιάσεται τι
— but (he), said-he, who having-fallen, will-be-distressed some (what)

μᾶλλον. Δὲ παῖδες μὲν, οἱ πλεῖστοι τῶν
the-more. And boys indeed, the most (of them) —

αἰχμαλώτων. ἠγωνίζοντο στάδιον,
(from those) taken-prisoners, contended (in the) stadium

δὲ δόλιχον πλείους ἢ
(or short course), and (in the) dolichon (or long course) more than

ἑξήκοντα Κρῆτες ἔδεον, δὲ ἕτεροι πάλην
sixty Cretans ran, and others (contended in) wrestling

καὶ πυγμὴν καὶ παγκράτιον. Καὶ ἐγένετο
and boxing and (the) pancratium. And it-was (a)

καλὴ θέα· γὰρ πολλοὶ κατέβησαν,
fine sight; [for many went-down, [entered the lists,]

καὶ, ἅτε τῶν ἑταίρων θεωμένων, ἐγίγνετο
and, as — (their) companions were-looking-on, there-was

πολλὴ φιλονεικία. Δὲ καὶ ἵπποι ἔδεον· καὶ
much emulation. And also horses ran; and

ἔδει αὐτούς, ἐλάσαντας κατὰ τοῦ πρανοῦς,
it-was-necessary for-them, having-galloped along-down the steep,

ἀναστρέψαντας ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ, πάλιν
(and) having-turned-round in the sea, again

ἄγειν ἄνω πρὸς τὸν βωμόν. Καὶ μὲν
to-lead-back upwards to the altar. And indeed (going

κάτω οἱ πολλοὶ ἐκυλινδοῦτο· δ'
downwards -- many (of the horses) rolled (down), bu.

ἄνω πρὸς τὸ ἰσχυρῶς ὄρθιον, οἱ
(going) upwards against the exceedingly steep (ground), the

ἵπποι μόλις ἐπορεύοντο βάδην· ἔνθα
horses scarcely proceeded step-by-step (walking); then

ἐγίγνετο πολλὴ κραυγὴ, καὶ γέλως, καὶ παρακέ-
there-was much shouting, and laughter, and cheer

λευσις αὐτῶν.
ing from-them.

# BOOK V.

## CHAPTER I

Ὅσα μὲν δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπραξαν ἐν τῇ
What indeed — the Greeks did in the

ἀναβάσει τῇ μετὰ Κύρου, καὶ ὅσα
march-upwards, in — (that, namely,) with Cyrus, and what (they did)

ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ τῇ μέχρι ἐπὶ θαλατταν
in the journey, — (that, namely,) just to (the) sea

τὴν ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ Εὐξείνῳ, καὶ
the in the Pontus Euxinus, [namely, the Euxine Sea,] and

ὡς ἀφίκοντο εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν,
how they-arrived at Trebisond (a) Greek city,

καὶ ὡς ἀπέδυσαν ἃ εὔξαντο θύσειν
and how they-offered-the-sacrifice which they-had-vowed to-sacrifice for

σωτήρια, ἔνθα πρῶτον ἀφίκοιντο εἰς φιλίαν
[their] safety, when first they-should-arrive at (a) friendly

γῆν, δεδήλωται ἐν τῷ πρόσθεν λόγῳ.
country, (all this) has-been-declared in the preceding discourse.

Ἐκ τούτου δὲ ξυνελθόντες ἐβουλεύοντο περὶ
Upon this indeed coming-together they-deliberated concerning

τῆς λοιπῆς πορείας· δὲ Ἀντιλέων
the remaining (part of the) journey, and Antileon (the)

Θούριος ἀνέστη πρῶτος, καὶ ἔλεξεν ὧδε· Ἐγὼ μὲν
Thurian stood-up first, and spoke thus: I indeed

τοίνυν, ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, ἤδη ἀπείρηκα
therefore, said-he, O men, have-become now tired

ξυσκευαζόμενος, καὶ βαδίζων, καὶ τρέχων, καὶ
packing-up, and walking, and running, and

φέρων τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ ἰὼν ἐν τάξει, καὶ
carrying — (my) arms, and going (drawn-up) in order, and

φυλάττων φυλακὰς, καὶ μαχόμενος·
| guarding guard, [standing guard,] and fighting;

ἐπιθυμῶ ἤδη δὲ, ἐπεὶ ἔχομεν θάλατταν,
I-desire now indeed, since we-have (attained the) sea,

παυσάμενος τούτων τῶν πόνων, πλεῖν τὸ
having-rested from-these — (our) toils, to-sail the

λοιτὸν, καὶ ἐκταθεὶς, ὥσπερ Ὀδυσσεύς,
remainder (of the way), and stretched-out, like Ulysses,

καθεύδων ἀφικέσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Οἱ στρα-
sleeping to-arrive in — Greece. The sol-

τιῶται ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἀνεθορύβησαν
diers hearing these (things) loudly-applauded (him)

ὡς λέγοι εὖ· καὶ ἄλλος ἔλεγε ταὐτὰ,
as (one who) spoke well; and another said these (same

καὶ πάντες οἱ παρόντες.
things), and all — (those) being-present (said the same).

Ἔπειτα δὲ Χειρίσοφος ἀνέστη καὶ εἶπεν ὧδε·
Then indeed Cheirisophus rose-up and spoke thus:

Ὦ ἄνδρες, Ἀναξίβιος ἔστιν φίλος μοι,
O men, Anaxibius | is (a) friend to-me, [is my friend,]

δὲ καὶ τυγχάνει ναυαρχῶν. Ἢν οὖν πέμψητέ
and also happened-to-be commanding-a-fleet. If therefore you-will-send

με, οἶομαι ἂν ἐλθεῖν ἔχων καὶ τριήρεις καὶ
me, I-think — to-come (back) having both galleys and

πλοῖα τὰ ἄξοντα ἡμᾶς·
transports | (for) the (hereafter) carrying us; [to transport us home;]

δὲ ὑμεῖς, εἴπερ βούλεσθε πλεῖν, περιμένετε, ἔστ'
and you, since you-desire to-sail, stay-here, until

ἐγὼ ἂν ἔλθω· ἥξω δὲ ταχέως. Οἱ
I may come (back); I-will-come indeed speedily. The

στρατιῶται ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἥσθησάν τε
soldiers hearing these (things) were-delighted —

καὶ ἐψηφίσαντο αὐτὸν πλεῖν ὡς τάχιστα.
and voted (for) him to-sail as speedily-as-possible.

Μετὰ τοῦτον Ξενοφῶν ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξεν
After this (one) Xenophon stood-up and spoke

ὧδε· Χειρίσοφος μὲν δὴ στέλλεται ἐπὶ πλοῖα,
thus: Cheirisophus indeed — is-sent after ships,

δὲ ἡμεῖς ἀναμενοῦμεν. Ὅσα οὖν δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι
and we will-remain-here. What therefore it-seems to-me to-be

καιρὸς ποιεῖν ἐν τῇ μονῇ, ταῦτα ἐρῶ.
proper to-do in — (our) stay, that I-will-tell (you).

Πρῶτον μὲν δεῖ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια πορίζεσθαι
First indeed it-is-necessary — (for) provisions to-be-procured

ἐκ τῆς πολεμίας· γὰρ ἔστιν οὔτε ἱκανὴ
from the enemy; for there-is neither (a) sufficiently-abundant

ἀγορὰ, οὔτε εὐπορία ὠνησόμεθα
market, nor (have we the) means (with which) we-shall-buy

ὅτου, εἰ μὴ τισίν ὀλίγοις· ἡ χώρα δὲ
anything, unless some few; the country indeed (around us is)

πολεμία· οὖν κίνδυνος πολλοὺς
hostile (to us); therefore (there is) danger (that) many

ἀπόλλυσθαι, ἢν πορεύησθε ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
may-perish, if you-proceed-out for — provisions

ἀμελῶς τε καὶ ἀφυλάκτως. Ἀλλά δοκεῖ μοι
carelessly — and unguardedly. But it-seems to-me

λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια σὺν προνομαῖς,
(that we ought) to-take — provisions with foraging-parties,

δὲ μὴ πλανᾶσθαι ἄλλως, ὡς σώζησθε,
and not to-wander-about at-random, in-order-that you-may-preserve (your

δ' ἡμᾶς ἐπιμελεῖσθαι τούτων.
lives), and (that) we (your officers) should-regulate these (things).

Ἔδοξε ταῦτα. Ἔτί
It-seemed-well (respecting) these (things, and they were adopted). And-now

τοίνυν ἀκούσατε καὶ τάδε. Γὰρ τινες ὑμῶν
therefore listen also to-this. For-as some of-you

ἐκπορεύσονται ἐπὶ λείαν· οἶομαι οὖν εἶναι
will-proceed-out to plunder; I-think therefore (it) to-be

βέλτιστον εἰπεῖν ἡμῖν τὸν μέλλοντα ἐξιέναι,
best to-tell us (of) the intending to-go-out

δὲ καὶ φράζειν ὅποι, ἵνα καὶ εἰδῶμεν
and also to-mention where (or in what direction), that even we-may-know

τὸ πλῆθος τῶν ἐξιόντων καὶ τῶν μενόντων,
the multitude of — (those) going-out and of — (those) remaining,

καὶ ξυμπαρασκευάζωμεν ἐάν τι δέῃ,
and (that) we-may-prepare-together if anything should-be-required,

κἂν ᾖ καιρὸς βοηθῆσαι τισι, εἰδῶμεν
and-if there-be occasion (that we) may-help any, (and) know

ὅποι δεήσει βοηθεῖν, καὶ ἐάν τις τῶν ἀπει-
where it-will-be-necessary to-help, and if any-one of-the more-

ροτέρων ἐγχειρῇ ποι, ξυμβουλεύω-
inexperienced may-undertake (anything) anywhere, we-may-consult-to-

μεν πειρώμενοι εἰδέναι τὴν δύναμιν ἐφ'
gether endeavouring to-know the strength (of the enemy) against

οὓς ἂν ἴωσι. Καὶ ταῦτα ἔδοξε.
whom they may go. And these (things) seemed-good, and

Δὲ καὶ ἐννοεῖτε τόδε, ἔφη.
were agreed to). And also consider this, said-he. (There is)

Σχολὴ τοῖς πολεμίοις λῃζεσθαι, καὶ δικαίως
leisure to-the enemy to-rob (us), and justly

ἐπιβουλεύουσιν ἡμῖν, γὰρ ἔχομεν τὰ ἐκείνων·
do-they-conspire-against us, for we-have the (things) of-them;

δ' ὑπερκάθηνται ἡμῶν. Δὴ δοκεῖ μοι δεῖν εἶναι φύλακας
[for we have their property;] and (moreover) they-are-placed-on-heights above us. Indeed it-seems to-me there-ought to-be sentinels

περὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον· ἐὰν οὖν μερισθέντες κατὰ
round the camp; if therefore being-divided into

μέρος φυλάττωμεν καὶ σκοπῶμεν, ἧττον ἂν οἱ
parts we-guard and keep-a-look-out, the-less may — (our)

πολέμιοι δύναιντο θηρᾶν ἡμᾶς. Ἔτι τοίνυν
enemies be-able to-hunt us (down). Moreover therefore

ὁρᾶτε τάδε. Εἰ μὲν ἠπιστάμεθα σαφῶς, ὅτι
consider this. If indeed we-knew certainly, that

Χειρίσοφος ἥξει ἄγων ἱκανά πλοῖα,
Cheirisophus will-come (back) bringing (a) sufficient (number of) ships,

ἂν οὐδὲν ἔδει ὧν μέλλω λέγειν· δὲ νῦν
there would 'be no 'need of-what I-am-about to-say; but now

ἐπεὶ τοῦτο ἄδηλον, δοκεῖ μοι πει-
since this (is) uncertain, it-seems to-me (that we ought) to-en-

ρᾶσθαι συμπαρασκευάζειν πλοῖα καὶ αὐτόθεν.
deavour to-provide-and-bring-together ships even here.

Γὰρ ἢν μὲν ἔλθῃ, ὑπαρχόντων
For if indeed he-should-come (back with ships, vessels) being-provided

ἐνθάδε, πλευσούμεθα ἐν ἀφθονωτέροις.
here, we-shall-sail in (a) greater-abundance (of ships)

Ἐὰν δὲ μὴ ἄγῃ, χρησόμεθα τοῖς
If indeed he-'should not 'bring (any), we-will-make-use of — (those)

ἐνθάδε. Ἐγὼ δὲ ὁρῶ πλοῖα πολλάκις παραπλέ-
here. I indeed see vessels frequently sailing

οντα· εἰ οὖν αἰτησάμενοι παρὰ Τραπεζουντίων
by; if therefore we-should-be-asking from the-people-of-Trebisond

μακρὰ πλοῖα, κατάγοιμεν
| long ships, [ships of war,] we-might-bring-into-port (those vessels

καὶ φυλάττοιμεν αὐτὰ παραλυόμενοι τὰ
sailing by), and might-guard them | loosening the

πηδάλια, ἕως ἱκανὰ ἂν
rudders, [unshipping the rudders,] until (a) sufficient (number) may

γένηται τὰ ἄξοντα, ἂν ἴσως
be-got (for) the 'carrying (of us) 'hereafter, 'we may probably

οὐκ ἀπορήσαιμεν κομιδῆς οἵας δεόμεθα. Καὶ
not 'have-failed 'of (a) 'conveyance such-as we-seek. And

ταῦτα ἔδοξε. Ἐννοήσατε δ', ἔφη,
these (suggestions) were-approved. Think also, said-he,

εἰ εἰκὸς καὶ τρέφειν ἀπὸ τοῦ κοινοῦ,
if (it will not be) proper even to-support from the common (stock),

οὓς ἂν κατάγωμεν, ὅσον χρόνον ἂν
those-whom 'we may 'bring-in, so-'long (a) time 'as 'they may

μένωσι ἕνεκεν ἡμῶν, καὶ ξυνθέσθαι
'remain on-account of-us, and to-make-an-agreement (with them

ναῦλον, ὅπως ὠφελοῦντες
about the) passage-money, so-that benefitting (us) they (may

καὶ ὠφελῶνται. Καὶ ταῦτα ἔδοξε
also ¹benefit (themselves). And these (things) seemed-good

Δοκεῖ μοι οὖν, ἔφη, ἢν ἄρα καὶ ταῦτα
It-seems to-me therefore, said-he, if perhaps even these (things)

μὴ ἐκπεραίνηται, ὥστε πλοῖα ἀρκεῖν,
do not ¹result, so-that vessels be-sufficient (for us),

ἐντείλασθαι ταῖς πόλεσιν οἰκουμέναις παρὰ
(it is) to-be-enjoined to-the cities situated along (the)

θάλατταν ὁδοποιεῖν τὰς ὁδούς, ἃς ἀκούομεν εἶναι
sea to-repair the roads, which we-hear to-be

δυσπόρους· γὰρ πείσονται, καὶ διὰ τὸ
difficult-to-pass-through; for they-will-obey, both | through the

φοβεῖσθαι, καὶ διὰ τὸ βούλεσθαι
to-fear, [through fear,] and through the to-desire [and through

ἀπαλλαγῆναι ἡμῶν.
the desire] to-get-rid of-us.

³Ενταῦθα δὲ ἀνέκραγον, ὡς δέοι οὐ
Then indeed they-exclaimed, that there-ought not

ὁδοιπορεῖν. Δὲ ὁ ὡς ἔγνω τὴν
to-be-travelling-by-land. But — (Xenophon) as he-perceived the

ἀφροσύνην αὐτῶν, οὐδέν μὲν ἐπε-
want-of-reason of-them, ¹put nothing indeed (respecting roads) ¹to-

ψήφισε, δὲ ἔπεισε τὰς πόλεις ὁδοποιεῖν
vote, but he-persuaded the towns to-make-the-roads

ἑκούσας, λέγων ὅτι θᾶττον ἀπαλλάξον-
of-their-own-free-will, saying that the-more-speedily they-would-be-

ται, ἢν αἱ ὁδοὶ γένωνται εὔποροι,
freed-from (the Greeks), if the roads became passable.

Δέ καὶ ἔλαβον πεντηκόντορον παρὰ τῶν Τραπε-
And also they-obtained (a) fifty-oared-galley from the people-of-

ζουντίων, ἣ ἐπέστησαν Δέξιππον Λάκωνα
Trebisond, over-which they-placed Dexippus (a) Lacedæmonian

περίοικον. Οὗτος, ἀμελήσας τοῦ ζυλλέγειν
provincial. This (person), having-neglected (*the*) to-collect

πλοῖα, ἀποδρὰς ᾤχετο ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου, ἔχων
vessels, having-fled he-departed out of-the (Euxine) Sea, having

τὴι ναῦν. Οὗτος μὲν οὖν ὕστερον ἔπαθε
the vessel. This (person) indeed therefore afterwards suffered

δίκαια· γὰρ ἐν Θράκῃ παρὰ
just (punishment); for in Thrace at (the court of)

Σεύθῃ, πολυπραγμονῶν τι, ἀπέθανεν ὑπὸ
Seuthes, meddling-with something, he-died by (the

Νικάνδροι τοῦ Λάκωνος. Δὲ καὶ
hands of Nicander the Lacedæmonian. And (the Greeks) also

ἔλαβον τριακόντορον, ἧι Πολυκράτης
received (a) thirty-oared-galley, over-which Polycrates (the)

Ἀθηναῖος ἐπεστάθη, ὃς κατῆγε πλοῖα ὁπόσα
Athenian was-placed, who brought-in (the) vessels as-many-as

λαμβάνοι ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ
he-could-capture (to the shore) before the camp. And

μὲν ἐξαιρούμενοι τὰ ἀγώγιμα, εἴ ἤγον τι,
indeed taking-out the cargoes, if they-brought any,

καθίστασαν φύλακας, ὅπως εἴη σῶα,
they-placed guards over (them), so-that they-might-be safe,

δὲ χρήσαιντο τοῖς πλοίοις εἰς παραγωγήν.
and they-used the vessels for (their) conveyance.

Ἐν ᾧ δὲ ταῦτα ἦν, οἱ Ἕλληνες
During (the time) that — these (things) were, the Greeks

ἐξῆεσαν ἐπὶ λείαν· καὶ μὲν οἱ ἐλάμβανον,
went-out after plunder; and indeed — (some) took (plunder),

δὲ καὶ οἱ οὔ. Δὲ Κλεαίνετος ἐξαγαγὼν
but also — (others did) not. But Cleænetus leading-out

καὶ τὸν λόχον ἑαυτοῦ καὶ ἄλλον πρὸς
both the company of-himself and another (one) against (a)

χαλεπὸν χωρίον, τε αὐτός ἀπέθανε καὶ πολλοὶ
difficult place, not-only himself lost-his-life, but-also many

ἄλλοι τῶν σὺν αὐτῷ.
others of — (those) with him.

## CHAPTER II.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦν οὐκέτι λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπι-
When indeed it-was no-longer (possible) to-take — pro-

τήδεια, ὥστε ἀπαυθημερίζειν ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον,
visions, so-as to-return-the-same-day to the camp,

ἐκ τούτου Ξενοφῶν, λαβὼν ἡγεμόνας
|on this [then] Xenophon, having-taken (as) guides (some)

τῶν Τραπεζουντίων, ἐξάγει τὸ ἥμισυ τοῦ
of-the people-of-Trebisond, led-out the half of-the

στρατεύματος εἰς Δρίλας, δὲ τὸ ἥμισυ
army against (the) Drilæ, but the (other) half

κατέλιπε φυλάττειν τὸ στρατόπεδον· γὰρ οἱ
he-left to-guard the camp; for the

Κόλχοι ἅτε ἐκπεπτωκότες τῶν οἰκιῶν, ἦσαν
Colchians as having-been-driven-out from — (their) houses, were

ἀθρόοι πολλοί, καὶ ὑπερεκάθηντο ἐπὶ
collected-together (in) great (numbers), and were-posted on

τῶν ἄκρων. Δὲ οἱ Τραπεζούντιοι οὐκ ἦγον
the heights. But the people-of-Trebisond did not lead

ὁπόθεν μὲν τὰ ἐπιτηδεια ἦν ῥᾴδιον
(them to places) whence — — provisions were easy

λαβεῖν· γὰρ ἦσαν φίλοι αὐτοῖς·
to-take; for (the people inhabiting them) were friends to-themselves;

δὲ προθύμως ἦγον εἰς τοὺς Δρίλας, ὑφ' ὧν
but eagerly led (them) to the Drilæ, | from whom

ἔπασχον κακῶς, εἰς χωρία τε
they-suffered evil, [who had injured them,] into (a) country not-only

ὀρεινά, καὶ δύσβατα, καὶ πολεμικωτάτους
mountainous, but-also difficult-of-access, and (among) the-most-warlike

ἀνθρώπους τῶν ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ.
people of — (those) on the Pontus (Euxinus).

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἦσαν ἄνω ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ,
When indeed the Greeks were up in the country,

ὁποῖα τῶν χωρίων ἐδόκει τοῖς Δρίλαις εἶναι
such of-the places as it-seemed to-the Drilæ to-be

ἁλώσιμα, ἐμπιπράντες ἀπήεσαν· καὶ
easy-to-be-taken, having-set-fire (to such places) they-retreated; and

ἦν οὐδὲν λαμβάνειν, εἰ μὴ ὗς, ἢ βοῦς, ἢ τι
there-was nothing to-take, unless swine, or oxen, or any

ἄλλο κτῆνος διαπεφευγός τὸ πῦρ. Δὲ ἦν ἓν
other cattle having-escaped-from the fire. | But there-was one

χωρίον μητρόπολις αὐτῶν·
place (the) metropolis of-them; [but there was one place that

εἰς τοῦτο πάντες ξυνερρύηκεσαν.
was their metropolis;] to this all flocked-together.

Δὲ περὶ τοῦτο ἦν ἰσχυρῶς βαθεῖα
And round this (place) there-was (an) exceedingly deep

χαράδρα, καὶ πρόσοδοι πρὸς τὸ χωρίον
ravine, and (the) accesses to the country (were)

χαλεπαί. Οἱ πελτασταὶ δὲ, προδραμόντες τῶν
difficult. The targeteers however, having-run-before the

ὁπλιτῶν πέντε ἢ ἓξ στάδια, διαβάντες τὴν
heavy-armed-men five or six stadia, having-crossed the

χαράδραν, ὁρῶντες πολλὰ πρόβατα καὶ ἄλλα
ravine, (and) seeing many sheep and other

χρήματα προσέβαλλον πρὸς τὸ χωρίον· δὲ καὶ
things, made-an-attack on the place: and also

πολλοὶ δορυφόροι, οἱ ἐξωρμημένοι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπι-
many spear-men, —(those) having-gone-out for — pro-

τήδεια ξυνείποντο· ὥστε οἱ διαβάντες
visions followed-with (them); so-that —(those) crossing (the

ἐγένοντο πλείους ἢ δισχιλίους ἀνδρώπους.
ravine) happened-to-be more than two-thousand men.

Δὲ ἐπεὶ μαχόμενοι οὐκ ἐδύναντο λαβεῖν
But when fighting they-were not able to-take

τὸ χωρίον (γὰρ καὶ ἦν εὐρεῖα τάφρος
the place (for also there-was (a) broad trench, (it)

ἀναβεβλημένη περὶ αὐτὸ, καὶ ἐπὶ
having-been-thrown-up around this (place), and (there-were)

τῆς ἀναβολῆς σκόλοπες, καὶ ξύλιναι τύρσεις
the rampart palisades, and (also) wooden towers

πυκναὶ πεποιημέναι), δὴ ἐπε-
close-together having-been-made) (on the mound or rampart), indeed they-

χείρουν ἀπιέναι· δὲ οἱ ἐπέκειντο αὐτοῖς
attempted to-depart, but the (Drilæ) pressed-upon them.

Δὲ ὡς οὐκ ἐδύναντο ἀποτρέχειν
But (the Greeks), as they-were not able to-retreat

(γὰρ ἡ κατάβασις ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου εἰς τὴν χαράδραν
(for the passage-down from the place to the ravine

ἦν ἐφ' ἑνός). πέμπουσι πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, ὃς
was for one (only), sent to Xenophon, who

ἡγεῖτο τοῖς ὁπλίταις. Δ' ὁ ἐλθὼν
led the heavy-armed-men. And the (messenger) having-gone

λέγει, ὅτι χωρίον ἔστι μεστὸν πολλῶν
said, that (the) place is full of-many

χρημάτων· οὔτε δυνάμεθα λαβεῖν τοῦτο·
things, nor were-we-able to-take this (place);

γὰρ ἐστιν ἰσχυρόν· οὔτε ἀπελθεῖν ῥᾴδιον· γὰρ
for it-is strong; or to-retreat easily; for

ἐπεξελήλυθότες μάχονται, καὶ ἡ ἄφοδος
(the enemy) having-marched-out fight (us), and the way-from

χαλεπή.
(it is) difficult.

Ἀκούσας ταῦτα ὁ Ξενοφῶν, προσαγαγὼν
Having-heard these (things) — Xenophon, leading-forward

πρὸς τὴν χαράδραν, ἐκέλευσε μὲν τοὺς
(his men) to the ravine, ordered — the

ὁπλίτας θέσθαι τὰ ὅπλα· αὐτὸς δὲ,
heavy-armed-men to-stand — (under) arms; he indeed,

διαβὰς σὺν τοῖς λοχαγοῖς, ἐσκοπεῖτο πότερον
having-crossed-over with the captains, considered whether

εἴη κρεῖττον ἀπάγειν καὶ τοὺς
it-might-be better to-lead-back also — (those) having (already)

διαβεβηκότας, ἢ καὶ διαβιβάζειν τοὺς ὁπλίτας,
crossed-over, or even to-lead-over the heavy-armed-men.

ὡς ἂν τοῦ χωρίου ἁλόντος. Γὰρ ἐδόκει μὲν
as — (hoping) the place being-taken. For it-seemed indeed

τὸ ἀπάγειν οὐκ εἶναι ἄνευ πολλῶν
(the) to-lead (the men) back not to-be (possible) without many

νεκρῶν, δ' ἂν οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ ᾠοντο ἑλεῖν
dead | and — the captains even were-of-opinion to-take

τὸ χωρίον.
the place [and the captains were of the opinion that the place could

Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ξυνεχώρησε, πιστεύσας
be taken]. And — Xenophon yielded, having-confided

τοῖς ἱεροῖς· γὰρ οἱ μάντεις ἀποδεδειγμένοι ἦσαν,
in-the sacrifices; for the augurs had-shown,

ὅτι μὲν ἔσται μάχη, δὲ τὸ τέλος τῆς
that indeed there-would-be (a) battle, and (that) the termination of-the

ἐξόδου καλὸν. Καὶ μὲν ἔπεμπε τοὺς
excursion (would be) favourable. And — he-sent the

λοχαγοὺς διαβιβάσοντας τοὺς
captains | being-about-bringing-over [to bring over] the

ὁπλίτας, δ' αὐτὸς ἔμενεν ἀναχωρίσας ἅπαντας
heavy-armed-men, but he-himself remained having-kept-back all

τοὺς πελταστάς, καὶ εἴα οὐδένα ἀκροβο-
the targeteers, and allowed none (of them) to-skir-

λίζεσθαι. Ἐπεὶ δ' οἱ ὁπλῖται ἦκον,
mish (with the enemy). When indeed the heavy-armed-men came,

ἐκέλευσε ἕκαστον τῶν λοχαγῶν ποιῆσαι τὸν
he-ordered each of-the captains to-form — (his)

λόχον ὡς ἂν οἴηται κράτιστα ἀγωνιεῖσθαι·
company as he might think the-best to-fight (with);

γὰρ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἦσαν πλησίον ἀλλήλων, οἳ
for the captains were near to-one-another, who

πάντα τὸν χρόνον ἀντεποιοῦντο ἀλλήλοις περὶ
at-all — times contended with-one-another about

ἀνδραγαθίας. Καὶ οἱ μὲν ἐποίουν ταῦτα·
deeds-of-valour. And — (they) indeed did these (things,

δ' ὁ παρήγγειλε πᾶσι τοῖς πελτασταῖς ἰέναι
and — he-ordered all the targeteers to-go

διηγκυλωμένους, ὡς δεῆσον ἀκοντίζειν
holding-their-javelins-by-the-thong, as it-would-be-necessary to-hurl

ὁπόταν σημήνῃ, καὶ τοὺς τοξότας ἐπιβε-
whenever he-might-give-the-signal, and the archers to-have

βλῆσθαι ἐπὶ ταῖς νευραῖς, ὡς δεῆσον
placed (the arrows) on the string, as it-would-be-necessary

τοξεύειν ὁπόταν σημήνῃ, καὶ τοὺς γυμνῆτας,
to-shoot whenever he-might-give-the-signal, and the light-armed

ἔχειν τὰς διφθέρας μεστὰς λίθων·
(slingers) to-have — (their) bags-made-of-skins full of-stones;

καὶ ἔπεμψε τοὺς ἐπιτηδείους τούτων
and he-sent — (those) fit to-have these (things)

ἐπιμεληθῆναι. Ἐπεὶ δὲ πάντα παρεσκεύαστο,
taken-care-of. When indeed all had-been-prepared,

καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ ὑπολοχαγοὶ, καὶ οἱ
and the captains and the lieutenants, and — (those)

ἀξιοῦντες μὴ εἶναι χείρους τούτων, πάντες
esteeming (themselves) not to-be inferior (to) these, all

παρατεταγμένοι ἦσαν, καὶ μὲν δὴ ξυνεώρων
were-drawn-up-in-order, and indeed truly they-beheld

ἀλλήλους· (γὰρ ἡ τάξις διὰ
one-another; (for the order (in which they were drawn up), from

τὸ χωρίον ἦν μηνοειδής). Ἐπεὶ δ'
(the nature of) the place, was (a) crescent). When indeed

ἐπαιάνισαν, καὶ ἡ σάλπιγξ ἐφθέγξατο,
they-had-sung-the-pæan, and the trumpet had-sounded,

ἅμα τε ἠλάλαξαν τῷ Ἐνυαλίῳ, καὶ
at-the-same-time also they-raised-the-war-cry to — Enyalius, and

οἱ ὁπλῖται ἔθεον δρόμῳ· καὶ τὰ
the heavy-armed-men ran, (as) in (a) race, (fast); and the

βέλη ἐφέρετο ὁμοῦ λόγχαι, τοξεύματα
missiles were-thrown together, (namely,) lances, arrows,

σφενδόναι, δὲ πλεῖστοι λίθοι ἐκ τῶν
balls-and-stones-from-slings, and many stones from the

χειρῶν· δὲ ἦσαν οἳ καὶ προσέφερον πῦρ.
hands; and there-were (some) who even threw fire

Ὑπὸ δὲ πλέθυος τῶι βελῶν
(at the place). On-account therefore 'of (the) 'multitude of-the missiles

οἱ πολέμιοι ἔλιπον τε τὰ σταυρώματα καὶ τὰς
the enemy deserted not-only the palisades but-also the

τύρσεις· ὥστε Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος καὶ Φι-
towers; so-that Agasias (the) Stymphalian and Phi-

λόξενος Πελληνεύς, καταθέμενοι τὰ ὅπλα
loxenus (the) Pellenian, having-put-down — (their) arms,

ἀνεβησαν ἐν χιτῶνι μόνον, καὶ ἄλλος
mounted (the rampart) in (their) tunics only, and one

εἵλκε ἄλλον, καὶ ἄλλος ἀναβεβήκει, καὶ, ὡς
drew-up another, and another climbed-up, and, as

ἐδόκει, τὸ χωρίον ἡλώκει. Καὶ μὲν οἱ πελτασταὶ
it-appears the place was-taken. And — the targeteers

καὶ οἱ ψιλοὶ εἰσδραλόντες ἥρπαζον ὅ τι ἕκαστος
and the light-armed-men running-in took whatever each-one

ἐδύνατο· ὁ Ξενοφῶν δὲ στὰς κατὰ τὰς πύλας
could; — Xenophon indeed standing at the gates

κατεκώλυε ἔξω ὁπόσους ἐδύνατο τῶν ὁπλιτῶν·
detained without as-many-as he-could of-the heavy-armed-men;

γὰρ ἄλλοι πολέμιοι ἐφαίνοντο ἐπὶ τισὶν ἰσχυροῖς
for other enemies appeared on some strong

ἄκροις. Μεταξὺ δὲ οὐ πολλοῦ χρόνου
heights. In-the-mean-while, indeed no long time

γενομένου ἐγίγνετο τε κραυγὴ ἔνδον, καὶ οἱ
having-occurred, there-was — (a) noise within, and the

ἔφευγον οἱ μὲν καὶ ἔχοντες ἃ ἔλαβον,
men) fled, — (some) indeed even having what they-had-taken,

τάχα δὲ τις καὶ τετρωμένος· καὶ ἦν πολὺς
presently also some even wounded; and there-was much

ὠθισμὸς ἀμφὶ τὰ θύρετρα. Καὶ οἳ
crowding-and-pressing about the gates. And — (these)

ἐκπίπτοντες ἐρωτώμενοι ἔλεγον, ὅτι ἄκρα τέ
rushing-out being-questioned said, that (a) citadel indeed

ἐστιν ἔνδον, καὶ πολλοί οἱ πολέμιοι, οἳ ἐκδεδρα-
is within, and many (of) the enemy, who sallying-

μηκότες, παίουσι τοὺς ἀνθρώπους ἔνδον.
forth, fell-on the men within.

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐκέλευσε Τολμίδην τὸν κήρυκα
Then (Xenophon) ordered Tolmides the crier

ἀνειπεῖν τὸν βουλόμενον λαμβάνειν τι
to-proclaim (that) — (those) desiring to-take anything

ἰέναι εἴσω. Καὶ πολλοὶ ἵεντο εἴσω, καὶ οἱ
might-go within. And many rushed within, and — (those)

ὠθούμενοι εἴσω νικῶσι τοὺς ἐκπίπτοντας,
pushing (to get) within overcome — (those) pressing-out,

καὶ πάλιν κατακλείουσι τοὺς πολεμίους εἰς
and they again shut-up the enemy in

τὴν ἄκραν. Καὶ μὲν πάντα ἔξω τῆς ἄκρας
the citadel. And indeed all (things) without the citadel

διηρπάσθη, καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐξεκομίσαντο·
were-seized, and the Greeks carried (them) out,

δὲ οἱ ὁπλῖται ἔσθεντο τὰ ὅπλα, οἱ μὲν
and the heavy-armed-men stood — (under) arms, — (some) indeed

περὶ τὰ σταυρώματα, δὲ οἱ κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν
about the palisades, and — (others) along the road

τῆν φέρουσαν ἐπὶ τὴν ἄκραν. Ὁ Ξενο-
— (that, namely,) leading to the citadel. — Xeno-

φῶν δὲ καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἐσκόπουν, εἰ εἴη
phon indeed and the captains began-to-consider, if it-might-be

οἷόν τε λαβεῖν τὴν ἄκραν· γὰρ ἦν οὕτω
possible to-take the citadel; for (if) it-were so

σωτηρία ἀσπαλής· ἄλλως δὲ ἐδόκει
(their) safety (would be) sure; otherwise indeed it-seemed

εἶναι πάνυ χαλεπὸν ἀπελθεῖν· δὲ τὸ χωρίον
to-be extremely difficult to-retire; and the place

ἔδοξε αὐτοῖς σκοπουμένοις εἶναι παντάπασιν
seemed to-them (after) having-explored (it) to-be altogether

ἀνάλωτον. Ἐνταῦθα παρεσκευάζοντο τὴν
impregnable. Then they-began-to-prepare (for) the

ἄφοδον, καὶ ἕκαστοι μὲν διῄρουν τοὺς
retreat, and each (of the men) indeed pulled-up the

σταυροὺς τοὺς καθ' αὑτούς, καὶ ἐξεπέμ-
palisades — (those namely) near themselves, and they-sent-

ποντο τοὺς ἀχρείους καὶ ἔχοντας
out (of the place) the useless (persons) and (those) having

φορτία, καὶ τὸ πλῆθος τῶν ὁπλιτῶν· οἱ δὲ
burdens, also the multitude of-the heavy-armed-men; but the

λοχαγοὶ κατέλιπον οἷς ἕκαστος
captains left (remaining those) in-whom each

ἐπίστευεν.
confided

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤρξαντο ἀποχωρεῖν, πολλοὶ
After indeed they-commenced to-retreat, many (of the enemy)

ἐπεξέθεον ἔνδοθεν, ἔχοντες γέρρα
sallied-forth from-within (the citadel), having (Persian) shields

καὶ λόγχας, καὶ κνημῖδας καὶ Παφλαγονικὰ κράνη·
and lances, and greaves and Paphlagonian helmets;

καὶ ἄλλοι ἀνέβαινον ἐπὶ τὰς οἰκίας τὰς
and others went-up on the houses — (namely those)

ἔνθεν καὶ ἔνθεν τῆς ὁδοῦ φερούσης εἰς
on-this-side and (those) on-that-side of-the way leading to

τὴν ἄκραν. Ὥστε ἦν οὐδὲ ἀσφαλὲς διώκειν
the citadel. So-that it-was not-even safe to-pursue (them)

κατὰ τὰς πύλας τὰς φερούσας εἰς τὴν
to the gates — (those namely) leading to the

ἄκραν. Καὶ γὰρ ἐπερρίπτουν ἄνωθεν μεγάλα
citadel. And indeed they-threw-on (them) from-above large

ξύλα, ὥστε ἦν καὶ χαλεπὸν μένειν καὶ
(logs of) wood, so-that it-was both dangerous to-remain and

ἀπιέναι· καὶ ἡ νὺξ ἐπιοῦσα ἦν φοβερά. Δὲ
to-retreat; and the night coming-on it-was dreadful. But

αὐτῶν μαχομένων καὶ ἀπορουμένων τις θεῶν
they fighting and perplexed some-one of (the) gods

δίδωσιν αὐτοῖς μηχανὴν σωτηρίας. Γὰρ ἐξαπίνης
save them (the) means of-safety. For suddenly

οἰκία τῶν ἐν δεξιᾷ ἀνέλαμψεν, ὅτου
(a) house of —(those) on (the) right having-burst-out-in-flames, whoever

δή ἐνάψαντος. Ὡς δ' αὕτη ξυνέ-
truly (it may be) having-set-fire-to (it). As indeed this (house) fell-

πιπτεν, ἔφευγον οἱ ἀπὸ τῶν οἰκιῶν
in, (the enemy) fled, —(those namely) from the houses

ἐν δεξιᾷ. Ὡς δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἔμαθε τοῦτο
on (the) right. As indeed — Xenophon learned this

παρὰ τῆς τύχης, ἐκέλευε καὶ ἐνάπτειν τὰς
from — fortune, he-ordered (them) also to-set-fire (to) the

οἰκίας ἐν ἀριστερᾷ, αἳ ἦσαν ξύλιναι,
houses on (the) left, which (as) they-were wooden, were

ὥστε καὶ ταχὺ ἐκαίοντο. Οἱ ἔφευγον οὖν καὶ
also even immediately on-fire. — They-fled therefore even

ἀπὸ τούτων τῶν οἰκιῶν. Οἱ δὲ μόνοι
from these — (same) houses. — (Those) indeed alone

κατὰ τὸ στόμα δὴ ἔτι ἐλύπουν,
along the front (or direction of the army) truly any-more annoyed

καὶ ἦσαν δῆλοι ὅτι ἐπικείσονται ἐν τῇ
(them), and it-was evident that they-would-fall-on (them) on —

ἐξόδῳ τε καὶ καταβάσει.
(their) departure and also (on their) descent (from the plain).

Ἐνταῦθα παραγγέλλει φέρειν ξύλα,
Then he (Xenophon) ordered (them) to-bring wood,

ὅσοι ἐτύγχανον ὄντες ἔξω
(namely) such (men) as happened being without (the reach)

τῶν βελῶν, εἰς τὸ μέσον ἑαυτῶν καὶ τῶν
of-the missiles, into the middle (between) themselves and the

πολεμίων. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦν ἤδη ἱκανὰ
enemy. And when there-was now (a) sufficient (quantity)

ἐνῆψαν· δὲ καὶ ἐνῆπτον τὰς οἰκίας,
they-set (it) on-fire; and also they-set-fire-to the houses

παρὰ τὸ αὐτὸ χαράκωμα ὅπως οἱ πολέμιοι ἔχοιεν
along the very palisading, so-that the enemy might-have

ἀμφὶ ταῦτα. Οὕτω μόλις
(their mind occupied) about these (things) Thus with-difficulty

ἀπῆλθον ἀπὸ τοῦ χωρίου, ποιησάμενοι πῦρ
they-departed from the place, having-made (a) fire

ἐν μέσῳ ἑαυτῶν καὶ τῶν πολεμίων. Καὶ
in (the) middle (between) themselves and the enemy. And

πᾶσα ἡ πόλις κατεκαύθη, καὶ αἱ οἰκίαι, καὶ αἱ
all the town was-burnt, and the houses, and the

τύρσεις, καὶ τὰ σταυρώματα, καὶ πάντα
towers, and the palisading, and all (things)

τἄλλα, πλὴν τῆς ἄκρας.
else, except the citadel.

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἀπῆεσαν, ἔχοντες
And on-the next-day the Greeks departed, having

τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἐφοβοῦντο τὴν κατάβασιν
— provisions. But as they-feared the descent

τὴν εἰς Τραπεζοῦντα, (γὰρ ἦν πρανὴς
— (namely that) to Trebisond, (for it-was steep

καὶ στενή,) ἐποιήσαντο ψευδενέδραν. Καὶ
and narrow,) they-made (a) false-ambuscade. And (a)

ἀνὴρ Μυσὸς τὸ γένος, καὶ ἔχων τοῦτο τοὔνομα,
man (a) Mysian — by-birth, and having this same-name

λαβὼν δέκα Κρητῶν, ἔμενεν ἐν λασίῳ
(Mysus), taking ten Cretans, he-remained in (a) bushy

χωρίῳ, καὶ προσεποιεῖτο πειρᾶσθαι λανθάνειν
place, and did-as-if to-attempt to-conceal

τοὺς πολεμίους· δ' αἱ πέλται αὐτῶν,
(himself from) the enemy; and the shields of-them,

οὖσαι χαλκαῖ, διεφαίνοντο
being brass, [1]appeared (glittering) [1]through (the bushes)

ἄλλοτε καὶ ἄλλοτε. Οὖν μὲν οἱ πολέμιοι
from-time — to-time. Therefore indeed the enemy

διορῶντες ταῦτα ἐφοβοῦτο ὡς οὖσαν
perceiving these (things) feared (it) as being (a real,

ἐνέδραν· δὲ ἡ στρατιὰ ἐν τούτῳ κατέβαινεν
ambuscade; and the army during this (time) descended.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει τῷ Μυσῷ ἤδη
When indeed it-seemed to — Mysus (that the Greeks) now

ὑπεληλυθέναι ἱκανόν, ἐσήμηνε φεύγειν ἀνὰ
had-advanced sufficiently (far), he-gave-the-signal to-flee with

κράτος· καὶ ὃς ἐξαναστὰς φεύγει, καὶ
'all (their) 'might; and who getting-up flees, as-also

οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ. Καὶ μὲν οἱ ἄλλοι Κρῆτες,
— (those) with him. And indeed the other Cretans,

ἐκπεσόντες ἐκ τῆς ὁδοῦ (γὰρ ἔφασαν
departing from the road (for they-said (that they)

ἁλίτκεσθαι τῷ δρόμῳ) ἐσώθησαν κυλιν-
were-getting-caught in-the race) saved (themselves) roll-

δούμενοι εἰς ὕλην κατὰ τὰς νάπας. Δὲ
ing-down into (the) woods among the bushy-hollows. But

ὁ Μυσὸς φεύγων κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν, ἐβόα
Mysus fleeing along the road, he-called-out (for them)

βοηθεῖν· καὶ ἐβοήθησαν αὐτῷ, καὶ ἀπέλαβον
to-help (him); and they-helped him, and 'took

τετρωμένον. Καὶ οἱ αὐτοὶ βοηθήσαντες
(him) 'off wounded. And — those having-helped (him)

ἀνεχώρουν ἐπὶ πόδα βαλλόμενοι,
| retreated on foot [retreated slowly step by step] being-thrown-at

καὶ τινες τῶν Κρητῶν ἀντιτοξεύοντες.
(by the enemy), and some of-the Cretans 'shot

Οὕτως ἀφίκοντο ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον,
(their) 'arrows-in-return. Thus they-arrived at the camp

πάντες ὄντες σῶοι.
all being safe.

## CHAPTER III

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Χειρίσοφος οὔτε ἦκεν, οὔτε ἦν
When indeed — Cheirisophus neither came, nor were-there

ἱκανὰ πλοῖα, οὔτε ἦν ἔτι λαμβά-
sufficient vessels, nor was-there any-more (any place where) to-pro-

νειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐδόκει εἶναι ἀπιτέον. Καὶ
cure the provisions, it-seemed to-be necessary-to-depart. And

μὲν ἐνεβίβασαν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα τε τοὺς
indeed they-placed on board the vessels not-only — (those)

ἀσθενοῦντας, καὶ τοὺς ὑπὲρ τετταράκοντα
being-infirm, but-also — (those) above forty

ἔτη, καὶ παῖδας καὶ γυναῖκας, καὶ
(years of) age, and (the) children and women, and

τῶν σκευῶν ὅσα ἦν μὴ ἀνάγκη ἔχειν·
of-the baggage such-as it-was not necessary to-have (with them),

καὶ Φιλήσιον καὶ Σοφαίνετον τοὺς πρεσβυτάτους
and Philesius and Sophænetus the oldest

τῶν στρατηγῶν εἰσβιβάσαντες, ἐκέλευον ἐπι-
of-the generals going-on-board, they-ordered (them) to-

μελεῖσθαι τούτων· δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο· ἡ
take-charge of-them; but the others marched-forth; the

ὁδὸς δὲ ὡδοπεποιημένη ἦν. Καὶ πορευόμενοι
road indeed having-been-made. And proceeding-forth

ἀφικνοῦνται τριταῖοι εἰς Κερασοῦντα, Ἑλληνίδα
they-arrived (in) three-days at Cerasus, (a) Grecian

πόλιν ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ, ἄποικον Σινωπέων,
city on (the) sea (coast), (a) colony (of the) Sinopians,

ἐν τῇ Κολχίδι χώρᾳ. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν δέκα
in the Colchian country. Here they-remained ten

ἡμέρας· καὶ ἐγιγνετο ἐξέτασις ἐν τοῖς
days; and there-was (a) review (of those) under —

ὅπλοις καὶ ἀριθμός, καὶ ἐγένοντο ὀκτακισχίλιοι
arms and-also (an) enumeration, and there-were eight-thousand

καὶ ἑξακόσιοι. Οὗτοι ἐσώθησαν ἐκ τῶν
and six-hundred. These were-saved out-of — (those at first)

ἀμφὶ τοὺς μυρίους· δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι ἀπώλοντο τε
about — ten-thousand, and the others had-been-destroyed not-only

ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων, καὶ χιόνος, καὶ εἴ τις
by the enemy, but-also (by the) snow, and if any

νόσῳ.
by-sickness.

Καὶ ἐνταῦθα διαλαμβάνουσι τὸ ἀργύριον
And here they-distribute the money

γενόμενον ἀπὸ τῶν αἰχμαλώτων. Καὶ τὴν
got from (the sale) of-the prisoners. And the

δεκάτην, ἣν ἐξεῖλον Ἀπόλλωνι
tenth (part), which they-took-out (and set apart) for-Apollo

καὶ τῇ Ἐφεσίᾳ Ἀρτέμιδι, οἱ στρατηγοὶ διέλα-
and the Ephesian Diana, the generals took-among-them-

βον, ἕκαστος τὸ μέρος, φυλάττειν τοῖς
selves, each-one — (his) part, to-keep (it) for — (these)

θεοῖς· δὲ Νέων ὁ Ἀσιναῖος ἔλαβε ἀντὶ
gods; and Neon the Asinæian took (the part) in-place

Χειρισόφου. Ξενοφῶν οὖν ποιησάμενος
of-Cheirisophus. Xenophon therefore having-made (and set aside

ἀνάθημα τὸ μὲν τοῦ Ἀπόλλωνος,
out of his part an) offering — (that) indeed for — Apollo,

ἀνατίθησιν εἰς τὸν θησαυρὸν τῶν Ἀθηναίων
deposits (it) in the treasury of-the Athenians

ἐν Δελφοῖς, καὶ ἐπέγραψε τό τε ὄνομα αὐτοῦ
in Delphis, and he-inscribed (on it) the — name of-himself

καὶ τὸ Προξένου, ὃς ἀπέθανε σὺν Κλεάρχῳ·
and — (that) of-Proxenus, who died with Clearchus;

γαρ ἦν ξένος αὐτοῦ. Δὲ τὸ
for (Proxenus) was (the) guest-friend of-himself. But the (part)

τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος τῆς Ἐφεσίας, ὅτε ἀπῄει σὺν
of — Diana of — Ephesus, when he-departed with

Ἀγησιλάῳ ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας εἰς τὴν ὁδὸν Βοιωτούς,
Agesilaus from — Asia into the road (to) Bœotia

καταλείπει παρὰ Μεγαβύζῳ τῷ νεωκόρῳ τῆς
he-left with Megabyzus the warden of- he (temple

Ἀρτέμιδος, ὅτι αὐτὸς ἐδόκει ἰέναι κινδυνεύσων,
of Diana, as he seemed to-go about-incurring-danger,

καὶ ἐπέστειλεν, ἢν μὲν αὐτὸς σωθῇ, ἀπο-
and enjoined-on (him), if indeed he should-be-saved, to-

δοῦναι αὐτῷ· δὲ ἢν πάθῃ τι
return (the money) to-himself; but if he-suffered any-thing [but

ἀναθεῖναι, ποιησάμενοι
if he lost his life] to-dedicate (it), having-made (and set it apart)

τῇ Ἀρτέμιδι, ὅ τι οἰοιτο χαριεῖσθαι τῇ
for — Diana, whatever he-might-think to-be-agreeable to-the

θεῷ. Δ' ἐπεὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἔφευγε αὐτοῦ
goddess. But when — Xenophon was-in-banishment (and) he

ἤδη κατοικοῦντος ἐν Σκιλλοῦντι, οἰκισθέντος παρὰ
now dwelling in Scillus, having-been-settled near

τὴν Ὀλυμπίαν ὑπὸ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων, Μεγάβυζος
— Olympia by the Lacedæmonians, Megabyzus

ἀφικνεῖται εἰς Ὀλυμπίαν θεωρήσων,
came to Olympia | about-seeing-the-public-games, [for the

καὶ ἀποδίδωσι
purpose of being present at the Olympian games,] and he-returned

τὴν παρακαταθήκην αὐτῷ. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν λαβών
the deposit to-him. And Xenophon taking (it)

ὠνεῖται χωρίον τῇ θεῷ, ὅπου ὁ θεός
buys (a) piece-of-land for-the goddess, where the god

ἀνεῖλε. Δὲ ποταμὸς Σελινοῦς
had-directed (him) by-a-response. And (the) river Selinus

ἔτυχε ῥέων διὰ μέσου τοῦ χωρίου.
happened running [ran] through (the) middle of — (this) piece-of-land.

Καὶ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ δὲ ποταμὸς Σελινοῦς παραῤῥεῖ
And in Ephesus also (a) river Selinus runs-by

παρὰ τὸν νεὼν τῆς Ἀρτέμιδος, καὶ δὲ ἐν ἀμφοτέροι
along the temple of — Diana, and also in both

ἔνεισι ἰχθύες καὶ κόγχαι· ἐν δὲ τῷ χωρίῳ
there-are fish and shell-fish; in indeed — (this) piece-of-land

ἐν Σκιλλοῦντι καὶ θῆραι πάντων,
in Scillus (there are) also hunts of-all (kind, espe-

ὁπόσα ἐστὶν ἀγρευόμενα θηρία. Δὲ καὶ
cially of) such-as are hunted wild-beasts. And also

ἐποιησε βωμὸν καὶ ναὸν ἀπὸ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ἀργυρίου,
he-made (an) altar and (a) temple with the sacred money,

καὶ τὸ λοιπὸν δὲ ἀεὶ δεκατεύων τὰ
and (for) the rest (of time) also always taking-the-tenth (of) the

ὡραῖα ἐκ τοῦ ἀγροῦ ἐποίει θυσίαν τῇ θεῷ·
season's (produce) from the land he-made (a) sacrifice to-the goddess;

καὶ πάντες οἱ πολῖται καὶ οἱ πρόσχωροι ἄνδρες
and all the citizens and the neighbouring men

καὶ γυναῖκες μετεῖχον τῆς ἑορτῆς.
and women participated (in) the festival (following the sacri-

Δὲ ἡ θεὸς παρεῖχε τοῖς σκηνῶσιν
fice). And the goddess supplied —(those who) might-be-encamped

ἄλφιτα, ἄρτους, οἶνον, τραγήματα, καὶ
(with) barley-meal, bread, wine, sweatmeats, and (a)

λάχος τῶν θυομένων ἀπὸ τῆς ἱερᾶς νομῆς, καὶ
share of-the victims from the sacred pastures, and

τῶν θερευομένων δὲ. Γὰρ καὶ τε οἱ παῖδες
of — (those) hunted also. For also not-only the sons

Ξενοφῶντος ἐποιοῦντο θήραν εἰς τὴν ἑορτὴν,
of-Xenophon made (a) hunt for the festival,

καὶ οἱ τῶν ἄλλων πολιτῶν· οἱ ἄνδρες
but-also — (those) of-the other citizens; — (those) men

δὲ βουλόμενοι καὶ ξυνεθήρων· καὶ ἥλισ-
namely desiring (it) also hunted-with (them); and there

κετο τὰ μέν ἐξ αὐτοῦ τοῦ ἱεροῦ
were-caught — (partly) indeed from this the (same) sacred

χώρου, δὲ καὶ τὰ ἐκ τῆς Φολόης, σύες καὶ
place, and also — (partly) from — Pholoë, boars and

δορκάδες καὶ ἔλαφοι. Δὲ ἡ χώρα
antelopes and deer. And — (this sacred) piece-of-land

ἔστιν ᾗ πορεύονται ἐκ Λακεδαίμονος εἰς
is (on the road) by-which they-go from Lacedæmon to

Ὀλυμπιαν, ὡς εἴκοσι στάδιοι ἀπὸ τοῦ ἱεροῦ Διὸς
Olympia, about thirty stadia from the temple of Jupiter

ἐν Ὀλυμπίᾳ. Ἔνι δ' ἐν τῷ ἱερῷ χώρῳ
in Olympia. There-are-within also in — (this) sacred place

καὶ λειμὼν καὶ ἄλση καὶ ὄρη μεστά δένδρων,
also meadows and groves and hills full of-trees,

ἱκανὰ τρέφειν καὶ σῦς καὶ αἶγας καὶ βοῦς καὶ
adapted to-breeding as-well swine as goats and oxen and

ἵππους, ὥστε καὶ τὰ ὑποζύγια, τῶν ἰόντων
horses, so-that also the cattle, — (of those) going

εἰς τὴν ἑορτήν, εὐωχεῖσθαι. Δε περὶ τὸν
to the festival, are-well-supplied-with-food. And round the

ναὸν αὐτὸν ἔφυτεύθη ἄλσος ἡμέρων δένδρων,
temple itself is-planted (a) grove of-cultivated trees,

ὅσα ἐστὶ τρωκτὰ ὡραῖα. Δ' ὁ
(bearing) such (fruits) as are eatable in-different-seasons. And the

ναός εἰκασται τῷ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ ὡς μικρὸς
temple is-like to — (that) in Ephesus (in) as (far as a) small

μεγάλῳ, καὶ τὸ ξόανον
(one may be compared) with (a) large (one), and the statue

ἔοικεν τῷ ἐν Ἐφέσῳ, ὡς κυπα-
is-like to — (that) in Ephesus, (in) as (much as) one (being) of-

ρίττινον ὄντι χρυσῷ. Καὶ στήλη
cypress (is like to one) being of-gold. And (a) pillar

ἕστηκε παρὰ τὸν ναόν ἔχουσα γράμματα·
stood near the temple having (this) inscription:

Ο ΧΩΡΟΣ ΙΕΡΟΣ ΤΗΣ ΑΡΤΕΜΙΔΟΣ.
— (This) ground (is) sacred — (to) Diana.

ΔΕ ΤΟΝ ΕΧΟΝΤΑ ΚΑΙ ΚΑΡΠΟΥΜΕΝΟΝ
And — (he) possessing (it) and gathering

ΚΑΤΑΘΥΕΙΝ ΕΚΑΣΤΟΥ ΕΤΟΥΣ
the) fruit (thereof) is-to-offer-in-sacrifice each year

ΤΗΝ ΜΕΝ ΔΕΚΑΤΗΝ. ΔΕ ΕΚ
the — tenth (part of this produce). And from

ΤΟΥ ΠΕΡΙΤΤΟΥ ΕΠΙΣΚΕΥΑΖΕΙΝ ΤΟΝ ΝΑΟΝ.
the residue to-keep-in-repair the temple

ΑΝ ΤΙΣ ΔΕ ΜΗ ΠΟΙΗΙ ΤΑΥΤΑ
If any-one indeed ⁱshould not ⁱperform these

ΜΕΛΗΣΕΙ ΤΗΙ ΘΕΩΙ.
(conditions) it-will-be-a-care to-the goddess (to remember it).

## CHAPTER IV.

Ἐκ Κερασοῦντος δὲ οἱ καὶ πρόσθεν
From Cerasus — those-who (had) even before

ἐκομίζοντο μὲν κατὰ θάλατταν,
(been on board) ⁱwere (again) ⁱcarried — by sea,

δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο κατὰ γῆν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν
but the rest proceeded by land. But when they-were

ἐπὶ τοῖς ὁρίοις Μοσσυνοίκων, πέμπουσιν εἰς
on the confines ⁱof (the) ⁱMossynœci, they-send to

αὐτοὺς Τιμησίθεον τὸν Τραπεζούντιον, ὄντα
them Timesitheus the Trapezian, being (the)

πρόξενον τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων, ἐρωτῶντες
public-friend-and-entertainer of-the Mossynœci, inquiring

πότερον πορεύσονται τῆς χώρας ὡς διὰ
whether they-might-proceed-through — (their) country as through

φιλίας, ἢ ὡς διὰ πολεμίας Ἐκεῖνοι δὲ οἱ
(a) friendly (one), or as through (an) inimical (one). And — —

εἶπον ὅτι οὐ διήσοιεν, γὰρ
they-said that they-ⁱwould not ⁱallow (them) ⁱto-pass-through, for

ἐπίστευον τοῖς χωρίοις. Ἐντεῦθεν ὁ Τιμη
they-trusted to — (their) strong-places. Then — Time-

σίθεος λέγει, ὅτι οἱ ἐκ τοῦ
sitheus says, that — (those of the Mossynœci) from —

ἐπέκεινα εἰσὶν πολέμιοι αὐτοῖς. Καὶ ἐδόκει
beyond (them) were enemies to-them. And it-seemed-best

καλέσαι ἐκείνους, εἰ βούλοιντο ποιήσασθαι
ⁱto-call-on them (to know), if they-might-wish to-make

ξυμμαχίαν· καὶ ὁ Τιμησίθεος πεμφθεὶς
an) alliance (with the Greeks); and — Timesitheus having-been-sent

ἦκεν ἄγων τοὺς ἄρχοντας. Ἐπεὶ
(to them) came bringing — (their) rulers (or chiefs). When

δὲ ἀφίκοντο, τε οἱ ἄρχοντες τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων,
indeed they-arrived, not-only the chiefs of-the Mossynœci,

καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων, συνῆλθον·
but-also the generals of-the Greeks, came-together;

καὶ μὲν Ξενοφῶν ἔλεξε, δὲ Τιμησίθεος ἡρμήνευε·
and indeed Xenophon spoke, and Timesitheus interpreted

Ὦ Μοσσύνοικοι ἄνδρες, ἡμεῖς βουλόμεθα δια-
O Mossynœan men, we desire [to

σωθῆναι πρὸς τὴν Ἑλλάδα πεζῇ·
'save (ourselves) 'through into the Greece on-foot,

γὰρ ἔχομεν οὐ πλοῖα· δὲ
[to go safely into Greece on foot;] for we-have no ships, and

οὗτοι κωλύουσι ἡμᾶς, οὓς ἀκούμεν εἶναι
those (people) oppose us, whom we-hear to-be

πολεμίους ὑμῖν. Εἰ οὖν βούλεσθε, ἔξεστιν ὑμῖν
enemies to-you. If therefore you-wish, it-is-allowed you

λαβεῖν ἡμᾶς ξυμμάχους, καὶ τιμωρήσασθαι,
to-take us (as) allies, and to-avenge-yourselves,

εἴ ποτε οὗτοι ἠδικήκασιν ὑμᾶς τι, καὶ
if at-any-time these (people) may-have-injured you (in) any-thing, and

τούτους εἶναι ὑπηκόους ὑμῶν
(you may have) these (people) (so as) to-be subject (to) you

τὸ λοιπὸν. Δὲ εἰ ἀφήσετε ἡμᾶς, σκέψασθε
(for) the rest (of time). But if you will-reject us, consider

πόθεν ἂν αὖθις λάβοιτε τοσαύτην δύναμιν
whence 'you may again 'procure such (a) force

ξύμμαχον. Πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ ἄρχων
as an) ally. To this the ruler (or head chief)

τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων ἀπεκρίνατο, ὅτι καὶ βούλοιντο
of-the Mossynœci replied, that 'they both 'desired

ταῦτα, καὶ δέχοιντο τὴν ξυμμαχίαν. Ἄγετε
this, and accepted the alliance. [Bring

δή, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, τί δεήσεσθε χρή-
then, [well then,] said — Xenophon, in-what do-you-want to-

σασθαι ἡμῶν, ἂν γεγώμεθα ξύμμαχοι ὑμῶν;
make-use of-us, if we-become allies of-you?

καὶ τί ἔσεσθε οἷοί τε ὑμεῖς ξυμπρᾶξαι ἡμῖν
and in-what will-it-be possible for-you to-assist us

περὶ τῆς διόδου· Δὲ οἱ εἶπον ὅτι
as-respects the journey-through (the country)? And — they-said that

ἐσμεν ἱκανοί εἰςβάλλειν ἐκ τοῦ ἐπὶ
we-are sufficient (and able) to-make-an-irruption | from the (side) on

θάτερα εἰς τὴν χώραν τὴν
side [from the farther side] into the country — (namely that)

τῶν πολεμίων ὑμῖν τε καὶ ἡμῖν, καὶ πέμψαι
of-the enemies of-you as also of-us, and to-send

δεῦρο ὑμῖν ναῦς τε καὶ ἄνδρας, οἵτινες ξυμ-
hither for-you ships as also men, who are-to-

μαχοῦνται ὑμῖν, τε καὶ ἡγήσονται τὴν
be-auxiliaries for-you, as also they-will-guide (you) on-the

ὁδόν.
road.

Ἐπὶ τούτοις δόντες καὶ λαβόντες πιστὰ
Upon these (things) giving and taking pledges-of-good-faith

ᾤχοντο. Καὶ ἦκον τῇ ὁστεραίᾳ ἄγοντες τρια-
they-departed. And they-came on-the next-day bringing three-

κόσια πλοῖα μονόξυλα, καὶ τρεῖς ἄνδρας
hundred boats (made out of) one-piece-of-wood, and three men

ἐν ἑκάστῳ, ὧν οἱ δύο μέν,
(being) in each, of-whom — two indeed (from each boat),

ἐκβάντες, ἔθεντο εἰς τάξιν τὰ ὅπλα, δὲ
having-disembarked, placed-themselves in line under-arms, and

ὁ εἷς ἔμενε. Καὶ οἱ μὲν λαβόντες
the one (in each boat) remained. And — (these last) indeed taking

τὰ πλοῖα ἀπέπλευσαν· δὲ οἱ μένοντες
— (their) boats sailed-away; but — those remaining

ἐξετάξαντο ὧδε. Ἔστησαν ἀνὰ μάλιστα
were drawn up thus. They-stood — very (nearly)

ἑκατόν, ὥσπερ χοροί, ἀντιστοιχοῦντες
(a) hundred (in each line), like troops-of-dancers, drawn-up-opposite

ἀλλήλοις, πάντες ἔχοντες γέῤῥα λευκῶν
one-another. all having shields (made of) white (hides)

βοῶν δασέα, εἰκασμένα πετάλῳ
of-oxen (and the) hair-on, (the shield) being-like to (a) leaf

κιττοῦ, δὲ ἐν τῇ δεξιᾷ παλτὸν ὡς ἑξάπηχυ
of-ivy, and in the right (hand was a) javelin about six-cubit-long

ἔχον μὲν ἔμπροσθεν λόγχην, δὲ ὄπισθεν
having indeed at (the) top (a) spear, but at (the) lower

σφαιροειδές τοῦ ξύλου αὐτοῦ. Δὲ ἐνεδε-
(end a) ball-like-form (made) of-the wood itself. And they-

δύκεσαν χιτωνίσκους ὑπὲρ γονάτων,
were-dressed (in) tunics (reaching) to (the) knees,

πάχος ὡς λινοῦ
(and the) thickness (of these tunics was the same) as (that) of (a) linen

στρωματοδέσμου, δὲ ἐπὶ τῇ κεφαλῇ σκύτινα
bed-sack, and (they having) on the head leathern

κράνη, οἷαπερ τὰ Παφλαγονικά, ἔχοντα
helmets, such-as the Paphlagonian (helmet), having (a)

κρώβυλον κατὰ μέσον, ἐγγύττα τιαρο-
bunch-of-hair along (the) middle (of the helmet), very-nearly tiara-

ειδῆ· δὲ καὶ εἶχον σιδηρᾶς σαγάρεις. Ἐντεῦθεν
shaped, and also they-had iron battle-axes. Then

μὲν εἷς αὐτῶν ἐξῆρχε, δὲ πάντες οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύ-
indeed one of-them went-out, and all the others proceeded

οντο ᾄδοντες ἐν ῥυθμῷ, καὶ διελθόντες διὰ
forth singing in rhythmic-modulation, and passing through

τῶν τάξεων καὶ διὰ τῶν ὅπλων τῶν Ἑλλήνων,
the lines and through the heavy-armed-men of-the Greeks,

ἐπορεύοντο εὐθὺς πρὸς τοὺς πολεμίους, ἐπὶ
they-proceeded directly towards the enemy, on (a)

χωρίον ὃ ἐδόκει εἶναι ἐπιμαχώτατον. Δε
situated-place which seemed to-be most-assailable. And

τοῦτο ᾠκειτο πρὸ τῆς πόλεως καλουμένης
his (place) was-situated before the city called

αὐτοῖς τῆς μητροπόλεως, καὶ ἐχούσης τὸ ἀκρότατον
by-them the metropolis, and having the highest-situation

τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων. Καὶ ὁ
(of any place in the country) of-the Mossynœci. And the

πόλεμος ἦν περὶ τούτου· γὰρ οἱ
war was about this-same (place); for — (those who)

ἀεὶ ἔχοντες τοῦτ' ἐδόκουν εἶναι ἐγκρατεῖς
at-any-time having this (place) seemed to-be the-most-powerful

καὶ πάντων Μοσσυνοίκων, καὶ ἔφασαν τούτους
even of-all (the) Mossynœci, and they-say (that) these

οὐ ἔχειν τοῦτο δικαίως,
(their opponents) had not obtained this (place) justly,

ἀλλὰ καταλαβόντας, ὂν κοινὸν
but having-seized (it), (it) being common (property, that thus)

πλεονεκτεῖν.
they-got-the-ascendency.

Δ' τινες τῶν Ἑλλήνων καὶ εἵποντο αὐτοῖς,
And some of-the Greeks even followed them,

οὐ ταχθέντες ὑπὸ τῶν στρατηγῶν, ἀλλὰ
not having-been-ordered by the generals, but

ἕνεκεν ἁρπαγῆς. Δ' οἱ πολέμιοι, προϊόντων,
for-the sake of-plunder. But the enemy, (they) advancing,

τέως μὲν, ἡσύχαζον· δ' ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο
so-long-as (they did) indeed, kept-quiet; but when they-got

ἐγγὺς τοῦ χωρίου, ἐκδραμόντες αὐτούς τρέ-
near the place, sallying-out put them to-

ποντται, καὶ ἀπέκτειναν συχνοὺς τῶν βαρβάρων,
flight, and they-killed many of-the barbarians,

καὶ τινάς τῶν ξυναναβάντων Ἑλλήνων, καὶ
and some of-the accompanying Greeks, and

ἐδίωκον μέχρι οὗ εἶδον τοὺς Ἕλληνας βοη-
they-pursued just-to where they-saw the Greeks coming-

θοῦντας. Δὲ εἶτα ἀποτραπόμενοι ᾤχοντο,
to-help (the defeated). And then having-turned-back they-fled,

καὶ ἀποτεμόντες τὰς κεφαλὰς τῶν νεκρῶν,
and cutting-off the heads of-the dead

ἐπεδείκνυσαν τε τοῖς Ἕλλησι καὶ τοῖς
they-exhibited (them) not-only to-the Greeks but-also to-the
πολεμίοις ἑαυτῶν, καὶ ἅμα ἐχόρευον ᾄδοντες
enemies of-themselves, and at-the-same-time they-danced singing
τινὶ νόμῳ. Δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες μάλα ἤχθοντο
to-some tune. And the Greeks were very-much disturbed
ὅτι ἐπεποιήκεσαν τε τοὺς πολεμίους θρασυτέρους,
that they-had-made not-only the enemy more-bold-and-daring,
καὶ ὅτι οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐξελθόντες σὺν αὐτοῖς
but-also that — Greeks having-gone-out with them
ἐπεφεύγεσαν, ὄντες μάλα συχνοί· ὃ οὔπω
fled, (they) being very numerous; which had never
ἐπεποιήκεσαν πρόσθεν ἐν τῇ στρατείᾳ. Δὲ
been-done before during the expedition. But
Ξενοφῶν, ξυγκαλέσας τοὺς Ἕλληνας, εἶπεν·
Xenophon, calling-together the Greeks, said:
Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, μηδὲν ἀθυμήσητε ἕνεκα
Men soldiers, do not be-cast-down on-account
τῶν γεγενημένων· γὰρ ἴστε ὅτι καὶ
of-the (things) having-happened (thus); for know that even (a)
ἀγαθὸν οὐ μεῖον τοῦ κακοῦ γεγένηται. Γὰρ
good not less (than) the evil has-occurred. For
πρῶτον μὲν ἐπίστασθε, ὅτι οἱ μέλλοντες
first indeed know, that — (those) being-about
ἡγεῖσθαι ἡμῖν εἰσιν πολέμιοι τῷ ὄντι
to-conduct us are enemies to — (those) being (really
οἷσπερ καὶ ἀνάγκη ἡμᾶς·
enemies to themselves) to-whom also it-is-necessary for-us (also to be
καὶ ἔπειτα δὲ οἱ τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἀφρον-
enemies); and next indeed — (those) of-the Greeks ne-
τιστήσαντες τῆς τάξεως ξὺν ἡμῖν, καὶ
glecting the order-and-discipline (prevalent) with us, and
ἡγησάμενοι εἶναι ἱκανοὶ πράττειν ξὺν
thinking (themselves) to-be able to-perform with
τοῖς βαρβάροις ταὐτὰ, ἅπερ ξὺν ἡμῖν,
the barbarians the-same, which (they do) with us

δεδώκασιν δίκην· ὥστε αὖθις
have-given justice; [have suffered justly]; so-that hereafter (it will be

ἧττον ἀπολείψονται ἡμετέρας
considered) worse should (the men) desert our

τάξεως. Ἀλλ' δεῖ ὑμᾶς παρασκευάζεσθαι,
ranks. But it-is-proper (that) you prepare-yourselves,

ὅπως καὶ τοῖς φίλοις οὖσι τῶν βαρβάρων
so-that both (to)-the friends being of-the barbarians [to the

δόξητε εἶναι κρείττους αὐτῶν,
barbarians your allies] you-may-appear to-be better (than) they

καὶ δηλώσητε τοῖς πολεμίοις, ὅτι
(in courage), and show — (your) enemies, that they-do

οὐ μαχοῦνται ὁμοίοις ἀνδράσι νῦν τε καὶ ὅτε
not fight with (the) same men now as when

ἐμάχοντο τοῖς ἀτάκτοις.
they-fought with-the undisciplined.

Οὕτως μὲν ἔμειναν οὖν ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν
So indeed they-remained therefore that — day

Δ' τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ θύσαντες, ἐπεὶ ἐκαλλιερήσαντο, ἀριστήσαντες, ποιησάμενοι τοὺς λόχους
But on-the next-day having-sacrificed, when they-had obtained-favour able-omens, they-breakfasted, having-formed the companies

ὀρθίους, καὶ ταξάμενοι τοὺς βαρβάρους
straight, [in columns,] and drawing-up the barbarians

ἐπὶ τὸ εὐώνυμον κατὰ ταὐτά, ἐπορεύοντο,
on the left according (to) the-same (way) they-marched-forth,

ἔχοντες τοὺς τοξότας μεταξὺ τῶν λόχων, ὑπολειπομένους δὲ μικρὸν τοῦ στόματος τῶν
having the archers between the companies, having-left indeed (a) little (space from) the front of-the

ὁπλιτῶν. Γὰρ ἦσαν οἱ εὔζωνοι τῶν
heavy-armed-men. For there-were the active (men) of-the

πολεμίων, καταθρέχοντες ἔβαλλον τοῖς λίθοις·
enemy, (who) running-down threw — stones;

οἱ τοξόται καὶ πελτασταί ἀνέστελλον τούτους
the archers and targeteers kept-back these

Δ᾽ οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο βάδην,
But the others (of the Greeks) proceeded (slowly, step-by-step

πρῶτον μὲν ἐπὶ τὸ χωρίον ἀφ᾽ οὗ οἱ βάρβαροι
first indeed against the (strong) place at which the barbarian

ἐτρέφθησαν καὶ οἱ ξὺν αὐτοῖς
(allies of the Greeks) were-repulsed and the (Greeks) with them

γὰρ ἐνταῦθα οἱ πολέμιοι ἦσαν ἀντιτεταγμένοι.
for there the enemy were drawn-up-against (them).

Οἱ βάρβαροι μὲν οὖν ἐδέξαντο πελταστὰς,
The barbarians indeed therefore received (the) targeteers,

καὶ ἐμάχοντο· δὲ ἐπειδὴ οἱ ὁπλῖται
and fought (with them); but when the heavy-armed-men

ἦσαν ἐγγὺς ἐτράποντο. Καὶ μὲν οἱ πελτασταὶ
were near they-took-to-flight. And indeed the targeteers

εὐθὺς εἵποντο διώκοντες ἄνω πρὸς τὴν μητρό-
directly followed driving (them) upwards towards the metro-

πολιν, οἱ ὁπλῖται δὲ εἵποντο ἐν τάξει.
polis, the heavy-armed-men indeed followed in order

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦσαν ἄνω πρὸς ταῖς οἰκίαις τῆς μετρο-
When indeed they-were above by the houses of-the metro-

πόλεως, ἐνταῦθα δὴ οἱ πολέμιοι δὴ
polis, here indeed the enemy having —

πάντες γενόμενοι ὁμοῦ ἐμάχοντο, καὶ
all got together fought (with them), and

ἐξηκόντιζον τοῖς παλτοῖς· καὶ ἔχοντες ἄλλα
they-hurled — (their) darts; and having other

παχέα δόρατα, μακρὰ, ὅσα ἀνὴρ ἂν μόλις
thick spears, large, so-that (a) man could scarcely

φέροι, τούτοις ἐπειρῶντο ἀμύνεσθαι
carry (them), with-these they-endeavoured to-defend-themselves

ἐκ χειρός. Δὲ ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες οὐχ ὑφίεντο
hand-to-hand. But when the Greeks did not give-way,

ἀλλ᾽ ἐχώρουν ὁμόσε, οἱ
but went to-the-same-place, [but engaged in close combat,] the

βάρβαροι ἔφευγον, καὶ ἐντεῦθεν ἅπαντες ἔλιποι
barbarians fled, and thereupon they altogether left

τὸ χωρίον. Ὁ δὲ βασιλεὺς αὐτῶν ὁ ἐν
the place. But the king of-them — (he living) in

τῷ μόσσυνι τῷ ᾠκοδομημένῳ ἐπ' ἄκρου,
the wooden-tower — (that namely) having-been-built on (the) height,

ὃν μένοντα αὐτοῦ πάντες τρέφουσι καὶ
whom remaining these all supported and

φυλάττουσιν κοινῇ, οὐκ ἔδελεν ἐξελθεῖν,
guarded (him) in-common, 'did not 'wish to-leave (it),

οὐδὲ οἱ ἐν τῷ χωρίῳ πρότερον αἱρεθέντι,
nor — (those) in the strong-place first taken,

ἀλλ' κατεκαύθησαν αὐτοῦ σὺν τοῖς μοσσύνοις.
but were-burnt these with the wooden-towers

Ὁ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες, διαρπάζοντες τὰ χωρία, εὗρισκον
But the Greeks, ransacking the place, found

ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις θησαυροὺς ἄρτων νενημένων
in the houses stores of-bread heaped-together

πατρίους, ὡς οἱ Μοσσύνοικοι
according-to-the-custom-of-their-forefathers, as the Mossynœci

ἔφασαν, δὲ τὸν νέον σῖτον ἀποκείμενον ξὺν τῇ
say, also the new corn put-up (*with*) (in) the

καλάμῃ· δ' αἱ πλεῖσται ἦσαν ξειαί. Καὶ
straw; and the most was spelter. And

τεταριχευμένα τεμάχη δελφίνων εὑρισκετο ἐν
pickled slices of-dolphins were-found in

ἀμφορεῦσι, καὶ στέαρ τῶν δελφίνων ἐν τεύχεσι,
jars, and (the) fat of — dolphins in vessels,

ᾧ οἱ Μοσσύνοικοι ἐχρῶντο, καθάπερ οἱ Ἕλληνες
which the Mossynœci used, as the Greeks

τῷ ἐλαίῳ. Ὁ δὲ ἐπὶ τῶν ἀνωγαίων ἦν
do) — oil. And in the upper-parts-of-the-houses there-were

πολλὰ κάρυα τὰ πλατέα, οὐχ ἔχοντα
many nuts (chestnuts) the broad-ones, not having

οὐδεμίαν διαφυήν. Τούτῳ καὶ ἐχρῶντο
(*no*) (any) fissure. This 'they even used

πλείστῳ σίτῳ, ἕψοντες καὶ ὀπτῶντες ἄρτους
most for-food, boiling (them) and baking breads

Δὲ οἶνος εὑρίσκετο, ὃς μὲν ἄκρατος
(of them). Also wine was-found, which indeeed (when) pure

ἐφαίνετο εἶναι ὀξὺς ὑπὸ τῆς αὐστηρότητος.
seemed to-be sour from — (its) very-great-roughness,

δὲ κερασθεὶς εὐώδης τε καὶ
but being-mixed (with water) (it becomes) fragrant and also

ἡδύς.
pleasant.

Οἱ Ἕλληνες μὲν δή, ἀριστήσαντες ἐνταῦθα,
The Greeks indeed —, having-breakfasted there,

ἐπορεύοντο εἰς τὸ πρόσω, παραδόντες
proceeded on — (their) forward (march), giving-up

τὸ χωρίον τοῖς ξυμμαχήσασι τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων.
the place to — (their) allies of-the Mossynœci.

Δὲ καὶ ὁπόσα ἄλλα χωρία παρῆσαν, τῶν
And also as-many other places as they-arrived-at, — (those)

ὄντων ξὺν τοῖς πολεμίοις, τὰ εὐπροσο-
being with the enemy, — (some of the places) being-most-

δώτατα οἱ μὲν ἔλειπον, δὲ οἱ
accessible the (barbarians) indeed deserted (them), but the (inhabit-

ἐκόντες προσεχώρουν. Δὲ τὰ πλεῖστα
ants of other places) willingly surrendered And the most

τῶν χωρίων ἦν τοιάδε. Αἱ πόλεις ἀπεῖχον
of-the places were (situated) thus. The towns were-distant

ἀπ' ἀλλήλων ὀγδοήκοντα στάδια, αἱ δὲ
from one-another (about) eighty stadia, — (some) indeed

πλεῖων, αἱ δὲ μεῖον· δὲ ἀναβοώντων
more, — (others) indeed less; and calling-aloud (to)

ἀλλήλων ξυνήκουον ἐκ τῆς ἑτέρας πόλεως
one-another they-heard-each-other from the (*other*) (one) city

εἰς την ἑτέραν· ἡ χώρα ἦν οὕτως ὑψηλή
to the other; (for) the country was so elevated

τε καὶ κοίλη. Ἐπεὶ δὲ πορευόμενοι ἦσαν
and so hollow. When indeed having-proceeded-forwards they-were

ἐν τοῖς φίλοις, ἐπεδείκνυσαν αὐτοῖς παῖδας
among — friends, they-showed them boys (the sons of)

ὧν εὐδαιμόνων, ἁπαλους καὶ σφόδρα λευκους,
of-the rich, soft and exceedingly white,

σιτευτούς, τεθραμμένους ἑφθοῖς καρύοις, καὶ οὐ
being-made-fat, having-been-fed with-boiled chestnuts, and not

δέοντας πολλοῦ εἶναι ἴσους τὸ μῆκος καὶ τὸ
wanting much to-be equal — (in) length and — (in)

πλάτος, δὲ ποικίλους τὰ νῶτα, καὶ πάντα
breadth, and painted-with-various-colours on-the back, and on-all

τὰ ἐμπροσθεν ἐστιγμένους ἀνθέμιον. Δὲ
the forepart pricked (in the form of) flowers. And

καὶ ἐζήτουν ξυγγίγνεσθαι ἐμφανῶς ταῖς ἑταίραις
also they-desired to-have-intercourse publicly with-the mistresses

αἷς οἱ Ἕλληνες ἦγον, γὰρ οὗτος νόμος
which the Greeks brought (with them), for this custom

ἦν σφισι. Δὲ πάντες οἱ ἄνδρες καὶ αἱ γυναῖκες
was to-them. And all the men and the women

λευκοὶ. Οἱ στρατευσάμενοι
were very) white. — (Those) having-served-in (this) expedition

ἔλεγον διελθεῖν βαρβαρωτάτους,
| said (that) they-passed-through the-most-barbarous, [that these were

καὶ πλεῖστον
the most barbarous people they had passed through,] and the-most

κεχωρισμένους τῶν Ἑλληνικῶν νόμων. Γὰρ
removed from-the Grecian manners (and customs). For

τε ἐποίουν ὄντες ἐν ὄχλῳ ἅπερ ἄνθρωποι ἄν
indeed they-do being in (a) crowd what men would

ποιήσειαν ἐν ἐρημίᾳ, ἄλλως δὲ ἄν οὐ
(only) do in private, otherwise indeed might not

τολμῶεν· τε ὄντες μόνοι ἔπραττον
dare (to do); and being alone they-did-those-things

ἅπερ ἄν ὅμοια ὄντες
which (they) might (do) (the) same (as if) being (in company,

μετ' ἄλλων· διελέγοντό τε ἑαυτοῖς, καὶ ἐγέλων
with others; talked — to-themselves, and laughed

ἐφ' ἑαυτοῖς, καὶ ἐφιστάμενοι ὠρχοῦντο ὅπου
to themselves, and stopping they-danced wherever

τύχοιεν, ὥσπερ ἐπιδεικνύμενοι ἄλλοις.
they-might-happen (to be), as-if exhibiting-themselves to-others

## CHAPTER V.

Διὰ ταύτης τῆς χώρας, τε διὰ τῆς
Through these — countries, — (namely) through — (those)

πολεμίας καὶ τῆς φιλίας, οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπο-
inimical and — (those) friendly, the Greeks pro-

ρεύθησαν ὀκτὼ σταθμούς, καὶ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς
ceeded eight days'-march, and arrived among (the)

Χάλυβας. Οὗτοι ἦσαν ὀλίγοι καὶ
Chalybes. These (people) were few (in number) and (were)

ὑπήκοοι τῶν Μοσσυνοίκων, καὶ ὁ βίος τοῖς
subjects of-the Mossynœci, and — (their) living for-the

πλείστοις αὐτῶν ἀπο σιδηρείας. Ἐντεῦθεν
most of-them (was obtained) from iron-works. Thence

ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς Τιβαρηνούς. Ἡ χώρα δὲ
they-arrived among (the) Tibareni. The country —

τῶν Τιβαρηνῶν ἦν πολὺ πεδινωτέρα, καὶ εἶχεν
of-the Tibareni was much more-level, and they-had

χωρία ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ ἧττον ἐρυμνα. Καὶ
stations on (the) sea (coast) but-weakly fortified. And

οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἔχρηζον προσβάλλειν πρὸς τὰ χωρία,
the generals wanted to-make-an-attack on the places,

καὶ ἀνηθῆναί τ τὴν στρατιὰν κα.
and to-have-conferred some benefit on-the army and

οὐκ ἐδέχοντο τὰ ζένια ἃ ἧκε παρὰ
they-did not receive the gifts-of-hospitality which came from

Τιβαρηνῶν, ἀλλ' κελεύσαντες ἐπιμεῖναι
the) Tibareni, but having-ordered (the messengers) to-wait

ἕστε βουλεύσαιντο, ἐθύοντο. Καὶ πολλὰ
till they-might-deliberate, they-sacrificed. And many (victims

καταθυσάντων, τέλος πάντες οἱ μάντεις ἀπε
having-been-sacrificed, at-last all the augurs of

δείξαντο γνώμην, ὅτι οἱ θεοὶ οὐδαμῇ προσίοιντι
fered (their) opinion, that the gods in-no-wise approved-of

τὸν πόλεμον. Ἐντεῦθεν δὴ ἐδέξαντο τὰ ξέ
the war. Then indeed they-accepted the gifts-of

νια, καὶ πορευόμενοι δύο ἡμέρας, ὡς
hospitality, and proceeding-on (their march) two days, as

διὰ φιλίας, ἀφίκοντο εἰς Κοτύωρα
through (a) friendly (country), they-arrived at Cotyora (a)

Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν, ἀποικίαν Σινωπέων, δ' ὄντας
Greek city, (a) colony from-Sinope, and being

ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ Τιβαρηνῶν.
in the country of (the) Tibareni.

Ἡ στρατιὰ ἐπέζευσε μέχρι ἐνταῦθα. Πλῆθος
The army proceeded-by-land just-to here. (The) length

τῆς καταβάσεως τῆς ὁδοῦ ἀπὸ
of-the descent (down the country along) the road from

τῆς μάχης ἐν Βαβυλῶνι ἄχρι εἰς Κοτύωρα
the battle (ground) in Babylon just to Cotyora (was)

ἑκατὸν εἴκοσι δύο σταθμοί, ἑξακόσιοι
a-hundred (and) twenty two stations, (making) six-hundred

καὶ εἴκοσι παρασάγγαι, μύριοι καὶ ὀκτακισχίλιοι
and twenty parasangs, (or) ten-thousand and eight-thousand

καὶ ἑξακόσιοι στάδιοι· πλῆθος χρόνου
and six-hundred (18,600) stadia; the-amount of-time (was)

ὀκτὼ μῆνες. Ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τετταράκοντα
eight months. There they-remained forty

πέντε ἡμέρας. Ἐν δὲ ταύταις πρῶτον
five days. During — these (days) they first

μὲν ἔθυσαν τοῖς θεοῖς, καὶ ἐποίησαν πομπὰς
indeed sacrificed to-the gods, and they-made processions

ἕκαστοι κατὰ ἔθνος τῶν Ἑλλήνων,
each according-to (the) nation (or tribe) of-the Greeks

καὶ γυμνικούς ἀγῶνας. Δε τα
(to which he belonged), and gymnastic games. And —(their)

ἐπιτήδεια ἐλαμβανον τὰ μὲν ἐκ τῆς Παφλα-
provisions they-took —(partly) indeed from — Paphla-

γονίας, δὲ τὰ ἐκ τῶν χωρίων τῶν Κοτυωριτῶν·
gonia, and —(partly) from the lands of-the Cotyorites;

γὰρ οὐ παρεῖχον ἀγοράν, οὐδ' ἐδέχοντο
for they-did not provide (a) market, nor did-they-receive

τοὺς ἀσθενοῦντας εἰς τὸ τεῖχος.
the feeble-and-sick within the walls.

Ἐν τούτῳ πρέσβεις ἔρχονται ἐκ Σινώπης,
During this ambassadors come from Sinope,

φοβούμενοι περὶ τῶν Κοτυωριτῶν τε τῆς
they-being-in-fear about the Cotyores namely (those) of-the

πόλεως, (γὰρ ἦν ἐκείνων, καὶ
city, (for it-was of-them, [for it was theirs,] and (the in-

ἔφερον φόρους ἐκείνοις,) καὶ
habitants) brought tribute to-them,) and (they were also in fear)

περὶ τὴς χώρας, ὅτι ἤκουον δηου-
about the territories, as they-had-heard (that they were) being-

μένην. Καὶ ἐλθόντες εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον, ἔλεγον
ravaged. And going to the camp, they-said

(δὲ Ἑκατώνυμος προηγόρει, νομιζόμενος εἶναι δεινὸς
(and Hecatonymus spoke-for-them, he-being-considered to-be able

λέγειν)· Ἡ πόλις τῶν Σινωπέων ἐπεμψεν ἡμᾶς,
to-speak): The city of-the Sinopians has-sent us,

ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, ἐπαινέσοντάς τε ὑμᾶς, ὅτι
O men soldiers, about-praising indeed you, that

ὄντες Ἕλληνες νικᾶτε βαρβάρους, δὲ καὶ
being Greeks you-have-conquered (the) barbarians, and also

ἔπειτα ξυνησθησομένους, ὅτι πάρεστε
then congratulating (you), that you-are-present (here)

σεσωσμένοι, ὡς ἡμεῖς ἀκούμεν, διὰ πολλῶν τε
having-been-saved, as we hear, through many and

καὶ δεινῶν πραγμάτων. Δὲ ἀξιοῦμεν, ὄντες καὶ
also grievous things. But we-think-it-right, being also

αὐτοὶ Ἕλληνες, μὲν πάσχειν τι
ourselves Greeks, (that we ought) indeed to-suffer something

ἀγαθὸν, δὲ μηδέν κακὸν ὑφ' ὑμῶν, ὄντων Ἑλλήνων·
good, but nothing evil from you, being Greeks;

γὰρ οὐδὲ πώποτε ὑπήρξαμεν ποιοῦντες οὐδὲν
for neither have-we ever commenced doing (no) (any)

κακῶς ὑμᾶς. Οὗτοι Κοτυωρῖται δὲ εἰσὶ μὲν
evil to-you. These Cotyoritans — are indeed

ἡμέτεροι ἄποικοι, καὶ ἡμεῖς παραδεδώκαμεν αὐτοῖς
our colonists, and we have-given them

ταύτην τὴν χώραν, ἀφελόμενοι βαρ-
this — (same) land, having-taken (it) from (the) bar-

βάρους· καὶ διὸ οὗτοι φέρουσιν ἡμῖν
barians; and therefore these (people) bring us (an)

τεταγμένον δασμὸν, καὶ ὡσαύτως Κερασούντιοι καὶ
appointed tribute, and likewise (the) Cerasuntians and

Τραπεζούντιοι· ὥστε ὅ τι κακὸν ἂν ποιήσητε
Trapezuntians; so-that whatever evil you may do

τούτους, ἡ πόλις Σινωπέων νομίζει
them, the city of (the) Sinopians considers (itself)

πάσχειν. Δὲ νῦν ἀκούομεν ὑμᾶς τε
to-suffer (from it). But now we-hear (that) you not-only

παρεληλυθόντας εἰς τὴν πόλιν βίᾳ, ἐνίους
having-entered into the town by-force, some (of you)

σκηνοῦν ἐν ταῖς οἰκίαις, καὶ λαμβάνειν
lodge in the houses, but-also (that you) take

βίᾳ, ἐκ τῶν χωρίων ὧν ἂν δέησθε,
by-force, from the (neighbouring) places what you may want

οὐ πείθοντας. Οὖν οὐκ ἀξιοῦμεν
(the owners) not consenting. Therefore we do not approve

ταῦτα· δὲ εἰ ποιήσετε ταῦτα
these (things); and if you-will-do these (things) there-will-

be (a) ἀνάγκη ἡμῖν ποιεῖσθαι φίλον καὶ Κορύλαν
necessity for-us to-make friends both (of) Corylas

καὶ Παφλαγόνας, καὶ ἄλλον, ὁντινα
and (of the) Paphlagonians, and (any) other, whomsoever we

ἂν δυνώμεθα.
may be-able.

Πρὸς ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν ἀναστὰς εἶπεν
In-respect to-these (things) Xenophon rising-up spoke

ὑπὲρ τῶν στρατιωτῶν· Ἡμεῖς δὲ, ὦ ἄνδρες
for the army: We indeed, O men (of)

Σινωπεῖς, ἥκομεν ἀγαπῶντες, ὅτι διεσωσάμεθα
Sinope, nave-come being-content, that we-have-saved

τὰ σώματα καὶ τὰ ὅπλα· γὰρ ἦν οὐ
— (our) bodies and — (our) arms; for it-was not

δυνατὸν ἅμα ἄγειν καὶ φέρειν χρήματα,
possible at-the-same-time to-drive and bring (away) things,

καὶ μάχεσθαι τοῖς πολεμίοις. Καὶ νῦν ἐπεὶ
and to-fight the enemy. And now when

ἤλθομεν εἰς τὰς Ἑλληνίδας πόλεις, μὲν ἐν
we-have-come to — Greek cities, (as) indeed among (the)

Τραπεζοῦντι (γὰρ παρεῖχον ἡμῖν ἀγοράν) ὠνού-
Trebisondians (for they-provided us (a) market) buy-

μενοι εἴχομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, καὶ ἀνθ' ὧν
ing we-had — (our) provisions, and in-return for-what

ἐτίμησαν ἡμᾶς, καὶ ξένια ἔδωκαν
they-honoured us, and (the) gifts-of-hospitality (which) they-gave

τῇ στρατιᾷ, ἀντετιμῶμεν αὐτούς, καὶ εἴ
to-the army we-honoured them in-return, and if

τις τῶν βαρβάρων ἦν φίλος αὐτοῖς, ἀπει-
any-one of-the barbarians was (a) friend to-them, we-ab-

χόμεθα τούτων· δὲ τοὺς πολεμίους
stained (from injuring) them; but (to) the enemies

αὐτῶν ἐφ' οὕς αὐτοὶ ἡγοῖντο ἐποιοῦμεν κακῶς
of-them against whom they may-have-led (us) we-did evil

ὅσον ἐδυνάμεθα. Δὲ ἐρωτᾶτε αὐτούς ὁποίων
as-much-as we-could. But ask them what-sort

τινῶν ἔτυχον ἡμῶν· γὰρ πάρεισι ἐνθάδε,
of-persons they-may-have-found us; for they-are-present here

οὓς ἡ πόλις ξυνέπεμψεν ἡμῖν ἡγεμόνας διὰ
whom the city sent-with us (as) guides through

φιλίαν. Δ' ὅποι ἂν ἐλθόντες μὴ ἔχωμεν
friendship. But wherever [1]we may [1]have-been-coming (and) not having

ἀγοράν, ἄν τε εἰς βάρβαρον γῆν τε
(a) market, (it) may (be) as-well to (a) barbarian country as (it)

ἂν Ἑλληνίδα, λαμβάνομεν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
may (be) [1]to (a) [1]Grecian, we-take — provisions

οὐχ ὕβρει, ἀλλὰ ἀνάγκῃ. Καὶ
not (through) insolence, but (through) necessity. And

ἐκτήσάμεθα πολεμίους Καρδούχους καὶ
we-made enemies (of the) Carduchi and (of the)

Ταόχους καὶ Χαλδαίους, καίπερ οὐχ ὄντας
Taochi and (of the) Chaldæans, although not being

ὑπηκόους βασιλέως, καὶ ὅμως ὄντας μάλα
subjects [1]of (the) [1]king, and yet being very

φοβεροὺς, διὰ τὸ εἶναι ἀνάγκην
formidable, | through the to-be [from being] (in) necessity

λαμβάνειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐπεὶ οὐ παρεῖχον
to-take — provisions, when they-[1]did not [1]furnish (us)

ἀγοράν. Δὲ Μάκρωνας, καίπερ ὄντας βαρ-
(a) market. [But (the) Macrones, although being bar-

βάρους, ἐπεὶ παρεῖχον ἀγοράν, οἵαν ἐδύναντο,
barians, when they-provided (us a) market, as-much-as they-could,

ἐνομίζομεν τε ειναι φίλους, καὶ ἐλαμβάνομεν
we-considered indeed to-be friends, and we-took

οὐδὲν τῶν ἐκείνων βίᾳ. Δὲ Κοτυωρίτας,
nothing of-the (things) of-them by-force. But (the) Cotyorites

οὓς φατὲ εἶναι ὑμετέρους, εἰ εἰλήφαμεν τι
whom you-say to-be yours, if we-have-taken any-thing

αὐτων, αὐτοὶ εἰσιν αἴτιοι· γὰρ
from-them, they-themselves are (the) authors (thereof); for

οὐ προσεφέροντο ὡς φίλοι ἡμῖν, ἀλλὰ
they-[1]did not [1]carry-themselves as friends of-us, but

κλείσαντες τὰς πύλας, οὔτε ἐδέχοντο
having-closed — (their) gates, [1]would neither [1]receive (us)

εἴσω, οὔτε ἔπεμπον ἀγορὰν ἔξω·
within (the walls), nor did-they-send (us a) market without (the walls);

δὲ ἠτιῶντο τὸν ἁρμοστὴν παρ' ὑμῶν εἶναι
and they-alleged (that) the governor (sent) by you was

αἴτιον τούτων. Ὃ δὲ λέγεις
the-author of-these (things). (As to) what indeed you-say (that)

παρελθόντας βίᾳ σκηνοῦν, ἡμεῖς ἠξιοῦμεν,
entering by-force we-quartered (in the place), we requested,

δέξασθαι τοὺς κάμνοντας εἰς τὰς
(that) they-would-receive — (those) being-sick — (under) — (their)

στέγας· δὲ ἐπεὶ οὐκ ἀνέῳγον τὰς πύλας,
roofs; but when they-would not open the gates,

ᾗ τὸ χωρίον αὐτὸ ἐδέχετο ἡμᾶς
in-which (way) the place itself received us [where the

ταύτῃ εἰσελθόντες,
nature of the place admitted our entrance] in-the-same (place) entering,

ἄλλο ἐποιήσαμεν μὲν οὐδὲν βίαιον· δ' οἱ
(but) we-committed indeed no violent (act), but — (these)

κάμνοντες σκηνοῦσι ἐν ταῖς στέγαις, δαπανῶντες
being-sick they-quarter — (under) the roofs, consuming

τὰ ἑαυτῶν· καὶ φρου-
the (things) of-themselves; [living on their own means]; and we-

ροῦμεν τὰς πύλας, ὅπως οἱ ἡμῶν κάμνοντες
guard the gates, so-that — (those) of-us being-sick

μὴ ὦσιν ἐπὶ τῷ ὑμετέρῳ ἁρμοστῇ,
may not be in the (power of) your governor,

ἀλλ' κομίσασθαι ἢ ἐφ' ἡμῖν,
but to-remove (them) may-be to us, [but that it may

ὅταν βουλώμεθα. Δὲ οἱ
be in our power to remove them,] when we-wish. But the

ἄλλοι, ὡς ὁρᾶτε, σκηνοῦμεν ὑπαίθριοι,
rest (of us) as you-see, we-are-encamped (in the) open-air

ἐν τῇ τάξει, παρεσκευασμένοι, ἄν τις
in — (proper) order, prepared, (that) should any-one

μὲν ποιῇ εὖ, ἀντευποιεῖν, δὲ ἄν
indeed act well (to us), to-act-well-in-return (to them) but (if he) should

κακῶς, ἀλέξασθαι. Δὲ ἃ
act) ill, to-defend (ourselves). And (as respects) what

ἠπειλησας, ὡς, ἢν δοκῇ ὑμῖν, ποιήσεσθε
you-have-threatened, that, if it-seemed-proper to-you, you-would-make

Κορύλαν καὶ Παφλαγόνας ξυμμάχους ἐφ'
Corylas and (the) Paphlagonians (your) allies against

ἡμᾶς, δὲ ἡμεῖς, ἢν μὲν ᾖ ἀνάγκη,
us, but we (on our part), if indeed it-may-be necessary,

πολεμήσομεν καὶ ἀμφοτέροις· (γὰρ ἤδη καὶ ἐπολε-
will-fight even with-you-both; (for already even we-have

μήσαμεν ἄλλοις πολλαπλασίοις ὑμῶν·) δὲ
fought with-others more-numerous (than) you;) and (if) it

ἂν δοκῇ, ποιήσομεν τὸν Παφλαγόνα
may seem-proper (to us), we-will-make the Paphlagonian (a)

φίλον ἡμῖν. Δὲ ἀκούομεν αὐτὸν καὶ ἐπιθυμεῖν
friend to-us. And we-have-heard (that) he even covets

τῆς ὑμετέρας πόλεως καὶ τῶν ἐπιθαλαττίων χωρίων.
— your city and the maritime places

Οὖν πειρασόμεθα, συμπράττοντες ὧν
We-shall therefore try, helping (him in) what

ἐπιθυμεῖ γίγνεσθαι φίλοι.
he-desires to-become (his) friends.

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ ξυμπρέσβεις ἦσαν μὲν μάλα
After this (speech) the joint-ambassadors were indeed very

δῆλοι χαλεπαίνοντες τῷ Ἑκατωνύμῳ τοῖς
evident being-much-displeased at — Hecatonymus in — (what

εἰρημένοις· δ' ἄλλος αὐτῶν παρελθὼν εἶπεν,
he-had-been-saying; but others of-them coming-forward said,

ὅτι οὐ ἥκοιεν ποιησόμενοι πόλεμον, ἀλλὰ
that they-did not come making war, but

ἐπιδείξοντες ὅτι εἰσί φίλοι. Ἢν μὲν ἔλ-
showing-and-declaring that they-were friends. If indeed you should-

θητε πρὸς τὴν πόλιν Σινωπέων, ἐκεῖ δεξόμεθα
come to the city of-the-Sinopeans, there we-will-receive (you)

καὶ ζενίοις, δὲ νῦν κελεύσομεν τοὺς
even with gifts-of-hospitality, and now we-will-order — (those)

ἐνθάδε διδόναι ἃ δύνανται· γαρ ὁρῶμεν πάντα
here to-give what they-can; for we-perceive all

ὄντα ἀληθῆ ἃ λέγετε. Ἐκ τούτου τε οἱ Κοτυω-
being true that you-say. After this indeed the Cotyo-

ρῖται ἔπεμπον ξένια, καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ
ritans sent gifts-of-hospitality, and the generals

τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐξένιζον τοὺς πρέσβεις τῶν Σινωπέων,
of-the Greeks entertained the ambassadors of-the Sinopeans,

καὶ διελέγοντο πρὸς ἀλλήλους τε πολλά
and they-conversed with one-another not-only (about) many (things)

καὶ φιλικά, τὰ
but-also (about) friendly (things, that concerned one another), among-the

ἄλλα τε ἐπυνθάνοντο καὶ περὶ τῆς
other (things) indeed they-inquired and (in particular) about the

λοιπῆς πορείας, ὧν ἑκάτεροι ἐδέοντο.
remaining route, what each (party) desired (to know).

## CHAPTER VI.

Τουτο ἐγένετο τὸ τέλος μὲν ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ
Such was the end indeed to-that — day.

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ξυνέλεξαν τοὺς
But on-the next-day the generals assembled the

στρατιώτας, καὶ ἐδόκει αὐτοῖς περὶ τῆς
soldiers, and it-seemed (best) to-them as-respects the

λοιπῆς πορείας παρακαλέσαντας τοὺς Σινωπέας
remaining route (that) having-called-in the Sinopeans

βουλεύεσθαι. Γὰρ εἴτε δέοι πορεύ-
to-consult (with them). For if it-might-be-necessary to-

εσθαι πεζῇ, οἱ Σινωπεῖς ἂν ἐδόκουν εἶναι χρήσιμοι·
proceed by-land, the Sinopeans would seem to-be useful;

γαρ ἦσαν ἔμπειροι τῆς Παφλαγονίας· εἴτε
for they-were well-acquainted (with) — Paphlagonia; if

κατὰ θάλατταν ἐδόκει προσδεῖν
by sea it-seems (that they would) require (the aid)

Σινωπέων, γὰρ ἂν ἐδόκουν μόνοι εἶναι
of (the) Sinopeans, for they would seem alone to-be

ἱκανοὶ παρασχεῖν πλοῖα ἀρκοῦντα
competent to-furnish ships being (in number) sufficient

τῇ στρατιᾷ. Οὖν παλέσαντες τοὺς πρέσβεις,
for-the army. Therefore calling (in) the ambassadors

ξυνεβουλεύοντο, καὶ ἠξίουν ὄντας Ἕλληνας
they-consulted-together, and requested being (as) Greeks

Ἕλλησι τούτῳ πρῶτον δέχεσθαι
to-Greeks (that) in-this (relation) they-would first receive

καλῶς τε εἶναι εὔνους τῷ καὶ
(them) well, not-only to-be friendly-and-kind to — (them), but-also

ξυμβουλεύειν τὰ κάλλιστα.
to-advise (them) for-the best.

Δὲ Ἑκατώνυμος ἀναστὰς, πρῶτον μὲν ἀπελογή-
But Hecatonymus having-risen-up, first indeed he-stated-in-

σατο περὶ οὗ εἶπεν, ὡς ποιήσοιντο τὸν Παφλαγόνα
defence about what he-said, that they-would-make the Paphlagonian

φίλον, ὅτι οὐχ εἶποι, ὡς σφῶν
a) friend, that he might not have-said (this), as-that themselves

πολεμησόντων τοῖς Ἕλλησι, ἀλλ' ὅτι
were-about-making-war against-the Greeks, but that (though)

ἐξὸν εἶναι φίλους τοῖς βαρβάροις αἱρή-
it-being-allowed (them) to-be friends to-the barbarians they-

σονται τοὺς Ἕλληνας. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
would-take (in preference) the Greeks. When indeed

ἐκέλευον ξυμβουλεύοιμι, ἐπευ-
they-called-in (him) that-he-might-give (his) opinion-and-advice, calling

ξάμενος εἶπεν ὧδε· Εἰ μὲν ξυμβουλεύοιμι,
imprecations (on himself) he-spoke thus: If indeed I-advise

ἃ δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι βέλτιστά, πολλά κἀγαθὰ
(you), what seems to-me to-be best, may much even-good

γένοιτο μοι· δὲ εἰ μή, τἀναντία. Γὰρ αὕτη
happen to-me; but if not, the-contrary. For that

ξυμβουλὴ ἡ λεγομένη εἶναι ἱερὰ δοκεῖ μοι
counsel which is-said to-be sacred seems to-me

παρεῖναι· γὰρ νῦν μὲν δή, ἂν μὲν φανῶ
to-be-present, for now indeed —, if indeed I-shall-appear (as)

ξυμβουλεύσας εὖ, ἔσεσθε πολλοὶ οἱ ἐπαι-
having-advised (you) well, you-will-be many — ap-

νοῦντές με· δὲ ἂν κακῶς, ἔσεσθε πολλοὶ οἱ κατα-
plauding me; but if ill, you-will-be many — exe-

ρώμενοι. Οὖν μὲν οἶδ' ὅτι ἕξομεν πολυ
crating (me). Therefore indeed I-know that we-shall-have much

πλείω πράγματα, ἐὰν κομίζησθε κατὰ θάλατταν·
more trouble, if you-are-conveyed by sea·

γὰρ δεήσει ἡμᾶς πορίζειν τὰ πλοῖα·
for it-will-be-necessary (that) we furnish the ships;

δὲ ἢν στέλλησθε κατὰ γῆν, δεήσαι ὑμᾶς
but if you-are-sent by land, it-will-be-necessary (that) you

εἶναι τοὺς μαχομένους. Ὅμως δὲ
be — (those) fighting. However indeed (the things)

ἃ γιγνώσκω λεκτέα· γὰρ εἰμι ἔμπειρος καὶ
which I-know are-to-be-spoken; for I-am well-acquainted both

τῆς χώρας τῶν Παφλαγόνων καὶ τῆς δυνάμεως.
with-the country of-the Paphlagonians and — (their) power.

Γὰρ ἔχει ἀμφότερα, καὶ κάλλιστα πεδία καὶ
For it-has both, as-well most-beautiful plains as

ὑψηλότατα ὄρη. Καὶ πρῶτον μὲν οἶδα εὖ δὺς
most-high mountains. For first indeed I-know exactly

τὴν εἰσβολὴν ἣ ἀνάγκη ποιεῖσθαι·
the entrance by-which (it will be a) necessity (for you) to-make

γὰρ ἔστιν οὐ ἄλλη ἢ ἣ
(your entrance); for there-is not by-another than (that) by which

τὰ κέρατα τοῦ ὄρους καθ' ἑκάτερα τῆς ὁδοῦ
he peaks of-the mountain on each (side) of-the road

ἐστιν ὑψηλά, κατέχοντες ἃ καὶ πάνυ ὀλίγοι
are high, possessing which even (a) very few

ἂν δύναιντο κρατεῖν· δὲ κατεχομένων τούτων,
might be-able to-be-superior (to you); but having-pre-occupied this

οὐδὲ πάντες οἱ ἄνθρωποι ἂν δύναιντ'
not-even all the men (in the world) might be-able

ἂν διελθεῖν· δὲ καὶ ἂν δείξαιμι ταῦτα.
(that they) might pass-through; and also I could show this,

εἰ βούλοισθε ξυμπέμψαι μοί τινα. Ἔπειτα δὲ
if you-desire to-send-with me any-one. Then indeed

οἶδα καὶ πεδία ὄντα, καὶ ἱππείαν, ἣν οἱ βάρ-
I-know even (of) plains being, and cavalry, which the bar-

βαροι αὐτοὶ νομίζουσι εἶναι κρείττω ἁπάσης τῆς
barians themselves consider to-be superior (to) all the

ἱππείας βασιλέως. Καὶ νῦν οὗτοι
cavalry (of) the king. And now (lately) these (Paphla-

οὐ παρεγένοντο βασιλεῖ κα-
gonians) did not present (themselves) to the king call-

λοῦντι, ἀλλὰ ὁ ἄρχων αὐτῶν φρονεῖ μεῖζον.
ing-on (others), but the ruler of-them thinks greater

Δὲ εἰ καὶ δυνηθεῖτε τε κλέψαι
(of himself, than to obey). And if also you-were-able indeed to-steal

τὰ ὄρη, ἢ λαβόντες φθάσαι,
(over) the mountains, or having-taken-possession to-have-anticipated (the

καὶ ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ μαχόμενοι κρατῆσαι τε
enemy), and in the plain fighting to-have-conquered —

τοὺς ἱππεῖς τούτων καὶ πλεῖον ἢ δώδεκα
the cavalry of-these (people) and more than twelve

μυριάδες πεζῶν ἥξετε ἐπι τοὺς
ten-thousands [120,000] of-infantry, you-will-come to the

ποταμούς, πρῶτον μὲν τὸν Θερμώδοντα, εὖρος
rivers, first indeed to-the Thermodon, (the) breadth

τριῶν πλέθρων, ὃν οἶμαι χαλεπὸν
(being) three plethra, [300 feet,] which I-think difficult

διαβαίνειν, ἄλλως τε καὶ ὄντων μὲν πολλῶν
to-cross, especially — also there-being indeed (a) numerous

πολεμίων ἔμπροσθεν, δὲ πολλῶν ἑπομένων
enemy before (you), and many following

ὄπισθεν· δεύτερον δ' Ἶριν, ὡσαύτως τρί-
behind, second — (the) Iris, likewise three

πλέθρον· δὲ τρίτον Ἅλυν, οὐ μεῖον
plethra; [300 feet;] and third (the) Halys, not less (than)

δυοῖν σταδίοιν, ὃν ἂν οὐ δύναισθε διαβῆναι
two stadia, which 'you may not 'be-able to-pass

ἄνευ πλοίων· δὲ τίς ἔσται ὁ παρέχων πλοῖα;
without boats; but what-one will-there-be — providing boats?

ὡς δ' αὐτως καὶ ὁ Παρθένιος ἄβατος, ἐφ' ὃν
as indeed likewise even the Parthenius (is) impassable, at which

ἂν ἔλθοιτε, εἰ διαβαίητε τὸν Ἅλυν. Ἐγὼ
'you may 'arrive, if you-cross-over the Halys. I

οὖν μὲν νομίζω τὴν πορείαν εἶναι οὐ χαλεπὴν
therefore indeed consider the route to-be not difficult

ὑμῖν, ἀλλὰ παντάπασιν ἐδύνατον. Δὲ ἂν
(only) for-you, but altogether impassable. But if

πλέητε, ἔστιν ἐνθένδε μὲν παραπλεῦσαι
you-sail, it-is (in your power) from-hence indeed to-coast-along

εἰς Σινώπην, ἐκ Σινώπης δὲ εἰς Ἡράκλειαν· ἐξ
to Sinope, from Sinope indeed to Heraclea; from

Ἡρακλείας δὲ ἀπορία οὔτε πεζῇ οὔτε
Heraclea indeed (the) passage (may be) either by-land or

κατὰ θάλατταν· γὰρ ἔστιν καὶ πολλὰ πλοῖα ἐν
by sea; for there-are even many vessels in

Ἡρακλείᾳ.
Heraclea.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔλεξε ταῦτα, οἱ ὑπώπτευον
When indeed he-had-said this, — (some) suspected (that)

λέγειν ἕνεκα φιλίας τῆς Κορύλα, (γὰρ ἦν
he-said (it) by-reason of-friendship for — Corylas, (for he-was

καὶ πρόξενος αὐτῷ,) δὲ καὶ οἱ
even (the) public-guest-friend to-him,) and also — (others) (suspected

ὡς ληψόμενον δῶρα διὰ ταύτην τὴν ξυμβου-
him) as about-to-receive (a) reward on-account-of this — coun-

λήν· δὲ οἱ καὶ ὑπώπτευον λέγειν ἕνεκα
sel; and — (others) again suspected (that) he-said (so) by-reason

τοιούτου, ὡς μὴ ἰόντες πεζῇ ἐργάζοιντο τι κακὸν
of-this, that lest going on-foot they-might-do some evil

τὴν χώραι Σινωπέων. Δ' οὖν οἱ Ἕλληνες
to-the country of (the) Sinopeans. But — the Greeks

ἐψηφίσαντο ποιεῖσθαι τὴν πορείαν κατὰ θάλατταν.
voted to-make the journey by sea.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· Ὦ Σινωπεῖς,
After these (things) Xenophon said: O Sinopeans,

οἱ ἄνδρες μὲν ἥρηνται πορείαν, ἣν ὑμεῖς ξυμβου-
the men indeed have-chosen (the) route, which you ad-

λεύετε· δὲ ἔχει οὕτω·
vise; | and it-has (itself) thus; [and we will sail on these con-

εἰ μὲν μέλλει ἔσεσθαι πλοῖα ἱκανὰ
ditions;] if indeed it-is-intended (that) there-will-be ships sufficient

ἀριθμῷ, ὡς μὴ ἕνα καταλείπεσθαι ἐνθάδε,
in-number, so-as (that) not one be-left here,

ἡμεῖς ἂν πλέοιμεν· εἰ δὲ μέλλοιμεν οἱ
we may sail; if indeed we-intend (that) — (some)

μὲν καταλείψεσθαι, δὲ οἱ πλεύσεσθαι, ἂν
indeed are-to-be-left, but — (others) to-sail, we may

οὐκ ἐμβαίημεν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα. Γὰρ γιγνώσκομεν,
not 'embark on (board) the ships. For we-know,

ὅτι, ὅπου μὲν ἂν κρατῶμεν ἂν δυναίμεθα
that, where indeed 'we may 'be-the-strongest 'we may '1 be-able

καὶ σώζεσθαι καὶ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια·
both to-save (ourselves), and to-have — provisions;

δὲ εἴ που ληφθησόμεθα ἧττους
but if any-where | we-shall-be-taken worse [shall be found weaker]

τῶν πολεμίων, εὔδηλον δή, ὅτι
(than) — (our) enemies, (it is) very-evident indeed, that

ἐσόμεθα ἐν χώρᾳ ἀνδραπόδων. Οἱ πρέσβεις
we-will-be in (the) place of-slaves. The ambassadors

ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐκέλευον πέμπειν
hearing these (things) requested (them) to-send

πρέσβεις. Καὶ πέμπουσι Καλλίμαχον
ambassadors (to Sinope). And they-sent Callimachus (the)

Ἀρκάδα, καὶ Ἀρίστωνα Ἀθηναῖον, καὶ Σαμό-
Arcadian, and Ariston (the) Athenian, and Samo-

λαν Ἀχαιόν. Καὶ οἱ μὲν ᾤχοντο.
as (the) Achæan. And — (they) indeed departed.

Ἐν δὲ τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ Ξενοφῶντι,
During indeed this (same) — time (it seemed) to-Xenophon,

ὁρῶντι μὲν πολλοὺς ὁπλίτας τῶν Ἑλλήνων,
seeing indeed (the) many heavy-armed-men of-the Greeks,

δὲ καὶ ὁρῶντι πολλοὺς πελταστὰς, καὶ τοξότας
and also seeing many targeteers, and archers

καὶ σφενδονήτας, καὶ ἱππέας δὲ, καὶ μάλα ἱκανούς
and slingers, and cavalry also, and very efficient

ἤδη διὰ τὴν τριβὴν, ὄντας δ' ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ,
now through — exercise, being indeed in — Pontus,

ἔνθα τοσαύτη δύναμις ἂν οὐκ παρεσκευάσθη ἀπ'
where such (a) force could not have-been-prepared from

ὀλίγων χρημάτων, ἐδόκει εἶναι καλὸν
small things-and-means, it (therefore) seemed to-be good

αὐτῷ προσκτήσασθαι καὶ χώραν καὶ δύναμιν τῇ
to-him to-have-added-yet-more both territory and power to —

Ἑλλάδι, κατοικίσαντας πόλιν. Καὶ ἐδόκει
Greece, having-provided (a) city (there). And it-seemed

αὐτῷ ἂν γενέσθαι μεγάλη, καταλογιζομένῳ
to-him (that it) might become great, considering

τε τὸ πλῆθος αὐτῶν, καὶ τοὺς περιοι-
not-only the multitude of-themselves, but-also — (those) inhabiting-

κοῦντας τὸν Πόντον. Καὶ ἔτι τούτοις
around the Pontus (unskilled in war). And about this

ἐθύετο, πρὶν εἰπεῖν τινι τῶν στρατιωτῶν,
he-sacrificed, (and) before he-spoke to-any of-the soldiers,

καλέσας Σιλανὸν τὸν Ἀμβρακιώτην, τὸν
having-called-in Silanus the Ambracian, — (who)

γενόμενον τὸν μάντιν Κύρου. Ὁ δὲ Σιλανός,
was the augur of-Cyrus. — But Silanus

δεδιὼς μὴ ταῦτα γένηται, καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ
having-feared lest this might-happen, and the army

καταμείνῃ που, ἐκφέρει λόγον εἰς τὸ
might-remain some-where (here), he-brings word to the
στράτευμα, ὅτι Ξενοφῶν βούλεται τὴν στρατιὰν
army that Xenophon desired the army
καταμεῖναι, καὶ οἰκίσαι πόλιν, καὶ περι-
to-remain, and to-build (a) city, and (thereby) ac-
ποιήσασθαι ὄνομα καὶ δύναμιν ἑαυτῷ. Δ' ὁ
quire (a) name and power for-himself. But —
Σιλανὸς αὐτὸς ἐβούλετο ἀφικέσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα
Silanus himself desired to-arrive in — Greece
ὅτι τάχιστα· γὰρ διεσεσώκει τρις-
'as quick 'as-possible; for he-had-saved (the) three-
χιλίους δαρεικούς, οὓς ἔλαβε παρὰ Κύρου, ὅτε
thousand darics, which he-received from Cyrus, when
θυόμενος ἠλήθευσε τὰς δέκα ἡμέρας
sacrificing he-'told (the) 'truth (respecting) the ten days
Κύρῳ. Δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσαν,
to-Cyrus. But (as respects) the soldiers, when they-heard
ἐδόκει μὲν τοῖς εἶναι βέλτιστον καταμεῖναι,
(this), it-seemed indeed to — (some) to-be the-best to-remain,
δὲ τοῖς πολλοῖς οὔ. Δὲ Τιμασίων
but — (others) the-most (numerous) not (to remain). But Timasius
ὁ Δαρδανεὺς καὶ Θώραξ ὁ Βοιώτιος λέγουσι
the Dardanean and Thorax the Bœotian told
τινὰς ἐμπόρους παρόντας τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν
some merchants being-present-there of-the Heracleans
καὶ Σινωπέων, ὅτι, εἰ μὴ ἐκποριοῦσι
and 'of (the) 'Sinopeans, that, if they-'do not 'procure
μισθὸν τῇ στρατιᾷ, ὥστε ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια
pay for-the army, so-as to-have — provisions (while)
ἐκπλέοντας, ὅτι τοσαύτη δύναμις κιν-
sailing-out (on their voyage), | that so-large (a) force will-be
δυνεύσει μεῖναι ἐν τῷ Πόντῳ.
in-danger to remain in — Pontus [there will be danger of so
Γὰρ Ξενοφῶν βοη-
'large a force remaining in Pontus]. For (said they) Xenophon in

λεύεται, καὶ παρακαλεῖ ἡμᾶς, ἐπειδὰν τὰ πλοῖα
planning (thus), and requests us, when the vessels

ἔλθῃ, εἰπεῖν τότε ἐξαίφνης τῇ στρατιᾷ· Ἄνδρες,
may-come, to-say then suddenly to-the army; Men,

νῦν μὲν ὁρῶμεν ὑμᾶς ὄντας ἀπόρους καὶ
we now indeed perceive you being at-a-loss (how) even

ἐν τῷ ἀπόπλῳ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, καὶ ὡς
in the voyage-homeward to-have — provisions, and how

ἀπελθόντας οἴκαδε ὀνῆσαι τι τοῦς οἴκοι·
having-departed home to-have-benefitted any (of) — (those) at-home;

εἰ δὲ βούλεσθε ἐκλεξάμενοι τῆς οἰκουμένης
if indeed you-desire (it), having-selected — (an) inhabited

χώρας, κύκλῳ περὶ τὸν Πόντον ὅπῃ ἂν
place, in (a) circle round the Pontus whenever you may

βούλεσθε, κατασχεῖν, καὶ τὸν μὲν ἐθέλοντα,
wish, to-take-possession-of (it), and — (those) indeed wishing

ἀπιέναι οἴκαδε, δὲ τὸν ἐθέλοντα μένειν
(it), to-depart home, but — (those) wishing (it) to-remain

αὐτοῦ, πλοῖα δὲ πάρεσιν ὑμῖν, ὥστε, ὅπῃ
here, ships indeed are-ready (here) for-you, so-that, when you

ἂν βούλησθε, ἂν ἐξαίφνης ἐπιπέσοιτε.
may wish, you may suddenly fall-on (such place).

Οἱ ἔμποροι ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἀπήγγελλον
The merchants hearing these (things), announced

ταῖς πόλεσι· δὲ Τιμασίων ὁ Δαρδανεὺς
(them) to-the cities; and Timasion the Dardanean

ξυνέπεμψε αὐτοῖς Εὐρύμαχόν τε τὸν Δαρδανέα
sent-with him Eurymachus also — (a) Dardanean

καὶ Θώρακα τὸν Βοιώτιον, ἐροῦντας τὰ αὐτὰ
and Thorax the Bœotian, saying the self

ταῦτα Σινωπεῖς δὲ καὶ Ἡρακλεῶται,
same (things). (The) Sinopeans and also (the) Heracleans,

ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα, πέμπουσι πρὸς τὸν Τιμα-
having-heard these (things), sent to — Timasion

σίωνα καὶ κελεύουσι, λαβόντα χρήματα,
him and requested (him), having-received money

προστατεῦσαι, ὅπως ἡ στρατιὰ
to-place-himself-at-the-head (of bringing it about), that the army

ἐκπλεύσῃ. Ὁ δὲ ἄσμενος ἀκούσας,
would-sail-out (of the Euxine). — (He) indeed willingly listening

ἐν ξυλλόγῳ, ὄντων τῶν στρατιωτῶν,
(to this), | (and) in (an) assembly, being the soldiers,

λέγει τάδε· Δεῖ
[and in an assembly of the soldiers,] spoke thus: It-becomes (us)

οὐ, ὦ ἄνδρες, προσέχειν τῇ μονῇ, οὐδὲ
not, O men, to-bend (our minds) on — remaining, nor

ποιεῖσθαι οὐδὲν περὶ πλείονος τῆς
to-make (no) (any) (country) of more-value (than) —

Ἑλλάδος. Ἀκούω δὲ τινας θύεσθα ἐπὶ τούτῳ,
Greece. I-hear indeed (that) some are-sacrificing about this

οὐδὲ λέγοντας ὑμῖν. Δὲ ὑπισχνοῦμαι ὑμὶν
(and) not-even mentioning (it) to-you. And I-promise you,

ἂν ἐκπλέητε, παρέξειν ἑκάστῳ κυζικηνὸν
if you-set-sail, to-furnish hereafter to-each-of-you (a) cyzicene

μισθοφορὰν τοῦ μηνός, ἀπὸ
(about five dollars) as-pay — (per) month, (counting) from

νουμηνίας· καὶ ἄξω ὑμᾶς εἰς τὴν
(the) beginning-of-the-month; and I-will-lead you to —

Τρῳάδα, ἔνθεν καὶ εἰμι φυγάς, καὶ ἡ ἐμὴ
Troas, whence even I-am (an) exile, and — my

πόλις ὑπάρξει ὑμῖν· γὰρ ἑκόντες
city will-aid you; for they (my countrymen) will willingly

δέξονται με. Δὲ ἐγώ αὐτὸς ἡγήσομαι,
receive me. And I myself will-conduct (you to places),

ἔνθεν λήψεσθε πολλὰ χρήματα. Εἰμι δὲ ἔμ-
where you-will-get much riches. I-am indeed well-

πειρος τῆς Αἰολίδος καὶ τῆς Φρυγίας, καὶ τῆς
acquainted-with — Æolia and — Phrygia, and —

Τρῳάδος, καὶ πάσης τῆς ἀρχῆς τῆς Φαρ-
Troas, and all the government [satrapy] (of) — Phar-

ναβάζοι, τὰ μὲν διὰ τὸ εἶναι ἐκεῖθεν,
nabazus, | the indeed through the to-be thence, [partly as be

δὲ τὰ δια τὸ ξυνεστρα-
ing a native of that place], and — (partly) through the to-make-cam-

τεῦσθαι ἐν αὐτῇ σὺν Κλεάρχῳ
paigns-with [having served with] in that (place) with Clearchus

τε καὶ Δερκυλλίδᾳ.
and also Dercyllidas.

Αὖθις δὲ Θώραξ ὁ Βοιώτιος, ὃς ἀεὶ ἐμάχετο
Afterwards indeed Thorax the Bœotian, who always contended

Ξενοφῶντι περὶ στρατηγίας, ἀναστὰς, ἔφη,
with-Xenophon about (the) command-of-the-army, having-stood-up, said,

εἰ ἐξέλθοιεν ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου, Χερρόνησον
if they-should-depart from the Pontus, (that the) Chersonese

ἔσεσθαι αὐτοῖς, χώραν καλὴν καὶ
will-be (the place) for-them, (for that the) country (is) fine and

εὐδαίμονα, ὥστε τῷ βουλομένῳ
rich, so-that (it will be) to — (him) wishing-it (in his power)

ἐνοικεῖν, δὲ τῷ μὴ βουλομένῳ
to-dwell-therein, but to — (him) not wishing-it (it will be in his

ἀπιέναι οἴκαδε. Δὲ εἶναι γελοῖον, οὔσης
power) to-depart home. And (that) it-was ridiculous, there-being

ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι πολλῆς καὶ ἀφθόνου χώρας,
in — Greece much and excellent land,

μαστεύειν ἐν τῇ βαρβάρων. Δ' ἔστε, ἔφη,
to-seek-for-it in the (country) of-barbarians. But until, said-he

ἂν γένησθε ἐκεῖ, κἀγὼ, καθάπερ Τιμασίων,
you may 'get there, both-I, as-well-as Timasion

ὑπισχνοῦμαι ὑμῖν τὴν μισθοφορίαν. Δὲ ἔλεγε
promise you — pay. And he-said

ταῦτα, εἰδὼς Τιμασίωνι ἃ οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται καὶ
this, having-heard from-Timasion what the Heracleans and

οἱ Σινωπεῖς ὑπισχνοῦντο ὥστε ἐκπλεῖν. Δὲ ὁ
the Sinopeans had-promised (it) provided (that) they-set-sail. But —

Ξενοφῶν ἐν τούτῳ ἐσίγα. Δὲ Φιλήσιος καὶ
Xenophon during this was-silent. But Philesius and

Λύκων οἱ Ἀχαιοὶ ἀναστὰς ἔλεγον, ὡς εἴη δεινὸν
Lyco- the Achæans having-stood-up said, that it-was insufferable

μὲν Ξενοφῶντα ἰδίᾳ τι πείθειν
indeed (that) Xenophon in-private should not-only persuade (people)

καταμένειν, καὶ θύεσθαι ὑπὲρ τῆς μονῆς, μὴ
to-remain, but-also to-sacrifice about (their) stay, not

κοινούμενον τῇ στρατιᾷ, δὲ εἰς τὸ κοινὸν
having-communicated to-the army, and in the public

ἀγορεύειν μεδὲν περὶ τούτων. Ὥστε ὁ Ξενο-
to-declare nothing about these (things). So-that — Xeno-

φῶν ἠναγκάσθη ἀναστῆναι καὶ εἰπεῖν τάδε·
phon was-obliged to-stand-up and to-speak thus:

Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, θύομαι, ὡς μὲν ὁρᾶτε, ὁποσα
I, O men, sacrifice, as indeed you-see, as-well-as

δύναμαι, καὶ ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν καὶ ὑπὲρ ἐμαυτοῦ, ὅπως
I-can, both for you and for myself, [in-order-that

τυγχάνω καὶ λέγων καὶ νοῶν καὶ πραττων
I-happen both speaking and thinking and doing [in order

ταῦτα ὁποῖα μέλ-
that I may speak, and think and do] those (things) such-as it-may-be-

λει ἔσεσθαι κάλλιστα καὶ ἄριστα τε ὑμῖν καὶ
about to-be the-most-honourable and best not-only for-you but-also

ἐμοί. Καὶ νῦν ἐθυόμην περὶ αὐτοῦ τούτου,
for-me. And now I-was-sacrificing about this same (thing),

εἰ εἴη ἄμεινον ἄρχεσθαι λέγειν εἰς
(namely) whether it-would-be better to-begin to-speak to

ὑμᾶς καὶ πράττειν περὶ τούτων, ἢ παντάπασι
you and to-act respecting these (things), or altogether

μηδὲ ἅπτεσθαι τοῦ πράγματος. Δὲ Σιλανὸς ὁ
not to-touch the affair. And Silanus the

μάντις ἀπεκρίνατο μοὶ τὸ μέγιστον
augur determined for-me — (what was of the) greatest

μὲν, τὰ ἱερὰ εἶναι καλά· (γὰρ
(importance) indeed, (that) the victims were favourable; (for

ᾔδει καὶ ἐμὲ ὄντα οὐκ ἄπειρον
he-knew also (that) I was not unskilled (in such things)

διὰ τὸ ἀεὶ παρεῖναι τοῖς ἱεροῖς·) δὲ
by-reason of — (my) always being-present at-the sacrifices;) and

ἔλεξε ὅτι φαίνοιτο ἐν τοῖς ἱεροῖς τις δόλος
said that there-appeared in the victims (as if) some fraud

καὶ ἐπιβουλὴ ἐμοί, ὡς ἄρα γιγνώσκων,
and plotting (was agitating) against-me, as in-truth knowing,

ὅτι αὐτὸς ἐπεβούλευε διαβάλλειν με πρὸς ὑμᾶς.
that he was-plotting to-calumniate me to you.

Γαρ ἐξήνεγκε τὸν λόγον, ὡς ἐγὼ ἤδη διανοοίμεν
For he-brought-out the report, that I already intended

πράττειν ταῦτα, οὐ πείσας ὑμᾶς.
to-do these (things), not having-persuaded you (to give

Δὲ ἐγώ, εἰ μὲν ἑώρων ὑμᾶς ἀποροῦντας,
your consent). And I, if indeed I-saw you destitute

τοῦτ' ἂν ἐσκόπουν ἀφ' οὗ
(and in perplexity), for-that I would have-looked-out from which it

ἂν γένοιτο, ὥστε ὑμᾶς λαβόντας πόλιν, τὸν
might happen, that you having-taken (a) city, — (those)

μὲν βουλόμενον, ἀποπλεῖν ἤδη, τὸν
indeed desiring (it), (might) set-sail now, — (those)

δὲ μὴ βουλόμενον, ἐπεὶ κτή-
indeed not desiring (it), (might do so) when they-might-have-

σαιτο ἱκανὰ, ὥστε ὠφελῆσαί τι τοὺς οἰκείους
acquired sufficient, so-as to-assist somewhat the families

ἑαυτοῦ. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ὁρῶ Ἡρακλεώτας καὶ Σινω-
of-themselves. But when I-see (the) Heracleans and (the) Sino-

πεῖς πέμποντας τὰ πλοῖα καὶ ὑμῖν, ὥστε
peans sending — vessels even to-you, so-as (that)

ἐκπλεῖν, καὶ ἄνδρας ὑπισχνουμένους ὑμῖν μισθὸν
you-may-set-sail, and men promising you pay

ἀπὸ νουμηνίας, δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι καλόν
from (the) beginning-of-the-month, it-seems to-me to-be (an) excellent

σωζομένους ἔνθα βουλόμεθα λαμβάνειν
(thing that) we-being-saved to-where we-wish (to be) to-receive

μισθὸν τῆς πορείας· καὶ τε αὐτός παύ-
pay for (making) the journey; and not-only myself do-

σομαι ἐκείνης τῆς διανοίας, καὶ ὁπόσοι προς-
desist from-this — (same) intention, but-also such-as have

ἦεσαν πρὸς ἐμὲ, λέγοντες, ὡς χρὴ πράττειν
some-forward to me, saying, that it-is-necessary to-do

ταῦτα, φημι χρῆναι ἀνα-
these (things), I-say (to them also) (that) it-is-necessary to-

παύσασθαι. Γὰρ οὕτω γιγνώσκω· ὄντες
desist (from them). For thus I-know: being

πολλοὶ ὁμοῦ, ὥσπερ νυνί, ἂν δοκεῖτε μοι καὶ
many together, as now, you may seem to-me even

εἶναι ἔντιμοι, καὶ ἔχειν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια· (γὰρ ἐστιν
to-be honoured, and to-have — provisions; | (for it-is

ἐν τῷ κρατεῖν καὶ το
in the to-have-power [for it belongs to those having power] even —

λαμβάνειν τὰ τῶν ἡττόνων·) δ' ἂν διασπασ-
to-take the (things) of-the weaker;) but — being-torn-

θέντες, καὶ τῆς δυνάμεως γενομένης
into-pieces, and — (your) force having-become (divided into)

κατὰ μικρὰ, ἂν οὔτε δύναισθε λαμβάνειν
— small (parties), you might neither be-able to-procure

τροφὴν, οὔτ' ἂν ἀπαλλάξαιτε χαίροντες. Δοκεῖ
subsistence, nor might you-depart rejoicing. It-seems

οὖν μοι ἅπερ ὑμῖν, ἐκπο-
therefore to-me (good) which (is good) for-you, (that) we (ought) to-

ρεύεσθαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα· καὶ ἐάν τις μείνῃ
depart for — Greece; and if any-one remains

ἢ ληφθῇ ἀπολιπῶν τινα, πρὶν τὸ πᾶν
or be-caught leaving any-one behind, before (that) the whole

στράτευμα εἶναι ἐν ἀσφαλεῖ αὐτὸν κρίνεσθαι
army is in safety (that) he is-to-be-judged

ὡς ἀδικοῦντα. Καὶ ὅτῳ, ἔφη ταῦτα δοκεῖ
as committing-a-crime. And to-whom, said-he these (things) seem

ἀράτω τὴν χεῖρα Ἅπαντες
(good) let (him) hold-up — (his) hand. All

ἀνέτειναν.
held-up (their hands).

Ὁ Σιλανὸς δὲ ἐβόα, καὶ ἐπεχείρει λέγειν,
— Silanus indeed cried-out, and attempted to-speak

ὡς εἴη δίκαιον τὸν βουλόμενον
(in order to show), that it-might-be lawful for — (those) desiring

ἀπιέναι. Οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ οὐκ ἠνείχοντο.
(it) to-depart. The soldiers however did not tolerate

ἀλλ' ἠπείλουν αὐτῷ, ὅτι εἰ λήψονται ἀποδι-
(it) but threatened him, that if they-caught (him) running-

δράσκοντα, ἐπιθήσοιεν τὴν δίκην.
away, | they-would-put the law on (him), [they would

Ἐντεῦθεν, ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται ἔγνωσαν,
punish him]. Thereupon, when the Heracleans knew,

ὅτι δεδογμένον εἴη ἐκπλεῖν, καὶ Ξενοφῶν
that it-had-been-determined to-set-sail, and (that) Xenophon

αὐτὸς ἐπεψηφικὼς εἴη, πέμπουσι μὲν τὰ πλοῖα,
himself had-put-it-to-vote, sent indeed the ships,

δὲ τὰ χρήματα ἃ ὑπέσχοντο Τιμασίωνι
but (as respects) the money which they-promised to-Timasion

καὶ Θώρακι τῆς μισθοφορίας ἐψευσμέ-
and Thorax (as) the pay (of the soldiers) they-had-

νοι ἦσαν. Ἐνταῦθα δὲ οἱ ὑπεσχημένοι
falsified (their word). Then indeed — (those) having-promised

τῆς μισθοφορίαν ἐκπεπληγμένοι ἦσαν καὶ
the pay were-astounded and

ἐδεδοίκεσαν τὴν στρατιάν. Οὗτοι οὖν παραλα-
feared the army. These therefore taking-with

βόντες καὶ τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγούς, οἷς ἀνεκοι-
(them) also the other generals, to-whom they-com-

νοῦντο, ἃ πρόσθεν ἔπραττον, (δὲ
municated, what they before (this) attempted-to-bring-about, and

ἦσαν πάντες, πλὴν Νέωνος τοῦ Ἀσιναίου,
they-were all (of them), except Neon the Asinian,

ὃς ὑπεστρατήγει Χειρισόφῳ, δὲ Χειρίσοφος οὔτε
who commanded-under Cheirisophus, but Cheirisophus was not-ye

παρῆν,) ἔρχονται πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, καὶ λέγουσιν
present,) they-went to Xenophon, and said

ὅτι μεταμέλοι αὐτοῖς, καὶ δοκοιη
that it-repented them (for what had been done), and it-might-seem

εἶναι κράτιστον πλεῖν εἰς Φᾶσιν, ἐπεὶ ἔστι
to-be the-best to-sail to (the) Phasis, when there-were

πλοῖα, καὶ κατασχεῖν τὴν χώραν Φασιανῶν
vessels, and to-have-taken the country 'of (the) 'Phasians

(δὲ υἱιδοῦς Αἰήτου ἐτύγχανε βασιλεύων αὐτῶν).
[for (a) grandson of-Æetes happened to-be-reigning-over them)

Δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἀπεκρίνατο, ὅτι ἂν εἴποι οὐδὲν
But Xenophon replied, that 'he would 'say nothing

τούτων εἰς τὴν στρατιάν· δὲ ὑμεῖς ξυλλέξαντες,
of-this to the army; but you assembling

ἔφη, εἰ βούλεσθε, λέγετε.
'them), said-he, if you-wish, tell (them about the affair)

Ἐνταῦθα Τιμασίων ὁ Δαρδανεὺς ἀποδείκνυται
Then Timasion the Dardanian offered (the)

γνώμην, οὐκ ἐκκλησιάζειν, ἀλλὰ
opinion, (that) they-'ought not 'to-call-a-council (of all), but

πρῶτον τοὺς λοχαγοὺς πειρᾶσθαι πείθειν
first the captains (ought) to-endeavour to-persuade

ἕκαστον αὐτοῦ. Καὶ ἀπελθόντες
each (of the men) of-himself [his own men]. And departing

ἐποίουν ταῦτα.
they-did these (things).

## CHAPTER VII.

Οἱ στρατιῶται οὖν ἀνεπύθοντο ταῦτα
The soldiers therefore heard (that) these (things)

πραττόμενα. Καὶ ὁ Νέων λέγει, ὡς Ξενοφῶν
were-doing. And — Neon tells (them), that Xenophon,

ἀναπεπεικὼς τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγούς, διανοεῖται,
having-persuaded the other generals, was-deliberating,

ἐξαπατήσας, ἄγειν πάλιν τοὺς στρατιώτας
deceiving (them), to-lead back-again the soldiers

εἰς Φᾶσιν. Δὲ οἱ στρατιῶται ἀκούσαντες
to (the) Phasis. But the soldiers hearing (this,

χαλεπῶς ἔφερον· καὶ ἐγίγνοντο ξύλλογοι,
were greatly ¹excited. and there-were assemblages,

καὶ κύκλοι ξυνίσταντο, καὶ ἦσαν μάλα φοβεροὶ,
and circles were-formed, and they-were much to-be-feared,

μὴ ποιήσειαν, οἷα καὶ ἐποίησαν τοὺς κήρυκας
est they-might-do, as ¹they even ²had-done to-the heralds

Κόλχων καὶ τοὺς ἀγορανόμους· γὰρ
²of (the) ¹Colchians and the superintendents-of-the-markets; for

ὅσοι μὴ κατέφυγον εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, κατε-
as-many-as ¹did not ²take-refuge in the sea, were-

λεύσθησαν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ Ξενοφῶν ᾐσθάνετο,
destroyed. When however Xenophon perceived (these

ἔδοξεν αὐτῷ ὡς τάχιστα ξυνα-
things), it-seemed (best) to-him ¹as speedily ²as-possible to-call-

γαγεῖν ἀγοράν αὐτῶν, καὶ μὴ ἐᾶσι
together (an) assembly of-them (the soldiers), and not to-have-permitted

ξυλλεγῆναι αὐτομάτους· καὶ ἐκέλευσε τὸν
(them) to-assemble of-their-own-accord; and he-ordered the

κήρυκα ξυλλέγειν ἀγοράν. Δ' οἱ ἐπεὶ
herald to-collect-together (a) meeting. But — (they) when

ἤκουσαν τοῦ κήρυκος, ξυνέδραμον καὶ
they-heard (the proclamation) of-the herald, ran-together even

μάλα ἑτοίμως. Ἐνταῦθα Ξενοφῶν οὐ μὲν
very speedily. Then Xenophon ¹did not indeed

κατηγόρει τῶν στρατηγῶν, ὅτι ἦλθον πρὸς αὐτόν,
¹accuse the generals, that they-came to him,

δὲ λέγει ὧδε·
but speaks thus:

Ἀκούω, ὦ ἄνδρες, τινὰ διαβάλλειν ἐμὲ ὡς
I-hear, O men, (that) some-one accuses me that

ἐγὼ ἄρα ἐξαπατήσας ὑμᾶς μέλλω ἄγειν εἰς
I namely deceiving you intend to-lead (you) to (the)

Φᾶσιν. Ἀκούσατε μου οὖν πρὸς θεῶν·
Phasis. Hear me therefore (for the sake) of the-gods;

καὶ ἐὰν μὲν ἐγὼ φαίνωμαι ἀδικεῖν, οὐ χρή
and if indeed I may-appear to-do-wrong, it-'is not 'proper

με ἀπελθεῖν ἐνθένδε, πρὶν ἂν δῶ δίκην·
(that) I should-depart hence, | before 'I may 'give justice;

δ' οἱ διαβάλλοντες ἐμὲ
[before I suffer punishment;] but (if) — (those) calumniating me

ἂν φαίνωνται ὑμῖν ἀδικεῖν, χρῆσθε αὐτοῖς οὕτως
may appear to-you to-do-wrong, treat them so

ὥσπερ ἄξιον. Ὑμεῖς δὲ δήπου ἴστε, ἔφη, ὅθεν
as is-fitting. You indeed certainly know, said-he, whence

ἥλιος ἀνίσχει, καὶ ὅπου δύεται, καὶ ὅτι,
(the) sun rises, and where it-sets, and to-whom,

ἐὰν μὲν μέλλῃ ἰέναι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα, δεῖ
if indeed he-intends to-go to — Greece, (to him) it-is-necessary

πορεύεσθαι πρὸς ἑσπέραν· ἢν δέ τις βούληται
to-proceed to (the) west; if indeed any-one might-wish

εἰς τοὺς βαρβάρους, τοὔμπαλιν πρὸς
(to go) to the barbarians, (on) the-contrary (he must go) to (the)

ἕω. Ἔστιν οὖν ὅστις ἂν δύναιτο ἐξαπα-
east. Is-there therefore any-one (that) might be-able so-to-

τῆσαι ὑμᾶς τοῦτο, ὡς ἥλιος,
deceive you in-this, as (to make you believe that the) sun,

ἔνδεν μὲν ἀνέσχει, δὲ δύεται ἐνταῦθα, δὲ
there-where indeed it-was, 'it also 'sets there, and

ἔνθα δύεται, δ' ἀνισχει ἐντεῦθεν; Ἀλλὰ μὲν
where it-sets, 'it also 'rises there? But indeed

καὶ τοῦτό γε ἐπίστασθε, ὅτι βορέας μὲν
even this at-least know, that (the) north-wind 'will indeed

φέρει ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα,
carry (us) out-of the Pontus (Euxinus) towards — Greece,

δὲ νότος εἴσω εἰς Φᾶσιν, καὶ λέγετε,
su. (the) south-wind inwards towards (the) Phasis, and you-say,

ὅταν βορρᾶς πνέῃ, ὡς εἰσιν καλοὶ πλοῖ εἰς
when (the) north-wind may-blow, that it-is fair sailing for

τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Τοῦτο οὖν ὅπως ἔστιν, τις
— Greece. In-this therefore how is-it (possible), any-one

ἂν ἐξαπατήσαι ὑμᾶς, ὥστε ἐμβαίνειν, ὁπόταν
could deceive you, so-as to-embark, when (the)

νότος πνέῃ; Ἀλλὰ γάρ ἐμβιβῶ
south-wind may-blow? But perhaps (you will say that I shall-put

ὁπόταν ᾖ γαλήνη. Ἐγὼ
you) on-board when there-may-be (a) calm. Will I

οὐκοῦν μὲν πλεύσομαι ἐν ἑνὶ πλοίῳ, δὲ ὑμεῖς ἐν
not-therefore indeed sail in one ship, but you in

ἑκατόν τοὐλάχιστον; Πῶς οὖν ἂν ἐγὼ ἢ
(a) hundred (at) the-least? How therefore could I either

βιασαίμην ὑμᾶς πλεῖν ξὺν ἐμοὶ, μὴ βουλο-
force you to-sail with me, (you) not being

μένους, ἢ ἐξαπατήσας ἄγοιμι. Δὲ ποιῶ
willing, or deceiving lead (you away). But | I-make

ὑμᾶς ἐξαπατηθέντας καὶ κατα-
[I will suppose] (that) you having-been-deceived and having-

γνητευθέντας ὑπ' ἐμοῦ ἥκειν εἰς Φᾶσιν· καὶ
been-tricked by me to-come to (the) Phasis, and

δὴ ἀποβαίνομεν εἰς τὴν χώραν·
indeed (that) we-descend (from the vessels) to the land

δήπου γνώσεσθε, ὅτι ἐστὲ οὐκ ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι.
you-will certainly know, that you-are not in — Greece.

Καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν ὁ ἐξηπατηκὼς ἔσομαι εἷς, δὲ
And I indeed who have-been-deceiving (you) will-be (but) one, but

ὑμεῖς οἱ ἐξηπατημένοι ἔχοντες ἐγγὺς μυρίων
you — (who) have-been-deceived having near ten-thousand

ὅπλα. Πῶς οὖν ἂν εἷς ἀνὴρ μᾶλλον
(men under) arms. | How therefore could one man more

δοίη δίκην,
given justice, [how could one man more effectually have brought punish-

ἢ βουλευόμενος οὕτω τε περὶ
ment on himself,] than (for) planning thus not-only about

αὐτοῦ καὶ ὑμῶν; Ἀλλ' οὗτοι εἰσιν οἱ λόγοι
himself but-also (about) you? But these are the words

ἀνδρῶν καὶ ἠλιθίων καὶ φθονούντων, ὅτι ἐγω
of men even foolish and envying that I became

τιμῶμαι ὑφ' ὑμῶν. Καίτοι οὐ δικαίως γ' ἄν
am-honoured by you. Although not justly at-least —

φθονοῖεν μοι· γὰρ ἐγὼ ἢ κωλύω τίνα λέγειν,
do-they-annoy me; for I either prevent any-one to-speak,

εἴ τις δύναται τι ἀγαθὸν ἐν ὑμῖν,
if any-one is-able (to say) any-thing good (or advantageous) for you,

ἢ μάχεσθαι, εἴ τις ἐθέλει, τε ὑπὲρ ὑμῶν καὶ
or to-fight, if any-one wishes, not-only for you but-also

ἑαυτοῦ, ἢ ἐγρηγορέναι περὶ τῆς ὑμετέρας
(for) himself, or to-watch for — your

ἀσφαλείας ἐπιμελόμενον; Γὰρ τί, ὑμῶν
safety (if) caring (to do so)? For (in) what, you

αἱρουμένων ἄρχοντας, εἰμι ἐγώ ἐμποδών τινι;
choosing officers, am I (a) hindrance to-any-one?

παρίημι, ἀρχέτω· μόνον φαινέσθω
I-yield (to him), let (him) command; alone let (him) appear

ποιῶν τι ἀγαθὸν ὑμᾶς. Ἀλλὰ γὰρ
doing something good (and advantageous) for-you. But however

μὲν τὰ εἰρημένα περὶ τούτων ἀρκεῖ ἐμοί·
indeed the (things) said about this are-sufficient for-me;

εἰ δὲ τις ὑμῶν οἴεται ἢ αὐτὸς ἂν ἐξαπατη-
if indeed any-one of you thinks that he-himself could have-been-

θῆναι ταῦτα, ἢ ἄλλον ἐξαπα-
deceived (as respects) these (things), or (that) another (could) have

τῆσαι ταῦτα, λέγων διδα-
deceived (him) (as respects) these (things), speaking let (him) in-

σκέτω. Δὲ ὅταν ἔχητε ἅλις τούτων,
form (us). But when you-may-have enough of-these (things),

μὴ ἀπέλθητε, πρὶν ἀκούσητε οἷον πρᾶγμα
do not depart, before you-may-have-heard what thing

ὁρῶ ἀρχόμενον ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ· ὃ εἰ ἔπεισι καὶ
I-see reigning in the army; which if it-go-on and

ἔσται, οἷον ὑποδείκνυσι, ὥρα ἡμῖν
will-be, as it-shows (itself) gradually, (it is) time for-us

βουλεύεσθαι ὑπὲρ ἡμῶν αὐτῶν, μὴ ἀποφαινώμεθα
to-deliberate about us ourselves, lest we-appear

τε κάκιστοι καὶ αἴσχιστοι ἄνδρες, καὶ πρὸς
not-only the-worst but-also the-most-infamous men, both before

θεῶν καὶ πρὸς ἀνθρώπων καὶ φίλων καὶ
(the) gods and before men (and) both (before) friends and

πολεμίων.
foes.

Οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα ἐθαύ-
The soldiers indeed hearing these (things) won-

μασάν τε ὅ τι εἴη, καὶ ἐκέλευον λέγειν
dered not-only what it-might-be, but-also requested (him) to-say

Ἐκ τούτου ἄρχεται πάλιν· Ἐπίστασθέ
(what it was). On this he-begins again: You-know

που, ὅτι ἦν χωρία ἐν τοῖς ὄρεσι
perhaps, that there-are places in the mountains (belonging to the)

βαρβαρικά, φίλια τοῖς Κερασουντίοις, ὅθεν τινὲς
barbarians, friendly to-the Cerasuntians, whence some

κατιόντες ἐπώλουν ἡμῖν καὶ ἱερεῖα καὶ ἄλλα
coming-down sold us both (cattle for) victims and other

ὧν εἶχον, δέ καί τινες ὑμῶν δοκοῦσι μοι
(things) which they-had, and also some of-you seem to-me

ἐλθόντες ἐγγυτάτω χωρίον τούτων,
having-gone to-the-nearest places of-these (people), (and)

ἀγοράσαντές τι, ἀπελθεῖν πάλιν. Κλεάρετος
having-purchased something, to-have-gone-away again. Clearetus

ὁ λοχαγός, καταμαθὼν τοῦτο, ὅτι εἴη
the captain, having-learned this, that (this place) was

καὶ μικρὸν καὶ ἀφύλακτον, διὰ τὸ φίλιον
both small and unguarded, on-account-of the friendship

νομίζειν εἶναι, ἔρχεται ἐπ' αὐτοὺς
(that they) supposed to-be (between us), went against them

τῆς νυκτὸς ὡς πορθήσων, εἰπὼν οὐδενὶ ἡμῶν.
at — night as about-plundering, telling none of-us.

Διενενόητο δὲ, εἰ λάβοι τὸ χωρίον τόδε,
He-had-proposed however, if he-should-take — (this) place here,

μηκέτι μὲν ἐλθεῖν εἰς τὸ στράτευμα, δὲ εἰσβὰς
never-more indeed to-go to the army, but embarking

ἐς πλοῖον, ἐν ᾧ οἱ ξύσκηνοι αὐτοῦ ετύγ-
in (board a) vessel, in which the companions of-himself hap-

χανον παραπλέοντες, καὶ ἐνθέμενος
pened-to-be sailing-along (the coast), and putting-on (board)

εἴ τι λάβοι ἀποπλέων οἴχεσθαι
if any [whatever] he-might-take, (and then) sailing-away to-depart

ἔξω τοῦ Πόντου. Καὶ ξυνωμολόγησαν ταῦτα
out-of the Pontus. And they-concerted these (things)

αὐτῷ οἱ σύσκηνοι ἐκ τοῦ πλοίου, ὡς
with-him, (namely) — (those his) companions from the vessel, as

ἐγὼ νῦν αἰσθάνομι. Οὖν παρακαλέσας, ὁπόσους
I now perceive. Therefore having-called-together, as-many-as

ἔπειθεν, ἦγεν ἐπὶ τὸ χωρίον. Δ' ἡμέρα
he-had-persuaded, he-led (them) against the place. But day

γενομένη φθάνει αὐτὸν πορευόμενον,
have-become overtakes him proceeding (on his march),

καὶ οἱ ἄνθρωποι ξυστάντες βάλλοντες
and the men (of the place) having-come-together hurling

καὶ παίοντες ἀπο ἰσχυρῶν τόπων, ἀποκτείνουσι
and striking from (the) strong places, they-kill

τε τὸν Κλεάρετον καὶ συχνούς τῶν ἄλλων·
not-only — Clearetus but-also many of-the other (men);

δ' οἱ τινες αὐτῶν καὶ ἀποχωροῦσι εἰς Κερασοῦντα.
but — some of-them also go-away to Cerasus.

Ταῦτα δ' ἦν ἐν τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ᾗ ἡμεῖς
These (things) indeed were on the day on-which we

ἐξωρμῶμεν δεῦρο πεζῇ· τινὲς δὲ τῶν
set-out hither on-foot; (while) some indeed of — (those who

πλεόντων ἦσάν ἔτι ἐν Κερασοῦντι, οὔτω
were) sailing were still in Cerasus, thus-having not-yet

ἀνηγμένοι. Μετὰ τοῦτο, ὡς οἱ Κερασούντιοι
brought-up (the anchors). After this, as the Cerasuntians

λέγουσιν, ἀφικνοῦνται τῶν ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου
say, there-arrived of-the (people) from the place

τρεῖς ἄνδρες τῶν γεραιτέρων, χρήζοντες ἐλθεῖν
three men of-the older-class, desiring to go

πρὸς τὸ κοινόν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐ
to the public-council (of officers). But when they-did not

κατέλαβον ἡμᾶς, ἔλεγον πρὸς τοὺς Κερασουντίους,
find us, they-told to the Cerasuntians,

ὅτι θαυμάζοιεν τί δόξειεν ἡμῖν ἐλθεῖν ἐπ'
that they-wondered why it-seemed to-us (proper) to-go against

αὐτούς. Ἔφασαν ἐπεὶ μέντοι
them. They (the Cerasuntians) said (that) when however

σφεῖς λέγειν, ὅτι τὸ πρᾶγμα οὐ γένοιτο ἀπὸ
they told (them), that the thing did not happen from

κοινοῦ, αὐτοὺς τε ἥδεσθαι
common (or public authority), (that) they were not-only delighted

καὶ μέλλειν πλεῖν ἐνθάδε, ὡς λέξαι τὰ
but-also (that they) were-about to-sail hither, so-as to-relate the

γενόμενα ἡμῖν, καὶ κελεύειν τοὺς
(things) having-happened to-us, and (that) they-requested — (those)

δεομένους τούτου λαβόντας τοὺς νεκροὺς θάπτειν
desiring this (that) taking the dead to-bury

αὐτούς. Δὲ τινὲς Ἑλλήνων, τῶν
them. But some (of the) Greeks, — (those namely)

ἀποφυγόντων, ἔτυχον ἔτι ὄντες ἐν Κερασοῦντι·
having-fled-away, happened still (being) (to be) in Cerasus;

δ' αἰσθόμενοι τοὺς βαρβάρους, ὅποι ἴοιεν,
and having-perceived the barbarians, (and) whither they-were-going,

αὐτοί τε ἐτόλμησαν βάλλειν τοῖς λίθοις, καὶ
they not-only dared to-throw — stones, but-also

παρεκελεύοντο τοῖς ἄλλοις. Καὶ οἱ ἄνδρες
encouraged — others (to do so). And the men

ἀποθνήσκουσι, ὄντες οἱ τρεῖς πρέσβεις, καταλευσ-
die, being the three ambassadors, stoned-to-

θέντες. Ἐπεὶ δὲ τοῦτο ἐγένετο, οἱ Κερασούντιοι
death. When indeed this happened, the Cerasuntians

ἔρχονται πρὸς ἡμᾶς, καὶ λέγουσι τὸ πρᾶγμα· καὶ
come to us, and relate the affair; and

ἡμεῖς οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἀκούσαντες ἠχθόμεθά
we the generals hearing (it) were-greatly-excited-against

τε τοῖς γεγενημένοις, καὶ ἐβουλευόμεθα ξὺν
not-only the (things) having-happened, but-also we-consulted with
τοῖς Κερασουντίοις, ὅπως οἱ νεκροὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων
the Cerasuntians, how the dead of-the Greeks
ἂν ταφείησαν. Δὲ συγκαθήμενοι ἔξωθεν τῶν
might be-buried. And sitting-together outside of-the
ὅπλων, ἐξαίφνης ἀκούομεν πολλοῦ θορύβου,
place-of-arms, suddenly we-hear much noise-and-outcry,
Παῖε, παῖε, βάλλε, βάλλε, καὶ τάχα δὴ ὁρῶμεν
Strike, strike, throw, throw, and immediately indeed saw
πολλοὺς προσθέοντας ἔχοντας λίθους ἐν ταῖς
many (men) running-together having stones in —
χερσί, δὲ καὶ ἀναιρουμένους. Καὶ μὲν
(their) hands, and also 'picking (them) 'up. And indeed
οἱ Κερασούντιοι ὡς ἂν καὶ ἑωρακότες τὸ
the Cerasuntians as (they) may even have-perceived the
πρᾶγμα παρ' ἑαυτοῖς, δείσαντες ἀπο-
affair ('hat happened) among themselves, fearing re-
χωρουσι πρὸς τὰ πλοῖα. Ἦσαν δὲ, νὴ Δία,
treat to — (their) vessels. There-was indeed, by Jupiter,
καὶ οἱ ἡμῶν ἔδεισαν. Ἐγωγε μὴν ἦλθον
even — (some) of-us (who) feared. I-at-least indeed went
πρὸς αὐτοὺς, καὶ ἠρώτων, ὅ τι τὸ πρᾶγμα ἐστὶ.
to them, and inquired, what the affair is.
Δὲ ἦσαν τῶν μὲν οἱ ἤδεσαν οὐδὲν, δὲ
And there-were (some) of — (them) indeed who knew nothing, and
ὅμως εἶχον λίθους ἐν ταῖς χερσίν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
yet had stones in — (their) hands. When indeed
ἐπέτυχον τινὶ εἰδότι, λέγει μοι ὅτι οἱ ἀγορα-
I-found some-one knowing (it), he-tells me that the superintendents-
νόμοι ποιοῦσι τὸ στράτευμα δεινότατα. Ἐ
of-the-market treat the army most-shamefully. A
τούτῳ τις ὁρᾷ τὸν ἀγορανόμον Ζή-
this (time) some-one saw the superintendent-of-markets Ze-
λαρχον ἀποχωροῦντα πρὸς τὴν θάλατταν, καὶ
larchus retreating to the sea, and

ἀνέκραγε· δὲ οἱ ὡς ἤκουσαν ἵενται ἐπ' αὐτὸν
called-out; and — (those) that heard (it) rushed towards him

ὥσπερ ἢ ἀγρίου συὸς ἢ ἐλάφου φανέντος.
as-if either (a) wild boar or (a) stag were-appearing.

Δ' οἱ Κερασούντιοι αὖ, ὡς εἶδον ὁρμῶντας καθ'
But the Cerasuntians also, as they-saw (them) hurrying towards

αὐτούς, σαφῶς νομίζοντες ἵεσθαι ἐπὶ
them, evidently thinking (that they were) about-to-rush against

σφᾶς, φεύγουσι δρόμῳ, καὶ ἐμπίπτουσιν
themselves, flee in-haste, and throw (themselves)

εἰς τὴν θάλατταν. Δὲ καὶ τινες ἡμῶν αὐτῶν
into the sea. And also some of-us ourselves

ξυνεισέπεσον, καὶ ὅστις ἐτύγχανε
threw (themselves) together-in (the sea), and whoever happened

μὴ ἐπιστάμενος νεῖν ἐπνίγετο. Καί τί δοκεῖτε
not being-skilled to-swim was-drowned. And what do-you-think

τούτους; Μὲν οὐδὲν ἠδίκουν,
of-these (persons fleeing thus)? They-did indeed no wrong,

δὲ ἔδεισαν μὴ τις λύττα ὥσπερ κυσὶν ἐμ-
but they-feared lest some madness like (that of) dogs might-

πεπτώκοι ἡμῖν. Εἰ οὖν ταῦτα ἔσται τοιαῦτα,
have-fallen-on us. If then these (things) are-to-be even-thus,

θεάσασθε, οἷα ἡ κατάστασις τῆς στρατιᾶς ἔσται
see, what the constitution of-the army will-be

ἡμῖν. Ὑμεῖς μὲν οἱ πάντες οὐκ ἔσεσθε
to-us. You indeed the whole (army) will not be

κύριοι οὔτε ἀνελέσθαι πόλεμον ᾧ ἄν
masters either to-undertake (any) war which you may

βούλησθε, οὔτε καταλῦσαι, δὲ ἰδίᾳ
wish, or to-put-an-end-to (it) by-making-peace, but in-private

ὁ βουλόμενος ἄξει στράτευμα ἐφ' ὅ τι
— (he) desiring (it) will-lead (an) army against what they

ἄν θέλῃ. Καὶ τινες πρέσβεις ἴωσι ὑμᾶς, ἢ
may wish. And (if) any ambassadors might-come to-you, either

δεόμενοι εἰρήνης ἢ τινός ἄλλου, οἱ βουλόμενοι,
asking for-peace or anything else, — (those) wishing (it)

κατακτείναντες τούτους ποιήσουσιν
having-killed these (ambassadors) will-make (that)

ὑμᾶς μὴ ἀκοῦσαι τῶν λόγων τῶν ἰόντων
you [1]will not [1]hear the words of — (those) coming

πρὸς ὑμᾶς. Ἔπειτα δὲ. οὓς μὲν ὑμεῖς ἅπαντες
to you. Then also, (those) whom indeed you all

ἂν ἕλησθε ἄρχοντας, ἔσονται ἐν οὐδεμιᾷ χώρᾳ·
may have-chosen rulers, | will-be in no place;

δ' ὅστις ἂν ἕληται ἑαυτὸν
[will be in no authority;] but whoever may take-upon himself

στρατηγόν, καὶ ἐθέλῃ λέγειν, Βάλλε,
(the office of) general, and wishes to-say, Strike,

βάλλε, οὗτος ἔσται ἱκανὸς κατακανεῖν, καὶ
strike, this (person) will-be able to-kill, both

ἄρχοντα καὶ ἰδιώτην, ὃν ὑμῶν ἂν ἐθέλῃ,
commander and private, whom of-us he may [1]wish,

ἄκριτον ἦν ὧσιν οἱ πεισόμενοι αὐτῷ, ὥσπερ
without-trial, if there-may-be — (those) obeying them, as

καὶ νῦν ἐγένετο. Δὲ σκεψασθε οἷα καὶ
even now has-happened. Also consider what-sort-of (things) even

οἱ οὗτοι αὐθαίρετοι στρατηγοὶ διαπεπράχασιν
— these (same) self-chosen generals effected

ὑμῖν. Γὰρ μὲν Ζήλαρχος ὁ ἀγορανόμος,
for-you. For indeed Zelarchus the superintendent-of-the-market,

εἰ μὲν ἀδικεῖ ὑμᾶς, ἀποπλέων οἴχεται, οὐ
if indeed he-has-[1]done you [1]wrong, sailing-away he-has-departed, not

δοὺς ὑμῖν δίκην· εἰ δὲ μὴ ἀδικεῖ,
rendering you justice; if indeed he-[1]has not [1]done (you) [1]wrong,

φεύγει ἐκ τοῦ στρατεύματος, δείσας μὴ ἀποθάνῃ
he-flees from the camp, fearing lest he-may-die

ἀδίκως ἄκριτος. Οἱ δὲ καταλεύσαντες τοὺς
unjustly without-trial. — (Those) indeed having-stoned the

πρέσβεις, διεπράξαντο ὑμῖν μόνοις μὲν τῶν
ambassadors, have-effected for-you alone indeed of-the

Ἑλλήνων μὴ ἀσφαλὲς εἶναι εἰς Κερασοῦντα,
Greeks (that it is) not safe to-be in Cerasus

μὴ ἂν ἀφικνεῖσθαι σὺν ἰσχύϊ· δὲ
unless 'it may 'have-been-gone-there with (a) strong-force; but (as respects)

τοὺς νεκρούς, οὓς πρόσθεν αὐτοὶ οἱ κατακανόντες
the dead, whom previously those — having-killed

ἐκέλευον θάπτειν, διεπράξαντο μηδὲ εἶναι
(them) requested (you) to-bury, they-have-rendered (it) not-even to-be

ἀσφαλὲς ἔτι ἀνελέσθαι τούτους ξὺν
safe now (for you) to-'carry these (dead) 'off (even) with

κηρυκίῳ. Γὰρ τίς ἐθελήσει ἰέναι κῆρυξ,
(the) herald's-staff. For who will-desire to-go (as a) herald,

ἀπεκτονώς κήρυκας; Ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς ἐδεήθημεν
having-killed heralds? But we requested (the

Κερασουνίων θάψαι αὐτούς. Εἰ μὲν οὖν ταῦτα
Cerasuntians to-bury them. | If indeed therefore these

ἔχει καλῶς,
(things) have handsomely, [if these proceedings be right,] 'let (them)

δοξάτω ὑμῖν, ἵνα, ὡς
'appear (good) to-you (and be sanctioned by you), in-order-that, as

τοιούτων ἐσομένων, τις καὶ ποιήσῃ φυλακὴν
these-same (things) are-about-to-be, one 'may both 'set (a) guard

ἰδίᾳ, καὶ πειρᾶται σκηνοῦν ἔχων τὰ ἐρυμνὰ
in-private, and endeavour to-lodge, having the strong-places

ὑπερδέξια. Εἰ μέντοι τὰ τοιαῦτα ἔργα δοκεῖ
'over (his) 'right. If however — these-same deeds seem

ὑμῖν εἶναι θηρίων, ἀλλὰ μὴ ἀνθρώπων,
to-you to-be (those) of-wild-beasts, but not (those) of-men

σκοπεῖτε τινα παῦλαν αὐτῶν· εἰ δὲ μή, πρὸς
look-for some cessation of-them; if indeed not, —

Διός, πῶς ἢ θύσομεν θεοῖς
(in the name of) Jupiter, how either shall-we-sacrifice 'to (the) 'gods

ἡδέως, ποιοῦντες ἀσεβῆ ἔργα, ἢ πῶς μαχούμεθα
cheerfully, (while) performing impious deeds, or how shall-we-fight

πολεμίους, ἢν κατακαίνωμεν ἀλλήλους; Δὲ
our enemies, if we-kill one-another? And

τίς φιλία πόλις δέξεται ἡμᾶς, ἥτις ἂν ὁρᾷ
what friendly city will-receive us, which may see

τοσαύτηι ἀνομίαν ἐν ἡμῖν· δὲ τίς θαῤῥῶν
such lawlessness among us? and what-one confiding

ἄξει ἀγοράν, ἣν φαινώμεθα ἐξαμαρ-
will-bring (provisions for a) market, if we-appear offend

τάνοντες περὶ τὰ τοιαῦτα μέγιστα; δὲ
ing as-respects — these the-greatest (of things)? and

δὴ οὗ οἰόμεθα τεύξεσθαι ἐπαίνου πάντων,
truly (there) where we-think to-find (the) praise of-all,

τίς ἂν ἐπαινέσειεν ἡμᾶς ὄντας τοιούτους; γὰρ
what-one might praise us being such? for

μὲν ἡμεῖς, ὅτι οἶδ', ἄν φαίημεν τους εἶναι
indeed we, as they, would pronounce — (those) to-be

πονηροὺς ποιοῦντας τὰ τοιαῦτα.
bad (men) doing — these-same (things).

Ἐκ τούτου πάντες ἀνιστάμενοι ἔλεγον τοὺς
On this all rising-up said (that) —

μὲν ἄρξαντας τούτων δοῦναι
(those) indeed having-been-leaders of-these (things) | (ought) to-give

δίκην, δὲ τοῦ λοιποῦ μη-
justice, [ought to be punished,] and (for) the future (it should) no-

κέτι ἐξεῖνα ἄρξαι ἀνομίας· ἐὰν δὲ
more be-allowed to-begin (any) lawlessness (of the kind); if indeed

τις ἄρχῃ, αὐτοὺς ἄγεσθαι
any-one should-command (these things), (that) they were-to-be-led

ἐπὶ θανάτῳ, δὲ τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καταστῆσαι
to death, and (that) the generals should-put

πάντας εἰς δίκας· δὲ εἶναι δίκας, καὶ εἴ
all on trial; and there were) to-be trials, even if

τις ἠδίκητο τι ἄλλο ἐξ οὗ Κῦρος
any-one had-done-wrong (in) any-thing else since Cyrus

ἀπέθανε· δὲ ἐποιήσαντο τοὺς λοχαγοὺς
died; and they-made the captains (the)

δικαστάς. Δὲ Ξενοφῶντος παραινοῦντος, καὶ τῶι
judges And Xenophon recommending, and the

μάντων συμβουλευόντων, καὶ ἔδοξε καθῆρω
augurs agreeing-thereto. it even seemed (good) to-purify

τὸ στράτευμα. Καὶ καθαρμὸς ἐγένετο.
the army. And (the) purification took-place.

## CHAPTER VIII.

Δὲ καὶ ἔδοξε τοὺς στρατηγοὺς ὑποσχεῖν
And also it-seemed (good that) the generals should-undergo

δίκην τοῦ χρόνου παρεληλυθότος.
(a) trial (for their conduct) during-the time having-gone-by.

Καὶ διδόντων Φιλήσιος μὲν ὤφλε
And giving (it) Philesius indeed was-condemned (to pay)

καὶ Ξανθικλῆς τῆς φυλακῆς τῶν γαυ-
and-also Xanthicles (for) the (careless) guarding of-the merchant-

λικῶν τὸ μείωνα χρημάτων εἴκοσι μνᾶς.
vessels the deficiency of-things (of their cargoes) twenty minæ.

Δὲ Σοφαίνετος δέκα μνᾶς, ὅτι αἱρεθεὶς
And Sophænetus (was fined) ten minæ, because having-been-chosen

ἄρχων κατημέλει. Δὲ τινες κατηγόρησαν
commander he-neglected (his duty). And some accused

Ξενοφῶντος, φάσκοντες παίεσθαι ὑπ' αὐτοῦ,
Xenophon, saying (that) they-were-struck by him,

καὶ ἐποιοῦντο τὴν κατηγορίαν ὡς ὑβρί-
and they-made the accusation (against him) as being

ζοντος. Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἀναστὰς ἐκέ-
insolent (and overbearing). And — Xenophon standing-up re-

λευσε τὸν λέξαντα πρῶτον εἰπεῖν, ποῦ καὶ
quested the (one) having-spoken first to-say, where also

επλήγη. Δὲ ὁ ἀποκρίνεται· Ὅπου καὶ
he-might-have-been-beaten. And — he-replied: Where even

ἀπωλλύμεθα τῷ ῥίγει, καὶ ἦν πλείστη
we were-perishing with-the cold, and (where) there-was the-most

χιων. Δὲ ὁ εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ μὴν καὶ χειμῶνος
snow. And — (Xenophon) said: But indeed even (the) cold

ὄντος γε οἷου λέγεις, δὲ σίτου ἐπιλελοιπότος,
being at-least as-great-as you-say, and provisions had-become-deficient,

δὲ παρόν οἴνου μηδ' ὀσφραίνεσθαι, δὲ
and there-was-present of-wine not-even (enough) to-smell-to, and

πολλῶν ἀπαγορευόντων ὑπὸ πόνων, δὲ
many (of us) being-exhausted with fatigue, and (the)

πολεμίων ἑπομένων, εἰ ὕβριζον
enemy following, if (then) I-acted-insolently (and overbear-

ἐν τοιούτῳ καιρῷ, ὁμολογῶ εἶναι καὶ
ingly) on such (an) occasion, I-acknowledge (myself) to-be even

ὑβριστότερος τῶν ὄνων, οἷς φασιν, ὑπὸ
more-spiteful (than) — asses, which it-is-said, (that) from

τῆς ὕβρεως, κόπον οὐκ ἐγγίγνεσθαι. Δὲ καὶ
— spite, fatigue 'is not 'engendered. And also

ὅμως λέξον, ἔφη, ἐκ τίνος ἐπλήγης. Πότερον
likewise tell (us), said-he, for what you-were-beaten. Whether

ἤτουν σέ τι, καὶ, ἐπεὶ οὐκ ἐδίδως
did-I-ask you for-any-thing, and, when you-'did not 'give (it)

μοὶ ἔπαιον; ἀλλ' ἀπῄτουν; ἀλλὰ
to-me I-struck (you)? but did-I-'demand (anything) 'back? or

μαχόμενος περὶ παιδικῶν, ἀλλὰ μεθύων ἐτα-
was-fighting about (a) beloved (object), or being-in-liquor, did-

ρῴνησα; Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔφησεν
I-act-turbulently-like-a-drunken-man (to you)? When indeed he-said

οὐδὲν τούτων, ἐπήρετο αὐτόν,
(that it was) nothing of-these (things), (Xenophon) asked him,

εἰ ὁπλιτεύοι; Οὐκ, ἔφη. Πάλιν, εἰ
if he-served-as-a-heavy-armed-soldier? No, said-he. Again, if

πελτάζοι. Οὐδὲ τοῦτ', ἔφη, ἀλλ' ταχθεὶς ὑπὸ
as-a-targeteer. Not-even this, said-he, but having-been-appointed by

τῶν συσκήνων ἐλαύνειν ἡμίονον ὤν
— (his) comrades to-drive (a) mule (he himself) being

ἐλεύθερος. Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἀναγιγνώσκει αὐτόν,
(a) freeman. Then indeed he-recognised him,

καὶ ἤρετο· Ἦ εἰ σὺ ὁ ἀπαγαγὼν
and asked (him): Whether — (are) you the (man) carrying-away

τὸν κάμνοντα; Ναὶ μὰ Δί', ἔφη· γὰρ σὺ
the (person) being-sick? Yes —by-Jupiter, said-he; for you

ἠνάγκαζες· δὲ διέῤῥιψας τὰ σκεύη τῶν
compelled (me to do so); and you-threw-about the baggage of—

ἐμῶν συσκήνων. Ἀλλ' ἡ διάῤῥιψις, ἔφη ὁ Ξενο-
my comrades. But the throwing-about, said — Xeno-

φῶν, ἐγένετο τις τοιαύτη. Διέδωκα ἄλλοις
phon, happened something like-this. I-distributed (it) to-others

ἄγειν, καὶ ἐκέλευσα ἀπαγαγεῖν
to-carry, and ordered (them) to-'carry (such baggage) 'away

πρὸς ἐμὲ, καὶ ἀπολαβὼν ἅπαντα σῶα, ἀπέδωκά
for me, and having-received all safe, I-delivered (it)

σοι, ἐπεὶ καὶ σὺ ἀπέδειξας τὸν ἄνδρα ἐμοὶ.
to-you, when also you produced the man to-me.

Ἀκούσατε, ἔφη, οἷον δὲ τὸ πρᾶγμα ἐγένετο·
Hear, said-he, how indeed the thing happened;

γὰρ καὶ ἄξιον.
for (it is) even worth (your while).

Ἀνὴρ κατελείπετο, διὰ τὸ μηκέτι
(A) man was-left-behind, on-account (that) — he-'was no-longer

δύνασθαι πορεύεσθαι. Καὶ ἐγὼ μὲν ἐγίγνοσκον
able to-proceed. And I indeed knew

τὸν ἄνδρα τοσοῦτον, ὅτι εἴη εἷς ἡμῶν· δὲ
the man so-much (only) (as) that he-was one of-us; and

ἠνάγκασα σὲ ἄγειν τοῦτον, ὡς μὴ
I-obliged you to-carry this (man), that he-'might not

ἀπόλοιτο· καὶ γὰρ, ὡς ἐγὼ οἶμαι, πολέμιοι
'perish; and also, as I think, (the) enemy

ἐφείποντο ἡμῖν. Ὁ ἄνθρωπος συνέφη τοῦτο
were-pursuing us. The man acknowledged this.

Οὖν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἐπεὶ προὔπεμψά σε,
Therefore, said — Xenophon, after I-had-'sent you 'before

προσιὼν σὺν τοῖς ὄπισθοφύλαξι οὐκ αὖθις
coming-up with the rear-guard did-'I not likewise

καταλαμβάνω ὀρύττοντα βόθρον, ὡς κατο-
overtake (you) digging (a) pit, as about-

ρύξοντα τὸν ἄνθρωπον· καὶ ἐπιστὰς ἐπῄνουν
burying the man; and stopping did-I (not) praise

σε; Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἡμῶν παρεστηκότων, ὁ ἀνὴρ
you? When indeed we having-stood-by, the man

συνέκαμψε τὸ σκέλος, οἱ παρόντες ἀνέκραγον,
drew-together — (his) legs, — (those) present exclaimed,

ὅτι ὁ ἀνὴρ ζῇ· σὺ δ' εἶπας· Ὁπόσα
that the man was-alive; you indeed said: (He may live) as-much

γε βούλεται· ὡς ἔγωγε οὐκ ἔξω αὐτόν.
at-least as he-pleases; as I-at-least will not carry him.

Ἐνταῦθα ἔπαισά σε· λέγεις ἀληθῆ· γὰρ
Then I-struck you; you-speak (the) truth; for

ἔδοξας μοι ἐοικέναι εἰδότι, ὅτι ἔζη.
you-seemed to-me to-have-been-like (one) knowing, that he-was-alive.

Τί οὖν· ἔφη, τι ἧττον ἀπέθανεν, ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ
What then? said-he, did-he any the-less die, after I

ἀπέδειξα αὐτόν σοι; Καὶ γὰρ, ἔφη ὁ Ξενο-
showed him to-you? Certainly, not for, said — Xeno-

φῶν, ἡμεῖς πάντες ἀποθανούμεθα· οὖν ἕνεκα
phon, we all shall-die; therefore on-account

τούτου δεῖ ἡμᾶς κατορυχθῆναι ζῶντας;
of-this is-it-necessary (that) we are-to-be-buried alive?

Πάντες μὲν ἀνέκραγον ὡς παίσειεν τοῦτον
All indeed cried-out that he-had-struck this (man too)

ὀλίγας· δ' ἐκέλευε ἄλλους λέγειν,
few (blows); and he (then) called-up (the) others to-say,

διὰ τί ἕκαστος ἐπλήγη. Δέ ἐπεὶ
for what each (of them) had-been-struck. But when they-did

οὐκ ἀνίσταντο, αὐτὸς ἔλεγεν· Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες,
not stand-forward, he said: I, O men,

δὴ ὁμολογῶ παῖσαι ἄνδρας ἕνεκεν
indeed acknowledge to-have-beaten men by-reason of-undisciplined-

ἀταξίας· ὅσοις μὲν
and-disorderly-conduct-in-leaving (their) ranks; to-as-many indeed as

ἤρκει σώζεσθαι δι' ἡμᾶς, τε ἰόντων ἐν τάξει
were-content to-be-saved by us, not-only marching in ranks

καὶ μαχομένων, ὅπου δέοι· δὲ αὐτοὶ
but-also fighting, where it-might-be-necessary; but those

λιπόντες τὰς τάξεις, προθέοντες, ἤθελον ἁρπάζειν,
leaving the ranks, hurrying-on-before, they-desired to-plunder,

καὶ πλεονεκτεῖν ἡμῶν. Εἰ δὲ πάντες ἐποι-
and to-have-an-advantage-over us. If indeed we all had-

οῦμεν τοῦτο, ἅπαντες ἂν ἀπωλόμεθα. Δὲ καὶ
acted so, we all might have-perished. And also

ἤδη τινα μαλακιζόμενον καὶ οὐκ ἐθέλοντα
already some giving-way-to-slothful-feelings, and not willing

ἀνίστασθαι, ἀλλὰ προϊέμενον αὐτὸν τοῖς πολεμίοις,
to-stand-up, but abandoning themselves to-the enemy,

καὶ ἔπαισα, καὶ ἐβιασάμην πορεύεσθαι. Γὰρ ἐν
I also struck, and forced to-proceed. For in

τῷ ἰσχυρῷ χειμῶνι καὶ αὐτός ποτε ἀναμένων
the vehement cold even myself once waiting

τινὰς συσκευαζομένους, καθεζόμενος
for-some having-packed-up (their baggage), (and) having-sat-down

συχνὸν χρόνον, κατέμαθον ἀναστὰς μόλις
for (a) considerable time, I-found standing-up difficult

καὶ ἐκτείνας τὰ σκέλη. Οὖν λαβών
and-also stretching-out the legs. Having therefore taken

πεῖραν ἐν ἐμαυτῷ, ἐκ τούτου καὶ ὁπότε ἴδοιμι
experience in myself, after this also when I-saw (one)

καθήμενον καὶ βλακεύοντα ἤλαυνον· γὰρ
sitting-down and indulging-in-sloth I-drove (him) on; for

τὸ κινεῖσθαι καὶ ἀνδρίζεσθαι παρεῖχε τινὰ
— to-be-moved (about) and to-act-manfully produce (a) certain

θερμασίαν καὶ ὑγρότητα· δὲ τὸ καθῆσθαι καὶ
warmth and suppleness; but — to-sit-down and

ἔχειν ἡσυχίαν ἑώρων ὂν ὑπουργὸν τῷ
(to-have) idleness I-perceive (as) being the-assisting-means by-which

τε τὸ αἷμα ἀποπήγνυσθαι, καὶ τοὺς
not-only (that) the blood is-congealed, but-also (that) the

δακτύλους τῶν ποδῶν ἀποσήπεσθαι· καὶ ἅπερ
fingers of-the feet are-mortified; and (with) which

ὑμεῖς ἴστε πολλοὺς πάσχοντας. Ἄλλον δὲ γε
you know many are-suffering. Another indeed at-least

ἴσως ὑπολειπόμενόν που, διὰ ῥᾳστώνην, καὶ
likewise being-left-behind somewhere, through insolence, and

κωλύοντα καὶ ὑμᾶς τοὺς πρόσθεν καὶ ἡμᾶς
hindering both you (in) the front and us (in)

τοὺς ὄπισθεν πορεύεσθαι ἐπαισα πύξ, ὅπως
the rear to-proceed-forward I-struck with the fist, so-that

μὴ παίοιτο λόγχῃ ὑπὸ τῶν πολεμίων.
he-might not be-struck with (the) spear by the enemy.

Καὶ γὰρ οὖν νῦν ἔξεστιν αὐτοῖς σωθεῖσιν, εἰ
For indeed therefore now it-is-allowed to-those having-been-saved, if

ἔπαθόν τι ὑπ' ἐμοῦ παρὰ τὸ δίκαιον,
they-have-suffered any-thing by me contrary-to — justice,

λαβεῖν δίκην. Δ' εἰ ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ τοῖς
to-obtain justice. But if they-had-got into (the power of) the

πολεμίοις, τί οὕτω μέγα ἂν ἔπαθον,
enemy, what (evil) however great they may have-suffered, (for)

ὅτου ἂν ἠξίουν λαμβάνειν δίκην; ὁ λόγος
which they might claim to-obtain justice? the case (is)

ἁπλοῦς, ἔφη, μοι. Εἰ μέν ἐκόλασά τινα ἐπ'
plain, said-he, to-me. If indeed I-have-punished any-one for

ἀγαθῷ, ἀξιῶ ὑπέρχειν δίκην, οἵαν
(his) good, I-claim to-undergo justice (and punishment), such-as

καὶ γονεῖς υἱοῖς καὶ διδάσκαλοι παισί.
even parents (receive for) sons and teachers (for) boys.

Καὶ γὰρ οἱ ἰατροὶ καίουσι καὶ τέμνουσιν ἐπ' ἀγαθῷ.
And also the surgeons cauterize and cut for good.

Δὲ εἰ νομίζετέ με πράττειν ταῦτα
But if you-think me to (have) acted thus (through)

ὕβρει, ἐνθυμήθητε, ὅτι νῦν σὺν
insolence and tyranny) consider, that now with (the assistance

τοῖς θεοῖς ἐγὼ μᾶλλον θαρσῶ ἢ τότε, καὶ
of) the gods I have much-more spirit than then, and

εἰμι θρασύτερος νῦν ἢ τότε, καὶ πίνω πλεῖω οἶνον
am bolder now than then, and I-drink more wine;

ἀλλ' ὅμως παίω οὐδένα· γὰρ ὁρῶ ὑμᾶς ἐν
but yet-however I-strike no-one; for I-see you (now) in (a)

εὐδίᾳ. Δὲ ὅταν χειμὼν ᾖ, καὶ μεγάλη
calm. But when (a) storm may-be, and (a) great

θάλαττα ἐπιφέρηται, οὐχ ὁρᾶτε,
sea may-be-'bearing (itself) 'onward, do-'you not 'see,

ὅτι πρῳρεὺς χαλεπαίνει μὲν τοῖς ἐν
that the-commander-in-the-prow becomes-angry indeed with — (those) in

πρῴρᾳ καὶ ἕνεκα νεύματος μόνου, δὲ καὶ
(the) prow even by-reason-of (a) nod only, and also (the)

κυβερνήτης τοῖς ἐν πρύμνῃ; γὰρ ἐν τῷ
steersman with — (those) in (the) stern? for in —

τοιούτῳ καὶ μικρὰ ἁμαρτηθέντα ἱκανὰ
such (circumstances) even small mistakes (are) sufficient

συνεπιτρῖψαι πάντα. Ὅτι δὲ ἔπαιον αὐτούς
to ruin all. That indeed I-struck this (man)

δικαίως, καὶ ὑμεῖς κατεδικάσατε· ἔχοντες
justly, even you have-'given (your) 'judgment; having

ξίφη, οὐ ψήφους, παρέστητε, καὶ ἐξῆν ὑμῖν
swords, not voting-pebbles, you-stood-by, 'and it-was-allowed you

ἐπικουρεῖν αὐτοῖς, εἰ ἐβούλεσθε· ἀλλά, μὰ Δία,
to-assist them, if you-wished; but, by Jupiter,

οὔτε ἐπεκουρεῖτε τούτοις, οὔτε σὺν ἐμοὶ
'you neither 'assisted these (men), nor with me

ἐπαίετε τὸν ἀτακτοῦντα. Τοιγαροῦν ἐποιήσατε
struck the disorderly. Therefore | you-have-made

ἐξουσίαν τοῖς κακοῖς αὐτῶν, ἐῶντες
licence [you gave licence] to-the bad (ones) of-them, permitting

αὐτούς ὑβρίζειν· γὰρ οἶμαι, εἰ ἐθέλετε
them to-be-violent (and audacious); for I-think, if you-wish

σκοπεῖν, εὑρήσετε τοὺς αὐτοὺς καὶ
to-examine, you-will-find (that) — (those) same (who) even

τότε κακίστους, καὶ νῦν ὑβριστοτάτους.
then (were the-worst, (are) even now the-most-audacious

Γοῦν Βοίσκος, ὁ Θετταλὸς πύκτης, τότε μὲν
Also Boiscus, the Thessalian boxer, then indeed

διεμάχετο, μὴ φέρειν ἀσπίδα, ὡς
fought-hard, (that he might) not carry (his) shield, as

κάμνων, νῦν δ' ὡς ἀκούω, ἤδη ἀποδέδυκε
being-sick, now indeed as I-hear, has already despoiled

πολλοὺς Κοτυωριτῶν. Ἢν οὖν σωφονῆτε,
many of (the) Cotyorians. If therefore you-are-wise,

ποιήσετε τούτῳ τἀναντία, ἢ ποιοῦσι τοὺς
you-will-do to-this (one) the-reverse, to (what) they-do (to) the

κύνας· γὰρ μὲν διδέασι κύνας τοὺς χαλεπούς,
dogs; for indeed they-have-tied-up dogs the cross-ones,

τὰς ἡμέρας μὲν, δὲ τὰς νύκτας
(namely) during-the day indeed, but by — night have-let (them)

ἀφιᾶσι· δὲ τοῦτον ἢν σωφρονῆτε δήσετε μὲν τὴν
loose; but this-one if you-are-wise you-will-tie indeed by —

νύκτα, δὲ ἀφήσετε τὴν ἡμέραν. Ἀλλὰ γὰρ,
night, but let-loose by — day. But also,

ἔφη, θαυμάζω, ὅτι, εἰ μὲν ἀπηχθόμεν τινι
said-he, I-am-surprised, that, if indeed I-become-hateful to-any-one

ὑμῶν, μέμνεσθε,
of-you, [if I did anything to incur your displeasure,] you-remember (it),

καὶ οὐ σιωπᾶτε, εἰ δὲ ἐπεκούρησα τῷ
and did not remain-silent, if indeed I-assisted — (any-one)

ἢ χειμῶνα, ἢ ἀπήρυξα πολέμιον,
(or) against (a) storm, or repelled (the) enemy (from him),

ἢ συνεξεπόρισά τι ἀσθενουντι ἢ ἀπορουντι,
or aided-in-procuring any-thing for (one) being-sick or being-destitute,

οὐδεὶς μέμνηται τούτων, οὐδ' εἰ ἐπήνεσα
no-one remembers these (things), nor if I-have-praised

τινα ποιοῦντα τι καλῶς, οὐδ' εἰ ἐτίμησα,
any-one doing something good, or if I-have-honoured,

ὡς ἐδυνάμην, τιν' ἄνδρα ὄντα ἀγαθὸν,
as (much as) I-could, any man being brave,

οὐδὲ μέμνεσθε τούτων. Ἀλλὰ μὴν τε
neither do-you-remember these (things). But indeed (it is) not-only

καλόν, καὶ δίκαιον, καὶ ὅσιον καὶ ἥδίον μεμνῆσθαι
beautiful, but-also just, and pious and pleasing to-remember

τῶν ἀγαθῶν μᾶλλον ἢ τῶν κακῶν.
— good rather than — evil.

Ἐκ τούτου μὲν δὴ ἀνίσταντο καὶ ἀνεμίμνησκον.
On this indeed truly they-rose-up and recollected

Καὶ περιεγένετο ὥστε ἔχειν κα-
(past events). And it-remained so-as to-have hand

λῶς.
somely [and in the end everything turned out well].

# BOOK VI.

## CHAPTER I

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἐν τῇ
From this (time) (some of) the (Greeks) indeed during — (their)

διατριβῇ ἔζων ἀπὸ τῆς ἀγορᾶς,
stay lived (on what they procured) from the market,

δὲ καὶ οἱ λῃζόμενοι ἐκ τῆς Παφλαγονίας.
and also — (others by) plundering (*from*) the Paphlagonians.

Δὲ καὶ οἱ Παφλαγόνες ἐκλώπευον μάλα εὖ τοὺς
And also the Paphlagonians stole-away very adroitly —

ἀποσκεδαννυμένους, καὶ τῆς νυκτὸς ἐπειρῶντο
(those) scattered-about, and at — night attempted

κακουργεῖν τοὺς σκηνοῦντας πρόσω· καὶ ἐκ
to-injure-and-annoy — (those) quartering far-off; and from

τούτων εἶχον πολεμικώτατα πρὸς ἀλλήλους.
these (things) they-had the-greatest-hostility to one-another.

Ὁ δὲ Κορύλας ὃς τότε ἐτύγχανε ἄρχων
— But Corylas who then happened (to be) ruler

Παφλαγονίας, πέμπει πρέσβεις, ἔχοντας
of-Paphlagonia, sends ambassadors, having (as presents)

ἵππους καὶ καλὰς στολὰς, παρὰ τοὺς Ἕλληνας,
horses and beautiful robes, to the Greeks,

λέγοντας, ὅτι Κορύλας εἴη ἕτοιμος μήτε ἀδικεῖν
saying, that Corylas was ready neither to-injure

τοὺς Ἕλληνας μήτε ἀδικεῖσθαι. Οἱ στρατηγοὶ
the Greeks nor to-be-injured (by them). The generals

δὲ ἀπεκρίναντο, ὅτι βουλεύσοιντο σὺν τῇ
however replied, that they-would-consult with the

στρατιᾷ περὶ μὲν τούτων, ἐδέχοντο αὐτοὺς δὲ
army about indeed these (things), they-received them however

ἐπὶ ξενίᾳ· δὲ καὶ παρεκάλεσαν τῶν ἄλλων
at (a) hospitable (table); and also they-invited the other

ἀνδρῶν οὓς ἐδόκουν εἶναι δικαιοτάτους. Δὲ
men whom they-considered to-be the-most-worthy. And

θύσαντες βοῦς τῶν αἰχμαλώτων καὶ
having-sacrificed oxen — (those namely) captured and

ἄλλα ἱερεῖα ἀρκοῦσαν εὐωχίαν
other cattle-killed-for-sacrifice-and-for-eating (an) abundant feast

παρεῖχον, δὲ κατακείμενοι ἐν σκίμποσιν ἐδείπνουν.
was-provided, and reclining on couches they-supped,

καὶ ἔπινον ἐκ κερατίναν ποτηρίων, οἷς ἐντύγχανοι
and they-drank out-of horn cups, which they-found

ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ.
in the country.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ τε σπονδαί ἐγένοντο καὶ
When however not-only (the) libations had-taken-place, but-also

ἐπαιάνισαν, πρῶτον μὲν Θρᾷκες ἀνέστησαν, καὶ
they-had-sung-the-pæan, at-first indeed Thracians stood-up, and

ὠρχήσαντο σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις πρὸς
danced with — (their) arms to (the sound of the)

αὐλον, καὶ ἥλλοντο ὑψηλά τε καὶ κούφως, καὶ
pipe, and they-jumped high and also with-agility, and

ἐχρωντο ταῖς μαχαίραις· δὲ τέλος ὁ ἕτερος
they-made-use of — (their) swords; and at-length the one

παίει τὸν ἕτερον, ὡς ἐδόκει πᾶσι πεπληγέναι
struck the other, so-that it-seemed to-all to-have-wounded

τὸν ἄνδρα· δ' ὁ ἔπεσε τεχνικῶς πως. Καὶ οἱ
the man; and — he-fell artfully in-some-way. And the

Παφλαγόνες ἀνέκραγον. Καὶ ὁ μὲν σκυλεύσας
Paphlagonians cried-out. And — he indeed having-despoiled

τοῦ ἑτέρου τὰ ὅπλα, ἐξῄει ᾄδων τὸν
the other (one) of — (his) arms, departed singing the (song)

Σιτάλκαν· ἄλλοι δὲ τῶν Θρᾳκῶν ἐξέφερον τὸν
Sitalcas; others indeed of-the Thracians carried-off the

ἕτερον ὡς τεθνηκότα· ἦν δὲ
other (one) as-if having-been-dead; he-was however (in the state of)

πεπονθὼς οὐδέν. Μετὰ τοῦτο Αἰνιᾶνες
having-suffered no (injury). After this (some) Ænians

καὶ Μάγνητες ἀνέστησαν, οἳ ὠρχοῦντο τὴν
and Magnesians stood-up, who danced the (dance)

καλουμένην καρπαίαν ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις. Ὁ τρόπος
called carpæan in — arms. The nature

δὲ τῆς ὀρχήσεως ἦν ὅδε· ὁ μὲν, παρα-
indeed of-the dance was thus: — (one of them) indeed, having-

θέμενος τὰ ὅπλα, σπείρει καὶ ζευγηλατεῖ,
laid-aside — (his) arms, sows and drives-a-yoke-of-oxen,

πυκνὰ μεταστρεφόμενος, ὡς φοβούμενος·
often turning-around, as-if fearing (something);

λῃστὴς δὲ προσέρχεται· δ' ἐπειδὰν ὁ προίδηται,
(a) robber indeed approaches; but when — he-perceives

ἁρπάσας τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ μάχεται πρὸ τοῦ
(him), snatching-up — (his) arms, he even fights for the

ζεύγους· (καὶ οὗτοι ἐποίουν ταῦτ'
yoke (of oxen); (and these (men) performed these (things)

ἐν ῥυθμῷ πρὸς τὸν αὐλόν·)
in rhythm to the pipe;) [keeping time to the pipe;]

καὶ τέλος ὁ λῃστὴς δήσας τὸν ἄνδρα ἀπάγει
and at-last the robber having-tied the man leads (him) off

καὶ τὸ ζεῦγος· δὲ καὶ ἐνίοτε ὁ ζευγηλάτης
nd-also the yoke (of oxen); but also sometimes the driver-of-the-oxen

τὸν λῃστὴν· εἶτα ζεύξας παρὰ τοὺς
overcomes) the robber; then having-fastened (him) to the

βοῦς ἐλαύνει δεδεμένον τὼ χεῖρε ὀπίσω.
oxen he-drives (him) off bound with — (his) hands behind.

Μετὰ τοῦτο Μυσὸς εἰσῆλθεν ἔχων πέλτην ἐν
After this (a) Mysian entered having (a) light-shield in

ἑκατέρᾳ τῇ χειρὶ· καὶ τοτὲ μὲν ὠρχεῖτο μιμούμενος
each — hand; and at-one-time he-danced mimicking

ὡς δύο ἀντιταττομένων, δὲ τοτὲ ἐχρῆτο
as (if) two were-attacking (him), but at-another-time he-used

ταῖς πέλταις ὡς πρὸς ἕνα, δὲ το
the shields as (if engaged) with one (only), and-also another

τὲ ἐδινεῖτο καὶ ἐξεκυβίστα, ἔχων τὰς πέλτας,
time he-whirled-about and threw-summersets, having the shields

ὥστε καλὴν ὄψιν φαίνεσθαι. Δὲ
at the same time), so-that (a) fine sight appeared And

τέλος ὠρχεῖτο τὸ Περσικὸν, κρούων τὰς
at last he-danced the Persian (dance), striking the

πέλτας· καὶ ὤκλαζε, καὶ ἐξανίστατο·
shields (together); and he-'sank-on (his) 'knees, and rose-up-again;

καὶ ἐποίει πάντα ταῦτα ἐν ῥυθμῷ πρὸς τὸν
and he-performed all this in rhythm to the

αὐλόν. Δὲ ἐπὶ τούτῳ οἱ Μαν-
(sound of the) pipe. And after this (one) — (some) Man-

τινεῖς ἐπιόντες, καὶ τινὲς ἄλλοι τῶν Ἀρκάδων
tineans coming-forward, and some others of-the Arcadians

ἀναστάντες, ἐξοπλισάμενοι ὡς κάλλιστα ἐδύναντο.
standing-up, armed as handsomely (as) they-could

ἤεσάν τε ἐν ῥυθμῷ, αὐλούμενοι
| went — in rhythm, [marched in time,] playing-on-the-pipe (tuned)

πρὸς τὸν ἐνόπλιον ῥυθμὸν, καὶ ἐπαιάνισαν
for the armed-war rhythm (or movement), and they-sang-the-pæan

καὶ ὠρχήσαντο, ὥσπερ ἐν ταῖς προσόδοις πρὸς
and danced, as in the procession to

τοὺς θεούς. Δὲ οἱ Παφλαγόνες ὁρῶντες
the gods. And the Paphlagonians seeing (these things)

ἐποιοῦντο δεινὰ πάσας τὰς ὀρχήσεις
made (a) great-thing-of-it (that) all the dances

εἶναι ἐν ὅπλοις. Ὁ Μυσὸς ἐπὶ ὁρων τούτοις
were in arms. The Mysian after seeing these (things)

αὐτους ἐκπεπληγμένους, πείσας
(that) they were-struck (with surprise), (and) having-persuaded

τινά τῶν Ἀρκάδ ν, πεπαμένον ὀρχηστρίδα,
a certain-one of-the Arcadians, having-in-possession (a) female-dancer

εἰσάγει σκευάσας ὡς κάλλιστα ἐδύνατο
he-brings (her) in having-equipped (her) as handsomely (as) he-could

καὶ δοὺς αὐτῇ κούφην ἀσπίδα. Δὲ ἡ ὠρχήσατο
and giving her (a) light shield. And — she-danced

πυῤῥίχην ἐλαφρῶς. Ἐνταῦθα ἦν
(the) Pyrric (dance) with-great-agility. Then there-was

πολύς κρότος· καὶ οἱ Παφλαγόνες ἤροντο,
much applause-and-clapping; and the Paphlagonians asked,

εἰ καὶ γυναῖκες συνεμαχόντο αὐτοῖς. Οἱ δ'
if also women fought-together with-them. — (They) —

ἔλεγον, ὅτι εἶεν καὶ αὗται αἱ τρεψάμεναι
said, that it-was even these (women) — (that) had-been-driving

βασιλέα ἐκ τοῦ στρατοπέδου. Οὖν μὲν τοῦτο
(the) king from the camp. Therefore indeed such

ἐγένετο τὸ τέλος τῇ ταύτῃ νυκτί.
was the end (of) — that night.

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ προσῆγον αὐτοὺς εἰς
And on-the next-day they-led them [the ambassadors] to

τὸ στράτευμά, καὶ ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατιώταις
the army, | and it-seemed (good) to-the soldiers

μήτε ἀδικεῖν Παφλαγόνας μήτε
[and the soldiers resolved] neither to-injure (the) Paphlagonians nor

ἀδικεῖσθαι. Μετὰ τοῦτο μὲν οἱ πρέσβεις
to-be-injured (by them). After this indeed the ambassadors

ᾤχοντο· οἱ Ἕλληνες δὲ, ἐπειδὴ ἱκανὰ
departed; the Greeks also, as (a) sufficient (number of)

πλοῖα ἐδόκει παρεῖναι, ἀναβάντες ἔπλεον
ships seemed to-be-present, going-on-board they-sailed (that)

ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα, πνεύματι καλῷ, ἔχοντες
day and night, (the) wind (being) fair, having

τὴν Παφλαγονίαν ἐν ἀριστερᾷ. Δὲ τῇ ἄλλῃ
— Paphlagonia on (the) left. And on-the next

ἀφικνοῦντα εἰς Σινώπην, καὶ ὡρμίσαντο εἰς
(day) they-arrived at Sinope, and anchored at

Ἁρμήνην τῆς Σινώπης. Σινωπεῖς δὲ
Harmene (the harbour) of — Sinope. (The) Sinopeans —

μὲν οἰκοῦσι ἐν τῇ Παφλαγονικῇ, δὲ εἰσιν
indeed dwell in — Paphlagonian (territory), and they-are

ἄποικοι Μιλησίων. Οὗτοι δὲ πέμπουσι
(a) colony of-the-Milesians. These (Sinopeans) indeed send

ξένια τοῖς Ἕλλησι μὲν τρισχιλίους
gifts-of-hospitality to-the Greeks (namely) — three-thousand

μεδίμνους ἀλφίτων, δὲ
medimni [each medimni being about twelve gallons] of-flour, also

χίλια καὶ πεντακόσια κεράμια
a-thousand and five-hundred ceramia [the ceramia being about

οἴνου. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα Χειρίσοφος ἦλθε
six gallons] of-wine. And then Cherisophus came

ἔχων τριήρη. Καὶ μὲν οἱ στρατιῶται προσεδόκων
having galleys. And indeed the soldiers expected

ἥκειν ἄγοντά τί σφισι· δ' ὁ ἦγε μὲν
(that) he-came bringing something for-them; but — he-brought indeed

οὐδέν, δὲ ἀπήγγελλε, ὅτι καὶ Ἀναξίβιος ὁ ναύ-
nothing, however he-announced, that both Anaxibius the naval-

αρχος καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπαινοίη αὐτοῦς, καὶ ὅτι
commander and the others praised them, and that

Ἀναξίβιος ὑπισχνεῖτο, εἰ ἀφικνοῖντο ἔξω
Anaxibius promised, if they-would-come-to (him) out-of

τοῦ Πόντου, ἔσεσθαι μισθοφορίαν αὐτοῖς.
the Pontus, (that) there-would-be pay to-them.

Καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἔμειναν πέντε ἡμέρας ἐν
And the soldiers remained five days in

ταύτῃ τῇ Ἁρμήνῃ. Ὡς δὲ ἐδόκουν γίγ-
this — Harmene. As indeed they-considered (that) they-

νεσθαι ἐγγὺς τῆς Ἑλλάδος ἤδη μᾶλλον ἢ
were-getting near — Greece it now more than

πρόσθεν εἰσῄει αὐτοὺς ὅπως ἂν καὶ ἀφίκωνται
before occurred to-them how they might even arrive

οἴκαδε ἔχοντές τι. Οὖν ἡγήσαντο εἰ
at-home having something. Therefore they-thought (that) if

ἕλοιντο ἕνα ἄρχοντα, ἂν μᾶλλον ἢ
they-should-choose one commander, (it) would (be) better than

οὕσης πολυαρχίας, τὸν ἕνα δύνασθαι
there being many-commanders, (that) the one (commander) would-be-able

χρῆσθαι τῷ στρατεύματι καὶ νύκτὸς καὶ ἡμέρας,
to-use the army both by-night and by-day

καὶ εἰ δέοι λανθάνειν τι ἂν
and if it-should-be-necessary to-conceal any-thing (that it) would (be)

μᾶλλον κρύπτεσθαι, καὶ εἰ δέοι αὖ φθάνειν
much better concealed, and if it-were-necessary again to-anticipate

τι, ἂν ἧττον ὑστερίζειν· γὰρ
any-thing (there) would (be) less coming-late (and delay); for

ἂν οὐ δεῖν λόγων πρὸς ἀλλήλους,
(that) 'there would 'be no 'need of-conferences with one-another,

ἀλλὰ τὸ δόξαν τῷ ἑνὶ
| but (that) the to-seem (good) to-the one [but that the determination

ἂν περαίνεσθαι· δὲ τὸν χρόνον
of the one commander] would be-carried-out; but (in) the time

ἔμπροσθεν οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἔπραττον πάντα ἐκ
neretofore the generals did every (thing) from

τῆς νικώσης. Ὡς δὲ διενοοῦντο ταῦτα
the prevailing (opinion). As indeed they-were-'revolving these (things)

ἐτράποντο ἐπὶ τὸν Ξενοφῶντα· καὶ
'in (their) 'minds, they-turned-themselves to — Xenophon; and

οἱ λοχαγοὶ προσιόντες αὐτῷ, ἔλεγον, ὅτι ἡ στρατιὰ
the captains going to-him, said, that the army

γιγνώσκει οὕτω· καὶ ἕκαστος ἐνδεικνύμενος
think-and-determine thus; and each showing (his)

εὔνοιαν ἔπειθεν αὐτὸν ὑποστῆναι τὴν ἀρχήν.
good-will persuaded him to-undertake the command.

Ὁ δὲ Ξενοφῶν πῇ μὲν ἐβούλετο ταῦτα,
— And Xenophon in-some-measure indeed desired this,

νομίζων καὶ τὴν τιμὴν γίγνεσθαι αὖτως
acknowledging (that) even the honour would-become thus

μείζω ἑαυτῷ πρὸς τοὺς φίλους, καὶ τοὔνομα
greater to-himself before — (his) friends, and the-name

αὐτοῦ ἀφίξεσθαι μεῖζον εἰς τὴν πόλιν, τυχὸν
of-himself would-become greater in — (his own) city, perhaps

δὲ καὶ ἂν γενέσθαι τινος αἴτιος ἀγαθοῦ
likewise also (that) 'he might 'become some cause of-good

τῇ στρατιᾷ. Μὲν δὴ τὰ τοιαῦτα ἐνθυμήματα
to-the army. Indeed truly — these-same considerations

ἐπῆρεν αὐτὸν ἐπιθυμεῖν γενέσθαι ἄρχοντα αὐτο-
impelled him to-desire to-become | commander with-full

κράτορα. Δ' ὁπότε αὖ ἐνθυμοῖτο,
power [commander-in-chief]. But as again he-reflected,

ὅτι ἄδηλον μὲν παντὶ ἀνθρώπῳ, ὅπῃ τὸ
that (it was) uncertain indeed to-every man, | how the

μέλλον ἕξει, δὲ καὶ διὰ
future will-hold, [what the future will produce,] and also through

τοῦτο εἴη καί κίνδυνος ἀποβαλεῖν τὴν
this (that) there-might-be even danger to-lose — (his)

προειργασμένην δόξαν, ἠπορεῖτο. Δὲ αὐτῷ διαπο-
previously-earned reputation, he-was-perplexed. And he hesi-

ρουμένῳ διακρῖναι ἔδοξε εἶναι κράτιστον ἀνακοι-
tating to-decide it-seemed to-be the-best to-con-

νῶσαι τοῖς θεοῖς· καὶ παραστησάμενος δύο
sult the gods, and having-placed-by (the altar) two

ἱερεῖα, ἐθύετο τῷ Διὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ, ὅσπερ ἦν
victims, he-sacrifices to — Jupiter the king, who was

μαντευτὸς ἐκ Δελφῶν αὐτῷ· καὶ δὴ ἐνό-
pointed-out-by-the-oracle at Delphos to-him; and indeed he-ac-

μιζεν ἑωρακέναι τὸ ὄναρ ἀπὸ τούτου
knowledged | to-have-seen [to have had] the dream from the-same

τοῦ θεοῦ, ὃ εἶδεν, ὅτε ἤρχετο καθίστασθαι τὸ
— god, which he-had, when he-began to-set-himself —

συνεπιμελεῖσθαι τῆς στρατιᾶς. Καὶ ὅτε ὡρμᾶτο
to-take-charge-with-others of-the army. And when he-departed

ἐξ Ἐφέσου, συσταθησόμενος Κύρῳ, ἀνεμιμνήσκετο
from Ephesus, about-meeting Cyrus, he-recalled-to-mind

ἀετὸν φθεγγόμενον δεξιὸν ἑαυτῷ,
(an) eagle crying-out on (the) right (hand of) himself,

μέντοι καθήμενον, ὥσπερ ὁ μάντις ὁ προ-
however sitting, (which) as the augur — ac-

πέμπων αὐτὸν ἔλεγεν, ὅτι εἴη μὲν μέγας οἰωνός,
companying him said, that it-was indeed (a) great omen

καὶ οὐκ ἰδιωτικός, καὶ ἔνδοξος μέντοι
and not belonging-to-a-private-individual, and honourable however

ἐπίπονος· γὰρ τὰ ὄρνεα μάλιστα ἐπιτίθεσθαι τῷ
troilsome, for the birds most-of-all attack the

ἀετῷ καθημένῳ· μέντοι τὸν σίωνον εἶναι οὐ
eagle sitting, however (that) the omen is not

κρηματιστικόν, γὰρ τὸν ἀετὸν μᾶλλον λαμβάνειν
indicative-of-gain, for (that) the eagle rather took

τὰ ἐπιτήδεια πετόμενον. Οὕτω δὴ αὐτῷ
— (his) provisions flying-about. As indeed he

θυομένῳ ὁ θεὸς διαφανῶς σημαίνει μήτε προς-
was-sacrificing the god evidently signified neither to-

δεῖσθαι τῆς ἀρχῆς, μήτε, εἰ αἱροῖντο, ἀπο-
desire the command, nor, if he-should-be-chosen, to

δέχεσθαι. Τοῦτο δὴ μὲν ἐγένετο οὕτως. Ἡ
accept (it). This truly indeed happened thus. The

στρατιὰ δὲ συνῆλθε, καὶ πάντες ἔλεγον ἕνα
army indeed assembled, and all said (that) one

αἱρεῖσθαι· καὶ ἐπεὶ τοῦτο ἔδοξε,
(commander) was-to-be-chosen; | and when this seemed (good),

προεβάλλοντο αὐτόν.
[and when this was resolved on by the army,] they-proposed him

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐδόκει εἶναι δῆλον, ὅτι
[Xenophon]. When indeed it-seemed to-be evident, that

αἱρήσονται αὐτόν, εἴ τις ἐπιψηφίζοι,
they-would-choose him, if any-one should-put (it) to-the-vote,

ἀνέστη καὶ ἔλεξε τάδε·
he-rose-up and spoke thus:

Ἐγώ, ὦ ἄνδρες, μὲν ἥδομαι ὑπὸ τιμώμενος
I, O men, am indeed delighted at being-honoured

ὑμῶν, εἴπερ εἰμι ἄνθρωπος, καὶ ἔχω χάριν,
by-you, as-indeed I-am (a) man, and have gratitude

καὶ εὔχομαι τούς θεοὺς δοῦναί μοι
(for what you intend), and I-pray the gods to-grant me

γενέσθαι αἴτιόν τινος ἀγαθοῦ ὑμῖν· μέντοι το
to-become (the) author of-some good to-you; | however the

προκριθῆναι ἐμὲ ὑπὸ ὑμῶν
to-have-preferred me [but the preferring me] by you (as yom)

ἄρχοντα, Λακεδαιμονίου ἀνδρὸς παρόντος, δοκεῖ
commander, (a) Lacedæmonian man being-present, it-seems

μοι οὔτε εἶναι συμφέρον ὑμῖν, ἀλλ', εἰ
to-me (would) neither be (an) advantage to-you, but, if

δέοισθε τι παρ' αὐτῶν, ἂν ἧττον
you-should-desire any-thing from them, (that you) would the-less

διὰ τοῦτο τυγχάνειν, τε νομίζω τοῦτο
on-account-of this obtain (it), and I-think (that) this

αἰ οὐ πάνυ τι εἶναι ἀσφαλὲς ἐμοί.
again (would) not at-all in-any-manner be safe for-me.

Γὰρ ὁρῶ ὅτι καὶ πρόσθεν οὐ
For I-see that even 'they [the Lacedæmonians] heretofore 'did not

ἐπαύσαντο πολεμοῦντες τῇ πατρίδι μου,
'cease making-war against-the country of-me, [my country,]

πρὶν ἐποίησαν πᾶσαν τὴν πόλιν ὁμολογεῖν
before they-had-made (the) whole — state to-acknowledge (the)

Λακεδαιμονίους εἶναι καὶ ἡγεμόνας αὐτῶν. Ἐπεὶ
Lacedæmonians to-be even masters of-them. When

δὲ ὡμολόγησαν τοῦτο, εὐθὺς ἐπαύσαντο
indeed they-acknowledged this, 'they directly 'ceased

πολεμοῦντες, καὶ οὐκέτι πέρα ἐπολιόρκησαν τὴν
making-war, and no-longer more did-they-besiege the

πόλιν. Εἰ οὖν, ὁρῶν ταῦτα, ἐγὼ δοκοίην
city. If therefore, seeing these (things), I should-seem

ἐνταῦθ' ὅπου δυναίμην ποιεῖν ἄκυρον τὸ
(to be) there where I-might-be-able to-make null the

ἀξίωμα ἐκείνων, ἐννοῶ ἐκεῖνο μὴ ἂν λίαν ταχὺ
authority of-them, I-consider this lest 'I might very speedily

σωφρονισθείην. Ὃ δὲ ὑμεῖς ἐννοεῖτε, ὅτι
'be-taught discretion. What indeed you consider-in-your-minds, that

ἑνὸς ἄρχοντος ἂν εἴη ἧττον στάσις
(there being) one commander 'there would 'be less faction

ἢ πολλῶν, ἴστε εὖ, ὅτι ἑλόμενοι μὲν
than (there being) many, you-know well, that having-chosen indeed

ἄλλον οὐχ εὑρήσετε ἐμὲ στασιάζοντα. γὰρ
another you-will not find me exciting-faction; for

νομίζω ὅστις ὢν ἐν πολέμῳ στασιάζει πρὸς
I-acknowledge (that) he-who being in war excites-faction against

ἄρχοντα, τοῦτον στασιάζειν πρὸς τὴν
(his) commander, (that) this (one) contends against the

σωτηρίαν ἑαυτοῦ· δὲ ἐὰν ἕλησθε ἐμὲ ἂν οὐκ
safety of-himself; but if you-should-choose me I would not

θαυμάσαιμι εἰ εὕροιτε τινα ἀχθόμενον καὶ ὑμῖν
wonder if you-found some discontented both with-you

καὶ ἐμοί.
and myself.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἶπε ταῦτα, πολὺ πλείονες
When indeed he-had-said these (things), many more

ἐξανίσταντο, λέγοντες, ὡς αὐτὸν δέοι ἄρχειν.
stood-up, saying, that he ought to-command.

Ἀγασίας δὲ Στυμφάλιος εἶπεν ὅτι εἴη
Agasias indeed (the) Stymphalian said that it-would-be

γελοῖον, εἰ ἔχοι οὕτως·
ridiculous, if it-have (itself) thus; [if things be in such a state;]

ὡς Λακεδαιμόνιοι ὀργιοῦνται, καὶ ἐὰν
(since) that (the) Lacedæmonians might-be-enraged, even if (a party)

συνελθόντες σύνδειπνοι μὴ αἱρῶνται Λακε-
having-met to-sup-together (and) do not choose (a) Lace-

δαιμόνιον συμποσίαρχον. Εἰ ἐπεὶ οὕτω γε
dæmonian (as) president-of-the-banquet. If when thus at-least

τοῦτο ἔχει, ἔφη, οὐδὲ
it has (itself), [if such be the case,] said-he, it-would neither

ἔξεστιν ἡμῖν λοχαγεῖν, ὡς ἔοικεν, ὅτι
be-proper for-us to-lead-companies (as captains), as it-seems, that

ἐσμὲν Ἀρκάδες. Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἀνεθορύβησαν ὡς
we-are Arcadians. Then truly they-murmured as

τοῦ Ἀγασίου εἰπόντος εὖ. Καὶ Ξενο-
(signifying) — Agasias having-spoken well. And — Xeno

φῶν ἐπεὶ ἑώρα ἐνδέον πλείονος,
phon when he-saw (that) there-was-need of-more (speaking)

παρελθὼν εἶπεν· Ἀλλ', ὦ ἄνδρες, ἔφη, ὡς
coming-forward he-said: But, O men, said-he, that you-may

πάνυ εἰδῆτε, ὄμνύω ὑμῖν πάντας θεοὺς καὶ
fully know, I-swear to-you by-all (the) gods and

πάσας, ἦ μὴν ἐπεὶ ἐγώ ἠσθανόμην
by-all (the goddesses), (that) truly indeed when I perceived

ὑμετέραν γνώμην, ἐθυόμεν, εἰ εἴη
your intention, I-sacrificed, (to ascertain) if it-might-be

βέλτιον ὑμῖν τε ἐπιτρέψαι ταύτην τὴν
better for-you not-only to-have-confided this — (same)

ἀρχὴν ἐμοί, καὶ ἐμοί ὑποστῆναι· καὶ οἱ θεοὶ
command to-me, but-also for-me to-have-undertaken (it); and the gods

οὕτως ἐσήμηναν ἐν τοῖς ἱεροῖς ὥστε καὶ ἰδιώτην
so signified in the sacrifices that even (a) private-person

ἂν γνῶναι, ὅτι δεῖ με ἀπέχεσθαι
[not an augur] might know, that it-was-proper | (that) I should-hold-off

τῆς μοναρχίας.
from-the single-rule [that I should not accept the sole command].

Οὕτω δὴ αἱροῦνται Χειρίσοφον. Δὲ Χει-
Thus indeed they (then) chose Cheirisophus. And Chei-

ρίσοφος ἐπεὶ ἡρέθη παρελθὼν εἶπεν· Ἀλλ',
risophus when he-was-elected coming-forward said: But,

ὦ ἄνδρες, ἴστε μὲν τοῦτο, ὅτι ἔγωγε ἂν ἐστασίαζον
O men, know indeed this, that I-at-least would have-excited

οὐδ', εἰ εἵλεσθε ἄλλον· μέντοι, ἔφη,
no factions, if you-had-elected another; however, said-he,

ὠνήσατε Ξενοφῶντα οὐχ ἑλόμενοι· ὡς
you-have-done-a-service-to Xenophon (by) not having-elected (him); as

καὶ νῦν Δέξιππος ἤδη διέβαλεν αὐτὸν πρὸς
even now Dexippus has already accused him before

Ἀναξίβιον, ὅ τι ἐδύνατο, καὶ ἐμοῦ μάλα
Anaxibius, as-much-as he-could, even I (trying) much

σιγάζοντος αὐτόν. Ὁ δ' ἔφη
to-silence him. — (Dexippus) also said (that he)

νομίζειν, αὐτὸν ἐθελῆσαι μᾶλλον
thought, (that) he (Xenophon) desired rather

συναρχειν Τιμασίωνι, ὄντι Δαρδανεῖ
to-be-joined-in-command-with Timasion, (he) being (a) Dardanian

στρατεύματος τοῦ Κλεάρχου, ἢ ἑαυτῷ
'of (the) 'army of — Clearchus, than with-himself

ὄντι Λάκωνι. Ἐπεὶ μέντοι, ἔφη,
(Cheirisophus) being (a) Lacedæmonian. Since however, said-he,

εἵλεσθε ἐμέ, ἐγὼ καὶ πειράσομαι ποιεῖν
(as) you-have-elected me, I 'will even 'endeavour to-do

ὑμᾶς ἀγαθόν, ὅ τι ἂν δύνωμαι. Καὶ οὕτω
you (all the) good, as-much-as I may 'be-able. And thus

παρασκευάζεσθε, ὡς αὔριον ὑμεῖς ἀναξόμενοι,
prepare-yourselves, as to-morrow you will-be-ordered (to depart),

ἐὰν ᾖ πλοῦς· ὁ δὲ ὁ
if there-may-be (a) sailing (permitted by the weather); and the

πλοῦς ἔσται εἰς Ἡράκλειαν· οὖν δεῖ
sailing will-be to Heraclea; therefore it-is-proper (that)

ἅπαντας πειρᾶσθαι κατασχεῖν ἐκεῖσε· δὲ τὰ
all endeavour to-arrive there; and (about) —

ἄλλα βουλευσόμεθα, ἐπειδὰν ἔλθωμεν ἐκεῖσε.
other (things) we-will-consult, when we-arrive there

## CHAPTER II.

Ἐντεῦθεν τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἀναγόμενοι, ἔπλεον
HENCE on-the next-day lifting (the anchors), they-sailed

καλῷ πνεύματι δύο ἡμέρας παρα γῆν.
'with (a) 'fair wind two days along (the) land.

Καὶ παραπλέοντες ἐθεώρουν τε Ἰασονίαν ἀκτήν,
And sailing-along they-saw not-only (the) Jasonian beach,

ἔνθα ἡ Ἀργὼ λέγεται ὁρμίσασθαι, καὶ τὰ
where the Argo is-said to-have-been-moored, but-also the

στόματα τῶν ποταμῶν πρῶτον μὲν τοῦ Θερμώ-
mouths of-the rivers, first indeed of-the Thermo

δοντος, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῦ Ἴριος, ἔπειτα δὲ τοῦ Ἅλυος,
don, afterwards also of-the Iris, afterwards also the Halyus,

μετὰ δὲ τοῦτον τοῦ Παρθενίου· δὲ παραπλεύ-
after indeed that of-the Parthenius; and having-sailed-

σαντες τοῦτον ἀφίκοντο εἰς Ἡράκλειαν,
by this (last river) they-arrived at Heraclea, (a)

Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν, ἄποικον Μεγαρέων, δ'
Greek city, (a) colony of-(the) Megarians, and

οὖσαν ἐν τῇ χώρᾳ Μαριανδυνῶν. Καὶ
being in the territory of-(the) Mariandyrians. And

ὡρμίσαντο παρὰ τῇ Ἀχερουσιάδι Χερρονήσῳ, ἔνθα
they-anchored near the Acherusian Peninsula, where

ὁ Ἡρακλῆς λέγεται καταβῆναι ἐπὶ τὸν κύνα
— Hercules is-said to-have-descended for the dog

Κέρβερον ᾗ νῦν δεικνῦσι τὰ σημεῖα τῆς
Cerberus, where (indeed) now they-show the marks of —

καταβάσεως, τὸ βάθος ἐπὶ πλέον ἢ δύο
(his) descent, to — (a) depth for more than two

στάδια. Ἐνταῦθα οἱ Ἡδακλεῶται πέμπουσι
stadia. There the Heracleans send

ξένια τριςχιλίους μεδίμνους
gifts-of-hospitality (namely) three-thousand medimni [the medimni

ἀλφίτων, καὶ δισχίλια κεράμια
being about twelve gallons] of-barley-meal, and two-thousand ceramia

οἴνου, καὶ εἴκοσι βοῦς,
[the ceramia being about six gallons] of-wine, and twenty oxen,

καὶ ἑκατόν οἷς. Ἐνταῦθα ποταμός, Λύκος
and (a) hundred sheep. Here (a) river, Lycus (by)

ὄνομα, ῥεῖ διὰ τοῦ πεδίου, εὖρος ὡς
name, flows through the plain, (the) breadth (thereof being) about

δύο πλέθρων.
two plethra (or about two hundred feet).

Οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ συλλεγέντες ἐβουλεύοντο
The soldiers indeed assembling deliberated

τὴν λοιπὴν πορείαν, πότερον χρὴ
(about) the rest of-(the) road, whether it-might-be-best

πορευθῆναι ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου ἀτὰ
for them) to-have-proceeded from the Pontus (Euxinus) by

γῆν ἢ κατὰ θάλατταν. Δὲ Λύκων ᾽Αχαιός
land or by sea. But Lycon (an) Achæan

ἀναστ᾽ὰς, εἶπε· Θαυμάζω μὲν, ὦ ἄνδρες, τῶν
rising-up, said: I-wonder indeed, O men, (at) the

στρατηγῶν, ὅτι οὐ πειρῶνται ἐκπορίζειν
generals, that they-do not 'endeavour to-procure

σιτηρέσιον ἡμῖν· γὰρ μὲν τὰ ξένια οὐ μὴ
money-for provisions for-us; for indeed the presents will not —

γένηται σῖτα τῇ στρατιᾷ τριῶν ἡμερῶν·
be (sufficient) food for-the army for-three days:

δ᾽ ἔστιν οὐκ, ἔφη, ἐπισιτισά-
and there-is no (place), said-he, having-provided-ourselves-with-pre

μενοι, ὁπόθεν πορευσόμεθα. Οὖν δοκεῖ
visions, whence we-will-set-forth (on our journey). Therefore it-seems

ἐμοὶ αἰτεῖν τοὺς Ἡρακλεώτας μὴ
to-me (that we ought) to-ask the Heracleans (for) not

ἔλαττον ἢ τρισχιλίους κυζικηνούς.
less than three-thousand cyzices [about 15,000 dollars].

Δ᾽ ἄλλος εἶπὲ μὴ ἔλαττον ἢ μυρίους· καὶ
But another said not less than ten-thousand; and

πρέσβεις ἑλομένους, πέμπειν μάλα αὐτίκα
deputies being-chosen, to-send (them) (*more*) immediately

πρὸς τὴν πόλιν, ἡμῶν καθημένων, καὶ εἰδέναι ὅ τι
to the city, we being-in-session, even to-know what

ἂν ἀπαγγέλλωσι, καὶ βουλεύεσθαι πρὸς
report-they might bring, and to-deliberate about

ταῦτα. Ἐντεῦθεν προὐβάλλοντο πρέσβεις,
these (things). Then they-proposed (for) deputies,

πρῶτον μὲν Χειρίσοφον, ὅτι ἥρητο ἄρχων·
first indeed Cheirisophus, because he-had-been-chosen commander;

δ᾽ ἔστι καὶ οἱ Ξενοφῶντα. Δὲ
and it-is also (that) — (others proposed) Xenophon. But

οἱ ἰσχυρῶς ἀπεμάχοντο· γὰρ ταῦτὰ
— they vehemently set-themselves-against (it): for this

ἐδόκει ἀμφοῖν μὴ ἀναγκάζειν
seemed to-both (of them), (that) 'they (ought) not 'to-compel

Ἑλληνίδα πόλιν καὶ φιλίαν διδοῖεν
(a Greek city and (one) friendly (to them) to-give

ὅ τι αὐτοὶ μὴ ἐθέλοντες. Ἐπεὶ δ' οὗτοι
what they 'were not 'willing (to give). When indeed these

ἐδόκουν ἀπρόθυμοι εἶναι, πέμπουσι Λύκωνα
showed (themselves) no-ways-inclined to-go, they-send Lycon

Ἀχαιόν, καὶ Καλλίμαχον Παρράσιον, καὶ
(the) Achæan, and Callimachus (the) Parrhasian, an

Ἀγασίαν Στυμφάλιον. Οὗτοι ἐλθόντες
Agasias (the) Stymphalian. These going (to the town)

ἔλεγον τὰ δεδογμένα. Ἔφασαν δὲ
informed (them of) the resolutions. They-said indeed (that)

τὸν Λύκονα καὶ ἐπαπειλεῖν, εἰ μὴ ποιήσοιεν
— Lycon even threatened, if they-'did not 'do

ταῦτα. Δ' οἱ Ἡρακλεῶται ἀκούσαντες
these (things). And the Heracleans hearing (this)

ἔφασαν βουλεύσεσθαι· καὶ εὐθὺς συνῆγον
said (that) they-would-consult-about-it; and immediately they-collected

τε τὰ χρήματα ἐκ τῶν ἀγρῶν, καὶ ἀνεσκευ-
not-only — (their) property from the fields, but-also packed-

ασαν εἴσω τὴν
up (and carried) within (the city) the (things exposed for sale in the

ἀγοράν, καὶ αἱ πύλαι ἐκέκλειντο, καὶ ὅπλα
market, and the gates were-closed, and armed (men)

ἐφαίνετο ἐπὶ τῶν τειχῶν.
appeared on the walls.

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ παράξαντες ταῦτα ᾐτιῶντο
Upon this — (those) having-promoted these (things) accused

τοὺς στρατηγοὺς διαφθείρειν τὴν πρᾶξιν.
the generals (that they) spoiled the affair.

Καὶ οἱ Ἀρκάδες καὶ οἱ Ἀχαιοὶ συνίσταντο· δὲ
And the Arcadians and the Achæans joined-together; and

τε Καλλίμαχος ὁ Παρράσιος καὶ Λύκων ὁ
not-only Callimachus the Parrhasian, but-also Lycon the

Ἀχαιὸς προειστήκει μάλιστα αὐτῶν.
Achæan | 'stood 'over most them [were the

Δὲ οἱ λόγοι ἦσαν αὐτοῖς,
head leaders]. | And the words were to-them, [and the con-

ὡς εἴη αἴσχρον Ἀθη-
versation among them was,] that it-was disgraceful (that an) Athe-

ναῖον ἄρχειν Πελοποννησίων καὶ Λακεδαιμο-
nian (should) rule Peloponnesians and Lacedæmo-

νίων, παρεχόμενον μηδεμίαν δύναμιν εἰς τὴν
nians, (and he) contributing no force to the

στρατιάν, καὶ σφᾶς ἔχειν τοὺς πόνους
army, and (that) they-themselves had the trouble

μὲν, δὲ ἄλλους τὰ κέρδη, καὶ ταῦτα
indeed, but others the profits, and these (things taking place)

σφῶν κατειργασμένων τὴν σωτηρίαν·
they-themselves having-effected the safety (of all),

γὰρ τοὺς κατειργασμένους εἶναι Ἀρκάδας
for (that) — (those) accomplishing (this) were Arcadians

καὶ Ἀχαιούς, δὲ τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα εἶναι
and Achæans, and (that) the rest (of the) army was (as)

οὐδὲν· (καὶ ἦν δὲ τῇ ἀληθείᾳ ὑπὲρ ἥμισυ
nothing; (and there-was indeed in — truth above half

τοῦ ὅλου στρατεύματος Ἀρκάδες καὶ
of-the whole army (who were) Arcadians and

Ἀχαιοὶ). Οὖν εἰ σωφρονοῖεν, αὐτοὶ
Achæans). Therefore if they-were-wise, these (the Achæans

συστάντες, καὶ ἑλόμενοι στρατηγοὺς
and Arcadians) having-united, and choosing commanders

ἑαυτῶν, ἂν ποιοῖντο τὴν πορείαν καθ'
of-themselves, 'they might 'make the journey by

ἑαυτοὺς, καὶ πειρῷντο λαμβάνειν τι ἀγαθόν.
themselves, and endeavour to-procure something good

Ταῦτ' ἔδοξε· καὶ
(for themselves). This seemed (good and was adopted); and (the)

Ἀρκάδες ἢ Ἀχαιοὶ ἀπολιπόντες Χειρίσοφον, εἰ
Arcadians or Achæans leaving Cheirisophus, if

τινες ἦσαν παρ' αὐτῷ, καὶ Ξενοφῶντα, συνέστησαν·
any were with him, as-also Xenophon, joined-together

καὶ αἱροῦνται δέκα στρατηγοὺς ἑαυτῶν·
(with the rest), and choose ten commanders of-themselves;

δὲ τούτους ἐφηφίσαντο ἐκ τῆς νικώσης
and (that) these (when) they-had-decided by the majority

ποιεῖν τοῦτο ὅ τι δοκοίη. Οὖν μὲν ἡ
were-to-do that whatever might-be-decided-on. Therefore indeed the

ἀρχὴ παντὸς τοῦ Χειρισόφῳ ἐνταῦθα
command of-all the (army) by-Cheirisophus 'was then

κατελύθη ἕκτῃ ἢ ἑβδόμῃ ἡμέρᾳ ἀφ' ἧς
'dissolved 'on (the) 'sixth or seventh day after which

ἡρέθη.
he-was-chosen.

Ξενοφῶν μέντοι ἐβούλετο ποιεῖσθαι τὴν πορείαν
Xenophon however wished to-make the journey

κοινῇ μετ' αὐτῶν, νομίζων οὕτως εἶναι
in-common with them, thinking (that) thus 'it (would) 'be

ἀσφαλεστέραν, ἢ ἕκαστον στέλλεσθαι
safer, than (that) each (should) go

ἰδίᾳ· ἀλλὰ Νέων ἔπεισεν αὐτὸν πορεύεσθαι
his-own (way); but Neon persuaded him to-proceed

καθ' αὑτόν, ἀκούσας τοῦ Χειρισόφου, ὅτι Κλέανδρος
by himself, having-heard from — Cheirisophus, that Cleander

ὁ ἁρμοστὴς ἐν Βυζαντίῳ φαίη ἥξειν εἰς
the governor in Byzantium said (that he would) come to

λιμένα Κάλπης ἔχων τριήρεις. Οὖν συνεβοή-
(the) harbour of-Calpe having galleys. Therefore he-ad

λευε διὰ ταῦτα ὅπως μηδεὶς μετάσχοι
vised (him) for this (purpose) that no-one might-participate

ἐπὶ τῶν τριήρων, ἀλλ' αὐτοὶ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται
to be) on the galleys, but they and the soldiers

αὐτῶν. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἅμα ἀθυ-
of-themselves And Cheirisophus 'being indeed at-the-same-time 'dis-

μῶν τοῖς γεγενημένοις, δὲ ἅμα μι-
heartened with-the (things) having-happened, and 'being also 'dis

σῶν ἐκ τούτου τὸ στράτευμα,
guests on account of-these (things) (with) the army,

ἐπιτρέπει αὐτῷ ποιεῖν ὅ τι βούλεται. Ξενοφῶν
he-permits him to-do what he-wishes. Xenophon

δὲ ἔτι μὲν ἐπεχείρησεν ἀπαλλαγεὶς
also moreover indeed (for some time) attempted (after) having-left

τῆς στρατιᾶς ἐκπλεῦσαι· δὲ αὐτῷ θυομένῳ
the army to-sail-away; and he sacrificing (to)

Ἡρακλεῖ τῷ ἡγεμόνι, καὶ κοινουμένῳ πότερα
Hercules the conductor, and consulting (with him) whether

εἴη λῷον καὶ ἄμεινον στρατεύεσθαι, ἔχοντι
it-would-be better and more-desirable to-march, having

τοὺς παραμείναντας τῶν στρατιωτῶν,
— (those) remaining (with him) of-the soldiers,

ἢ ἀπαλλάττεσθαι, ὁ θεὸς ἐσήμηνε τοῖς ἱεροῖς
or to-take-leave-of (them), the god signified by-the victims

συστρατεύεσθαι. Οὕτω τὸ στράτευμα
(that he ought) to-march-with (them). Thus the army

γίγνεται τριχῇ· Ἀρκάδες καὶ μὲν
became (divided into) three-parts; (the) Arcadians and indeed (the)

Ἀχαιοί, πλείους ἢ τετρακισχίλιοι, πάντες ὁπλῖται·
Achæans, more than four-thousand, all heavy-armed-men;

δὲ Χειρισόφῳ μὲν εἰς τετρακοσίους
but with-Cheirisophus (there were) indeed in (number) four-hundred

καὶ χιλίους ὁπλῖται, δὲ πελτασταὶ εἰς
and a-thousand heavy-armed-men, and targeteers in (number)

ἑπτακοσίους, οἱ Θρᾷκες Κλεάρχου· δὲ Ξενο-
seven-hundred, (being) the Thracians of-Clearchus; and with-Xeno-

φῶντι μὲν εἰς ἑπτακοσίους καὶ
phon indeed (there were) in (number) seven-hundred and

χιλίους ὁπλῖται, δὲ πελτασταὶ εἰς τρια-
a-thousand heavy-armed-men, and targeteers in (number) three-

κοσίους· δὲ αὐτος μόνος εἶχεν ἱππικὸν ἀμφὶ
hundred; and he alone had cavalry about

τετταράκοντα ἱππέας.
forty horsemen.

Καὶ μὲν οἱ Ἀρκάδες διαπραξάμενοι πλοῖα παρὰ
And indeed the Arcadians having-procured ships from

τῶν Ἡρακλεωτῶν, πρῶτοι πλέουσιν, ὅπως, ἐξαίφνης
the Heracleans, first set-sail, that-is, suddenly

ἐπιπεσόντες τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς, λάβοιεν
making-an-irruption-against the Bithynians, (that) they-might-take

ὅ τι πλεῖστα· καὶ ἀπο-
what most (they could); [as much as they could,] and de-

βαίνουσιν εἰς λιμένα Κάλπης,
scending (from their vessels) at (the) harbour of-Calpe,

πως κατὰ μέσον τῆς Θρᾴκης. Δὲ Χειρίσοφος
somewhere about (the) middle — of-Thrace. And Cheirisophus

εὐθὺς ἀρξάμενος ἀπὸ τῆς πόλεως
having immediately commenced (the journey) from the city

τῶν Ἡρακλεωντῶν ἐπορεύετο πεζῇ διὰ τῆς χώρας·
of-the Heracleans proceeded-forth on-foot through the territories

δὲ ἐπεὶ ἀνέβαλε εἰς τὴν Θρᾴκην
(of the Heracleans); but when he-entered (into) — Thrace

ᾖει παρὰ τὴν θάλατταν· καὶ γὰρ ἠσθένει.
he-went along the sea; for indeed he-was-sick.

Ξενοφῶν δὲ λαβὼν πλοῖα, ἀποβαίνει ἐπὶ τὰ
Xenophon indeed having-taken vessels, disembarks on the

ὅρια τῆς Θρᾴκης καὶ τῆς Ἡρακλεώτιδος, καὶ
confines of — Thrace and — Heraclea, and

ἐπορεύετο διὰ μεσογαίας.
proceeded through (the) inland (parts.)

## CHAPTER III.

Ὅν τρόπον μὲν οὖν τε ἡ ἀρχὴ Χειρι-
IN-WHAT manner indeed therefore not-only the command of-Cheiri

σόφου τοῦ παντὸς κατελύθη, καὶ τὸ
sophus (over) the entire (army) was-dissolved, but-also (how) the

στράτευμα τῶν Ἑλλήνων ἐσχίσθη ἐν τοῖς
army of-the Greeks was-divided into the (three parts)

εἴρηται ἐπάνω.] Ἕκαστοι δ' αὐτῶν
has-been-related above.] Each indeed of-these (three divisions)

ἔπραξαν τάδε. Οἱ Ἀρκάδες μέν, ὡς ἀπέβησαν
fared thus. The Arcadians indeed, as they-had-disembarked

νυκτὸς εἰς λιμένα Κάλπης, πορεύονται εἰς τὰς
by-night at (the) port of-Calpe, proceeded to the

πρώτας κώμας ὡς τριάκοντα στάδια
first (or nearest) villages (being) about thirty stadia

ἀπὸ θαλάττης. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγένετο φῶς
from (the) sea. When indeed it-was (day) light

ἕκαστος στρατηγὸς ἦγεν ἐπὶ κώμην τὸν λόχον
each commander led against (a) village the company

ἑαυτοῦ· δὲ ὁποία ἐδόκει εἶναι μείζων
of-himself; but whatever (village) seemed to-be greater (than the rest)

οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἦγον σύνδυο λόχους.
the commanders led 'two companies 'together (against it).

Δὲ συνεβάλοντο καὶ λόφιον, εἰς ὃν δέοι
And they-agreed also 'about (a) 'hill, on which it-might-be-

πάντας ἁλίζεσθαι· καὶ, ἅτε ἐπιπεσόντες
proper for-all to-re-assemble; and, as falling-on

ἐξαίφνης, ἔλαβον τε πολλὰ ἀνδράποδα,
(these people) suddenly, they-took not-only many slaves,

καὶ περιεβάλοντο πολλὰ πρόβατα.
but-also surrounded many (flocks of) sheep (and other cattle).

Δ' οἱ Θρᾷκες οἱ διαφεύγοντες ἠθροί-
But the Thracians — (those namely) fleeing-away collected-

ζοντο· δὲ πολλοὶ διέφευγον, ὄντες πελτασταί,
together; and many escaped, being targeteers,

ὁπλίτας ἐξ τῶν χειρῶν αὐτῶν
(from the) heavy-armed-men (even) from the hands of-them

Ἐπεὶ δὲ συνελέγησαν, πρῶτον
When indeed they (the Thracians) had-collected-together, they first

μὲν ἐπιτίθενται τῷ λόχῳ Σμίκρητος, ἑνὸς τῶν
indeed attacked the company of-Smicretes, one of-the

στρατηγῶν Ἀρκάδων, ἤδη ἀπιόντι εἰς τὸ
commanders of (the) Arcadians, now departing to the

συγκείμενον καὶ ἄγοντι πολλὰ χρήματα.
place-agreed-on and leading (with him) much booty.

Καὶ τέως μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐμάχοντο ἅμα
And for-a-while indeed the Greeks fought while

πορευόμενοι. Δὲ διαβάσει ἐπὶ
marching-forward. But they [the Greeks] being-about-to-cross over (a)

χαράδρας τρέπονται αὐτούς, καὶ τε ἀποκτιν-
ravine they-routed them, and they not-only killed

νύασι τὸν Σμίκρητα αὐτόν, καὶ πάντας τοὺς
— Smicres himself, but-also all the

ἄλλους· ἄλλου λόχου δὲ τῶν δέκα στρα-
others (with him); of-another company indeed of-the ten com-

τηγῶν, τοῦ Ἡγησάνδρου, κατέλιπον
manders, — (that namely) of-Hegesander, they-left

μόνους ὀκτώ· καὶ Ἡγησάνδρος αὐτὸς ἐσώθη. Καὶ
only eight; and Hegesander himself was-saved. And

δὲ οἱ ἄλλοι λοχαγοὶ συνῆλθον, οἱ μὲν σὺν
also the other captains came-together, — (some) indeed with

πράγμασιν, οἱ δὲ ἄνευ πραγμάτων· δὲ οἱ
things, — (others) indeed without things; but the

Θρᾷκες, ἐπεὶ εὐτύχησαν τοῦτο τὸ εὐτύχημα,
Thracians, when they-had-luckily-met (with) this — good-luck,

τε συνεβόων ἀλλήλους, καὶ συνελέγοντο
not-only cried-out (encouragingly) to-one-another, but-also assembled

ἐρρωμένως τῆς νυκτός. Καὶ ἅμα ἡμέρα,
strongly during-the night. And at-the-time (of) day light;

καὶ πολλοὶ ἱππεῖς καὶ πελτασταί ἐτάττοντο
with many horsemen and targeteers arranged-themselves in

κύκλῳ περὶ τὸν λόφον, ἔνθα οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐστρα-
a) circle round the hill, where the Greeks were-

τοπεδεύοντο, καὶ ἀεὶ πλείονες
encamped, and continually more (of these Thracians)

συνέῤῥεον. Καὶ ἀσφαλῶς προσέβαλλον πρὸς
kept-flocking-together. And they safely rushed against

τοὺς ὁπλίτας· γὰρ μὲν οἱ Ἕλληνες εἶχον
the heavy-armed-men; for indeed the Greeks had

οὔτε τοξότην, οὔτε ἀκοντιστὴν οὔτε ἱππέα.
neither (an) archer, or (a) javelin-man or (a) horseman.

Δ' οἱ προσθέοντες καὶ προσελαύνοντες
And the (Thracians) running-up and riding-forwards

ἠκόντιζον· δὲ ὁπότε
threw (their) darts (among them); and when they [the

ἐπίοιεν αὐτοῖς, ῥᾳδίως ἀπέφευγον. Ἄλλο
Greeks] advanced-against them, easily fled-away. | Others

δὲ ἐπετίθεντο ἄλλῃ.
indeed attacked other (part) [some of the Thracians attacked

Καὶ μὲν τῶν πολλοὶ
one part, others another part]. And indeed of-the (Greeks) many

ἐτιτρῶσκοντο, δὲ τῶν οὐδείς· ὥστε
were-wounded, but of-the (Thracians) none; so-that (the Greeks)

οὐκ ἐδύναντο κινηθῆναι ἐκ τοῦ χωρίου, ἀλλὰ
were not able to-move from the place, but

οἱ Θρᾷκες τελευτῶντες καὶ εἶργον αὐτοὺς ἀπὸ
the Thracians | finishing even prohibited them from

τοῦ ὕδατος. Δὲ ἐπεὶ
the water [finally even cut them off from water]. But when (the)

ἀπορία ἦν πολλή, διελέγοντο περὶ σπονδῶν·
distress was much, they-began-to-speak about terms,

καὶ μὲν τὰ ἄλλα ὡμολόγητο αὐτοῖς, δὲ οἱ
and indeed the other (terms) had-been-agreed-on by-them, but the

Θρᾷκες οὐκ ἐδίδοσαν ὁμήρους, τῶν Ἑλλήνων
Thracians would not give hostages, the Greeks

αἰτούντων, ἀλλ' ἐν τούτῳ ἴσχετο·
requesting (them), but on this (the affair) was-in-check;

μὲν δὴ τὰ τῶν Ἀρκάδων εἶχε
indeed truly the (affairs) of-the Arcadians had (themselves)

οὕτως.
so.

Δὲ Χειρίσοφος πορευόμενος ἀσφαλῶς παρὰ
But Cheirisophus proceeding safely along (the)

θάλατταν, ἀφικνεῖται εἰς λιμένα Κάλπης.
sea (coast), arrived at (the) harbour of-Calpe.

Ξενοφῶντι δὲ πορευομένῳ διὰ τῆς μεσογαίας,
Xenophon however proceeding through the interior,

οἱ ἱππεῖς προκαταθέοντες ἐντυγχάνουσι
— (his) horsemen hastening-on-before fall-in-with (some)

πρεσβύταις πορευομένοις ποι. Καὶ ἐπεὶ ἤχθη-
ambassadors proceeding some-where. And when they-had-

σαν παρὰ Ξενοφῶντα, ἐρωτᾶ αὐτοὺς εἴ
conducted (them) to Xenophon, he-asked them if

που ἤσθηνται ἄλλου στρατεύματος, ὄντος
any-where they-might-have-seen another army, being

Ἑλληνικοῦ. Δὲ οἱ ἔλεγον πάντα τὰ
Grecian. And — they-told (him) all the (things

γεγενημένα, καὶ ὅτι νῦν πολιορκοῦνται
having-occurred, and that now 'they [the Greeks] 'were-besieged

ἐπὶ λόφου, δὲ πάντες οἱ Θρᾷκες εἶεν περι-
on (a) hill, and (that) all the Thracians were sur-

κεκυκλωμένοι αὐτούς. Ἐνταῦθα. μὲν ἰσχυρῶς
rounding them. Then indeed 'he strictly

ἐφύλαττε τούτους τοὺς ἀνθρώπους, ὅπως εἶεν
'guarded these-same — men, so-that they-might-be

ἡγεμόνες ὅπου δέοι· δὲ καταστήσας
guides when it-might-be-required; and having-stationed

σκοποὺς, συνέλεξε τοὺς στρατιώτας καὶ ἔλεξεν·
scouts, he-assembled the soldiers and said:

Ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, οἱ μὲν τῶν Ἀρκάδων
Men soldiers, — (some) indeed of-the Arcadians

τεθνᾶσιν, δὲ οἱ λοιποὶ πολιορκοῦνται ἐπὶ τινος
have-died, but — (those) remaining are-besieged on some

λόφου. Δ' ἔγωγε νομίζω, εἰ ἐκεῖνοι ἀπολοῦνται,
hill. And I-at-least think, if these are-destroyed,

οὐδ' εἶναι οὐδεμίαν σωτηρίαν ἡμῖν,
(that there will) neither be any salvation for-us,

πολεμίων ὄντων μὲν οὕτω πολλῶν, δὲ οὕτω
(the) enemy being indeed so numerous, and so

τεθαρρηκότων. Οὖν κράτιστον ἡμῖν βοηθεῖν
confident-and-daring. (It is) therefore best for-us to-assist

τοῖς ἀνδράσιν ὡς τάχιστα, ὅπως εἰ ἔτι
the men 'as speedily 'as-possible, so-that if as-yet

εἰσὶ σῷοι, μαχώμεθα, καὶ μή, λειφθέντες
they-are safe, we-may-fight (together), and not, being-left

μόνοι, καὶ κινδυνεύωμεν μόνοι. Νῦν μὲν οὖν
alone, even encounter-danger alone. Now indeed therefore

στρατοπεδευώμεθα προελθόντες ὅσον
'let (us) 'encamp (after) having-marched-forward as-much

ἂν δοκῇ εἶναι καιρὸς εἰς τὸ δειπνοποιεῖσθαι·
may seem to-be (the) proper (time) to the taking-of-supper;

δ' ἕως ἂν πορευώμεθα, Τιμασίων ἔχων τοὺς
and while 'we may 'be-marching-forward 'let Timasion having the

ἱππεῖς προελαυνέτω ἐφορῶν ἡμᾶς,
cavalry (with him) 'ride-on-before 'keeping us 'in-view,

καὶ σκοπείτω τὰ ἔμπροσθεν, ὡς μηδὲν
and 'let (him) 'reconnoitre the (country) in-front, that nothing

λάθῃ ἡμᾶς. (Δὲ καὶ παρέπεμψε
may-be-concealed from-us. (And 'he [Xenophon] also 'sent-about

εὐζώνους ἀνθρώπους τῶν γυμνήτων εἰς τὰ
active men of-the light-armed (troops) to the

πλάγια καὶ εἰς τὰ ἄκρα, ὅπως, εἴ που καθορῷεν
flanks and to the hills, so-that, if any-where they-might-see

τί ποθεν, σημαίνοιεν· ἐκέλευε δὲ
any-thing thence, they-might-signify (it); he-ordered (them) moreover

καίειν ἅπαντα ὅτῳ ἐντυγχάνοιεν καυσίμῳ.) Γὰρ
to-burn every-thing that they-might-meet-with combustible.) For

ἡμεῖς ἂν ἀποδραίημεν ἐνθένδε οὐδαμοῦ· γάρ μεν
we can flee hence no-where; for indeed

ἔφη, πολλὴ ἀπιέναι πάλιν εἰς
said-he, | (it is) much [it is a long way] to-go-hence back to

Ἡράκλειαν, δὲ πολλὴ διελθεῖν εἰς Χρυσόπολιν·
Heraclea, and much to-go to Chrysopolis;

δὲ οἱ πολέμιοι πλησίον· εἰς λιμένα Κάλπης
and the enemy (being) near; to (the) harbour of-Calpe

δὲ, ἔνθα εἰκάζομεν Χειρίσοφον εἶναι, εἰ σέσωσται,
indeed, where we-suppose Cheirisophus to-be, if he-is-safe,

ὁδός ἐλαχίστη. Ἀλλὰ δὴ ἐκεῖ μὲν ἔστιν
(the) way (is) very-short. But truly there indeed there-are

οὔτε πλοῖα, οἷς ἀποπλευσούμεθα, τε μένουσι
neither ships, in-which we-may-set-sail, but (we) remaining

αὐτοῦ οὐδὲ ἔστι τὰ ἐπιτήδεια μιᾶς ἡμέρας.
there neither is-there — provisions (enough) for-one day.

Δὲ τῶν πολιορκουμένων ἀπολομένων, σὺν τοῖς
But — (those) besieged perishing, with the

μόνοις Χειρισόφου ἔστι κάκιον διακινδυνεύειν,
(men) alone of-Cheirisophus it-is worse to-face-danger,

ἢ τῶνδε σωθέντων, πάντας ἐλθόντας εἰς
than — (these) being-saved, all coming to

ταὐτὸν ἔχεσθαι κοινῇ τῆς σωτηρίας.
that (place) to-take-hold in-common of — (our) safety

Ἀλλὰ χρὴ παρασκευασαμένους τὴν γνώμην
But it-is-necessary having-prepared-and-made-up — (our) minds

πορεύεσθαι, ὡς νῦν ἔστιν ἢ τελευτῆσαι
to-proceed-forward, as (if) now it-is either to-have-ended (our lives)

εὐκλεῶς, ἢ ἐργάσασθαι κάλλιστον ἔργον,
gloriously, or to-have-performed (a) most-honourable work,

τοσούτους Ἕλληνας σώσαντας. Καὶ ἴσως ὁ
so-many Greeks being-saved. And perhaps — (some)

θεὸς ἄγει οὕτως, ὃς βούλεται ταπεινῶσαι
god leads (the affair) thus, who wishes to-humble

τοὺς μεγαληγορήσαντας, ὡς πλεῶν φρονοῦντας.
(those) having-spoken-boastfully, as being more wise

δὲ καταστῆσαι, ἡμᾶς, τοὺς ἀρχομένους
(than we are), and to-render, us, — beginning

ἀπὸ θεῶν, ἐντιμοτέρους
(every thing) from (consulting the) gods, more-honoured (than)

ἐκείνων. Ἀλλ' χρὴ ἕπεσθαι, καὶ
they. But it-is-necessary to-follow (your leaders), and

προσέχειν τὸν νοῦν, ὡς ἂν δύνησθε ποιεῖν
apply — (your) minds, that you may be-able to-perform

τὸ παραγγελλόμενον.
the (thing) ordered.

Εἰπὼν ταῦτ' ἡγεῖτο. Δὲ οἱ
Having-said this he-led (his men forward) And the

ἱππεῖς διασπειρόμενοι ἐφ' ὅσον εἶχε
cavalry spreading-themselves over as-much (ground) as had (itself)

καλῶς, ἔκαιον ᾗ ἐβάδιζον, καὶ
safe-and-proper, (and) they-set-fire in-whatever (place) they-went, and

οἱ πελτασταί, ἐπιπαριόντες κατὰ τὰ ἄκρα,
the targeteers, moving-abreast-of (them) along the heights,

ἔκαιον πάντα ὅσα ἑώρων καύσιμα, καὶ δὲ ἡ
burned all what they-saw combustible, and also the

στρατιὰ, εἰ ἐντυγχάνοιεν τινι παρα-
army (did the same), if they-found any-thing

λειπομένῳ· ὥστε πᾶσα ἡ χώρα ἐδόκει
left (unhurt); so-that all the place seemed

αἴθεσθαι, καὶ τὸ στράτευμα εἶναι πολυ. Ἐπεὶ
to-be-on-fire, and the army to-be large. When

δὲ ἦν ὥρα, κατεστρατοπεδεύσαντο ἐκβάντες
indeed it-was time, they-encamped having-gone

ἐπὶ λόφον, καὶ ἑώρων τε τὰ πυρὰ τῶν πολεμίων,
on (a) hill, and they-saw also the fires of-the enemy,

(δὲ ἀπεῖχον ὡς τετταράκοντα σταδίους,) καὶ
(for they-were-distant about forty stadia,) and

αὐτοὶ ἔκαιον πλεῖστα ὡς ἐδύναντο. Ἐπεὶ
they [the Greeks] burned as-much as they-could. When

δὲ ἐδείπνησαν τάχιστα, παρηγγέλθη κατασβεν-
however they-had-supped very-speedily, it-was-ordered to-extin-

νύναι πάντα τὰ πυρά. Καὶ μὲν ποιησάμενοι
guish all the fires. And indeed having-stationed

φυλακὰς τὴν νύκτα ἐκάθευδον· ἅμα δὲ
sentinels for-the night they-went-to-sleep, at-the-time indeed

τῇ ἡμέρᾳ προσευξάμενοι τοῖς θεοῖς, καὶ συν-
— (of) day (light) having-prayed to-the gods, and putting-

ταξάμενοι ὡς εἰς μάχην, ἐπορεύοντο τάχιστα ᾗ
themselves-in-order as for battle, they-marched-forth as-speedily as

ἐδύναντο. Τιμασίων δὲ καὶ οἱ ἱππεῖς, ἔχοντες τοὺς
they-could. Timasion and also the horsemen, having the

ἡγεμόνας καὶ προελαύνοντες, γενόμενοι ἐλάθαιον
guides and riding-on-before, having-got concealed

αὐτοὺς ἐπὶ τῷ λόφῳ, ἔνθα οἱ Ἕλληνες
(and unknown to) themselves on the hill, where the Greeks

ἐπολιορκοῦντο. Καὶ ὁρῶσιν οὐχ οὕτε φίλιον
were-besieged. And see not either (a) friendly

στράτευμα, οὔτε πολέμιον, (καὶ ἀπαγγέλλουσι
army, nor (an) inimical (one), (and they-announce

ταῦτα πρὸς τὸν Ξενοφῶντα καὶ τὸ στράτευμα,)
these (things) to — Xenophon and the army,)

δὲ καὶ γραίδια γερόντια καὶ ὀλίγα πρόβατα
but only old-women (and) old-men and (a) few sheep

καὶ βοῦς καταλελειμμένους. Καὶ μὲν τὸ πρῶτον
and oxen left-behind. And indeed (at) the first

ἦν θαῦμα, τί εἴη τὸ γεγενημένον·
there-was wonder-and-surprise, what might-be the (thing) having-happened,

ἔπειτα δὲ καὶ ἐπυνθάνοντο τῶν καταλελειμ-
afterwards indeed also they-learned from — (those) left-

μένων, ὅτι οἱ Θρᾷκες μὲν εὐθὺς ἀφ' ἑσπέρας
behind, that the Thracians indeed immediately after night-fall

ᾠχοντο ἀπιόντες· δὲ καὶ ἔφασαν τοὺς Ἕλληνας
departed going-away; and also they-said (that) the Greeks

οἰχεσθαι ἕωθεν· δὲ ὅπου οὐκ
departed early-in-the-morning; but whither (that they did) not

εἰδέναι.
know

Οἱ ἀμφὶ Ξενοφῶντα ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα,
— (Those) with Xenophon hearing these (things)

ἅπερὶ ἠρίστησαν, συσκευασάμενοι ἐπορεύοντο,
after they-had-breakfasted, having-packed-up proceeded (on their

βουλόμενοι ὡς τάχιστα συμμῖξαι τοῖς
march), desiring as soon-as-possible to-have-joined the

ἄλλοις εἰς λιμένα Κάλπης. Καὶ πορευόμενοι
others at (the) harbour of-Calpe And proceeding

ἑώρων τὸν στίβον τῶν Ἀρκάδων καὶ Ἀχαιῶν
they-perceived the track of-the Arcadians and Achæans

κατὰ τὴν ὁδὸν ἐπὶ Κάλπης. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο
on the road to Calpe. When indeed they-had-arrived

εἰς τὸ αὐτό, τε ἄσμενοί εἶδον
at the same (spot), (they were) not-only pleased (when) they-saw

ἀλλήλους, καὶ ἠσπάζοντο ὥσπερ ἀδελφούς. Καὶ
one-another, but-also embraced like brothers. And

οἱ Ἀρκάδες ἐπυνθάνοντο τῶν περὶ Ξενοφῶντα,
the Arcadians inquired of — (those) with Xenophon,

τί κατασβέσειαν τὰ πυρά· γὰρ μὲν ἡμεῖς, ἔφασαν,
why they-had-put-out the fires; for indeed we, said-they,

ᾠόμεθα μὲν τὸ πρῶτον ὑμᾶς, ἐπειδὴ οὐχ
thought indeed at — first (that) you, when we-did not

ἑωρῶμεν τὰ πυρά, ἥξειν τῆς νυκτὸς ἐπὶ τοὺς
see the fires, were-coming at — night against the

πολεμίους· (καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι δὲ, ὥς γε ἐδόκουν
enemy; (and the enemy also, as at-least it-appeared

ἡμῖν, δείσαντες τοῦτο ἀπῆλθον· γὰρ σχεδὸν ἀμφὶ
to-us, fearing this departed; for near'y about

τοῦτον τὸν χρόνον ἀπήεσαν). Δὲ ἐπεὶ οὐκ
that — time they-disappeared). But when you-did not

ἀφίκεσθε, δὲ ὁ χρόνος ἐξῆκεν, ᾠόμεθα ὑμᾶς,
arrive, and the time passed-by, we-thought (that) you,

πυθομένους τὰ παρ' ἡμῖν, φοβηθέντας
hearing the (things) relating to-us, (that) being-alarmed

οἰχεσθαι ἀποδράντας ἐπὶ θάλατταν· καὶ ἐδόκει
you-departed fleeing to (the) sea; and it-seemed

ἡμῖν μὴ ἀπολείπεσθαι ὑμῶν. Οὕτω
to-us (that) we-ought not to-be-left-behind you. Thus

οὖν καὶ ἡμεῖς ἐπορεύθημεν δεῦρο.
therefore also we proceeded in-this-direction.

---

## CHAPTER IV.

Οὖν μὲν ταύτην τὴν ἡμέραν ηὐλίζοντο
THEREFORE indeed that — (same) day they-encamped

αὐτοῦ ἐπὶ τοῦ αἰγιαλοῦ πρὸς τῷ λιμένι. Τὸ τοῦτο
there on the shore near the port. — This

χωρίον δὲ, ὃ καλεῖται λιμὴν Κάλπης, ἔστι
place indeed, which is-called (the) harbour of-Calpe, is

μὲν ἐν τῇ Θρᾴκῃ τῇ ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ·
indeed in — Thrace the (Thrace namely) in — Asia;

δὲ αὕτη ἡ Θρᾴκη ἐστὶν ἀρξαμένη ἀπὸ τοῦ
and this — Thrace is (in extent) beginning from the

στόματος τοῦ Πόντου μέχρι Ἡρακλείας,
mouth of-the Pontus (Euxinus) just-to Heraclea,

ἐπὶ δεξιὰ εἰσπλέοντι εἰς τὸν Πόντον. Καὶ
on (the) right (of one) sailing to the Pontus And

μὲν ἔστι τριήρει κώπαις ἐκ Βυζαντίου εἰς
indeed it-is for (a) galley with-oars from Byzantium to

Ἡράκλειαν μάλα μακρᾶς ἡμέρας πλοῦς· δὲ ἐν
Heraclea (a) very long day's sail; and in

τῷ μέσῳ μὲν οὐδεμία ἄλλη
the middle (between these towns there is) indeed no other

πόλις οὔτε φιλία οὔτε Ἑλληνίς, ἀλλὰ Βιθυνοί
town either friendly or Grecian, but Bithynian

Θρᾷκες· καὶ οὓς ἄν λάβωσι τῶν
Thracians (occupy it); and whom they may take of-the

Ἑλλήνων ἐκπίπτοντας ἢ πως ἄλλως λέγονται
Greeks cast-ashore or in-any other (manner) they-are-said

ὑβρίζειν τοὺς Ἕλληνας δεινά. Δὲ ὁ λιμὴν
to-insult-and-treat the Greeks dreadfully. But the harbour

Κάλπης κεῖται ἐν μέσῳ μὲν ἑκατέρωθεν
of-Calpe lies in mid (way) indeed from-both-sides (for those)

πλεόντων ἐξ Ἡρακλείας καὶ Βυζαντίου, δὲ ἐν τῇ
sailing from Heraclea and Byzantium, and in the

θαλάττῃ ἐστι χωρίον προκείμενον, τὸ
sea there-is a-piece-of-land (there) projecting-forward, the (part)

μὲν αὐτοῦ καθῆκον εἰς τὴν θάλατταν ἀπορρώξ
indeed of-it reaching-down to the sea (as a) steep

πέτρα, ὕψος ὅπῃ ἐλάχιστον οὐ μεῖον εἴκοσιν
rock, (the) height where (it is) the-least not less (than) twenty

ὀργυιῶν· δὲ ὁ αὐχήν, ὁ ἀνήκων εἰς τὴν
fathoms; and the neck, — (that namely) extending into the

γῆν τοῦ χωρίου, τὸ εὖρος μάλιστα
land of-the country, the breadth (of this neck is) at-most

τεττάρων πλέθρων· δὲ τὸ χωρίον
four plethra (or about four hundred feet), and the place

ἐντὸς τοῦ αὐχένος ἱκανὸν μυρίοις ἀνθρώποις
within the neck is-sufficient for-ten-thousand men

οἰκῆσαι. Λιμὴν δ' ὑπ' αὐτῇ τῇ
to-inhabit (or quarter on). (The) harbour indeed (is) under this —

πέτρᾳ ἔχων τὸ αἰγιαλὸν πρὸς ἑσπέραν.
(same) rock having — (its) shore towards (the) west.

Δὲ κρήνη ἡδέος ὕδατος καὶ ἀφθονος ῥέουσα ἐπὶ
And (a) spring of-sweet water and copiously flowing near

τῇ θαλάττῃ αὐτῇ, ὑπὸ τῇ ἐπιχρατείᾳ τοῦ
the sea itself, (is) under the command of — (this)

χωρίου. Δὲ μὲν πολλὰ ξύλα καὶ ἄλλα,
place. And indeed (there is) much wood and (of) different

δὲ πάνυ πολλὰ καὶ καλὰ ναυπηγήσιμα
(kinds), but especially much and fine (wood) fit-for-ship-building

ἐπ' αὐτῇ τῇ θαλάττῃ. Δὲ τὸ ὄρος, τὸ
on this — (same) sea (coast). And the mountain, —

ἐν τῷ λιμένι, ἀνήκει μὲν εἰς μεσόγαιαν
(that namely) at the harbour, extends indeed to (the) interior

ὅσον ἐπὶ εἴκοσι σταδίους, καὶ τοῦτο γεῶδες
as-much as to twenty stadia, and this (part is) earthy

καὶ ἄλιθον· δὲ τὸ παρὰ θάλατταν, πλέον
and clear-of-stones; and the (part) along (the) sea, more

ἢ ἐπὶ εἴκοσι σταδίους, δασὺ πολλοῖς καὶ παντο-
than about twenty stadia, thick with-many and vari-

δαποῖς καὶ μεγάλοις ξύλοις. Δὲ ἡ ἄλλη
ous and large trees. And the other (parts of the)

χώρα καλὴ καὶ πολλή· καὶ εἰσι πολλαὶ
country (were) beautiful and much (in extent); and there-were many

καὶ οἰκουμεναι κώμαι ἐν αὐτῇ· γὰρ ἡ γῆ
and populous villages in this (country); for the land

φέρει καὶ κριθάς, καὶ πυρούς, καὶ πάντα
produces — barley, and wheat, and all (kinds of

ὄσπρια, καὶ μελίνας, καὶ σήσαμα, καὶ ἀρκοῦντα
legumes, and millet, and sesame, and abundance (of)

σῦκα, καὶ πολλὰς ἀμπέλους καὶ ἡδυοίνους, καὶ
figs, and many vines even producing-sweet-wine, and

πάντα τἄλλα πλὴν ἐλαιῶν. Τοιαῦτη
all else except (trees) of-oil [the olive tree]. Such

μὲν ἦν ἡ χώρα. Ἐσκήνωυν δὲ
indeed was the country. (The Greeks) pitched (their) tents indeed

ἐν τῷ αἰγιαλῷ πρὸς τῇ θαλάττῃ· δὲ εἰς τὸ
on the shore by the sea; but into the

πόλισμα ἂν γενόμενον οὐκ ἐβούλοντο
city (that) might have-been they-did not wish

στρατοπεδεύεσθαι, ἀλλὰ ἐδόκει καὶ
(to march and) encamp, but it-seemed (that) even

τὸ ἐλθεῖν ἐνταῦθα εἶναι ἐξ ἐπιβουλῆς,
the to go there [going there] was from design, (as if)

τινῶν βουλομένων κατοικίσαι πόλιν. Γὰρ οἱ
some (persons) were-wishing to-build (a) city. For the

πλεῖστοι τῶν στρατιωτῶν οὐκ ἐκπεπλευκότες ἦσαν
most of-the soldiers had not sailed

σπάνει βίου ἐπὶ τουτην τὴν
(from home) for-want of-subsistence on this — (same)

μισθοφοράν, ἀλλ' ἀκούοντες τὴν ἀρετὴν Κύρου,
service, but hearing-of the virtue of-Cyrus,

οἱ μὲν καὶ ἄγοντες ἄνδρας, οἱ καὶ δὲ
— (some) indeed even bringing men. — (others) also indeed

προσαναλωκότες χρήματα, καὶ ἕτεροι τούτων
having-in-addition-spent money, (in the cause), and others of-these

ἀποδεδρακότες πατέρας καὶ μετέρας, δὲ
(soldiers) having-fled-from (their) fathers and mothers, and

καὶ οἱ καταλιπόντες τέκνα, ὡς κτησαμενοι
also — (some) leaving-behind (their) children, that they-might-acquire

χρήματ' αὐτοῖς, ἥξοντες πάλιν, ἀκούντες καὶ
money for-them, (then) coming back, hearing also

τοὺς ἄλλους τοὺς παρὰ Κύρῳ πράτ-
(that) — others — (those namely) with Cyrus | were-

τειν πολλὰ καὶ ἀγαθά.
doing many and good (things) [were acquiring wealth].

Ὄντες τοιοῦτοι ἐπόθουν σώζεσθαι εἰς τὴν
Being such (men) they-desired | to-be-saved to —

Ἑλλάδα.
Greece [to return in safety to Greece].

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὑστέρα ἡμέρα τῆς συνόδου
When indeed (the) next day of — (their) coming-together

εἰς ταὐτὸν ἐγένετο, Ξενοφῶν ἐθύετο ἐπ'
in that (place) was, Xenophon sacrificed about (an)

ἐξόδῳ· γὰρ ἦν ἀνάγκη ἐξάγειν ἐπὶ τὰ
expedition; for it-was necessary to-lead-out (the soldiers) for —

ἐπιτήδεια· δὲ καὶ ἐπενόει θάπτειν τοὺς
provisions; and also he-was-thinking (about) burying the

νεκρούς. Ἐπεὶ δὲ τὰ ἱερὰ ἐγένετο καὶ
dead. When indeed the victims happened (favourably) also

οἱ Ἀρκάδες εἵποντο, καὶ μὲν ἔθαψαν ἑκάστους
the Arcadians accompanied (him), and indeed they-buried each-of

τοὺς νεκρούς, τοὺς πλείστους, ἔνθαπερ ἔπεσον·
the dead, the most, where they-had-fallen,

(γὰρ ἤδη ἦσαν πεμπταῖοι, καὶ
(for already | they-were five days'-ones, [they were five days dead,] and

ἦν ἔτι οὐχ οἷόν τε ἀναιρεῖν)· δὲ
it-was now not possible to-take (them) away); and

συνενεγκόντες ἐνίους τοὺς ἐκ τῶν ὁδῶν,
having-gathered-together some of — (those) from the road,

ἔθαψαν ὡς κάλλιστα ἐδύναντο ἐκ τῶν
they-buried (them) as becomingly (as) they-could from — (their)

ὑπαρχόντων· δὲ οὓς μὴ εὕρισκον
existing (means); but (those) that they-did not find

ἐποίησαν μέγα κενοτάφιον αὐτοῖς, καὶ ἐπέθεσαν
they-made (a) large cenotaph for-them, and placed-on (it)

στεφάνους. Δὲ ποιήσαντες ταῦτα ἀνεχώρησαν
garlands. And having-performed these (things) they-returned

ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ μὲν τότε δειπνήσαντες
to the camp. And indeed then having-supped

ἐκοιμήθησαν. Τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ δὲ πάντες οἱ στρα-
they-went-to-sleep. On-the next-day indeed all the sol

τιῶται συνῆλθον· (δὲ μάλιστα Ἀγασίας τε
diers assembled-together; (but chiefly Agasias indeed (the)

Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς συνῆγε· καὶ Ἱερώνυμος
Stymphalian captain assembled (them); and Hieronymus (the)

Ἠλεῖος λοχαγός, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι οἱ πρεσβύτατοι τῶν
Elian captain, and — others the oldest of-the

Ἀρκάδων). Καὶ ἐποιήσαντο δόγμα, ἐάν τις
Arcadians). And they-made (a) decree, if any (one)

τοῦ λοιποῦ μνησθῇ ποιεῖν τὸ στράτευμα
for-the rest (of the time) might-mention to-make the army

δίχα αὐτὸν ζημιοῦσθαι θανάτῳ, καὶ
divided-into-two (that) he should-be-punished with-death, and (that)

τὸ στράτευμα ἀπιέναι κατὰ χώραν, ἥπερ
the army (should) depart to (the) place-and-order which

εἶχε πρόσθεν, καὶ τοὺς πρόσθεν στρατηγούς
it-had before, and (that) the former generals

ἄρχειν. Καὶ Χειρίσοφος μὲν ἤδη
(should) command. And Cheirisophus indeed had already

τετελευτήκει πιών φάρμακον, πυρέττων·
died having-drunk (a) medicine, being-in-a-fever

ἀὲ Νεων ὁ Ἀσιναῖος παρέλαβε τὰ ἐκεί-
and Neon the Asinæan received the (things) of-

νου
him [took his place].

Μετὰ ταῦτα δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἀναστὰς εἶπε·
After this indeed Xenophon standing-up said:

Ω ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, ὡς ἔοικε, δῆλον μὲν ὅτι
O men soldiers, as it-seems, evident indeed that

τὴν πορείαν ποιητέον πεζῇ· γὰρ ἔστι οὐ πλοῖα·
the journey is-to-be-performed on-foot; for there-are not ships;

ἀνάγκη ἤδη πορεύεσθαι· γὰρ ἔστι οὐ τα
(it is) necessary now to-depart; for there-is not —

ἐπιτήδεια μένουσι. Οὖν μὲν, ἔφη, ἡμεῖς
food (for us) remaining. Therefore indeed, said-he, we

θυσόμεθα· δὲ ὑμᾶς δεῖ παρασκευάζεσθαι
will-sacrifice; but you it (now) becomes to-prepare

ὡς μαχουμένους, εἴ ποτε καὶ ἄλλοτε·
as-for fighting, if ever even at-any-other-time (it was

γὰρ οἱ πολέμιοι ἀνατεθαῤῥήκασιν. Ἐκ
necessary); for the enemy has-recovered-confidence. After

τούτου οἱ στρατηγοί ἐθύοντο, δὲ Ἀρηξίων Ἀρκάς
this the generals sacrificed, and Arexion (the) Arcadian

παρῆν μάντις· δὲ ὁ Σιλανὸς ὁ Ἀμβρακιώτης
was-present (as) augur; for — Silanus the Ambracian

ἤδη ἀποδεδράκει μισθωσάμενος πλοῖον ἐξ
had already fled having-hired (a) vessel from

Ἡρακλείας. Δὲ θυομένοις ἐπὶ τῇ ἀφόδῳ τὰ
Heraclea. And sacrificing about — (their) departure the

ἱερά οὐκ ἐγίγνετο. Οὖν μὲν ταύτην
victims did not become (favourable). Therefore indeed on-that

τὴν ἡμέραν ἐπαύσαντο.
— (same) day they-desisted (from their intended departure).

Καὶ τινες ἐτόλμων λέγειν ὡς ὁ Ξενοφῶν,
And some having-been-bold-enough said that — Xenophon,

βουλόμενος οἰκίσαι τὸ χωρίον, πέπεικε τὸν μάντιν
desiring to-colonise the country, had-persuaded the augur

λέγειν ὡς τὰ ἱερὰ γίγνεται οὐ ἐπὶ
to-say that the victims were not (favourable) to (a

ἀφόδῳ. Ἐντεῦθεν Ξενοφῶν κηρύξας
departure. Then Xenophon having-made-proclamation (that,

τὸν βουλόμενον παρεῖναι ἐπὶ τὴν θυσίαν
(he) wishing (it) might-be-present at the sacrifice

τῇ αὔριον, καὶ παραγγείλας εἰ εἴη τις μάντις
on-the next-day, and having-notified if there-were any augurs

παρεῖναι ὡς συνθεασόμενον τὰ ἱερά,
(among them) to-be-present as inspecting-with (him) the victims,

ἔθυε· καὶ ἐνταῦθα πολλοί
he (Xenophon) sacrificed; and then many (persons)

παρῆσαν. Δὲ θυομένων πάλιν εἰς τρὶς
were-present. And sacrificing again to (the) third (time)

ἐπὶ τῇ ἀφόδῳ τὰ ἱερὰ ἐγίγνετο οὐκ.
in-respect to-the departure the victims were not (favourable).

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ στρατιῶται εἶχον χαλεπῶς·
[On this the soldiers had (it) uneasily; [the sol-

γὰρ καὶ τὰ ἐπιτη-
diers in consequence of this were distressed;] for even the provi-

δεια, ἃ ἔχοντες ἦλθον,
sions, | which having they-came, [which they had when they came,]

ἐπέλιπεν, καὶ οὐδεμία ἀγορὰ παρῆν.
failed, and no market | was-present [provided for them].

Ἐκ τούτου ξυνελθόντων, Ξενοφῶν πάλιν
On this (the soldiers) assembling, Xenophon again

εἶπε· Ὦ ἄνδρες, ὡς ὁρᾶτε μὲν, τὰ ἱερὰ γίγνεται
said: O men, as you-see indeed, the victims are

οὔπω τῇ πορείᾳ· δ' ὁρῶ ὑμᾶς δεομένους
not-yet (favourable) for — (our) journey; and I-see you wanting

τῶν ἐπιτηδείων· οὖν δοκεῖ μοι εἶναι ἀνάγκη
— provisions; therefore it-seems to-me to-be necessary

θύεσθαι περὶ οὐτοῦ τούτου. Τις δ'
to-sacrifice respecting this same (thing). Some (one) however

ἀναστὰς εἶπε· Καὶ εἰκότως ἄρα τὰ ἱερὰ γίγνεται
standing-up said: And with-reason therefore the victims are

οὐ ἡμῖν· καὶ γὰρ ἐγώ ἤκουσά τινος
not (favourable) for-us; and as I have-heard from-some (one,

χθὲς ἀπὸ πλοίου ἥκοντος τοῦ αὐτομάτου,
yesterday (who was) from (a) vessel coming (in) — of-itself

ὅτι Κλέανδρος ὁ ἁρμοστὴς ἐκ Βυζαντίου
(accidentally), that Cleander the governor of Byzantium

μέλλει ἥξειν, ἔχων πλοῖα καὶ τριήρεις. Ἐκ τούτου
is-about coming, having vessels and galleys. On this

δὲ ἐδόκει μὲν πᾶσιν ἀναμένειν· δ' ἦν
(account) then it-seemed indeed to-all (proper) to-remain; but it-was

ἀνάγκη ἐξιέναι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Καὶ ἐπὶ τούτῳ
necessary to-go-out for — provisions. And about this

πάλιν ἐθύετο εἰς τρίς, καὶ τὰ ἱερά
it-was again sacrificed to three (times), however the victims

ἐγίγνετο οὐ. Καὶ ἤδη καὶ ἰόντες
were not (favourable). And now even (the soldiers) going

ἐπὶ τὴν σκηνὴν Ξενοφῶντος, ἔλεγον ὅτι ἔχοιεν
to the tent of-Xenophon, said that they-had

οὐ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Δ' ὁ ἔφη ἂν οὐκ
no — provisions. And — he-said (that) he could not

ἐξαγαγεῖν, τῶν ἱερῶν μὴ γιγνομένων.
lead (them) out, the victims not being (favourable).

Καὶ πάλιν τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ἐθύετο, καὶ σχεδόν
And again on-the next-day it-was-sacrificed, and nearly

τι πᾶσα ἡ στρατιὰ διὰ τὸ μέλειν
in-some (manner) all the army on-account-of — it-being-a-solicitude

ἅπασιν, ἐκυκλοῦντο περὶ τὰ ἱερά· δὲ τὰ
to-every (one), were-crowded-in-a-circle round the victims; but the

θύματα ἐπιλελοίπει. Δὲ οἱ στρατηγοὶ μὲν οὐκ
victims were-deficient. But the generals indeed did not

ἐξῆγον, δὲ συνεκάλεσαν Ξενοφῶν
lead-out (the troops), but called (them) together. Xenophon

οὖν εἶπεν· Ἴσως οἱ πολέμιοι συνειλεγμένοι εἰσί,
therefore said: Perhaps the enemy have-been-assembled-together.

καὶ ἀνάγκη μάχεσθαι· εἰ οὖν καταλιπόντες
and (it is) necessary (that, we-fight; if therefore leaving-behind

τὰ σκεύη ἐν τῷ ἐρυμνῷ χωρίῳ ὡς ἴοιμεν
— (our) baggage in the strong places so-that we-may-go

παρεσκευασμένοι εἰς μάχην, ἴσως τὰ ἱερὰ ἂν
prepared for battle, perhaps the victims may

προχωροίη ἡμῖν. Δ' οἱ στρατιῶται ἀκούσαντες
become-favourable to-us. But the soldiers hearing (this)

ἀνέκραγον ὡς δέοι οὐδὲν ἄγειν εἰς τὸ χωρίον,
cried-out that it-ought not to-lead to the place,

ἀλλὰ θύεσθαι
[that he ought not to lead them to such strong place,] but to-sacrifice

ὡς τάχιστα. Καὶ μὲν ἦν οὐκέτι πρόβατα,
as speedily (as possible). And indeed there-was no-longer sheep,

δὲ πριάμενοι βοῦς ὑπὸ ἁμάξης ἐθύοντο· καὶ
but buying (an) ox from (a) wagon they-sacrificed; and

Ξενοφῶν ἐδεήθη Κλεάνορος τοῦ Ἀρκάδος προ-
Xenophon besought Cleanor the Arcadian to-be-

θυμεῖσθαι, εἰ εἴη τι ἐν
prompt-of-mind (to act), if there-might-be any-thing (encouraging) in

τούτῳ. Ἀλλ' ὡς ἐγένετο οὐδὲ.
this (sacrifice). But even-thus there-was neither (anything favourable)

Δὲ Νέων μὲν ἦν στρατηγὸς τὸ μέρος
But Neon indeed was (now) general in-the place

Χειρισόφου· δὲ ἐπεὶ ἑώρα τοὺς ἀνθρώπους, ὡς
of-Cheirisophus; and when he-saw the men, that

εἶχον δεινῶς τῇ ἐνδείᾳ,
they-had (it) grievously in — (their) want, [that the men were suffer-

βουλόμενος χαρίζεσθαι αὐτοῖς,
ing much from want of food,] wishing to-relieve-and-gratify them,

εὑρὼν τινα ἄνδρωπον Ἡρακλεώτην, ὃς
(and) having-found (a) certain man (a) Heraclean, who

ἔφη εἰδέναι κώμας ἐγγὺς, ὅθεν εἴη
said (that) he-knew (of) villages near, whence it-might-be (possible)

λαβεῖν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἐκήρυξε τὸν
to-procure — provisions, he-proclaimed (by a herald that) — (any one)

βουλόμενοι ἰέναι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ὡς ἡγεμόνος
of-those-wishing to-go for — provisions, that (a) guide

ησομένου. Ἐξέρχονται δὴ εἰς
would-be (for them). (Then) they-departed indeed to (the number of)

διςχιλίους ἀνθρώπους σὺν δορατίοις, καὶ ἀσκοῖς καὶ
two-thousand men with spears, and leather-bags and

θυλάκοις, καὶ ἄλλοις ἀγγείοις. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἦσαν
sacks, and other receptacles. When indeed they-were

ἐν ταῖς κώμαις, καὶ διεσπείροντο, ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ
in the villages, and were-dispersed, as for the

λαμβάνειν, οἱ ἱππεῖς Φαρναβάζου
taking (of what they wanted), the cavalry of-Pharnabazus

πρῶτοι ἐπιπίπτουσιν αὐτοῖς (γὰρ ἦσαν βεβοη-
first fell-upon them (for they-were (come) help-

θηκότες τοῖς Βιθυνοῖς) βουλόμενοι σὺν τοῖς Βιθυ-
ing the Bithynians) desiring with the Bithy-

νοῖς, εἰ δύναιντο, ἀποκωλῦσαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας
nians, if they-could, to-prevent the Greeks (that

μὴ ἐλθεῖν εἰς τὴν Φρυγίαν· οὗτοι οἱ
they might not enter into — Phrygia; these — (same)

ἱππεῖς ἀποκτείνουσι οὐ μεῖον πεντακοσίους τῶν
cavalry killed not less (than) five-hundred of-the

ἀνδρῶν· οἱ λοιποὶ δὲ ἀνέφυγον ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος. Ἐκ
men; the rest indeed fled-away to the mountain. Out

τούτου τις τῶν ἀποφυγόντων ἀπαγγέλλει
this some (one) of — (those) having-fled announced

ταῦτα εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν,
these (things) at the camp. And — Xenophon,

ἐπεὶ τὰ ἱερὰ οὐκ ἐγεγένητο ταύτῃ τῇ
when the victims had not been (favourable) that —

ἡμέρᾳ, λαβὼν βοῦν ὑπὸ ἁμάξης, (γὰρ ἦν οὐκ
day, taking (an) ox from (a) wagon, (for there-were no

ἄλλα ἱερεῖα,) σφαγιασάμενος ἐβοήθει, καὶ οἱ
other cattle,) having-sacrificed he-went-to-give-help, and the

ἄλλοι οἱ μέχρι τριάκοντα ἐτῶν ἅπαντες
others — (those namely) just-to thirty years-of-age all

Καὶ ἀναλαβόντες τοὺς ἄνδρας
went with him). And bringing-off — (those) men

λοιποὺς, ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ
left, they-returned to the camp. And

ἦν ἤδη μὲν ἀμφὶ ἡλίου δυσμὰς· καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες
it-was now indeed about sun set; and the Greeks

ἔχοντες μάλ' ἀθύμως ἐδειπνοποιοῦντο,
being much dejected were-taking (their) supper, (when)

καὶ ἐξαπίνης τινες τῶν Βιθυνῶν ἐπιγενόμενοι τοῖς
even suddenly some of-the Bithynians fell-upon the

προφύλαξι διὰ τῶν λασίων, μὲν κατέκανον
advanced-guards through the thickets, (and) indeed they-killed

τοὺς, δὲ τοὺς ἐδίωξαν μέχρι εἰς
— (some of the Greeks), and — (others) they-pursued just to

τὸ στρατόπεδον. Καὶ κραυγῆς γενομένης πάντες
the camp And (a) great-noise arising all

οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔδραμον εἰς τὰ ὅπλα· καὶ διώκειν
the Greeks ran to — arms; and to-pursue

μὲν, καὶ κινεῖν τὸ στρατόπεδον νυκτὸς οὐκ
indeed, and to-move the camp at-night did not

ἐδόκει εἶναι ἀσφαλὲς· γὰρ τὰ χωρία ἦν δασέα·
seem to-be safe; for the country was full-of-thickets,

δὲ ἐνυκτέρευον ἐν τοῖς ὅπλοις, φυλαττόμενοι
and they-passed-the-night under — arms. guarded

ἱκανοῖς φύλαξι.
by-sufficient sentinels.

## CHAPTER V.

Οὕτω μεν διήγαγον τὴν νύκτα. Ἀὲ ἅμα τῃ
Thus indeed they-passed the night. But at-the time-of —

ἡμέρᾳ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἦγοῦντο εἰς τὸ ἐρυμνὸν
day (break) the generals went to the strong

χωρίον, δὲ οἱ εἵποντο, ἀναλαβόντες τὰ
place, and the (men) followed, bringing-with (them) — (their)

ὅπλα καὶ τὰ σκεύη. Πρὶν δὲ εἶναι ὥραν
arms and — (their) baggage. Before indeed it-was time (for)

ἀρίστου ἀπετάφρευσαν εἰς τὸ χωρίον ᾗ ἡ
dinner they-had-completed-a-trench at the place at-which the

εἴσοδος ἦν, καὶ ἅπαν ἀπεσταύ-
entrance (to it) was, and had-fenced-off (the) whole (place) with-pali-

ρωσαν, καταλιπόντες τρεῖς πύλας. Καὶ πλοῖον
sades, leaving three gates. And (a) vessel

ἦκεν ἐκ Ἡρακλείας ἄγον ἄλφιτα, καὶ ἱερεῖα,
came from Heraclea bringing barley-meal, and cattle,

καὶ οἶνον. Ξενοφῶν ἀναστὰς πρωὶ ἐθύετο
and wine. And Xenophon having-risen early he-sacrificed

ἐπεξόδια, καὶ τὰ ἱερὰ γίγνεται ἐπὶ
for-a-successful-expedition, and the victims were (favourable) on

τοῦ πρώτου ἱερείου. Καὶ ἤδη ἐχόντων
the first victim. And already having (made an)

τέλος τῶν ἱερῶν, ὁ μάντις Ἀρηξίων Παῤῥάσιος
end of-the sacrifices, the augur Arexion (the) Parrhasian

ὁρᾷ αἴσιον ἀετόν, καὶ κελεύει τὸν Ξενοφῶντα
saw (a) lucky eagle, and requested — Xenophon

ἡγεῖσθαι. Καὶ διαβάντες τὴι τάφροι
to-lead (forth). And (the men) crossing the trench

τίθενται τὰ ὅπλα, καὶ ἐκήρυξαν
ranged-themselves (under) — arms, and it-was-proclaimed-by-the-

τοὺς στρατιώτας ἀριστήσαντας ἐξιέναι
heralds (that) the soldiers having-dined would-march-out

σὺν τοῖς ὅπλοις, δὲ καταλιπεῖν τὸν ὄχλον
with — (their) arms, but to-leave the crowd

καὶ τὰ ἀνδράποδα αὐτοῦ.
(of camp-followers) and the slaves there (in the camp).

Μὲν δὴ οἱ ἄλλοι πάντες ἐξήεσαν, δὲ οὔ Νέων·
Indeed truly the others all marched-out, but not Neon:

γὰρ ἐδόκει κάλλιστον καταλιπεῖν τοῦτον
for it-seemed the-best to-leave this-one (namely Neon)

φύλακα τῶν ἐπὶ τοῦ στρατοπέδου. Ἐπεὶ
(as a) guard of — (what was) in the camp. When

δ' οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἀπέλιπον
indeed the captains and the soldiers had-left

αὐτούς, αἰσχυνόμενοι μὴ ἐφέπεσθαι τῶν ἄλλων
them, being-ashamed not to-follow the others

ἐξιόντων, κατέλιπον αὐτοῦ τοὺς ὑπὲρ
going-out, they (then) left there — (those) above

πέντε καὶ τετταράκοντα ἔτη. Καὶ οὗτοι μὲν
five and forty years-of-age. And these indeed

ἔμενον, δ' οἱ ἄλλοι ἐπορεύοντο. Πρὶν δὲ διελῆλι-
remained, but the others proceeded-forth. Before indeed they-had

θέναι πεντεκαίδεκα στάδια ἤδη ἐνέτυχον
gone fifteen stadia they already met-with

νεκροῖς· καὶ ποιησάμενοι τὴν οὐρὰν τοῦ κέρατος
dead-bodies; and having-placed the rear of-the wing

κατὰ τοὺς πρώτους νεκροὺς φανέντας, ἔθαπτον
by the first dead-bodies seen, they-buried

πάντας, ὁπόσους τὸ κέρας ἐπελάμβανε.
(them) all, as-many-as the wing took-in (or covered)

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἔθαψαν τοὺς πρώτους, προ-
When indeed they-had-buried — (those) first (found) pro-

αγαγόντες, καὶ αὖθις ποιησάμενοι τὴν οὐρὰν
ceeding-forward, and again having-placed the rear

κατὰ τοὺς πρώτους τῶν ἀτάφων,
along the first of-the unburied (they now met with),

ἔθαπτον τὸν αὐτὸν τρόπον, ὁπόσους ἡ στρατια
they-buried (in) the same manner, as-many as the army

ἐπελάμβανεν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦκον εἰς τὴν ὁδὸν
covered. When indeed they-came to the road

τὴν ἐκ τῶν κωμῶν, ἔνθα δὲ
— (that namely leading) from the villages, where indeed

ἔκειντο ἀθρόοι, συνενεγκόντες
(the dead) lay close-together, [1]carrying (them) [1]together

ἔθαψαν αὐτούς.
they-buried them.

Ἤδη δὲ πέρα μεσούσης τῆς ἡμέρας
| Now indeed beyond having-been-in-the-middle (of) the day

προαγαγόντες τὸ στράτευμα
[it was now past mid-day] having-led-forward the army

ἔξω τῶν κωμῶν, ἐλάμβανον τὰ ἐπιτήδεια,
beyond the villages, (the men) took — provisions,

ὅ τι τις ὁρᾷη, ἐντὸς τῆς φάλαγγος. Καὶ
whatever any-one saw, within the line. And

ἐξαίφνης ὁρῶσι τοὺς πολεμίους ὑπερβάλλοντας
suddenly they-saw the enemy passing-over (and)

κατὰ τινὰς λόφους ἐκ τοῦ ἐναντίου,
down some hills from the opposite (side before them),

τεταγμένους ἐπὶ φάλαγγος, τε πολλοὺς
drawn-up in line, (there being) not-only many

ἱππέας καὶ πεζούς· γὰρ καὶ Σπιθριδάτης καὶ
horsemen but-also foot-soldiers; for also Spithridates and

Ῥαθίνης ἦκον παρὰ Φαρναβάζου ἔχοντες τὴν
Rhathines had-come from Pharnabazus having — (their)

δύναμιν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ πολέμιοι κατεῖδον τοὺς
forces. When indeed the enemy saw the

Ἕλληνας, ἔστησαν ἀπέχοντες αὐτῶν ὅσον πεντε-
Greeks, they-halted being-distant from-them about fif-

καίδεκα σταδίους. Ἐκ τούτου Ἀρηξίων ὁ μάντις
teen stadia. On this Arexion the augur

τῶν Ἑλλήνων εὐθὺς σφαγιάζεται, καὶ τὰ σφάγια
of-the Greeks immediately sacrificed, and the victims

ἐγένετο καλὰ ἐπὶ τοῦ πρώτου. Ἔνθα δὴ Ξενο-
were favourable from the first. Then indeed Xeno-

φῶν λέγει· Δοκεῖ μοι, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατηγοί,
phon said: It-seems to-me, O men commanders, (that

ἐπιτάξασθαι τῇ φάλαγγι λόχους
we-ought-to-station-behind the (principal) line companies (as)

φύλακας, ἵνα που ἄν δέῃ, ὦσιν οἱ
guards, that where it might be-necessary, there-may-be —

ἐπιβοηθήσοντες τῇ φάλαγγι, καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι
(those) supporting the line, and the enemy

τεταραγμένοι ἐμπίπτωσιν εἰς τεταγμένους καὶ
thrown-into-disorder may-fall-upon — (those) drawn-up-in-order and

ἀκεραίους. Ταῦτα συνεδόκει πᾶσι. Ὑμεῖς μὲν
fresh. This was-approved by-all You indeed

τοίνυν, ἔφη, προηγεῖσθε τὴν πρὸς τοὺς
therefore, said-he [Xenophon], advance on-the (road) to the

ἐναντίους, ὡς μὴ ἐστήκωμεν, ἐπεὶ
(enemy) in-front (of us), that we-may not stand-still, since

εἴδομεν καὶ ὤφθημεν τοὺς πολεμίους· ἐγὼ δὲ
we-have-seen and have-been-seen (by) the enemy; I indeed

ἥξω καταχωρίσας τοὺς τελευταίους λόχους,
will-come (after) having-stationed — (those) hindmost companies,

ἥπερ δοκεῖ ὑμῖν.
in-the-manner-which it-seemed (good) to-you.

Ἐκ τούτου μὲν οἱ ἥσυχοι προῆγον· ὁ
On this indeed — (they) quietly advanced; —

δὲ ἀφελὼν
(Xenophon) indeed having-taken-from (and detached from the main body

τὰς τρεῖς τελευταίας τάξεις, ἀνὰ δια-
the three hindmost ranks (or companies), about two-

κοσίους ἄνδρας ἐπέτρεψε τὴν μὲν
hundred men (each) ordered the (one of them) indeed

ἑφέπεσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ δεξιόν, ἀπολιπόντας ὡς πλέθρον.
to-follow on the right, being-distant about (a) plethrum

Σαμόλας Ἀχαιὸς ἦρχε τῆς ταύτης
[100 feet]. Samolas (the) Achæan commanded — this

τάξεως· τὴν δ' ἐχώρισεν ἕπεσθαι ἐπὶ τῷ
division, the (other) indeed he-detached to follow at the

μέσῳ· Πυῤῥίας Αρκάς ἦρχε ταύτης· δὲ
centre; Pyrrhias (the) Arcadian commanded this (division); and

τὴν μίαν ἐπὶ τῷ εὐωνύμῳ· Φρασίας
the (third) one (was stationed) on the left; Phrasias (the)

Ἀθηναῖος ἐφεστῆσει ταύτῃ. Δὲ προϊόντες, ἐπεὶ
Athenian commanded it. But proceeding-forward when

οἱ ἡγούμενοι ἐγένοντο ἐπὶ μεγάλῳ
— (those) leading (in advance) got to (a) large

νάπει καὶ δυσπόρῳ, ἔστησαν, ἀγνοοῦντες εἰ
woody-revine and difficult-to-pass, they-halted, not-knowing if

τὸ νάπος εἴη διαβατέον. Καὶ παρεγγυῶσι
the woody-ravine might-be passable. And requested

στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς παριέναι ἐπὶ τὸ
(the) generals and captains to-come-forward to the

ἡγούμενον. Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν, θαυμάσας ὅ τι
leading (division). And — Xenophon, having-wondered what

εἴη ἴσχον τὴν πορείαν, καὶ ταχὺ ἀκούων τὴν
it-might-be detaining the progress, and speedily hearing the

παρεγγυήν, ἐλαύνει τάχιστα ᾗ ἐδύνατο.
announcement, pushes-on (his horse) as-fast as he-could.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ συνῆλθον Σοφαίνετος ὢν πρεσβύ-
When indeed they-came-together Sophænetus being the-oldest

τατος τῶν στρατηγῶν λέγει, ὅτι εἴη οὐκ ἄξιον
of-the generals says, that it-was not worthy

βουλῆς, εἰ ὂν τοιοῦτον τὸ νάπος ἐστι
of-consideration, whether being such — (a) woody-ravine it-is

διαβατέον.
necessary-to-pass (it).

Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν σπουδῇ ὑπολαβὼν ἔλεξεν·
And — Xenophon speedily seizing (an opportunity) said.

Ἀλλ' μὲν ἴστε με, ὦ ἄνδρες, πω ἐθελούσιον
But indeed you-know me, O men, (that) I never voluntarily

προξενήσαντα οὐδένα κίνδυνον ὑμῖν· γὰρ ὁρῶ
brought any danger on-you; for I-see

ὑμᾶς οὐ δεομένους δόξης εἰς ἀνδρειότητα, ἀλλὰ
you not wanting reputation for valour, but

σωτηρίας. Δὲ νῦν ἔχει οὕτως ἔστιν c.
of-safety. But now it-has (itself) so, it-is not

μὲν ἀπελθεῖν ἐνθένδε ἀμαχὶ· γὰρ ἢν ἡμεῖς
indeed (for us) to-depart hence without-fighting, for if we

μὴ ἴωμεν ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους, οὗτοι, ὁπόταν
do not 'advance against the enemy, these, when

ἀπίωμεν, ἕψονται καὶ ἐπιπεσοῦνται ἡμῖν. Ὁρᾶτε
we-retreat, will-follow and attack us. Consider

δή πότερον κρεῖττον ἰέναι ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας,
indeed whether (it is) better to-go against the men

προβαλλομένους τὰ ὅπλα, ἢ μεταβαλ
'throwing (our) — arms 'before (us), or 'hurl-

λομένους, θεάσασθαι τοὺς πολεμίους ἐπι-
ing (them) 'back, to-perceive the enemy fol-

όντας ὄπισθεν ἡμῶν. Ἴστε μέντοι ὅτι μὲν τὸ
lowing behind us. Know however that indeed the

ἀπιέναι ἀπὸ πολεμίων ἔοικε οὐδενὶ καλῷ, δὲ
fleeing from (an) enemy looks-like nothing honourable, but

τὸ ἑφέπεσθαι ἐμποιεῖ θάρσος καὶ τοῖς
— to-follow 'puts confidence (and courage) even 'into the

κακίοσι. Ἔγωγ' οὖν ἂν ἥδιον
cowardly. I-at-least therefore would (as a) more-pleasant (thing)

ἑποίμην σὺν ἡμίσεσιν ἢ ἀπο-
pursue with half (the number of men) (rather) than re-

χωροίην σὺν διπλασίοις. Καὶ τούτους
treat with double (the number). And (as respects) these

οἶδ' ὅτι, ἡμῶν μὲν ἐπιόντων, ὑμεῖς οὐδ'
(men) I-know that, we indeed attacking, you 'do not

ἐλπίζετε αὐτοὺς δέξασθαι ἡμᾶς· δὲ ἀπιόντων,
'expect (that) they will-receive us; but retreating,

πάντες ἐπιστάμεθα ὅτι τολμήσουσιν ἐφέπεσθαι.
'we all 'believe that they-will-dare to-follow-after

Δὲ ποιήσασθαι χαλεπὸν νάπος τὸ ὄπισθεν
'us). But to-have-placed (a) difficult ravine in — (our) rear

διαβάντας, μέλλοντας μάχεσθαι, ἆρ' οὐχὶ
after) having-crossed (it), being-about to-fight, is-not-this

καὶ ἄξιον ἁρπάσαι; γὰρ μὲν ἐγὼ
even (an advantage) worth to-have-seized-on? for indeed I,

τοῖς πολεμίοις βουλοίμην πάντα
(as respects) the enemy, wish (that) all (places)

ἂν φαίνεσθαι εὔπορα, ὥστε ἀποχωρεῖν· δὲ
may appear easy-to-pass-through, so-that they-may-retreat; but

καὶ δεῖ ἡμᾶς διδάσκεσθαι ἀπὸ τοῦ
even it-is-proper for-us to-learn from (the nature) of-the

χωρίου, ὅτι ἔστι οὐ σωτηρία μὴ νικῶσι.
place, that there-is no safety unless (our men) conquer.

Δ' ἔγωγε θαυμάζω εἴ τις νομίζει καὶ τὸ τοῦτο
But I-at-least wonder if any-one thinks even — this

νάπος εἶναι μᾶλλον φοβερὸν τῶν ἄλλων χωρίων
ravine to-be more formidable (than) the other places

ὧν διαπεπορεύμεθα. Πῶς μὲν γὰρ τὸ πεδίον
which we-have-passed-through. How indeed therefore (is) the plain

διαβατόν, εἰ μὴ νικήσομεν τοὺς ἱππέας
to-be-passable, if we-'do not 'conquer the cavalry.

Πῶς δὲ ὄρη, ἃ διεληλύθα-
How indeed (will the) mountains (be passable) which we-have-crossed-

μεν, ἦν τοσοίδε πελτασταὶ ἐφέπωνται;
over, if so-great-a-number-of targeteers pursue (us)?

Δ' ἢν δὴ καὶ σωθῶμεν ἐπὶ θάλατταν,
But if indeed we-'are even 'saved (so far as) to (the) sea,

πόσον τι νάπος ὁ Πόντος; ἔνθα οὔτε
how-great a ravine (will) the Pontus (Euxinus be)? where neither

ἔστι πλοῖα τὰ ἀπάξοντα, οὔτε σῖτος ᾧ
are vessels — for-'carrying (us) 'away, nor provisions by-which

θρεψόμεθα μένοντες· δὲ δεήσει, ἢν
we-may-be-nourished (while) remaining; and it-will-be-necessary, if

γενωμέθα ἐκεῖ θᾶττον, θᾶττον ἐξιέ-
we-get there more-speedily, the-more-speedily (will we have) to-go-

ναι ἐπὶ τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Οὐκ οὖν κρεῖττον
out for — provisions. (Is it) not therefore better

μάχεσθαι νῦν ἠριστηκότας, ἢ αὔριον ἀναρίστους;
to-fight now having-breakfasted, than to-morrow without-breakfast?

Ἄνδρες, τὰ ἱερά τε καλά ἡμῖν, οἱ οἰωνοὶ
Men, the sacrifices indeed (are) favourable to-us, the omens

τε αἴσιοι, τε τὰ σφάγια κάλλιστα· ἴωμεν
likewise auspicious, and the victims most-favourable, let us-go

ἐπὶ τοὺς ἄνδρας. Οὐκ ἔτι δεῖ
against the men (our enemies). It-is not moreover proper (that)

τούτους, ἐπεὶ πάντως εἶδον ἡμᾶς,
those, since they certainly have-seen us, (should be allowed)

δειπνῆσαι ἡδέως, οὐδὲ σκηνῆσαι ὅπου ἂν
to-sup comfortably, or to-encamp where they might

θέλωσι.
wish.

Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἐκέλευον ἡγεῖσθαι, καὶ
Then the captains requested (him) to-lead-on, and

οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγε. Καὶ ὃς ἡγεῖτο, παραγ-
no-one objected. And — (he) led-on (the troops), having

γείλας διαβαίνειν, ᾗ ἕκαστος
ordered (them) to-cross-over, (in the place) in-which each-one

ἐτύγχανε ὢν τοῦ νάπους· γὰρ ἐδόκει
found (himself) being (at) the ravine, for he-thought (that)

τὸ στράτευμα ἂν οὕτω γενέσθαι πέραν ἀθρόον
the army might thus get over together

θᾶττον, ἢ εἰ ἐξεμηρύοντο κατὰ την γεφυραν,
more speedily, than if they-defiled over the bridge,

ἣ ἦν ἐπὶ τῷ νάπει. Ἐπεὶ δὲ διέβησαν,
which was on the ravine. When indeed they-had-crossed-over,

παριὼν παρὰ τὴν φάλαγγα ἔλεγεν· Ἄνδρες,
going-on along the line he-said: Men,

ἀναμιμνήσκεσθε ὅσας μάχας, σὺν
remember how-many battles, with (the assistance of)

τοῖς θεοῖς, νενικήκατα ἰόντες
the gods, (you have fought and) conquered (by) coming-to

ὁμόσε, καὶ οἷα οἱ φεύγοντες πολεμίους
close-quarters, and what — (those) fleeing (from the) enemy

πάσχουσι· καὶ ἐννοήσατε τοῦτο, ὅτι ἐσμεν ἐπὶ
suffer, and you-will-reflect-on this, that we-are a

ταὶς θύραις τᾶς Ἑλλάδος. Ἀλλ' ἕπεσθε τῷ
the gates of — Greece. But follow —

Ἡρακλεῖ ἁγεμόνι, καὶ παρακαλεῖτε ἀλλᾱλους
Hercules (your) conductor, and exhort one-another

ὀνοματί. Ἡδύ τοι νῦν εἰπόντα
by-name. (It is) pleasing indeed (to think, that he) now saying

καὶ ποιήσαντά τι ἀνδρεῖον καὶ καλόν,
and doing any-thing brave and honourable, (that he will)

παρέχειν μνήμην ἑαυτοῦ ἐν οἷς ἐθέλει.
furnish (a) remembrance of-himself among (those) whom he-wishes

Ἔλεγε ταῦτα παρελαύνων, καὶ
(to remember him). He-said these (things) riding-along, and

ἅμα ὑφηγειτο ἐπὶ φάλαγγος, καὶ
at-the-same-time he-led-on in line, and (the generals)

ποιησάμενοι τοὺς πελταστὰς ἑκατέρωθεν
having-formed the targeteers on-each (flank)

ἐπορεύοντο ἐπὶ τοὺς πολεμίους. Παρηγγέλλετο
they-marched-forth against the enemy. He-ordered

δὲ ἔχειν μὲν τὰ δόρατα ἐπὶ τὸν δεξιὸν
(them) however to-have indeed the spears on the right

ὦμον, ἕως σημαίνοι τῇ σάλπιγγι· ἔπειτα
shoulder, until a-signal-should-be-given with-the trumpet; then

δὲ καθέντας εἰς προβολὴν ἕπεσθαι
indeed having-lowered (them) for (a) charge to-follow (their

βάδην καὶ μηδένα διώκειν
leaders in a regular) step and (that) no-one (was) to-advance

δρόμῳ. Ἐκ τούτου σύνθημα παρῆει ΖΕΥΣ
in (a) run. On this (the) watch-word came JUPITER

ΣΩΤΗΡ, ΗΡΑΚΛΗΣ ΗΓΕΜΩΝ. Οἱ
(THE) PRESERVER, HERCULES (THE) LEADER. The

πολέμιοι δὲ ὑπέμενον, νομίζοντες ἔχειν
enemy however remained-in-place, thinking (that) they-had (a)

καλὸν χωρίον. Δ' ἐπεὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐπλησίαζον,
fine position. But when the Greeks approached,

πελτασταὶ ἀλαλάξαντες ἔθεον ἐπὶ τοὺς
(and their) targeteers having-shouted ran against the

πολεμίους πρίν τινα κελεύειν· δ' οἱ πολέμιοι
enemy before (that) any-one ordered (them); but the enemy

ἀντίοι ὥρμησαν, τε οἱ ἱππεῖς καὶ τὸ στῖφος
opposite rushed-on, not-only the cavalry but-also the mass

τῶν Βιθυνῶν· καὶ τρέπονται τοὺς πελταστάς
of-the Bithynians; and put-to-flight the targeteers

Ἀλλ' ἐπεὶ ἡ φάλαγξ τῶν ὁπλιτῶν ὑπηντίαζε
But when the line of-the heavy-armed-men came-up

πορευομένη ταχύ, καὶ ἅμα ἡ σάλπιγξ
advancing quickly, and at-the-same-time the trumpet

ἐφθέγξατο καὶ ἐπαιάνιζον, καὶ μετὰ ταῦτα
sounded and they-sang-the-pæan, and after this

ἠλάλαζον, καὶ ἅμα καθίεσαν τὰ δόρατα,
they-shouted, and at-the-same-time they-couched — (their) spears,

ἐνταῦθα οἱ πολέμιοι οὐκέτι ἐδέξαντο,
then the enemy did no-longer (stand or) receive

ἀλλὰ ἔφευγον. Καὶ Τιμασίων μὲν ἔχων
(their attack), but fled. And Timasion indeed having

τοῖς ἱππεῖς ἐφείπετο, καὶ ἀπεκτίννυσαν ὅσους
the cavalry pursued (them), and killed as-many

περ ἐδύναντο, ὡς ὄντες ὀλίγοι. Δὲ μεν
as he-could, (as) (they) being (but) few. And indeed

τὸ εὐώνυμον τῶν πολεμίων καθ' ὃ οἱ
the left (wing) of-the enemy against (that) which the

Ἕλληνες ἱππεῖς ἦσαν εὐθὺς διεσπάρη,
Greek cavalry were (opposed to) was immediately dispersed,

δὲ τὸ δεξιόν, ἅτε οὐ διωκόμενον σφόδρα,
but the right (wing), as not being-followed closely,

συνέστη ἐπὶ λόφου. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ Ἕλληνες εἶδον
stood-collected on (a) hill. When indeed the Greeks saw

αὐτούς ὑπομένοντας, ἐδόκει εἶναι τε
them making-a-stand, it-seemed (to them) to-be not-only

ῥᾷστόν καὶ ἀκινδυνότατον ἰέναι ἐπ' αὐτούς.
the-easiest but-also the-safest to-go against them

Παιανίσαντες οὖν εὐθὺς ἐπεκειντο· δ'
Singing the-pæan therefore they immediately attacked (them); but

οἱ οὐχ ὑπέμειναν. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα οἱ
– they-'did not sustain (an attack). And then the

πελτασταὶ ἐδίωκον, μέχρι τὸ δεξιὸν διεσπάρη·
targeteers pursued, until the right (wing) was-dispersed,

δὲ ὀλίγοι ἀπέθανον· γὰρ τὸ ἱππικὸν φόβον παρεῖχε,
but few died: for the cavalry fear was-present-to

τὸ τῶν πολεμίων ὂν πολύ. Ἐπεὶ δὲ
them), the (cavalry) of-the enemy being numerous. When however

οἱ Ἕλληνες εἶδον τε τὸ ἱππικὸν Φαρναβάζου ἔτι
the Greeks saw not-only the cavalry of-Pharnabazus still

συνεστηκός, καὶ τοὺς Βιθυνοὺς ἱππέας συναθροιζο-
standing-together, and the Bithynian cavalry flock-

μένους πρὸς τοῦτο, καὶ ἀπὸ τινὸς λόφου καταθεω-
ing to these, and from (a) certain hill looking-

μένους τὰ γιγνόμενα, ἀπειρηκέσαν μέν,
down-on the (things) going-on, (though) they-were-tired indeed,

ὅμως δὲ ἐδόκει καὶ εἶναι ἰτέον ἐπὶ
yet however it-seemed even to-be (best and) necessary — (to attack)

τούτους οὕτως ὅπως δύναιντο, ὡς
them in-as-much as they-might-be-able, that after-'they [the enemy]

ἀναπαύσαιντο μὴ τεθαρρηκότες.
had-'rested (they might) not become-confident-and-bold.

Συνταξάμενοι δὴ πορεύονται.
Being-drawn-up-in-close-order 'they [the Greeks] indeed 'advanced.

Ἐντεῦθεν οἱ πολέμιοι ἱππεῖς φεύγουσι κατὰ
Then the hostile cavalry flee down (the hill)

τοῦ πρανοῦς, ὁμοίως ὥσπερ οἱ διωκόμενοι
— precipitately, in-the-same-manner as-if — (they) were-being-pursued

ὑπὸ ἱππέων· γὰρ νάπος ὑπεδέχετο αὐτούς, ὃ
by cavalry; for (a) ravine received them, which

οἱ Ἕλληνες οὐκ ᾔδεσαν, ἀλλὰ προαπετρά
the Greeks 'did not 'know (of), as they-had-turned

ποντο διώκοντες· γὰρ ἦν ὀψέ. Δὲ ἐπανελ-
back (from) pursuing; for it-was late. But return-

θόντες ἔνθα ἡ πρώτη συμβολὴ ἐγένετο,
ing (to the place) where the first encounter happened

στησάμενοι τρόπαιον, ἀπῄεσαν ἐπὶ θάλατταν
having-erected (a) trophy, they-went-off towards (the) sea

περὶ ἡλίου δυσμάς· δ' ἦσαν ὡς ἑξήκοντα σταδιοι
about sun set; and it-was about sixty stadia

ἐπὶ τὸ στρατόπεδον.
to the camp.

## CHAPTER VI

Ἐντεῦθεν μὲν οἱ πολέμιοι εἶχον ἀμφὶ τὰ
Then indeed the enemy had (to do) about the

ἑαυτῶν, καὶ ἀπήγοντο καὶ τοὺς οἰκέτας
(affairs) of-themselves, and removed both — (their) families

καὶ τὰ χρήματα ὅποι προσωτάτω ἐδύναντο· οἱ
and — effects 'as far-off 'as they-could; the

Ἕλληνες δὲ προσέμενον μὲν Κλέανδρον καὶ
Greeks however 'waited indeed 'for Cleander and

τὰς τριήρεις καὶ τὰ πλοῖα ὡς ἥξοντα·
the galleys and the (transport) vessel that were-about-coming,

δ' ἐξιόντες ἑκάστης ἡμέρας σὺν τοῖς ὑποζυγίοις
and going-out each day with the baggage-cattle

καὶ τοῖς ἀνδραπόδοις ἐφέροντο ἀδεῶς πυρούς,
and the slaves they-brought (in) safely wheat,

κριθάς, οἶνον, ὄσπρια, μελίνας, σῦκα· γὰρ ἡ χώρα
barley, wine, legumes, millet, figs, for the country

εἶχεν ἅπαντα ἀγαθὰ πλὴν ἐλαίου.
had abundance (of) good (things) except (the olive) oil (tree).

Καὶ ὁπότε τὸ στράτευμα καταμένοι ἀναπαυόμενον
And while the army remained resting

ἐξῆν ἰέναι ἐπὶ λείαν, καὶ ἐξιόντες
it-was-allowed (the men) to-go after plunder, and going-out

ἐλάμβανον· δὲ ὁπότε τὸ πᾶν στράτευμα
they-took (what they could); but when the whole army

ἐξίοι, εἴ τις ἀπελθὼν χωρὶς λάβοι τι
went-out, if any-one going-away aside (alone) might-take any-thing

ἔδοξεν εἶναι δημόσιον. Δὲ ἦν ἤδη ἀφθονία
it-judged (it) to-be public-property. And there-was now abundance

πάντων· γὰρ καὶ ἀφικοῦντο ἐκ τῶν Ἑλληνίδων
of-all (things); for even there-arrived from the Greek

πόλεων πάντοθεν ἀγοραὶ, καὶ οἱ
cities every-where (provisions for) markets, and — (those)

παραπλέοντες ἄσμενοι κατῆγον, ἀκούοντες
sailing-by-there-along (the coast) willingly put-in-there, hearing

ὡς πόλις οἰκίζοιτο, καὶ λιμὴν εἴη Δὲ
that (a) city would-be-built, and (a) harbour be (formed). And

καὶ ἤδη οἱ πολέμιοι, οἱ ᾤκουν πλησίον,
also already the enemy, — (those namely) dwelling near,

ἔπεμπον πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, ἀκούοντες ὅτι οὗτος
sent to Xenophon, hearing that he

πολίζει τὸ χωρίον, ἐρωτῶντες, ὅ τι δέοι
is-¹forming the place, ¹to-a-city, inquiring, what it-was-necessary

ποιοῦντας εἶναι φίλους. Δ' ὁ ἐπεδείκνυεν
(for them) to-be-doing to-be friends. And — he-introduced

αὐτοὺς τοῖς στρατιώταις.
them to-the soldiers.

Καὶ ἐν τούτῳ Κλέανδρος ἀφικνεῖται, ἔχων δύο
And on this Cleander arrived, having two

τριήρεις, δ' οὐδέν πλοῖον. Δὲ τὸ στράτευμα
galleys, but no (transport) vessels. But the army

ἐτύγχανε ὂν ἔξω, ὅτε ἀφίκετο, καὶ τινὲς οἰχόμενο
happened being out, when he-came, and some were-going

ἐπὶ λείαν ἄλλοι ἄλλῃ εἰς τὸ
for plunder | others in-another [some one way, some another,] to the

ὄρος, καὶ εἰλήφεσαν πολλὰ πρόβατα· ὀκνοῦντες
mountain, and had-captured many sheep; fearing

δὲ μὴ ἀφαιρεθεῖεν, λέγουσι Δεξίππῳ,
nowever lest they-might-be-taken-from (them), they-told Dexippus,

ὃς ἀπέδρα ἐκ Τραπεζοῦντος ἔχων τὴν πεντη-
(he) who fled from Trebisond having the fifty-oared

κόνοτρον, καὶ κελεύουσι τὰ πρόβατα
galley, and they-request (that) the sheep (might be)

διασώσαντα αὐτοῖς, αὐτὸν μὲν λαβεῖν
preserved for-themselves, (and that) he indeed (was) to-take

τὰ, δὲ ἀποδοῦνα τα σφίσιν.
— (a part of them for himself), but to-return the (rest) to-themselves.

Δ' ἐκεῖνος εὐθὺς ἀπελαύνει τοὺς περι-
And he [Dexippus] immediately drives-off — (those) stand-

εστῶτας τῶν στρατιωτῶν, καὶ λέγοντας ὅτι εἴη
ing-round of-the soldiers, and saying that it-was

δημόσια, καὶ ἐλθὼν τῷ Κλεάνδρῳ λέγει, ὅτι
public-property, and going to Cleander he-says, that

ἐπιχειροῦσιν ἁρπάζειν. Ὁ
they-endeavour to-'seize (them) 'and-take (them) 'away. —

δὲ κελεύει ἄγειν πρὸς αὐτόν τὸν
(Cleander) however ordered (him) to-bring before him the (one)

ἁρπάζοντα, καὶ ὁ μὲν λαβὼν τινα
seizing (the sheep), and — (he) indeed laying-hold-on some-one

ἦγε· δ' Ἀγασίας περιτυχὼν
was-leading (him away); but Agasias | happening-about [meeting him]

ἀφαρειται· καὶ γὰρ ὁ ἀγόμενος ἦν
takes-away (the man); for-indeed — (he) being-led-away | was (a)

λοχίτης αὐτῷ. Δ' οἱ
member to-him [was a private soldier in his company]. And the

ἄλλοι οἱ παρόντες τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἐπι-
others — (those namely) being-present of-the soldiers at-

χειροῦσι βάλλειν τὸν Δέξιππον, ἀνακαλοῦντες
tempted to-throw (stones at) — Dexippus, vociferating

τον προδότην. Δὲ καὶ πολλοί τῶν τριηριτῶν
the traitor. And also many of-the galley-men

ἔδεισαν καὶ ἔφευγον εἰς τὴν θάλατταν, καὶ Κλέ-
got-frightened and fled towards the sea, and Cle-

ανδρος δ' ἔφευγε. Ξενοφῶν δὲ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι
ander likewise fled. Xenophon and also the other

στρατηγοὶ τε κατεκώλυον, καὶ ἔλεγον
generals not-only endeavoured-to-stop (their flight), but-also told

τῷ Κλεάνδρῳ ὅτι εἴη οὐδὲν πρᾶγμα,
— Cleander | that there-was no thing, [that nothing was

ἀλλὰ τὸ δόγμα τοῦ στρατεύματος
the matter,] but (that) the decree of-the army

εἴη αἴτιον ταῦτα γενέσθαι. Δὲ ὁ Κλέ-
was (the) cause (that) these (things) occurred. And — Cle-

ανδρος τε ἀνερεθιζόμενος ὑπὸ τοῦ Δεξίππου,
ander 'being not-only 'instigated by — Dexippus,

καὶ αὐτὸς ἀχθεσθείς, ὅτι ἐφοβήθη, ἔφη
but-also he-himself being-vexed, that he-had-been-put-in-fear, said

ἀποπλευσεῖσθαι, καὶ κηρύξειν μηδεμίαν
(that) he-would-sail-off, and proclaim (that) no

πόλιν δέχεσθαι αὐτούς, ὡς πολεμίους.
city should-receive them, as (they were public) enemies.

Δὲ τότε οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἦρχον πάντων τῶν
For at-that-time the Lacedæmonians governed all —

Ἑλλήνων. Ἐνταῦθα τὸ πρᾶγμα ἐδόκει πονηρὸν
Greece. Then — (this) affair appeared serious

τοῖς Ἕλλησι, καὶ ἐδέοντο
(and unfortunate) to-the Greeks, and they-entreated (Cleander)

μὴ ποιεῖν ταῦτα. Δ' ὁ ἔφη, ἂν οὐ
not to-do these (things). But — he-said, (that it) could not

γενέσθαι ἄλλως, εἰ μή τις ἐκδώσει τὸν
be otherwise, (*if not*) (unless) some-one should-give-up the

ἄρξαντα βάλλειν καὶ τὸν ἀφελό-
(person) having-commenced to-throw (stones) and the (one) having-

μενον. Δὲ ὃν ἐξήτει ἦν Ἀγασίας,
released (him). But (he) whom he-wanted was Agasias, | the

φίλος τῷ Ξενοφῶντι διὰ τέλους·
friend (of) — Xenophon through (out) (to the) end; [the con-

ἐξ οὗ καὶ ὁ Δέξιππος διέβαλεν
stant friend of Xenophon;] for which even — Dexippus had-accused

αὐτόν. Καὶ ἐντεῦθεν ἐπειδὴ ἦν ἀπορία,
him. And then after (this) there-was perplexity

οἱ ἄρχοντες συνήγαγον τὸ στράτευμα·
[therefore) the commanders assembled the army

καὶ ἔνιοι μὲν αὐτῶν ἐποιοῦντο παρ᾽ ὀλίγον
and some indeed of-them made — little

τὸν Κλέανδρον, δὲ τῷ Ξενοφῶντι
(of the threats of) — Cleander, but to — Xenophon

τὸ πρᾶγμα οὐκ ἐδόκει εἶναι φαῦλον, ἀλλ᾽
the affair did not appear to-be trifling, but

ἀναστὰς ἔλεξεν·
rising-up he-said:

Ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, τὸ πρᾶγμα οὐ δὲ
O men soldiers, the affair does not indeed

δοκεῖ ἐμοὶ εἶναι φαῦλον, εἰ Κλέανδρος ἔχων τὴν
seem to-me to-be trifling, if Cleander having — (his)

γνώμην οὕτως ἡμῖν ἄπεισιν ὥςπερ λέγει.
mind thus (disposed) to-us he-goes-away as he-says.

Γὰρ μὲν αἱ Ἑλληνίδες πόλεις εἰσὶ ἐγγύς·
For indeed the Greek cities are near; (the)

Λακεδαιμόνιοι δὲ προεστήκασι τῆς Ἑλλάδος· δὲ
Lacedæmonians indeed at-the-head of — Greece; and

εἰσι ἱκανοὶ καὶ ἕκαστος εἷς Λακεδαιμονίων
it-is competent even (for a) single one of (the) Lacedæmonians

διαπράττεσθαι ὅ τι βούλονται ἐν ταῖς πόλεσιν.
to-accomplish whatever (he) wished in (those) cities.

Εἰ οὖν οὗτος πρῶτον μὲν ἀποκλείσει ἡμᾶς
If therefore this (Cleander) first indeed —— us

Βυζαντίου, δ᾽ ἔπειτα παραγγελεῖ τοῖς ἄλλοις
out-of Byzantium, and then should-announce to-the other

ἁρμοσταῖς μὴ δέχεσθαι εἰς τὰς πόλεις, ὡς ὄντας
governors not to-receive (us) into the cities, as being

ἀπιστοῦντας Λακεδαιμονίοις, καὶ ὄντας ἀνόμους,
disobeying to (the) Lacedæmonians, and being lawless,

δ᾽ ἔτι οὗτος ὁ λόγος περὶ ἡμῶν ἥξει πρὸς
and moreover-if this — report about us come to

Ἀναξίβιον τὸν ναύαρχον, ἔσται χαλεπον
Anaxibius the commander-of-the-fleet, it-will-be difficult (for us)

καὶ μένειν καὶ ἀποπλεῖν· καὶ γὰρ τὸν νὺν
both to-remain and to-sail-away; for indeed (at) — (this) present

χρόνον Λακεδαιμόνιοι ἄρχουσι καὶ ἐν τῇ γῇ
time (the) Lacedæmonians rule both by — land

καὶ ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ. Οὖν οὐκ δεῖ οὔτε
and by — sea. Therefore it-is not proper, (that) either

ἕνεκα ἑνὸς ἀνδρὸς οὔτε δυοῖν ἡμᾶς τοὺς
for-the-sake-of one man or of-two (that) we the

ἄλλους ἀπέχεσθαι τῆς Ἑλλάδος, ἀλλὰ πειστέ-
rest be-held-back from — Greece, but it-is-necessary-to-

ον ὅ τι ἂν κελεύωσι· καὶ γὰρ αἱ πόλεις
obey-to whatever they may command; for indeed the cities

ἡμῶν, ὅθεν ἐσμὲν, πείθονται αὐτοῖς. Ἐγὼ μὲν
of-us, whence we-are, obey them. I indeed

οὖν (καὶ γὰρ ἀκούω Δέξιππον λέγειν πρὸς
therefore (for indeed I-hear (that) Dexippus said to

Κλέανδρον, ὡς Ἀγασίας ἂν οὐκ ἐποίησε ταῦτα,
Cleander, that Agasias would not have-done these (things),

εἰ ἐγὼ μὴ ἐκέλευσα αὐτόν), ἐγὼ μὲν οὖν
if I had not requested him), I indeed therefore (say)

ἀπολύω καὶ ὑμᾶς τῆς αἰτίας, καὶ Ἀγασίαν,
I-clear both you of-the blame, and (also) Agasias,

ἂν Ἀγασίας αὐτὸς φήσῃ ἐμέ εἶναί τι αἴτιον
should Agasias himself say (that) I was any cause

τούτων, καὶ καταδικάζω ἐμαυτοῦ, εἰ ἐγὼ
of-these (things), and I-will-condemn myself, if I

ἐξάρχω πετροβολίας ἢ τινὸς ἄλλου βιαίου,
am-the-beginner of-stone-throwing or any other violence,

εἶναι ἄξιος τῆς ἐσχάτης δίκης, καὶ ὑφέξω
(that I) am worthy of — extreme punishment, and I-will-submit

τὴν δίκην. Δὲ φημὶ καὶ, εἰ αἰτιᾶται τινα
to-the punishment. And I-say also, if (Dexippus) accuses any

ἄλλον, ἑαυτὸν χρῆναι παρασχεῖν
other (person), (that) he ought to-surrender (himself)

Κλεάνδρῳ κρῖναι· γὰρ οὕτω ὑμεῖς ἂν εἴητε
to-Cleander to-try (him); for thus you may be

ἀπολελυμένοι τῆς αἰτίας. Ὡς δὲ νῦν
released from — censure. As indeed (the affair) now

ἔχει χαλεπόν εἰ οἰόμενοι καὶ ἐπαίνου
has (itself), (it is) hard if thinking (that) both applause

καὶ τιμῆς τεύξεσθαι ἐν τῇ Ἑλλάδι,
and honour would-be-prepared (for us) in — Greece, (that)

ἀντὶ δὲ τούτων, οὐδ' ἐσόμεθα ὅμοιοι τοῖς
in-place indeed of-these, we-will not be equal to-the

ἄλλοις, ἀλλ' εἰρξόμεθα ἐκ τῶν Ἑλληνίδων
other (Greeks), but will-be-excluded from the Grecian

πόλεων.
cities.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ἀγασίας ἀναστὰς εἶπεν· Ἐγώ,
After this Agasias rising-up said: I,

ὦ ἄνδρες, ὄμνυμι θεοὺς καὶ θεάς ἦ μὴν
O men, swear (by all the) gods and goddesses that truly

μήτε Ξενοφῶντα κελεῦσαι με ἀφελέσθαι τὸν ἄνδρα,
neither Xenophon requested me to-rescue the man,

μήτε μηδένα ἄλλον ὑμῶν· δέ μοι ἰδόντι ἀγα-
(nor) (or) no-one else of-you; but I seeing (a) good-

θὸν ἄνδρα τῶν ἐμῶν λοχιτῶν ἀγόμενον ὑπὸ
and-brave man of — my company led-off by

Δεξίππου, ὃν ὑμεῖς ἐπίστασθε προδόντα,
Dexippus, whom you know (as) betraying (you),

ἔδοξεν εἶναι δεινόν· καὶ ὁμολογῶ ἀφειλόμην.
it-seemed (to me) to-be intolerable; and I-confess (that) I-took

Καὶ ὑμεῖς μὲν μὴ ἐκδῶτέ με, δὲ ἐγῶ
him) away. And you indeed do not deliver me up, for I

ἐμαυτόν, ὥςπερ Ξενοφῶν λέγει, παρασχήσω
myself, as Xenophon recommends, will-surrender (myself)

Κλεάνδρῳ κρίναντι, ἂν ποιῆσαι ὅ τι
to-Cleander (that) having-tried (me), he may do (with me) whatever

βούληται· ἕνεκα τούτου μήτε πολεμεῖτε
he may-please; on-account of-this do not contend with (the)

Λακεδαιμονίοις, σώζοισθέ τε ἀσφαλῶς,
Lacedæmonians, may-you-unharmed indeed (return) safely (to)

ὅποι ἕκαστος θέλει. Μέντοι ἑλόμενοι αὐτῶν
whoever each-one wishes. Having indeed chosen those

ὑμῶν συμπέμψατε μοι πρὸς Κλεάνδρον,
of-yourselves ¹send (them) ¹with me to Cleander,

οἵτινες, ἂν ἐγὼ παραλείπω τι, καὶ λέξουσιν
who, if I should-omit any-thing, (might, both speak

καὶ πράξουσιν ὑπὲρ ἐμοῦ. ³Ἐκ τούτου ἡ στρατιὰ
and act for me. On this the army

ἔδωκεν, προσελόμενον οὕστινας βούλοιτο ἰέναι.
allowed (him), having-chosen whomsoever he-might-wish to-go

Ὁ δὲ προσείλετο τοὺς στρατηγούς.
(with him). — ¹He indeed ¹chose the generals.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ³Αγασίας καὶ οἱ στρατηγοί, καὶ ὁ
After this Agasias and the generals, and the

ἀνὴρ ἀφαιρεθεὶς ὑπὸ ³Αγασίου, ἐπορεύοντο πρὸς
man taken-away by Agasias, proceeded to

Κλέανδρον. Καὶ οἱ στρατηγοί ἔλεγον·
Cleander. And the generals said:

Ἡ στρατιὰ ἔπεμψεν ἡμᾶς πρὸς σε, ὦ Κλέανδρε,
The army has-sent us to you, O Cleander,

καὶ ἐκέλευσέ σε, εἴτε αἰτιᾷ πάντας, σεαυτὸν
and request you, if you-accuse all, you-yourself

κρίναντα χρῆσθαι ὅ τι
having-tried (all) (are) to-treat (them) (in) whatever (manner) ¹you

ἂν βούλῃ, εἴτε αἰτιᾷ τινὰ ἕνα, ἢ δύο, ἢ καὶ
may ¹wish, if you-accuse some one, or two, or even

πλείους, ἀξιοῦσι τούτους παρασχεῖν
more, they-¹think (it) ¹right (that) these ¹deliver

ἑαυτοὺς σοι εἰς κρίσιν. Εἴτε οὖν αἰτιᾷ τινα
themselves ¹up to-you for judgment. If therefore you-accuse any-one

ἡμῶν, ἡμεῖς πάρεσμέν σοι· εἴτε καὶ τινά ἄλλον,
of-us, we are-present (before) you; if even any other,

φράσον· γὰρ οὐδεὶς ἀπέσται ὅστις
say (so); for no-one shall-be-distant-from (obeying you) who

ἂν ἐθέλῃ πείθεσθαι ἡμῖν. Μετὰ ταῦτα ὁ
may wish to-obey us. After these (things) —

³Αγασίας παρελθὼν εἶπεν· ²Εγώ, ὦ Κλέανδρε, εἰμι
Agasias having-come-forward said: I, O Cleander, am

ὁ ἀφελόμενος τὸν ἄνδρα Δεξίππου ἄγοντος
(he) who having-taken-away the man from-Dexippus leading

τοῦτον, καὶ κελεύσας παίειν Δέξιπ-
him (away), and (also) having-exhorted (the men) to-strike Dexip-

πον. Γὰρ μὲν οἶδα ἄνδρα ὄντα ἀγαθὸν·
pus. For indeed I-know (the) man (as) being good-and-brave

δὲ οἶδα Δέξιππον αἱρεθέντα ὑπὸ τῆς στρατιᾶς
and I-know (that) Dexippus having-been-chosen by the army

ἄρχειν τῆς πεντηκοντόρου, ἧς ᾐτησάμεθα παρὰ
to-command the fifty-oar-galley, which we-begged from

Τραπεζουντίων ἐφ' ᾧτε συλλέγειν πλοῖα
(the) Trebisondians | on which to-collect vessels [for the

ὡς σωζοίμεθα, καὶ Δέξιππον
purpose of collecting vessels] that we-might-be-saved, and Dexippus

ἀποδράντα καὶ προδόντα τοὺς στρατιώτας, μεθ'
running-away and betraying the soldiers, with

ὧν ἐσώθη. Καὶ τε ἀπεστερήκαμεν Τραπε-
whom he-had-been-saved. And not-only we-have-deprived (the) people-of-

ζουντίους τὴν πεντηκόντορον, καὶ δοκοῦμεν εἶναι
Trebisond (of) the fifty-oared-galley, but-also we-seem to-be

κακοὶ διὰ τοῦτον· αὐτοί τε ἀπολώλαμεν
dishonest through this (man); [1]we ourselves indeed [1]were-ruined

τὸ ἐπὶ τούτῳ. Γὰρ ἤκουε,
[1]the on this [as far as depended on this man]. For he-had-heard,

ὥσπερ ἡμεῖς, ὡς εἴη ἄπορον ἀπιόντας πεζῇ
as-well-as we, that it-would-be impracticable having-departed on-foot

τε διαβῆναι τοὺς ποταμούς, καὶ σωθῆναι
not-only to-cross the rivers, but-also | to-be-saved [to get

εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Τοῦτον οὖν ὄντα
safe] to — Greece. (From) this (one) therefore being

τοιοῦτον ἀφειλόμην. Εἰ δὲ σὺ ἦγες,
such (a person) I-rescued (the man). If indeed you were-leading

ἤ τις ἄλλος τῶν παρὰ σοῦ, καὶ μὴ
(him away), or any-one else of — (those) with you, and not (one)

τῶν ἀποδράντων παρ' ἡμῶν, ἴσθι εὖ ὅτι ἂν
of — (those) deserting from us, know well that [1]I would

ἐποίησα οὐδεν τούτων. Νόμιζε δ', ἐὰν νῦν
have-done nothing of-these (things). Consider then, if you now

ἀποκτείνῃς ἐμὲ, ἀποκτείνων ἀγαθὸν
kill me, (you) are-putting-to-death (a) brave-and-honourable

ἄνδρα δι' ἄνδρα τε δειλόν καὶ πονηρόν.
man for (a) man not-only (a) coward but-also (a) villain.

Ὁ Κλέανδρος ἀκούσας ταῦτα εἶπεν ὅτι μὲν
— Cleander having-heard this said that indeed

οὐκ ἐπαινοίη Δέξιππον, εἴη
he-could not approve (of the conduct of) Dexippus, if (he)

πεποιηκὼς ταῦτα· οὐ μέντοι, ἔφη, νομίζειν,
has-been-doing these (things); | not indeed, said-he, to-consider,

εἰ Δέξιππος ἦν παμπόνηρος
[but consider, said he,] (that) if Dexippus were (the) worst-of-villains

οὐδὲ χρῆναι αὐτόν πάσχειν βίαν, ἀλλὰ
(that) neither ought he to-suffer violence, but

κριθέντα, (ὥσπερ καὶ νῦν ὑμεῖς ἀξιοῦτε,) τυχεῖν
having-been-tried, (as even now you require,) to-have-met-with

τῆς δίκης. Νυν οὖν μὲν ἄπιτε, καταλιπόντες
— justice. Now therefore indeed retire, leaving-behind

τόνδε τὸν ἄνδρα· ὅταν δ' ἐγὼ κελεύσω,
this — man (Agasias); when indeed I shall-call (you)

πάρεστε πρὸς τὴν κρίσιν. Οὔτε δὲ αἰτιῶμαι
be-present at the trial. I neither indeed accuse

τὴν στρατιάν, οὔτε οὐδένα ἄλλον ἔτι, ἐπεὶ
the army, nor (*no-one*) (any one) else besides, since

αὐτὸς οὗτος ὁμολογεῖ ἀφελεσθαι τὸν ἄνδρα. Δὲ
he himself confesses to-have-released the man. But

ὁ ἀφαιρεθεὶς εἶπεν· Ἐγώ, ὦ Κλέανδρε,
— (the man) having-been-taken-away said: I, O Cleander,

εἰ καὶ οἴει με ἄγεσθαι τι
if even you-suppose (that) I was-led-away (for) doing something

ἀδικοῦντα, οὔτε ἔπαιον οὐδένα, οὔτε
wrong, (I indeed) neither struck (*no-one*) (any one), nor

ἔβαλλον, ἀλλ' εἶπον ὅτι τὰ πρόβατα εἴη
threw (stones), but said that the sheep were

δημόσια· γὰρ ἦν δόγμα τῶν στρατιωτῶν, εἴ
public-property; for it-was (a) decree of-the army, if

τις, ὁπότε ἡ στρατιὰ ἐξίοι, ἰδίᾳ λῃΐζοι
any-one, when the army went-out, should privately make-any-

το, τὰ λήφθέντα εἶναι δημόσια. Ταῦτα
capture the (things so) captured to-be public-property. These

εἶπον· καὶ ἐκ τούτου λαβὼν με οὗτος
(things) I-said; and on this seizing me this

ἦγεν, ἵνα μηδείς μὴ
(Dexippus) was-leading (me away), in-order-that no-one might —

φθέγγοιτο, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς λαβὼν τὸ μέρος
utter (any thing), but he taking — (a) part

διασώσειε τὰ χρήματα τοῖς λῃσταῖς παρὰ τὴν
might-preserve the things for-the plunderers contrary-to the

ῥήτραν. Πρὸς ταῦτα ὁ Κλέανδρος εἶπεν· Ἐπεὶ
agreement. To this — Cleander said: Since

τοίνυν εἶ τοιοῦτος, κατάμενε, ἵνα καὶ βουλευσώ-
therefore you-are such-a-person, remain-here, that even I-may-delibe

μεθα περὶ σοῦ.
rate about you.

Ἐκ τούτου οἱ μὲν ἀμφὶ Κλέανδρον ἠρίστων
After this — (those) indeed about Cleander went-to-supper;

δὲ Ξενοφῶν συνήγαγε τὴν στρατιάν, καὶ συνεβού-
and Xenophon assembled the army, and coun-

λευε πέμψαι ἄνδρας πρὸς Κλέανδρον παραιτη-
selled (them) to-send men to Cleander inter-

σομένους περὶ τῶν ἀνδρῶν. Ἐκ τούτου ἔδοξεν
ceding for the men. On this it-seemed (good)

αὐτοῖς, πέμψαντας στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς καὶ
to-them, having-sent (the) generals and captains, and

Δραλόντιον τὸν Σπαρτιάτην, καὶ τῶν ἄλλων
Dracontius the Spartan, and (those) of-the others

οἳ ἐδόκουν εἶναι ἐπιτήδειοι, δεῖσθαι
who seemed to-be fit (for the occasion), to-entreat

Κλεάνδρου κατὰ πάντα τρόπον ἀφεῖναι τὼ ἄνδρε.
Cleander by all means to-set-free the-two men

Ξενοφῶν οὖν ἐλθῶν λέγει· Ἔχεις μέν, ὦ Κλέανδρε,
Xenophon therefore going says: You-have indeed, O Cleander,

τοὺς ἄνδρας, καὶ ἡ στρατιὰ ὑφεῖτο σοι ποιῆσαι ὅ τι
the men, and the army allowed you to-do what

ἐβούλου, καὶ περὶ τούτων καὶ περὶ ἁπάντων
you-wished, both (as) respects these and (as) respects all

ἑαυτῶν· νῦν δὲ αἰτοῦνται καὶ δέονται σε
(of) themselves; now indeed they-entreat and request you

δοῦναί σφισι τὼ ἄνδρε, καὶ μὴ κατακαίνειν·
to-give to-themselves the-two men, and not 'put (them) 'to-death;

γὰρ ἐμοχθησάτην πολλὰ ἐν τῷ χρόνῳ ἔμπροσθεν
for they-laboured much in the time past

περὶ τὴν στρατιάν. Δὲ τυχόντες
as-respects (being of service to) the army. And having-obtained

ταῦτα σου, ὑπισχνοῦνταί σοι ἀντὶ τούτων,
this from-you, they-promise you in-return-for these (things),

ἢν βούλῃ ἡγεῖσθαι αὐτῶν, καὶ ἢν οἱ θεοὶ ὦσιν
if you-wish to-lead them, and if the gods may-be

ἵλεῳ, ἐπιδείξειν σοι, καὶ ὡς κόσμιοι
propitious, (that they) will-show you, both how orderly-and-well-dis-

εἰσι καὶ ὡς ἱκανοί πειθόμενοι
ciplined they-are and how competent (they are when) obeying

τῷ ἄρχοντι, σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς μὴ
— (their) commanders, (and) with (the assistance of) the gods not

φοβεῖσθαι τοὺς πολεμίους. Δὲ καὶ δέονται σου
to-fear the enemy. And also they-entreat of-you

καὶ τοῦτο, παραγενόμενον καὶ ἄρξαντα
even this, (that) having-come and having-taken-command

αὐτῶν, λαβεῖν πεῖραν καὶ
of-them, (and that) | to-have-taken experience [to make trial of] both

Δεξίππου καὶ τῶν ἄλλων σφῶν, οἷος ἕκαστος ἐστι,
Dexippus and of-the rest of-them, what each is,

καὶ νεῖμαι ἑκάστοις τὴν ἀξίαν.
and to-distribute to-each-one — (his) merit [and give each one his

Ὁ Κλέανδρος ἀκούσας ταῦτα, ἔφη·
desertsl — Cleander having-heard these (things) said

Ἀλλὰ ναὶ τὼ σιώ, ταχύ τοι ἀποκρινοῦμα.
But by the twin-gods, I-will speedily — answer

ὑμῖν. Καὶ τὲ δίδωμι τώ ἄνδρε ὑμῖν, καὶ
you. And not-only I-give the-two men to-you, but-also

αὐτὸς παρέσομαι· καὶ ἢν οἱ θεοὶ παραδιδῶσιν,
I-myself will-come (to you); and if the gods grant,

ἐξηγήσομαι εἰς τὴν Ἑλλάδα. Καὶ οἱ οὗτοι
I-will-lead (you) to — Greece. And — those

λόγοι εἰσὶν πολὺ ἀντίοι, ἢ
words (of yours) are much opposed, than [are very different from

οὓς ἐγὼ ἤκουν περὶ ἐνίων ὑμῶν, ὡς
those] which I heard about some of-you, (namely) that

ἀφίστατε τὸ στράτευμα ἀπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων.
you-were-alienating the army from (the) Lacedæmonians.

Ἐκ τούτου μὲν οἱ ἐπαινοῦντες ἀπῆλθον
On this indeed — they-applauding (him) departed

ἔχοντες τὼ ἄνδρε. Δὲ Κλέανδρος ἐθύετο ἐπὶ
having the-two men. And Cleander sacrificed about

τῇ πορείᾳ, καὶ ξυνῆν φιλικῶς Ξενοφῶντι, καὶ
the journey, and he-associated friendly with-Xenophon, and

ξυνεβάλοντο ξενίαν. Δὲ καὶ ἐπεὶ
they-joined (intimately in the) bonds-of-hospitality. And also when

ἑώρα αὐτοὺς ποιοῦντας εὐτάκτως τὸ παραγγελ-
he-saw them doing in-good-order the (things) com-

λόμενον, καὶ ἔτι μᾶλλον ἐπεθύμει γενέσθαι
manded, and yet more he-desired to-become (the)

ἡγεμὼν αὐτῶν. Ἐπεὶ μέντοι αὐτῷ θυομένῳ ἐπὶ
leader of-them. When however he sacrificing for

τρεῖς ἡμέρας, τὰ ἱερὰ οὐκ ἐγίγνετο,
three days, the victims did not become (favourable),

συγκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς εἶπε· Τὰ ἱερὰ
calling-together the generals he-said: The victims were

οὐκ ἐτελέσθαι ἐξάγειν·
not brought-to-an-end (so as to be favourable for me) to-lead (you) away,

μὴ ἀθυμεῖτε μέντοι ἕνεκα τούτου· γὰρ ὑμῖν,
be not you-discouraged however on-account of-this; for you.

ὡς ἔοικε, δέδοται ἐκκομίσαι τοὺς ἄνδρας·
as it-is-proper, it-is-given to-lead-out the men (home);

ἀλλὰ πορεύεσθε· ἡμεῖς δὲ, ἐπειδὰν ἥκητε ἐκεῖσε,
but proceed; we indeed, when you arrive there

δεζόμεθα ὑμᾶς ὡς κάλλιστα ἂν
(at Byzantium), will-receive you 'as handsomely 'as 'we may

δυνώμεθα.
be-able.

Ἐκ τούτου ἔδοξε τοῖς στρατιώταις δοῦναι
On this it-seemed (good) to-the soldiers to-give

αὐτῷ τὰ πρόβατα δημόσια· ὁ δὲ
him the sheep (being) public-property; — (he) indeed

δεξάμενος, πάλιν ἀπέδωκε αὐτοῖς. Καὶ
having-received (them), again returns (the sheep) to-them. And

οὗτος μὲν ἀπέπλει. Οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ διαθέμενοι
he indeed set-sail. The soldiers however having-sold

τὸν σῖτον, ὃν ἦσαν συγκεκομισμένοι, καὶ τἆλλα
the corn, which they-had-collected, and the-other

ἃ εἰλήφεσαν, ἐξεπορεύοντο διὰ τῶν Βι-
(things) which they-had-captured, departed through — Bi

θυνῶν. Δὲ ἐπεὶ πορευόμενοι τὴν ὀρθὴν ὁδὸν ἐνέ-
thynia. But when pursuing the straight road they-

τυχον οὐδενὶ, ὥστε ἔχοντες τι ἐλθεῖν εἰς τὴν
met-with nothing, so-that having something to-go to — (a)

φιλίαν, ἔδοξεν αὐτοῖς ὑποστρέψαντες
friendly (country), it-seemed (good) to-them having-marched

τοὔμπαλιν ἐλθεῖν μίαν ἡμέραν καὶ νύκτα. Δε
back-again to-go one day and night. And

ποιήσαντες τοῦτο, ἔλαβον καὶ πολλὰ ἀνδράποδα
doing this, they-took both many slaves

καὶ πρόβατα· καὶ ἀφίκοντο ἑκταῖοι εἰς
and sheep (or cattle); and arrived (in) six (days) at

Χρυσόπολιν τῆς Καλχηδονίας, καὶ ἐκεῖ ἔμειναν
Chrysopolis of-the Calchedonians, and there they-remained

ἑπτὰ ἡμέρας λαφυροπωλοῦντες.
seven days selling-booty.

# BOOK VII.

## CHAPTER I.

Ὅσα μὲν δὴ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἔπραξαν ἐν τῇ
What indeed truly the Greeks did in the
ἀναβάσει μετὰ Κύρου μέχρι τῆς μάχης,
march-up (the country) with Cyrus until the battle,
καὶ ὅσα ἐν τῇ πορείᾳ ἐπεὶ Κῦρος
and what (they did and experienced) in the journey after Cyrus
ἐτελεύτησε μέχρι ἀφίκοντο εἰς τὸν Πόντον, καὶ
died until they-arrived at the Euxine-Sea, and
ὅσα ἐποίουν ἐκ τοῦ Πόντου, ἐξιόντες πεζῇ, καὶ
what they-did from the Euxine, departing on-foot, and
ἐκπλέοντες, μέχρι ἐγένοντο ἔξω τοῦ στόματος
sailing-off, until they-got beyond the mouth (thereof)
ἐν Χρυσοπόλει τῆς Ἀσίας, δεδήλωται ἐν τῷ
at Chrysopolis — (in) Asia, has-been-related in the
πρόσθεν λόγῳ. Ἐκ τούτου δὲ Φαρνάβαζος φοβού-
preceding discourse. On this indeed Pharnabazus fear-
μενος τὸ στράτευμα, μὴ στρατεύηται ἐπὶ
ing the (Grecian) army, lest it-might-invade —
τὴν χώρον αὐτοῦ, πέμψας πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον τὸν
the country of-himself, having-sent to Anaxibius the
ναύαρχον, (ὁ δ' ἔτυχεν ὢν ἐν Βυζαντίῳ,)
(Spartan) admiral, (who indeed happened being in Byzantium,)
ἐδεῖτο τὸ στράτευμα διαβιβάσαι ἐκ
he-requested (him) to-[1]have the army [1]transported from
τῆς Ἀσίας, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖτο ποιήσειν αὐτῷ πάντα,
Asia, and promised to-do for-him all

ὅσα δέοι. Καὶ Ἀναξίβιος μετεπέμψατο τοὺς
what he-might-require. And Anaxibius sent-for the

στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς τῶν στρατιωτῶν εἰς
generals and captains of-the soldiers (to come) to

Βυζάντιον, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖτο, εἰ διαβαῖεν,
Byzantium, and promised, if they-should-come-over (to him),

ἔσεσθαι μισθοφοριὰν τοῖς στρατιώταις. Οἱ
(that) there-would-be pay for-the soldiers. The

ἄλλοι μὲν δὴ ἔφασαν βουλευσάμενοι
rest (of the officers) indeed truly said (that) after-having-consulted

ἀπαγγελεῖν Δὲ Ξενο-
(together) they-would-announce (to him their determination). But Xeno-

φῶν εἶπεν αὐτῷ, ὅτι, ἤδη ἀπαλλάξοιτο ἀπὸ τῆς
phon said to-him, that, already about-to-depart from the

στρατιᾶς καὶ βούλοιτο ἀποπλεῖν. Δὲ ὁ Ἀναξί-
army, he even wished to-set-sail. But — Anaxi-

βιος ἐκέλευσεν αὐτὸν, ἔπειτα συνδιαβάντα
bius requested him, (that) after having-crossed-over-with

οὕτως ἀπαλλάττεσθαι. Οὖν ἔφη
(the others) then to-depart. He therefore said (that he)

ποιήσειν ταῦτα.
would-do these (things).

Δὲ Σεύθης ὁ Θρᾷξ πέμπει Μηνδοσάδην, καὶ
But Seuthes the Thracian sends Mendosades, and

κελεύει Ξενοφῶντα συμπροθυμεῖσθαι ὅπως τὸ
requests Xenophon to-join-in-the-effort-with (him) that the

στράτευμα διαβῇ, καὶ ἔφη αὐτῷ συμπροθυμη-
army might-cross-over, and he-said to-him actively-taking-part-

θέντι ὅτι οὐ μεταμελήσει. Δ' ὁ
in-the-effort that he-would not repent (it). And — (Xenophon)

εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ μὲν τὸ στράτευμα διαβήσεται·
said: But indeed the army will-cross-over;

ἕνεκα τούτου τελείτω μηδὲν μήτε ἐμοί, μήτε μηδενί
by-reason of-this let-him-pay no-one neither me, nor (no-one)

ἄλλῳ· ἐπειδὰν δὲ διαβῇ, ἐγὼ μὲν
(any one) else; when indeed it-may-have-crossed-over, I indeed

ἀπαλλάξομι, προσφερέσθω πρὸς τοὺς δὲ
shall-leave (it) let-him-address-himself to — (those) indeed

διαμένοντας, καὶ ὄντας ἐπικαιρίους, ὡς ἂν δοκῇ
having-remained, and being opportune, (so) as may seem

αὐτῷ ἀσφαλές.
to-him safe (and not calculated to fail).

Ἐκ τούτου πάντες οἱ στρατιῶται διαβαίνουσι
After this all the soldiers cross-over

εἰς τὸ Βυζαντιον. Καὶ ὁ Ἀναξίβιος μὲν οὐκ
to — Byzantium. And — Anaxibius indeed did not

ἐδίδου μισθὸν, δὲ ἐκήρυξε τοὺς στρα-
give (them) pay, but made-proclamation (that) the sol-

τιώτας λαβόντας τὰ ὅπλα καὶ τὰ σκεύη
diers taking — (their) arms and — (their) baggage

ἐξιέναι, ὡς τε ἀποπέμψων
(should) go-out (of the city), as (if) not-only sending (them) away

καὶ ἅμα ποιήσων ἀριθ-
(home), but-also at-the-same-time (as if) (making) (taking) (their) num-

μὸν. Ἐνταῦθα οἱ στρατιῶται ἠχθοντο, ὅτι
ber. Then the soldiers were-distressed, (because) that

εἶχον οὐκ ἀργύριον ἐπισιτίζεσθαι εἰς τὴν πορείαν,
they-had no money to-get-provisions on the journey,

καὶ ὀκνηρῶς συνεσκευάζοντο. Καὶ ὁ
and they reluctantly packed-up (their) baggage. And —

Ξενοφῶν, γεγενημένος ξένος Κλεάνδρῳ τῷ
Xenophon, having-become (the) guest-friend to-Cleander the

ἁρμοστῇ, προσελθὼν ἠσπάζετο αὐτὸν
governor, going-to (him) he-kindly-saluted him taking-leave

ὡς ἤδη ἀποπλευσούμενος. Ὁ δὲ λέγει
as now about-sailing-away. — (Cleander) indeed said

αὐτῷ· Μὴ ποιήσῃς ταῦτα· εἰ δὲ μή,
to-him: Do not do this: | if indeed not, [for otherwise]

ἔφη, ἕξεις αἰτίαν, ἐπεὶ καὶ νῦν τινες
said-he, you-will-have (the) blame, since even now some

ἤδη αἰτιῶνται σὲ ὅτι τὸ στράτευμα οὐ ταχὺ
already blame you that the army does not quickly

ἐξέρπει. Δ' ὁ εἶπεν· Ἀλλ' ἔγωγε εἰμὶ
creep-out. And — (Xenophon) said: But I-at-least am

οὐ μὲν αἴτιος τούτου, δ' οἱ στρατιῶται αὐτοί
not indeed (the) cause of-this, but the soldiers themselves

δεόμενοι ἐπισιτισμοῦ, διὰ τούτο ἀθυμοῦσι πρὸς
wanting provisions, through this they-are-troubled about

τὴν ἔξοδον. Ἀλλ' ὅμως, ἔφη, ἐγώ συμβουλεύω
the departure. But however, said-he, I advise

σοι μὲν ἐξελθεῖν ὡς πορευσόμενον,
you indeed to-go-out (with them) as (if) about-accompanying (them).

δ' ἐπειδὰν τὸ στράτευμα γένηται ἔξω, τότε
and when the army has-got without (the city), then

ἀπαλλάττεσθαι. Τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν,
to-leave (it). (We) therefore, said — Xenophon,

ἐλθόντες πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον διαπραξώμεθα ταῦτα.
going to Anaxibius will-settle these (things)

Οὕτως ἐλθόντες ἔλεγον ταῦτα. Δὲ ὁ
Thus going (to him) they-told (him) these (things). And — (he)

ἐκέλευσε ποιεῖν οὕτω, καὶ συνεσκευ-
requested (them) to-do so, and (that the soldiers) having-

ασμένους ἐξιέναι τὴν ταχίστην,
packed-up (their) baggage should-go-out in-the quickest (time),

καὶ προσανειπεῖν, ὃς ἂν μὴ παρῇ
and moreover-to-declare-publicly, (that he) who might not be-present

εἰς τὴν ἐξέτασιν καὶ εἰς τὸν ἀριθμόν, ὅτι αὐτὸς
at the review and at the numbering, that he

αἰτιάσεται αὑτόν. Ἐντεῦθεν οἵ τε στρατηγοὶ
(would) blame himself. Then the — generals

ἐξῆσαν πρῶτοι, καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι. Καὶ ἄρδην
went-out first, and the others (after them). And altogether

πάντες ἦσαν ἔξω πλὴν ὀλίγων, καὶ Ἐτεόνικος
all were out except (some) few, and Eteonicus

εἱστήκει παρὰ τὰς πύλας, ὡς, ὁπότε πάντες
stood by the gates, that, when all

γένοιντο ἔξω συγκλείσων τὰς πύλας, καὶ
had-got out (ready for) shutting the gates, and

ἐμβαλὼν τὸν μοχλὸν. Δὲ ὁ Ἀναξίβιος συγκαλέσας
throwing-in the bar. And — Anaxibius having-called-together

τοὺς στρατηγοὺς καὶ τοὺς λοχαγούς ἔλεξε·
the generals and the captains said:

Λαμβάνιτε, ἔφη, μὲν τὰ ἐπιτήδεια ἐκ τῶν Θρᾳκίων
You-may take, said-he, indeed — provisions from the Thracian

κωμῶν· (δὲ εἰσὶ αὐτόθι πολλαὶ κριθαὶ καὶ πυροί,
villages; (and there-is there much barley and wheat,

καὶ τἆλλα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια·) δὲ λαβόντες
and other — provisions;) and taking (these things)

πορεύεσθε εἰς Χερρόνησον, ἐκεῖ δὲ Κυνίσκος
proceed to (the) Chersonesus, where indeed Cyniscus

μισθοδοτήσει ὑμῖν. Δὲ τινες τῶν στρατιωτῶν
will-give you pay. But some of-the soldiers

ἢ καὶ τις τῶν λοχαγῶν ἐπακούσαντες ταῦτα,
or even some (one) of-the captains having-overheard these

διαγγέλλει εἰς τὸ στράτευμα. Καὶ οἱ
(things), communicated (them) to the army. And the

στρατηγοὶ μὲν ἐπυνθάνοντο περὶ τοῦ Σεύθου,
generals indeed (also) inquired about — Seuthes,

πότερα εἴη πολέμιος ἢ φίλος, καὶ πότερα
whether he-might-be inimical or friendly, and whether

δέοι πορεύεσθαι διὰ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ὄρους, ἢ
it-was-necessary to-march over the sacred mountain, or (in)

κύκλῳ διὰ μέσης τῆς Θρᾴκης. Δὲ ἐν
circuit through (the) middle of — Thrace. But during (the time)

ᾧ διελέγοντο ταῦτα οἱ στρατιῶται
in-which they-were-conversing-about these (things) the soldiers

ἁναρπάσαντες τὰ ὅπλα θέουσι δρόμῳ πρὸς
having-snatched-up — (their) arms run in-full-speed to

τὰς πύλας, ὡς πάλιν εἰσιόντες εἰς τὸ
the gates, so-that again (they were about) entering within the

τεῖχος. Δὲ ὁ Ἐτεόνικος καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ,
walls. And — Eteonicus and — (those) with him,

ὡς εἶδον τοὺς ὁπλίτας προσθέοντας συγκλείουσι
as they-saw the heavy-armed-men running-towards (them) shut

τὰς πύλας καὶ ἐμβάλλουσι τὸν μοχλόν. Δὲ οἱ
the gates and thrust-in the bar. But the

στρατιῶται ἐκοπτόν τε τὰς πύλας, καὶ ἔλεγον
soldiers knocked indeed at-the gates, and said,

ὅτι πάσχοιεν ἀδικώτατα ἐκβαλλόμενοι εἰς τοὺς
that they-suffered most-unjustly, being-thrown-out to the

πολεμίους· καὶ ἔφασαν κατασχίσειν τὰς
enemy; and they-said (that they would) cut-down the

πύλας, εἰ μὴ ἑκόντες ἀνοίζουσιν. Ἄλλοι
gates, if they-did not voluntarily open (them) Others

δὲ ἔδεον ἐπὶ θάλατταν, καὶ ὑπερβαίνουσιν εἰς
indeed ran to (the) sea, and went-over into

τὴν πόλιν παρὰ τὴν χηλὴν τοῦ τείχους· δὲ ἄλλοι
the city along the pier of-the wall; but others

τῶν στρατιωτῶν οἳ ἐτύγχανον ὄντες
of-the soldiers (those namely) who happened being

ἔνδον, ὡς ὁρῶσι τὰ πράγματα ἐπὶ
within (the walls), as they-perceived the things (going on) at

ταῖς πύλαις, διακόπτοντες τὰ κλεῖθρα ταῖς
the gates, cutting-through the bars with — (their)

ἀξίναις, ἀναπεταννύουσι τὰς πύλας· δ' οἱ
axes, they-opened-wide the gates; and — (they all)

εἰσπίπτουσιν.
rush-in

Ὁ Ξενοφῶν δὲ ὡς εἶδε τὰ γιγνόμενα
— Xenophon indeed as he-saw the (things) going-on,

δείσας μὴ τὸ στράτευμα τράποιτο ἐφ' ἁρπαγήν,
having-feared lest the army might-turn to plunder,

καὶ ἀνήκεστα κακὰ γένοιτο τῇ πόλει, καὶ ἑαυτῷ,
and irreparable evil might-happen to-the city, and to-himself,

καὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις, ἔθει, καὶ συνεισπίπτει σὺν
and to-the army, ran, and rushes-in-together with

τῷ ὄχλῳ εἴσω τῶν πυλῶν. Οἱ Βυζάντιοι δὲ, ὡς
the crowd within the gates. The Byzantians indeed, as

εἶδον τὸ στράτευμα εἰσπῖπτον βίᾳ φεύγουσιν ἐκ
they saw the army rushed-in by-force fled from

τῆς ἀγορᾶς, οἱ μὲν εἰς τὰ πλοῖα, οἱ δὲ
the market, — (some) indeed to the ships, — (some) indeed

οἴκαδε· ὅσοι δὲ ἐτύγχανον ὄντες ἔνδον
home; such indeed (who) happened being within (doors)

ἔδεον ἔξω, οἱ δὲ καθεῖλκον τὰς τριήρεις,
ran out, — (some) indeed hauled-down the galleys (into

ὡς σώζοιντο ἐν ταῖς τριήρεσι· οἱ δὲ πάντες
the water), that they-might-be-saved in the galleys; but all

ᾤοντο ἀπολωλέναι, ὡς τῆς πόλεως
thought (themselves) to-have-been-lost, as (believing) the town

ἑαλωκυίας. Ὁ δὲ Ἐτεόνικος ἀποφεύγει εἰς τὴν
having-been-captured. But — Eteonicus flees-away to the

ἄκραν. Ὁ Ἀναξίβιος δὲ καταδραμὼν ἐπὶ
citadel. — Anaxibius indeed running-down to (the)

θάλατταν περιέπλει εἰς τὴν ἀκρόπολιν ἐν ἁλιευ-
sea sailed-round to the citadel in (a) fish-

τικῷ πλοίῳ, καὶ εὐθὺς μεταπέμπεται ἐκ
ing boat, and immediately he-sends-for (men) from (the)

φρουρούς Καλχηδόνος· γὰρ οἱ ἐν τῇ ἀκροπόλει
garrison of-Calchedon; for — (those) in the citadel

οὐκ ἐδόκουν εἶναι ἱκανοὶ σχεῖν τοὺς ἄνδρας.
did not appear to-be sufficient to-restrain the men

Οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ ὡς εἶδον τὸν Ξενοφῶντα,
The soldiers however as they-saw — Xenophon,

προσπίπτουσιν αὐτῷ, πολλοί, καὶ λέγουσι·
rushed-up to-him, (they being) many, and said:

Νῦν ἔξεστι σοι, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, γενέσθαι ἀνδρὶ.
Now it-is-allowed you, O Xenophon, to-become (a great) man.

Ἔχεις πόλιν, ἔχεις τριήρεις, ἔχεις χρήματα,
You-have (the) city, you-have galleys, you-have money,

ἔχεις τοσούτους ἄνδρας. Νῦν, εἰ βούλοιο,
you-have such-a-great-number (of) men. Now, if you-wish

σύ ἄν τε ὀνήσαις ἡμᾶς, καὶ ἡμεῖς ποιήσαιμεν
you may not-only profit us, but-also we will-make

σὲ μέγαν. Δ' ὁ ἀπεκρίνατο· Ἀλλ'
you (a) great (man). And — (Xenophon) replied: But

τε λέγετε εὖ, καὶ ποιήσω ταῦτα· εἰ
you not-only say well, but-also I-will-do these (things); if

δὲ ἐπιθυμεῖτε τούτων, θέσθε τὰ ὅπλα
indeed you-desire these (things), place-yourselves — (under) arms

ἐν τάξει ὡς τάχιστα· βουλόμενος
(and) in order as speedily (as possible); (he) wishing

κατηρεμίσαι αὐτοὺς· καὶ τε αὐτός παρηγγύα
to-have-tranquillized them; and not-only he-himself ordered

ταῦτα, καὶ ἐκέλευε τοὺς ἄλλους
these (things), but-also he-requested the other (officers)

παρεγγυᾶν τίθεσθαι τὰ ὅπλα. Δὲ
to-order (the men) to-place-themselves — (under) arms. And

οἱ αὐτοὶ ταττόμενοι ὑφ' ἑαυτῶν, τε
— they arranging (themselves) on themselves, not-only did

οἱ ὁπλῖται ἐγένοντο εἰς ὀκτὼ ἐν
the heavy-armed-men become in (number) eight (deep) in (a)

ὀλίγῳ χρόνῳ, καὶ οἱ πελτασταὶ παραδεδραμήκεσαν
short time, and the targeteers had-ran-on-the-side

ἐπὶ τὸ ἑκάτερον κέρας. Δὲ τὸ χωρίον ἐστι
to — each wing. And the place, (which) is

οἷον κάλλιστον ἐκτάξασθαι καλούμενον
such (as is) most-beautiful to-draw-up-in-order (an army), is-called

τὸ Θράκιον, ἔρημον οἰκιῶν καὶ πεδινόν. Ἐπεὶ
the Thracian, clear of-houses and level. When

δὲ τὰ ὅπλα ἔκειτο, καὶ κατηρε-
indeed the arms lay (in place), and (the men) were-some-

μίσθησαν, Ξενοφῶν συγκαλεῖ τὴν στρατιάν, καὶ
what-tranquillized, Xenophon assembled the army, and

λέγει τάδε·
speaks thus:

Ὅτι μὲν ὀργίζεσθε, ὦ ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, καὶ
That indeed you-are-angry, O men soldiers, | and

νομίζετε, ἐξαπατώμενοι, πάσχειν δεινὰ,
think, being-deceived, to-suffer greatly, [and think, that

οὐ θαυμάζω.
you have been badly treated, in being thus deceived,] I-[1]am not [2]surprised

Δὲ ἢν χαριζώμεθα τῷ θυμῷ, καὶ τιμωρησώμεθα
But if we-gratify — (our) anger, and punish

τε Λακεδαιμονίους τοὺς παρόντας,
not-only (the) Lacedæmonians, — (those namely) being-present,

τὴς ἐξαπάτης, καὶ διαρπάσωμεν τὴν πόλιν
(for) the deceit, but-also plunder the city

οὐδὲν τὴν αἰτίαν, ἐνθυμεῖσθε ἃ ἔσται
| not the cause, [not to blame,] | consider what will-be

ἐντεῦθεν. Ἐσόμεθα
from-this [consider what will be the consequences]. We-will-be

μὲν ἀποδεδειγμένοι πολέμιοι Λακεδαιμονίοις
indeed (the) declared enemies (of the) Lacedæmonians

καὶ τοῖς συμμάχοις. Οἷος δ' ὁ πόλεμος ἂν
and — (their) allies. What indeed the war may

γένοιτο πάρεστιν δὴ εἰκάζειν, ἑωρακότας καὶ
be it-is-possible indeed to-conjecture, having-seen and

ἀναμνησθέντας τὰ νῦν ἤδη γεγενημένα.
remembered | the (things) now recently having-occurred

Γὰρ ἡμεῖς οἱ Ἀθεναῖοι
[the things that have but recently occurred]. For we — Athenians

ἤλθομεν εἰς τὸν πόλεμον τὸν πρὸς τοὺς
went into the war — (that namely) with the

Λακεδαιμονίους καὶ τοὺς συμμάχους, ἔχοντες
Lacedæmonians and — (their) allies, having

τριήρεις, τὰς μὲν ἐν θαλάττῃ, δὲ τὰς ἐν
galleys, — (some) indeed at sea, and — (some) in

τοῖς νεωρίοις, οὐκ ἐλάττους τριακοσίων,
the docks, (together) not less (than) three-hundred,

ὑπαρχόντων δὲ πολλῶν χρημάτων ἐν τῇ πόλει,
there-being also much money in the city

καὶ προσόδου οὔσης κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν τε
[Acropolis], and (the) income being yearly not-only

ἀπό τῶν ἐνδήμων καὶ ἐκ τῆς ὑπερορίας
from the home (revenues) but-also from — (our) foreign

οὐ μεῖον χιλίων ταλάντων, ἄρχοντες
(territories) not less (than) a-thousand talents, ruling

ʽἑ ἁπασῶν τῶν νήσων, καὶ τε ἔχοντες πολλας
also all the islands, and also having many

πόλεις ἐν τῇ ʾΑσίᾳ, καὶ τε πολλὰς ἄλλας ἐν τῇ
towns in — Asia, and also many others in —

Εὐρώπῃ, καὶ ἔχοντες αὐτὸ τοῦτο τὸ Βυζάντιον,
Europe, and having this very-same — Byzantium,

ὅπου ἐσμεν νῦν, κατεπολεμήθημεν
where we-are now, (yet) | we-were-wa1ied-against [the war was car-

ὡς ὑμεῖς πάντες ἐπίστασθε. Δὲ νῦν
ried on against us] as you all know. But now

δὴ ἂν οἰόμεθα τί παθεῖν, Λακεδαι-
truly ʽwe may ʽthink what (we may have) to-suffer, (the) Lacedæ-

μονίων καὶ μὲν τῶν ʾΑχαιῶν ὑπαρχόντων συμ-
monians and indeed the Achæans being ai-

μάχων, δὲ ʾΑθηναίων, καὶ ὅσοι ἦσαν τότε
lies, and (the) Athenians, and such (as) were then

σύμμαχοι ἐκείνοις, πάντων προσγεγενημένων·
allies (of) them, all having-become-joined-to (them)·

δὲ Τισσαφέρνους καὶ τῶν ἄλλων βαρβάρων ἐπὶ
and Tissaphernes (as) also the other barbarians on (the)

θλάττῃ πάντων ὄντων πολεμίων ἡμῖν, δὲ
sea (coast) all being enemies to-us, but (the)

πολεμιωτάτου αὐτοῦ τοῦ βασιλέως ἄνω·
most-inimical (being) this-same — king up (in the

ὃν ἤλθομεν ἀφαιρησό-
country); whom we-went (against for the purpose of) taking-

μενοι τε τὴν ἀρχήν καὶ ἀποκτε
away not-only — (his) rule [throne] but-also (of) kill-

νοῦτες, εἰ δυναίμεθα. Πάντων τούτων δὴ
ing (him), if we-could. All these truly

ὄντων ὁμοῦ, ἔστι τις οὕτως ἄφρων, ὅστις
being alike (against us), is-there any-one so foolish, who

οἴεται ἡμᾶς ἂν περιγενέσθαι; Μή, πρὸς
thinks (that) we might get-the-superiority? Let-ʽus not, —

θεῶν, μαινώμεθα μηδ' ἀπολώμεθα
(in the name of the) gods, ʽact-like-madmen nor perish

αἰσχρῶς, ὄντες πολέμιοι καὶ ταῖς πατρίσι, καὶ
disgracefully, being enemies both to — (our) country, and

τοῖς ἡμετέροις φίλοις αὐτῶν τε καὶ οἰκείοις.
to — our friends (*of-ourselves*) and also to (our) relations.

Γὰρ εἰσι πάντες ἐν ταῖς πόλεσι ταῖς
For they-are all in the cities — (those namely that)

στρατευσομέναις ἐφ' ἡμᾶς, καὶ δικαίως, εἰ μὲν
will-be-marching against us, and justly, if indeed

ἠθελήσαμεν κατασχεῖν οὐδεμίαν βάρβαρον πόλιν,
we-wished to-take-possession-of no barbarian city,

καὶ κρατοῦντες ταῦτα· δὲ πρώτην Ἑλληνίδα
and (we) being-superior-in-force to-these; but (the) first Greek

πόλιν εἰς ἣν ἤλθομεν, ταύτην ἐξαλαπάζομεν.
city to which we-came. that (namely) we-plundered.

Ἐγὼ μὲν τοίνυν εὔχομαι πρὶν ἐπιδεῖν ταῦτα
I indeed therefore pray (that) before I-behold such

γενόμενα ὑφ' ὑμῶν, ἐμέ γε γενέσθαι
(things) brought-to-pass by you, (that) I at-least (may) be

μυρίας ἀργυριὰς κατὰ γῆς. Καὶ συμβουλεύω ὑμῖν,
a-thousand fathoms under ground. And I-advise you,

ὄντας Ἕλληνας, πειθομένους τοῖς προεστη-
being Greeks, (that) yielding-obedience to — (those) standing-at-

κοσι τῶν Ἑλλήνων πειρᾶσθαι τυγχάνειν τῶν
the-head of-the Greeks to-endeavour to-obtain —

δικαίων. Ἐὰν δὲ μὴ δύνησθε ταῦτα,
justice. If indeed you-are not able (to obtain) this,

δεῖ ἡμᾶς ἀδικουμένους μὴ γοῦν
it-is-proper (that) you (though) wronged should not therefore

στέρεσθαι Ἑλλάδος. Καὶ νῦν δοκεῖ μοι
deprive-yourselves of-Greece. And now it-seems to-me (that)

πέμψαντας Ἀναξιβίῳ εἰπεῖν, ὅτι ἡμεῖς παρελη-
having-sent to-Anaxibius to-say, that we have-en-

λύθαμεν εἰς τὴς πόλιν ποιήσαντες οὐδὲν βίαιον, ἀλλ'
tered into the city about-committing no violence, but

ἢν μὲν δυνώμεθα εὑρίσκεσθαι τι ἀγαθὸν παρ'
if indeed we-could to-obtain something good from

ὑμῶν· δὲ εἰ μή, ἀλλὰ δηλώσοντες, ὅτι
you; but if not, yet (however) showing, that

ἐξερχόμεθα οὐκ ἐξαπατώμενοι, ἀλλὰ πειθό-
we-go-out not (as) being-deceived, but (as) obey-

μενοι.
ing (you).

Καὶ ταῦτα ἔδοξε·
| And these (things) seemed (good); [and these propositions were

καὶ πέμπουσιν Ἱερώνυμόν τε Ἠλεῖον,
adopted,] and they-sent Hieronymus — (the) Elean,

ἐροῦντα ταῦτα, καὶ Εὐρύλοχον Ἀρκάδα,
saying these (things), and-likewise Eurylochus (the) Arcadian,

καὶ Φιλήσιον Ἀχαιόν. Οἱ μὲν ᾤχοντο
and Philesius (the) Achæan. — | (They) indeed went

ἐροῦντες ταῦτα.
saying these (things) [they went carrying this message]

Δὲ τῶν στρατιωτῶν ἔτι καθημένων Κοιρα-
But the soldiers [being still [seated Cœra-

τάδης Θηβαῖος προσέρχεται, ὃς οὐ
tades (a) Theban came-up (to them), who (though) not

φεύγων περιήει τὴν Ἑλλάδα, ἀλλὰ στρατη-
(a) fugitive, went-about — Greece, but wishing-to-be-

γιῶν, καὶ ἐπαγγελλόμενος, εἴ ἤ
a-general, [and announced-himself, [and offering his services,] if either

τις πόλις ἢ ἔθνος δέοιτο στρατηγοῦ· καὶ τότε
any city or nation might-require (a) general; and then

προσελθὼν ἔλεγεν, ὅτι εἴη ἕτοιμος ἡγεῖσθαι αὐτοῖς
coming-forward he-said, that he-was prepared to-conduct them

εἰς τὸ Δέλτα καλούμενον τῆς Θράκης, ἔνθα
to the Delta, (so) called of — Thrace, where

πολλὰ καὶ ἀγαθὰ λήψοιντο· δ' ἔστε
many and good (things) might-be-obtained; and until [the

ἂν μόλωσιν, ἔφη παρέξειν καὶ σῖτα καὶ
should [arrive, he-said (that) he-would-supply both meat and

ποτά εἰς ἀφθονίαν. Οἱ στρατιῶται ἀκούουσι
drink in abundance. The soldiers listen-to

ταῦτα, καὶ ἅμα τὰ ἀπαγγελλόμενα
these (things), and at-the-same-time the (things) announced

παρὰ Ἀναξιβίου· γὰρ ἀπεκρίνατο, ὅτι πειθομένοις
from Anaxibius; for he-replied, that being-obedient

αὐτοῖς οὐ μεταμελήσει, ἀλλ' ἀπαγ-
to-him it-would not (be) repented, but (that) he-would-

γελεῖ ταῦτα τοῖς τέλεσι τε οἴκοι, καὶ
announce these (things) to-the highest-authorities — (at) home, and

αὐτὸς βουλεύσοιτο περὶ αὐτῶν ἀγαθόν,
he-himself would-consult-and-plan about them (all the) good,

ὅ τι δύναιτο. Ἐκ τούτου οἱ στρατιῶται
whatever he-might-be-able. On this the soldiers

δέχοντα τε τὸν Κοιρατάδην στρατηγὸν, καὶ
receive indeed — Cœratades (as their) general, and

ἀπῆλθον ἔξω τοῦ τείχους. Ὁ Κοιρατάδης δὲ
they-departed without the walls. — Cœratades indeed

συντίθεται αὐτοῖς παρέσεσθαι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα
agreeing with-them to-be-present at the army (the)

ὑστεραίαν, ἔχων καὶ ἱερεῖα καὶ μάντιν, καὶ
next-day, having both victims and (an) augur, and

σῖτα καὶ ποτὰ τῇ στρατιᾷ. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἐξῆλθον,
meat and drink for-the army. But when they-had-gone-out,

ὁ Ἀναξίβιος ἔκλεισε τὰς πύλας, καὶ ἐκήρυξεν
— Anaxibius shut the gates, and made-proclamation

ὃς ἂν ἁλῷ ἔνδον, ὢν τῶν στρα-
(that he) who might be-caught within (the walls), being of-the ar-

τιωτῶν, ὅτι πεπράσεται. Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ὁ Κοι-
my, that he-would-be-sold. But on-the next-day — Cœ-

ρατάδης μὲν ἦκε, ἔχων τὰ ἱερεῖα καὶ τὸν μάντιν,
ratades indeed came, having the victims and the augur,

καὶ εἴκοσιν ἄνδρες εἵποντο αὐτῷ φέροντες ἅλφιτα,
and twenty men followed him carrying barley meal,

καὶ ἄλλοι εἴκοσι οἶνον, καὶ τρεῖς
and another twenty (carrying) wine, and three (carrying loads)

ἐλαιῶν, καὶ εἷς ἀνὴρ μέγιστον φορτίον ὅσον
of olives, and one man (carrying) the-greatest load that

ἐδύνατο σκορόδων, καὶ ἄλλος κρομμύων. Δὲ
he-could of-garlic, and another of-onions. And

καταθέμενος ταῦτα, ὡς ἐπὶ δάσμευσιν,
they-having-laid-down these (things), as (if) for distribution,

ἐθύετο.
he-sacrificed.

Δὲ Ξενοφῶν μεταπεμψάμενος Κλέανδρον ἐκέ-
But Xenophon having-sent-for Cleander re-

λευεν διαπρᾶξαι ὅπως τε εἰςέλθοι
quested (him) to-obtain (permission for him) that — he-might-enter

εἰς τὸ τεῖχός, καὶ ἀποπλεύσαι ἐκ Βυζαντίου. Ὁ —
within the walls, and to-sail-away from Byzantium. —

Κλέανδρος δ' ἐλθὼν, ἔφη· Ἥκω διαπραξάμενος
Cleander indeed having-arrived, said: I-come having-obtained

μάλα μόλις· γὰρ Ἀναξίβιον λέγειν,
(permission with) great difficulty; for (that) Anaxibius says,

ὅτι εἴη οὐκ ἐπιτήδειον τοὺς στρατιώτας μὲν
that it-is not proper (that) the soldiers indeed

εἶναι πλησίον τοῦ τείχους, Ξενοφῶντα δὲ
(should) be near the walls, Xenophon also (being)

ἔνδον· δὲ τοὺς Βυζαντίους στασιάζειν καὶ
within; and (that) the Byzantians were-divided-in-factions and

εἶναι πονηροὺς ἀλλήλους· ὅμως δὲ,
(that) they-were evil-disposed to-one-another; yet-however indeed,

ἔφη, ἐκέλευεν εἰςιέναι, εἰ μέλλοις ἐκπλεῖν σὺν
he-said, he-requests (you) to-enter, if you-intend to-sail-away with

αὐτῷ. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν μὲν δὴ ἀσπασάμενος τους
him. — Xenophon indeed truly | having-embraced the

στρατιώτας ἀπῄει εἴσω τοῦ
soldiers [having taken leave of the soldiers] departed within the

τείχους σὺν Κλεάνδρῳ. Ὁ Κοιρατάδης δὲ τῇ
walls with Cleander. — Cœratades indeed on-the

μὲν πρώτῃ ἡμέρᾳ οὐκ ἐκαλλιέρει, οὐδὲ δι-
— first day had no favourable-sacrifice, neither did-

μέτρησεν οὐδὲν τοῖς στρατιώταις. Τῇ
he-distribute (*nothing*) (any thing) to-the soldiers. On-the

ὑστεραίᾳ δ' εἱστήκει παρὰ τὸν βωμόν, καὶ
next-day indeed he-stood by the altar, and

Κοιρατάδης, ἐστεφανωμένος, ὡς θύσων· δὲ Τι-
Cœratades, being-crowned, as about-sacrificing; but Ti-

μασίων ὁ Δαρδανεὺς, καὶ Νέων ὁ Ἀσιναῖος καὶ
masion the Dardanian, and Neon the Asinæan, and

Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος, ἔλεγον μὴ Κοιρα-
Cleanor the Orchomenian, said (that it was) not for-Cœra-

τάδῃ θύειν, ὡς οὐχ ἡγησόμενον τῇ στρατιᾷ,
tades to-sacrifice, as (he was) not to-be-leading the army,

εἰ μὴ δώσει τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Δὲ ὁ κελεύει
unless he-should-give the provisions. And — he-ordered (them)

διαμετρεῖσθαι. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐνέδει αὐτῷ πολλῶν,
to-be-distributed. When indeed it-was-wanting to-him many

ὥστε σῖτον γενέσθαι ἑκάστῳ τῶν στρα-
(things), so-that food should-be to-each of-the sol-

τιωτῶν ἡμέρας, ἀναλαβὼν τὰ ἱερεῖα ἀπῄει,
diers for (the) day, taking-away the victims he-departed,

καὶ ἀπειπὼν τὴν στρατηγίαν.
and renouncing the generalship.

## CHAPTER II.

Δὲ Νέων ὁ Ἀσιναῖος, καὶ Φρυνίσκος ὁ Ἀχαιὸς,
But Neon the Asinæan, and Phryniscus the Achæan,

καὶ Φιλήσιος ὁ Ἀχαιὸς, καὶ Ξανθικλῆς ὁ Ἀχαιὸς,
and Philesius the Achæan, and Xanthicles the Achæan,

καὶ Τιμασίων ὁ Δαρδανεὺς, ἐπέμενον ἐπὶ τῇ στρατιᾷ,
and Timasion the Dardanian, remained with the army,

καὶ προελθόντες εἰς κώμας τῶν Θρᾳκῶν, τὰς
and proceeding to (some) villages of-the Thracians, —

κατὰ Βυζάντιον, ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο. Καὶ
(those namely) opposite Byzantium, they-encamped. And

οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἐστασίαζον, Κλεάνωρ μὲν καὶ Φρυ-
the generals formed-parties, Cleanor indeed and Phry-

νίσκος βουλόμενοι ἄγειν πρὸς Σευθην· (γὰρ
niscus wishing to-lead (the army) to Seuthes; (for

ἔπεισε αὐτούς, καὶ τῷ
he-persuaded (and gained) them (over to his interest) and to-the (one)

μὲν ἔδωκε ἵππον, δὲ τῷ γυναῖκα·) δὲ Νέων
indeed he-gave (a) horse, but to-the (other a) woman;) and Neon

εἰς Χερρόνησον· οἰόμενος, εἰ γένοιντο ὑπὸ
to (the) Chersonesus; thinking, (that) if they-got under (the)

Λακεδαιμονίοις ἂν προεστάναι παντὸς τοῦ
Lacedæmonians (that) ²he might ¹stand-at-the-head of-all the

στρατεύματος δὲ Τιμασίων προὐθυμεῖτο διαβῆναι
army; but Timasion wanted-much to-cross

πέραν πάλιν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν, οἰόμενος ἂν
over again into — Asia, thinking (that) ²he might (thus)

κατελθεῖν οἴκαδε. Καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἐβούλοντο
¹return home. And the soldiers desired

ταῦτα. Δὲ τοῦ χρόνου διατριβομένου, πολλοὶ
this-same. But the time ¹being (thus) ²consumed, many

τῶν στρατιωτῶν, οἱ μὲν ἀποδιδόμενοι τὰ
of-the soldiers, — (some) indeed selling — (their)

ὅπλα κατὰ τοὺς χώρους, ἀπέπλεον ὡς
arms up-and-down the places, sailed-away as (well as)

ἐδύναντο· δὲ οἱ καὶ κατεμιγνύοντο εἰς
they-could; but — (others) also mingled-with (the people) in

τὰς πόλεις. Ἀναξίβιος δ' ἔχαιρε ἀκούων ταῦτα,
the towns. Anaxibius however rejoiced hearing these

τὸ στράτευμα διαφθειρόμενον·
(things), (that) the army (was about) being-broken-up (and)

γὰρ, τούτων γιγνομένων, ᾤετο μάλιστα
dispersed); for, these (things) happening, he-thought most-of-all

χαρίζεσθαι Φαρναβάζῳ.
to-gratify Pharnabazus.

Δὲ Ἀρίσταρχος διάδοχος Κλεάνδρῳ ἁρμοστὴς
But Aristarchus (the) successor of-Cleander (the) governo

Βυζαντίου συναντᾷ Ἀναξιβίῳ ἀποπλέοντι ἐκ
of-Byzantium met Anaxibius sailing-away from

Βυζαντίου ἐν Κυζίκῳ· δὲ ἐλέγετο, ὅτι καὶ Πῶλος
Byzantium at Cyzicus, and he-said, that even Polus

ναύαρχος διάδοχος ὅσον οὐ ἤδη
(the) admiral, (the) successor (of Anaxibius), | as-much-as not already

παρείη εἰς Ἑλλήσποντον.
was-present in (the) Hellespont [was expected every instant to

Καὶ Ἀναξίβιος ἐπιστέλλει μὲν τῷ
enter the Hellespont]. And Anaxibius enjoined-on — —

Ἀριστάρχῳ ἀποδόσθαι ὁπόσους ἂν εὕροι τῶν
Aristarchus to-sell as-many-as he might find of-the

στρατιωτῶν Κύρου ὑπολελειμένους ἐν Βυζαντίῳ.
army of-Cyrus remaining-behind in Byzantium.

Ὁ Κλέανδρος δὲ ἐπεπράκει οὐδένα, ἀλλὰ καὶ
— Cleander indeed had-sold none, but even

ἐθεράπευε τοὺς κάμνοντας, οἰκτείρων,
nursed-and-took-care-of — (those) being-sick, commiserating (them),

καὶ ἀναγκάζων δέχεσθαι οἰκίᾳ.
and obliging (the inhabitants) to-receive (them) in (their) houses.

Δ' Ἀρίσταρχος, ἐπεὶ ἦλθε τάχιστα, ἀπέδοτο οὐκ
But Aristarchus, when he-came speedily, sold not

ἐλάττους τετρακοσίων. Ἀναξίβιος δ' παρα-
less (than) four-hundred. Anaxibius indeed sail-

πλεύσας εἰς Πάριον πέμπει παρὰ Φαρνάβαζον
ing-along (the coast) to Parium sends to Pharnabazus

κατὰ τὰ συγκείμενα. Δ' ὁ ἐπεὶ ᾔσθετο
according-to — agreement. But — (Pharnabazus) when he-heard

Ἀρίσταρχόν τε ἥκοντα εἰς Βυζάντιον
(that) Aristarchus — had-come to Byzantium (as)

ἁρμοστήν, καὶ Ἀναξίβιον οὐκέτι ναυαρχοῦντα,
governor and Anaxibius no-longer commanded-the-fleet,

ἠμέλησε Ἀναξιβίου πρὸς Ἀρίσταρχον, δὲ διεπράττετο
he-neglected Anaxibius for Aristarchus, and practised

τὰ αὐτὰ περὶ τοῦ στρατεύματος τοῦ Κυρείου
the same (things) about the army of — Cyrus

ἅπερ καὶ πρὸς Ἀναξίβιον.
which (he had) even (done) with Anaxibius

Ἐκ τούτου ὁ Ἀναξίβιος, καλέσας Ξενοφῶντα,
On this — Anaxibius, having-called Xenophon

κελεύει πάσῃ τέχνῃ καὶ μηχανῇ πλεῦσαι
(to him), requests (him) by-every means and contrivance to-sail

ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ὡς τάχιστα, καὶ τε
to the army as speedily (as possible), and not-only

συνέχειν αὐτό καὶ συναθροίζειν τῶν διε-
to-'keep it 'together, but-also to-collect of-the dis

σπαρμένων ὡς πλείστους ἂν δύνηται,
persed (soldiers) as many (as) 'he might 'be-able

καὶ παραγαγόντα εἰς τὴν Περινθον διὰ
and having-'led (them) 'along to — Perinthus ac-

βιβάζειν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν ὅτι τάχιστα·
'transport (them) 'across into — Asia as speedily (as

καὶ δίδωσιν αὐτῷ τριακόντορον, καὶ
possible); and he-gave to-him (a) thirty-oared-galley, and (a)

ἐπιστολήν, καὶ συμπέμπει ἄνδρα, κελεύσοντα τοὺς
letter, and he-sends (a) man, requesting the

Περινθίους προπέμψαι Ξενοφῶντα τοῖς ἵπποις
Perinthians to-send-away Xenophon on — horse (back)

ὡς τάχιστα ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα. Καὶ ὁ
as speedily (as possible) to the army And —

Ξενοφῶν μὲν διαπλεύσας ἀφικνεῖται ἐπὶ τὸ
Xenophon indeed having-sailed-across arrived at the

στράτευμα· οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ ἐδέξαντο ἡδέως,
army; the soldiers also received (him) with-pleasure,

καὶ ἄσμενοι εὐθὺς εἵποντο, ὡς διαβησόμενοι
and 'they willingly immediately 'followed (him), as crossing-over

ἐκ τῆς Θρᾴκης εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν.
from — Thrace into — Asia.

Ὁ Σεύθης δὲ, ἀκούσας ἥκοντα πάλιν,
— Seuthes however, having-heard (of him) coming back, (and)

πέμψας Μηδοσάδην πρὸς αὐτὸν κατὰ θάλατταν,
having-sent Medosades to him by sea,

ἐδεῖτο ἄγειν τὴν στρατιὰν πρὸς ἑαυτόν,
he begged (him) to-bring the army to him,

ὑπισχνούμενος αὐτῷ, ὅ τι ᾤετο λέγων
promising him, whatever he-thought mentioning (it) (he

πείσειν. Δ' ὁ ἀπεκρίνατο,
might be able) to-persuade (him). But — (Xenophon) answered (him),

ὅτι εἴη οἷόν τε οὐδὲν τούτων γενέσθαι.
that it-was possible for-none of-these (things) to-happen [that

it was impossible for any thing of the kind to take place]. Καὶ ὁ
And — (he)

μὲν ἀκούσας ταῦτα ᾤχετο. Ἐπεὶ δὲ οἱ
indeed having-heard these (things) departed. When however the

Ἕλληνες ἀφίκοντο εἰς Πέρινθον, Νέων μὲν
Greeks arrived at Perinthus, Neon indeed

ἀποσπάσας, ἐστρατοπεδεύσατο
having-drawn-off (his troops) from (the rest), encamped

χωρίς, ἔχων ὡς ὀκτακοσίους ἀνθρώπους· δὲ πᾶν
apart, having about eight-hundred men; and all

τὸ ἄλλο στράτευμα ἦν ἐν τῷ αὐτῷ
the other (troops of the) army were in the same (place)

παρὰ τὸ τεῖχος τὸ Περινθίων.
under the walls — (those namely) of-Perinthus.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν μὲν ἔπραττε περὶ πλοίων,
After this Xenophon indeed was-bargaining for ships,

ὅπως ὅτι διαβαίεν τάχιστα. Ἐν
so that he-might-cross-over (as) speedily (as possible). At

τούτῳ δὲ Ἀρίσταρχος, ὁ ἁρμοστὴς ἐκ
this (time) however Aristarchus, the governor from

Βυζαντίου, ἀφικόμενος, ἔχων δύο τριήρεις, πεπεισ-
Byzantium, arriving, having two galleys, having-been-

μένος ὑπὸ Φαρναβάζου, ἀπεῖπε τε τοῖς ναυκλή-
persuaded by Pharnabazus, he-forbade indeed the masters-of-the-

ροις μὴ διάγειν, ἐλθών τε ἐπὶ τὸ
ships — to-carry-over (the Greeks), (and) having-gone also to the

στράτευμα εἶπε τοῖς στρατιώταις μὴ περαιοῦσθαι
army he-told the soldiers not to go-across

εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. Δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἔλεγεν, ὅτι Ἀναξί-
into — Asia. But — Xenophon said, that Anaxi-

βιος ἐκέλευσε καὶ ἔπεμψεν ἐμὲ ἐνθάδε πρὸς τοῦτο.
bius had-ordered (it) and sent me hither about this

Δ' Ἀρίσταρχος πάλιν ἔλεξεν· Ἀναξίβιος μὲν
But Aristarchus again said: Anaxibius indeed

νοίνυν οὐκέτι ναύαρχος, ἐγὼ δὲ ἁρμοστής
therefore no-longer (is) admiral, I indeed (am) governor

τῆδε· δὲ εἰ λήψομαι τινα ὑμῶν ἐν τῇ θαλάττῃ,
here; and if I-shall-take any of-you on the sea,

καταδύσω. Εἰπὼν ταῦτ' ᾤχετο εἰς τὸ
I-will-sink (you). Saying these (things) he-departed within the

τεῖχος. Δ' τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ μεταπέμπεται τοὺς
walls. But on-the next-day he-sent-for the

στρατηγοὺς καὶ λοχαγοὺς τοῦ στρατεύματος.
generals and captains of-the army

Δὲ ὄντων ἤδη πρὸς τᾷ τείχει, τις ἐξαγγέλλει
But being already before the walls, some-one informs

Ξενοφῶντι, ὅτι, εἰ εἴσεισι συλληφθήσεται, καὶ ἢ
Xenophon, that, if he-entered he-would-be-apprehended, and either

πείσεται τι αὐτοῦ, ἢ καὶ παραδοθήσεται
would-suffer something there, or even be-delivered up

Φαρναβάζῳ. Ὁ δὲ ἀκούσας ταῦτα,
to-Pharnabazus. — (Xenophon) however hearing these (things),

μὲν προπέμπεται τοὺς, δὲ αὐτὸς εἶπεν, ὅτι
indeed sent-on-before the (rest), but himself said, that

βούλοιτο θῦσαι τι. Καὶ ἀπελθὼν ἐθύετο,
he-wished to-sacrifice (about) something. And going-away he-sacrificed,

εἰ οἱ θεοὶ παρεῖεν αὐτῷ πειρᾶσθαι ἄγειν τὸ
if the gods permitted him to-attempt to-lead the

στράτευμα πρὸς Σεύθην. Γὰρ ἑώρα οὔτε ὂν
army to Seuthes. For he-saw (it) neither being

ἀσφαλὲς διαβαίνειν τοῦ κωλύσοντος
safe to-cross-over (into Asia), — (he) hindering (them)

ἔχοντος τριήρεις, οὔτ' ἐβούλετο ἐλθὼν ἐπὶ Χερ-
having galleys, nor did-he-wish having-gone to (the) Cher-

ρόνησον κατακλεισθῆναι, καὶ τὸ στράτευμα
sonesus to-be-shut-up (there), and the army

γενέσθαι ἐν πολλῇ σπάνει πάντων, ἔνθα μεν
to-be in great want of-every-thing, where indeed

ἀνάγκη πείθεσθαι τῷ ἁρμοστῇ ἐκεῖ,
(there would be a) necessity to-obey the governor there,

δὲ τὸ στράτευμα ἔμελλεν ἕξειν οὐδὲν τῶν
and the army would-hereafter have nothing of —

ἐπιτηδείων.
provisions.

Καὶ ὁ μὲν εἶχεν ἀμφὶ ταῦτ'·
And — (he) indeed had (himself) about these (things);

οἱ στρατηγοὶ δὲ καὶ λοχαγοὶ
[while he was thus engaged;] the generals indeed and captains

ἥκοντες παρὰ τοῦ Ἀριστάρχου ἀπήγγελλον,
coming (back) from — Aristarchus announced,

ὅτι μὲν κελεύει σφᾶς νῦν μὲν ἀπιέναι, δὲ
that he indeed requests them now indeed to-go-away, but

ἥκειν τῆς δείλης· ἔνθα καὶ ἡ ἐπιβουλή
to-come (in) the evening; whereby even — (his) design-against (them)

ἐδόκει μᾶλλον δήλη. Οὖν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐπεὶ ἐδόκει
appeared more manifest. Therefore — Xenophon when it-seemed

τὰ ἱερὰ εἶναι καλὰ αὐτῷ καὶ τῷ στρατεύματι,
(that) the victims were favourable for-him and the army,

ἰέναι ἀσφαλῶς πρὸς Σεύθην, παραλαβὼν Πολυ-
to-go safely to Seuthes, taking Poly-

κράτην τὸν Ἀθηναῖον, λοχαγόν, καὶ παρὰ τῶν
crates the Athenian, (a) captain, and from the

στρατηγῶν (πλὴν παρὰ Νέωνος) ἄνδρα ἑκάστου,
generals (except from Neon) (a) man of-each,

ᾧ ἕκαστος ἐπίστευεν, ᾤχετο τῆς νυκτὸς
in-whom each-one confided, he-departed in the night

ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα Σεύθου ἑξήκοντα στάδια.
to the army of-Seuthes (distant) sixty stadia

Δ' ἐπεὶ ἦσαν ἐγγὺς αὐτοῦ, ἐπιτυγχάνει πυροῖς
But when he-was near it, he-falls-in with-watch-fires

ἐρήμοις. Καὶ μὲν τὸ πρῶτον ᾤετο
destitute (of sentinels). And indeed at-the first he-thought (that)

τὸν Σεύθην μετακεχωρηκέναι ποι· ἐπεὶ δ'
— Seuthes had-gone-off somewhere; when indeed

ἤσθετο τε θορύβου, καὶ, τῶν περὶ Σεύθην
he-heard not-only (a) noise, but-also, — (those) about Seuthes

σημαινόντων ἀλλήλοις, κατέμαθεν ὅτι τὰ πυρὰ
making-signals to-one-another, he-understood that the fires

κεκαυμένα εἴη τῷ Σεύθῃ πρὸ τῶν νυκτοφυλάκων
had-been-kindled by — Seuthes before the night-watches

ἕνεκα τούτου, ὅπως οἱ φύλακες μὴ ὁρῷντο,
by-reason of-this, that the sentinels might not be-seen,

ὄντες ἐν τῷ σκότει, μήτε ὁπόσοι μήτε ὅπου εἶεν,
being in the — neither how-many nor where they-might-be,

προσιοντες μὴ λανθάνοιεν, ἀλλὰ
— (those) approaching might not be-concealed, but

εἶεν καταφανεῖς διὰ τὸ φῶς. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἤσθετο,
might-be conspicuous in the light. When indeed he-perceived

προπέμπει τὸν ἑρμηνέα ὃν ἐτύγχανεν ἔχων,
(this), he-sends the interpreter whom he-happened having

καὶ κελεύει εἰπεῖν Σεύθῃ, ὅτι Ξενοφῶν
(with him), and requests (him) to-tell Seuthes, that Xenophon

πάρεστι βουλόμενος συγγενέσθαι αὐτῷ. Δὲ οἱ
is-present desiring to-have-an-interview with-him. But —

ἤροντο, εἰ ὁ Ἀθηναῖος, ὁ ἀπὸ τοῦ
they-inquired, if (it was) the Athenian, the (one) from the

στρατεύματος. Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἔφη εἶναι οὗτος,
army. When indeed he-said (that) it-was he-himself,

ἀναπηδήσαντες ἐδίωκον· καὶ ὀλίγον
jumping-on (their horses) they-departed; and (a) little

ὕστερον πελτασταὶ ὅσον διακόσιοι παρῆσαν, καὶ
after targeteers as-many-as two-hundred were-present, and

παραλαβόντες Ξενοφῶντα καὶ τοὺς σὺν αὐτῷ
having-received Xenophon and — (those) with him

ἦγον πρὸς Σεύθην. Ὁ δ' ἦν ἐν
they-conducted (them) to Seuthes. — (Seuthes) indeed was in

τύρσει μάλα φυλαττόμενος, καὶ ἵπποι ἐγκεχαλι-
(a) tower well guarded, and horses having-been-

νωμένοι περὶ αὐτὴν κύκλῳ· γὰρ διὰ τὸν
already-bridled (stood) round it 'in (a) 'circle; for through —

φόβον μὲν ἐχίλου τοὺς ἵππους τὰς μὲν ἡμέρας,
fear 'he indeed 'fed the horses during-indeed-the days,

δὲ τὰς νύκτας ἐφυλάττετο, ἐγκεχαλινωμένων.
but during-the nights he-kept-guard, they-being-bridled,

Γὰρ καὶ ἐλέγετο πρόσθεν Τήρης, ὁ πρόγονος
For indeed it-was-said (that) formerly Teres, the ancestor

τούτου, ἔχων πολὺ στράτευμα ἐν τῇ
of-this (Seuthes), having (a) numerous army in —

ταύτῃ χώρᾳ, παλλοὺς ἀπολέσαι ὑπο
this (same) country, 'had many (men) 'destroyed by

τῶν τούτων ἀνδρῶν, καὶ ἀφαιρεθῆναι
— these men (of this country), and had-been-deprived-of

τὰ σκευοφόρα· δ' οὗτοι ἦσαν Θυνοί,
— (his) baggage; and these were (the) Thynians,

λεγόμενοι εἶναι πολεμικώτατοι πάντων, μάλιστα
said to-be (the) most-warlike of-all, especially

νυκτός.
by-night.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦσαν ἐγγύς, ἐκέλευσε Ξενο-
When indeed they-were near, (Seuthes) requested Xeno-

φῶντα εἰσελθεῖν ἔχοντα δύο οὓς βούλοιτο.
phon to-enter having two (with him) whom he-might-wish.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ἦσαν ἔνδον, πρώτον μὲν ἠσπάζοντο
When indeed they-were within, 'they first indeed 'embraced

ἀλλήλους, καὶ κατὰ τὸν Θρᾴκιον νόμον προὔπι-
one-another, and according-to the Thracian custom they-drank-

νον κέρατα οἴνου· (δὲ καὶ Μηδοσάδης
to-one-another (in) horns of-wine; (and also Medosades

παρῆν τῷ Σεύθῃ, ὅσπερ ἐπρέσβευε τῷ αὐτῷ
was-present with — Seuthes, who was-the-ambassador for — him

πάτοσε). Ἔπειτα δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἤρχετο λέγειν·
to-all-places). Afterwards indeed Xenophon began to-speak:

Ὦ Σεύθη, ἔπεμψας πρὸς ἐμὲ, εἰς Καλχηδόνα,
You, O Seuthes, having-sent to me, at Calchedon,

πρῶτον Μηδοσάδην τουτονί, δεόμενος
(the) first (time) Medosades this-same-one (here), entreating

μου συμπροθυμηθῆναι τὸ στράτευμα
me to-co-operate-with (you) (that) the army (might)

διαβῆναι ἐκ τῆς Ἀσίας, καὶ ὑπισχνούμενός μοι,
be-crossed-over from — Asia, and promising me,

εἰ πράξαιμι ταῦτα, ποιήσειν
if I-should-effect these (things), (that) you-would-do (something)

εὖ, ὡς Μηδοσάδης οὗτοσι ἔφη.
good (for me), as Medosades the-same (here present) said.

Εἰπὼν ταῦτα, ἐπήρετο τὸν Μηδοσάδην εἰ
Saying these (things), he-inquired-of — Medosades if

ταῦτ' εἴη ἀληθῆ. Ὁ δ' ἔφη.
these (things) were true. — He indeed said (that they were).

Οὗτος Μηδοσάδης αὖθις ἦλθε ἐπεὶ ἐγὼ διέβην
This Medosades again came (to me) when I went-over

πάλιν ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα ἐκ Παρίου, ὑπισχνούμενος,
back to the army from Parium, promising,

εἰ ἄγοίμι τὸ στράτευμα πρός σέ, τἄλλα
if I-should-lead the army to you, in-other-respects

τέ χρήσεσθαι μοι φίλῳ καὶ
you-would not-only treat me as (a) friend but-also (a)

ἀδελφῷ, καὶ τὰ χωρία παρὰ τὰ θαλάττη,
brother, and (that) the places along the sea,

ὧν σὺ κρατεῖς, ἔσεσθαι παρὰ σοῦ μοι.
of-which you are-master, would-be (a present) from you to-me.

Ἐπὶ τούτοις πάλιν ἐπήρετο τὸν Μηδοσάδην,
About these (things) he again inquired-of — Medosades,

εἰ ἔλεγε ταῦτα. Ὁ δὲ συνέφη
if he-said these (things). — He indeed agreed (that he said)

καὶ ταῦτα. Ἴθι νῦι, ἔφη, ἀφήγησαι
even these (things). Go-on now, said (Xenophon) to-relate

τούτῳ τί ἀπεκρινάμην πρῶτον ἐν Καλχηδόνι.
to-this (Seuthes) what I-answered first in Calchedon.

Ἀπεκρίνω ὅτι τὸ στράτευμα διαβήσοιτο εἰς Βυζάν-
You-answered that the army would-cross-over to Byzan-

τιον, καὶ ἕνεκα τούτου δέοι οὔτε σοὶ
tium, and on-account-of this there-would-be-need neither for-you

οὔτε ἄλλῳ τελεῖν· αὐτὸς δὲ ἔφησθα ἐπεὶ
or for-another to-pay; yourself indeed said (that) when

διαβαίης, ἀπιέναι· καὶ
you-had-crossed-over, (that) you-would-depart (from the army); and

οὕτως ἐγένετο ὥσπερ σὺ ἔλεγες. Τί γὰρ ἔλεγον,
thus it-happened as you have-said. What — (then) did-I-say,

ἔφη, ὅτε ἀφίκου κατὰ Σηλυβρίαν; Ἔφησθα
said-he, when you-came to Selybria? You-said (that)

εἶναι οὐκ οἷόν τε, ἀλλ' ἐλθόντας εἰς
it-was not possible, but (that) (the army) having-gone to

Πέρινθον διαβαίνειν εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν. Νῦν
Perinthus (was) to-cross-over into — Asia. Now

τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, καὶ ἐγὼ καὶ οὗτος Φρυ-
therefore, said — Xenophon, and I and-also this Phry-

νίσκος, εἷς τῶν στρατηγῶν, καὶ οὗτος Πολυκράτες,
niscus, one of-the generals, and this Polycrates,

εἷς τῶν λοχαγῶν, καὶ ἔξω εἰσὶν πιστότατος
one of-the captains, and without are (the) most-confidential (friends)

ἀπὸ ἑκάστῳ τῶν στρατηγῶν, πλὴν Νέωνος τοῦ
from each of-the generals, except Neon the

Λακωνικοῦ. Εἰ οὖν βούλει τὴν πρᾶξιν εἶναι
Lacedæmonian. If therefore you-wish the business to-be

πιστοτέραν, καὶ κάλεσαι ἐκείνους. Σὲ δὲ σὺ,
more-trustworthy, even call them (in . And do you,

ὦ Πολύκρατες, ἐλθὼν, εἰπέ ὅτι ἐγὼ κελεύω
O Polycrates, going, tell (them) that I request (them)

καταλιπεῖν τὰ ὅπλα· καὶ αὐτὸς καταλιπὼν
to-leave-behind — (their) arms; and you-yourself, leaving-behind

ἐκεῖ τὴν μάχαιραν εἴσιθι.
there (your) sword, come-in

Ὁ Σεύθης ἀκούσας ταῦτα εἶπεν, ὅτι ἀπι-
— Seuthes hearing these (things) said, that he-

στήσειεν οὐδενὶ Ἀθηναίων· γὰρ καὶ ὅτι
would-distrust no-one 'of (the) 'Athenians; for truly-indeed that (he)

εἰδέναι εἶεν συγγενεῖς, καὶ ἔφη νομίζειν
knew they-were relatives, and said (that) he-considered (them as)

εὔνους φίλους. Δὲ μετὰ ταῦτα ἐπεὶ εἰς-
kind friends. But after these (things) when (those) en-

ῆλθον οὓς ἔδει, Ξενοφῶν πρῶτον μὲν ἐπήρετο
tered whom he-wanted, Xenophon first indeed inquired-of

Σεύθην ὅ τι δέοιτο. χρῆσθαι τῇ στρατιᾷ.
Seuthes in-what he-might-require to-use the army.

Ὁ δὲ εἶπεν ὧδε· Μαισάδες ἦν πατήρ μοι,
— (Seuthes) indeed spoke thus: Mæsades was father to-me,

δὲ ἐκείνου ἦν ἀρχη
[and of-him was (the) government [and under his government were]

Μελανδῖται, καὶ Θυνοί, καὶ Τρανίψαι. Ἐπεὶ
(the) Melanditæ, and Thynians, and Tranipsians. Wh

τὰ πράγματα Ὀδρυσῶν ἐνόσησεν, ὁ πατὴρ
the affairs 'of (the) 'Odrysæ had-declined, — (my) father

ἐκπεσὼν οὖν ἐκ τῆς ταύτης χώρας, αὐτὸς μὲν
being-driven therefore from — these-same countries, he indeed

ἀποθνήσκει νόσῳ· δ' ἐγὼ ὀρφανὸς ἐξετράφην
died 'of (a) disease; and I (an) orphan was-brought-up

παρὰ Μηδόκῳ τῷ νῦν βασιλεῖ. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐγενόμην
under Medocus the present king. When indeed I-had-become

νεανίσκος, ἐδυνάμην οὐ ζῆν ἀποβλέπων εἰς
(a) young-man, I-could not live looking-for (support) to

ἀλλοτρίαν τράπεζαν· καὶ ἐκοθεζόμην ἐνδίφριος
another's table; and I-sat on-the-same-seat

αὐτῷ ἱκετης, δοῦναί μοι ὁπόσους ἄνδρας
with-him (a) suppliant, to-give me as-'many men 'as

εἴη δυνατὸς, ὅπως ποιοίην κακὸν, εἴ τι
he-might-be able, in-order-that I-might-do evil, if any

δυναίμην, καὶ τοὺς ἐκβαλόντας ἡμᾶς, καὶ ζῴην.
I-could, even on — (those) expelling us, and might-live

μὴ ἀποβλέπων εἰς τὴν τράπεζαν ἐκείνου ὥσπερ
not looking at the table of-him like

κύων. Ἐκ τούτου δίδωσι μοι τοὺς ἄνδρας καὶ
(a) dog. On this he-gave me the men and

τοὺς ἵππους, οὓς ὑμεῖς ὄψεσθε ἐπειδὰν γένηται
the cavalry, which you will-see after it-becomes

ἡμέρα. Καὶ ἐγὼ νῦν ζῶ, ἔχων τούτους,
day. And I now live, having these (under my command)

λῃϊζόμενος τὴν πατρῴαν χώραν ἐμαυτοῦ.
(by) depredating-on the paternal country of-myself.

Εἰ δὲ ὑμεῖς παραγένοισθε μοι, οἶμαι ἂν
If indeed you join me, I-think (that I) may

σὺν τοῖς θεοῖς ῥᾳδίως ἀπολαβεῖν
with (the assistance of) the gods easily recover

τὴν ἀρχήν. Ταῦτ' ἐστὶν ἃ ἐγὼ δέομαι
the government. These are (the things) which I want

ὑμῶν.
of-you.

Τί οὖν ἂν δύναιο, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, εἰ
What therefore might you-be-able, said — Xenophon, if

ἔλθοιμεν, διδόναι τε τῇ στρατιᾷ καὶ τοῖς
we-come, to-give not-only to-the army but-also to-the

λοχαγοῖς καὶ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς; λέξον, ἵνα οὗτοι
captains and the generals? tell-us, in-order-that these

ἀπαγγέλλωσι. Δ' ὁ ὑπέσχετο μὲν τῷ
(persons) may-announce (it). And — he-promised indeed to-the

στρατιώτῃ Κυζικηνόν, δὲ τῷ λοχαγῷ διμοιρίαν,
soldier (a) Cyzicene, and to-the captain twice-as-much,

δὲ τῷ στρατηγῷ τετραμοιρίαν, καὶ γῆν, ὁπόσην
and to-the general four-times-as-much, and land, as-much-as

ἂν βούλωνται, καὶ ζεύγη, καὶ χωρίον
they might desire, and yokes (of oxen), and (a) place

ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ τετειχισμένον. Ἐὰν δέ, ἔφη ὁ
near (the) sea having-been-fortified. If indeed, said —

Ξενοφῶν, πειρώμενοι ταῦτα μὴ δια-
Xenophon, attempting these (things) we-should not suc

πράξωμεν, ἀλλὰ ἢ τις φόβος ἀπὸ Λακε
need, but (that) there-may-be some fear about (the) Lace-

δαιμονίων, ἐάν τις βούληται ἀπιέναι παρὰ σέ,
dæmonians, if any (of us) may-wish to-depart to you,

δέξῃ εἰς τὴν σεαυτοῦ; Ὁ δ'
would-you-receive (them) into — (your) country? — He indeed

εἶπε, Καὶ γε ποιήσομαι ἀδελφούς, καὶ
said, Even I at-least will-make (them) brothers, and

ἐνδιφρίους, καὶ κοινωνοὺς ἁπάντων, ὧν ἄν
table-companions, and sharers of-all, which we may

δυνώμεθα κτᾶσθαι. Δὲ σοί, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, δώσω
be-able to-acquire. And to-you, O Xenophon, I-will-give

καὶ θυγατέρα, καὶ εἴ ἔστι τις θυγάτηρ σοὶ
even (my) daughter, and if there-is any daughter to-you

ὠνήσομαι Θρᾳκίῳ νόμῳ· καὶ δώσω
I-will-buy (her according) to (the) Thracian custom; and I-will-give

Βισάνθην οἴκησιν, ὅπερ ἐστὶ ἐμοὶ κάλλιστον
(you) Bisanthe (as a) residence, which is to-me the-most-beautiful

χωρίον τῶν ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ.
place of — (those) on (the) sea.

## CHAPTER III.

Ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα, καὶ δόντες καὶ λαβόντες
Hearing these (things), and giving and taking

δεξιὰς ἀπήλαυνον· καὶ πρὸ ἡμέρας ἐγένοντο
right-hands they-rode-off; and before day (break) they-got

ἐπὶ τῷ στρατοπέδῳ, καὶ ἕσαστοι ἀπήγγειλαν
to the camp, and each reported

τοῖς πέμψασι. Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἐγένετο ἡμέρα
to — (those) having-sent (them). And when it-was day (light)

ὁ Ἀρίσταρχος μὲν πάλιν ἐκάλει τοὺς στρατηγοὺς
— Aristarchus indeed again called-for the generals

καὶ λοχαγοὺς ὁ ἐδόξε τοῖς ἐᾶσαι μὲν τὴν
and captains; but it-seemed (best) to — (them) to-omit indeed the

ὁδὸν πρὸς Ἀρίσταρχον, δὲ συγκαλέσαι τὸ
road to Aristarchus, and to-call-together the

στράτευμα. Καὶ πάντες συνῆλθον, πλὴν οἱ
army. And all assembled, except the (soldiers)

Νέωνος· οὗτοι δὲ ἀπεῖχον ὡς δέκα στάδια
of-Neon; these indeed were-distant about ten stadia.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ συνῆλθον, Ξενοφῶν ἀναστὰς εἶπε
When indeed they-had-assembled, Xenophon rising-up spoke

τάδε· Ἄνδρες, Ἀρίσταρχος ἔχων τριήρεις κωλύει
thus: Men, Aristarchus having galleys prevents (us)

διαπλεῖν ἔνθα μὲν βουλόμεθα· ὥςτε οὐκ
to-sail (there) where indeed we-wish; so-that (it is) not

ἀσφαλὲς ἐμβαίνειν εἰς πλοῖα· δὲ οὗτος ὁ αὐτὸς
safe to-embark on vessels; but this — (same) —

κελεύει πορεύεσθαι βίᾳ διὰ τοῦ ἱεροῦ ὄρους
(man) orders (us) to-proceed by-force over the sacred mountain

εἰς Χεῤῥόνησον· ἢν δὲ, κρατήσαντες τούτου
into (the) Chersonesus; if indeed, having-overcome this

ἔλθωμεν ἐκεῖσε, φησιν οὔτε πωλήσειν
we-should-arrive there, he-says (that) he-[1]would neither [1]sell

ὑμᾶς ἔτι ὥςπερ ἐν Βυζαντίῳ, οὔτε ἔτι
you hereafter as (he did) at Byzantium, nor hereafter

ἐξαπατήσεσθαι ὑμᾶς, ἀλλὰ λήψεσθαι μισθόν,
deceive you, but (that you) shall-receive pay,

οὔτε ἔτι περιόψεσθαι, ὥςπερ νυνί
(nor) (and) hereafter he-will--take-care, that-as now you-[1]will (not)

δεομένος τῶν ἐπιτηδείων. Οὗτος μὲν
[1]be-wanting — provisions. This (Aristarchus) indeed

λέγει ταῦτα. Δὲ Σεύθης φησιν, ἂν ἴητε
says these (things). But Seuthes says, if you-go

πρὸς ἐκεῖνον, ποιήσειν ὑμᾶς εὖ.
to him, | (that) he-will-make you well [that he will bene-

Νῦν οὖν σκέψασθε, πότερον μένοντες
fit you]. Now therefore consider, whether remaining

ἐνθάδε βουλεύσεσθε τοῦτο, ἢ ἐπανελθόντες
here you-will-deliberate (about) this, or (after) having-gone-back

εἰς τὰ ἐπιτήδεια. Οὖν μὲν δοκεῖ ἔμοιγε ἐπεὶ
for provision. Therefore indeed it-seems to-me (that) since

ἐνθάδε ἔχομεν οὔτε ἀργύριον, ὥστε ἀγοράζειν,
here we-have neither money, that (we may) buy-provisions,

οὔτε ἄνευ ἀργυρίου ἐῶσι λαμβάνειν τὰ
nor, without money, will-they-allow (us) to-take —

ἐπιτήδεια, ἐπανελθόντες εἰς τὰς κώμας, ὅθεν οἱ
provisions, having-returned to the villages, where the

ἥττους ἐῶσι λαμβάνειν,
(inhabitants being) weaker (than we) will-permit (us) to-take

ἐκεῖ, ἔχοντας τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἀκούοντας
(provisions), there, having — provisions, (and) hearing

ὅ τι τις δεῖται ὑμῶν, αἱρεῖσθαι ὅ τι ἂν δοκῇ
what any-one asks of-you, to-choose what may seem

εἶναι κράτιστον ὑμῖν. Καὶ ἔφη ὅτῳ ταῦτα
to-be the-best to-you. And he-said to-whomsoever these

δοκεῖ ἀράτω τὴν χεῖρα. Ἅπαντες
(things) seem (good) let (him) hold-up — (his) hand. All

ἀνέτειναν. Ἀπιόντες τοίνυν, ἔφη, συσκευάζεσθε,
extended (them) upwards. Going-away therefore, said-he, pack up

καὶ ἐπειδάν τις παραγγέλλῃ, ἕπεσθε τῷ ἡγουμένῳ.
(your) baggage, and when any-one may-announce (it,) follow — (your) leader.

Μετὰ ταῦτα Ξενοφῶν μὲν ἡγεῖτο, δ' οἱ
After these (things) Xenophon indeed led-on, and the (soldiers) followed.

Δὲ Νέων καὶ ἄλλοι παρ' Ἀριστάρχου ἔπειθον
And Neon and others about Aristarchus persuaded (them)

ἀποτρέπεσθαι· δ' οἱ οὐχ ὑπήκουον.
to-turn-back; but — (they) would not mind (them).

Ἐπεὶ δὲ προεληλύθεσαν ὅσον τριάκοντα σταδίους, Σεύθης ἀπαντᾷ.
When indeed they-had-advanced as-much-as thirty stadia, Seuthes meets (them).

Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἰδὼν αὐτόν ἐκέλευσε προσελάσα-
And — Xenophon seeing him requested (him) to-ride-up,

ὅπως ὅτι εἴποι αὐτῷ πλείστων
so that he-might-speak to-him (while) the-greatest-number (were)

ἀκουόντων ἃ ἐδόκει συμφέρειν.
listening, (about) what might-seem to-be-for (their) advantage.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ προσῆλθε, Ξενοφῶν εἶπε· Ἡμεῖς πορευ-
When indeed he-came-forward, Xenophon said: We are-pro-

όμεθα, ὅπου τὸ στράτευμα μέλλει ἕξειν τροφήν·
ceeding, where the army will-be-about to-have food;

δ' ἐκεῖ ἀκούοντες καὶ σοῦ καὶ τοῦ
ar.d where hearing both (the propositions) of-you and — (those)

τῶν Λακωνικοῦ, αἱρησόμεθα ἃ ἂν δοκῇ εἶναι
of-the Lacedæmonians, we-shall-determine what may seem to-be

κράτιστα. Ἢν οὖν ἡγήσῃ ἡμῖν, ὅπου
the-best. If therefore you-should-conduct us, where

ἐπιτήδεια ἔστιν πλεῖστά, νομιοῦμεν
provisions are most (abundant), we-shall-consider (ourselves)

ξενίζεσθαι ὑπὸ σοῦ. Καὶ ὁ Σεύθης ἔφη·
to-be-hospitably-entertained by you. And — Seuthes said:

Ἀλλὰ οἶδα πολλὰς κώμας ἀθρόας, καὶ
But I-know (of) many villages (being) close-together, and

ἐχούσας πάντα τὰ ἐπιτήδεια, ἀπεχούσας
having all (kinds of) — provisions, being-distant

ἡμῶν ὅσον διελθόντες ἂν ἀριστῴητε
from-us as-much-as having-gone-over (to them) you may dine

ἡδέως. Ἡγοῦ τοίνυν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν. Ἐπεὶ
pleasantly. Conduct (us) therefore, said — Xenophon. When

δ' ἀφίκοντο εἰς αὐτὰς τῆς δείλης, οἱ στρα-
indeed they-arrived to them towards-the evening, the sol

τιῶται συνῆλθον, καὶ Σεύθης εἶπε τοιάδε· Ἐγὼ
diers assembled, and Seuthes spoke thus: I

ὦ ἄνδρες, δέομαι ὑμῶν στρατεύεσθαι σὺν ἐμοί,
O men, want you to-serve-as-soldiers with me,

καὶ ὑπισχνοῦμαι ὑμῖν δώσειν τοῖς στρατιώταις
and I-promise you to-give to-the soldiers a

κυζικηνόν, δὲ καὶ λοχαγοῖς στρα-
cyzicene (each month), and also to (the) captains (and) gene-

τηγοῖς τὰ νομιζόμενα· ἔξω δὲ τούτων
rals — (that) being-right-and-customary; besides indeed these

τιμήσω τὸν ἄξιον. Ἔξετε σῖτα καὶ δὲ
(things) I-will-honour the deserving. You-shall-have meat and also

ποτά ὥσπερ καὶ νῦν, λαμβάνοντες ἐκ τῆς
drink as even now, taking (them) from the

χώρας. Δ' ὁπόσα ἂν ἁλίσκηται, αὐτὸς
country. But whatever (spoils) may be-taken, I-myself

ἀξιώσω ἔχειν ἵνα διατιθέμενος ταῦτα
shall claim to-have (it) in-order-that having-disposed-of these (things)

πορίζω τὸν μισθὸν ὑμῖν. Καὶ τὰ μὲν
I (may) provide — pay for-you. And — (those) indeed

φεύγοντα καὶ ἀποδιδράσκοντα ἡμεῖς ἐσόμεθα ἱκανοὶ
fleeing and concealing-themselves we will-be able

διώκειν καὶ μαστεύειν. Ἂν δέ τις ἀνθιστῆται,
to-pursue and to-seek-out. If indeed any-one resists,

σὺν ὑμῖν πειρασόμεθα χειροῦσθαι. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν
with you we-shall-endeavour to-overcome (him). — Xenophon

ἐπήρετο· Πόσον δὲ ἀπὸ θαλάττης ἀξιώσεις
inquired: How (far) indeed from (the) sea will-you-require

τὸ στράτευμα συνέπεσθαι σοι; ὁ δ' ἀπεκρίνατο,
the army to-accompany you? — he indeed replied,

Οὐδαμῆ πλεῖον ἑπτὰ ἡμερῶν, δὲ πολλαχῆ
Never more (than) seven days' (march), but often

μεῖον.
less.

Μετὰ ταῦτα ἐδίδοτο τῷ βου-
After these (things) (permission) was-given to — (those) wish-

λομένῳ λέγειν· καὶ πολλοὶ ἔλεγον κατὰ
ing (it) to-speak; and many spoke respecting (and con-

ταὐτά, ὅτι Σεύθης λέγοι παντὸς
curring in) these (things), that Seuthes spoke (words) aV

ἄξια· γὰρ εἴη χειμών,
worthy-of-esteem (and advantageous to them); for it-was winter

καὶ οὔτε εἶη δυνατὸν τῷ βουλομένῳ τοῦτο
and neither was-it possible for — (those) desiring this

ἀποπλεῖν οἴκαδε, τε εἶη οὐχ οἷόν τε διαγενέσθαι
to-sail-away home, and it-was not possible to-stay

ἐν φιλίᾳ, εἰ δέοι ζῆν ὠνουμένους,
in (a) friendly (country), if it-might-be-necessary to-live buying

δὲ ἀσφαλέστερον διατρίβειν
(their provisions), but (it would be) safest to-remain

καὶ τρέφεσθαι ἐν τῇ πολεμίᾳ μετὰ Σεύθου,
and to-be-nourished in — (a) hostile (country) with Seuthes,

ἢ μόνους, ὄντων τοσούτων ἀγαθῶν· εἰ δὲ
than alone, there-being so-many advantages; if moreover

προσλήψοιντο μισθὸν ἐδόκει εἶναι
they-should-receive in-addition pay it-would-seem to-be (an unexpected)

εὕρημα. Ἐπὶ τούτοις Ξενοφῶν εἶπε·
good-fortune. | On these (things) Xenophon said: [Xeno-

Εἴ τις ἀντιλέγει,
phon then said:] If any-one (have anything) to-say-against (this), ¹let

λεγέτω· εἰ δὲ μή, ἐπιψηφιζέτω ταῦτα.
(him) ¹speak: if however not, ¹let (him) ¹vote-for these

Ἐπεὶ δὲ οὐδεὶς ἀντέλεγεν,
(things). When indeed no-one ¹said (anything) ¹against,

ἐπεψήφισε, καὶ ἔδοξε ταῦτα.
he-¹put (it) to-vote, | and it-seemed (that) these (things were good)

Δὲ εὐθὺς εἶπε ταῦτα
[and it was carried]. And (Xenophon) immediately told these (things)

Σεύθῃ, ὅτι συστρατεύσοιντο αὐτῷ.
to-Seuthes, (and) that they-would-fight-and-join with-him (in the expedition).

Μετὰ τοῦτο οἱ ἄλλοι μὲν ἐσκήνησαν
After this the other (soldiers) indeed encamped

κατὰ τάξεις, Σεύθης ἔχων
according-to (their) ranks-and-divisions, Seuthes (*having*) (being in)

πλησίον κώμην, ἐκάλεσε στρατηγοὺς δὲ καὶ
(a) near village, invited (the) generals and-also

λοχαγοὺς ἐπὶ δεῖπνον. Δ' ἐπεὶ ἦσαν ἐπὶ
(the) captains to supper. And when they-were at (the)

θύραις, ὡς παριόντες ἐπὶ δεῖπνον, ἦν τις Ηρα-
doors, as going to supper, there-was a-certain Hera-

κλείδης Μαρωνείτης· οὗτος προσιὼν ἑκάστῳ
clides (a) Maronean; this (person) going-to each

ἑνί, οὕστινας ᾤετο ἔχειν τι δοῦναι Σεύθῃ,
one, whom he-thought to-have any-thing to-give to-Seuthes,

πρῶτον μὲν πρὸς τινας Παριανούς, οἳ παρῆσαν
first indeed to some Parians, — (who) were-present

διαπραξόμενοι φιλίαν πρὸς Μήδοκον, τὸν βασιλέα
about-to-obtain friendship with Medocus, the king

Ὀδρυσῶν, καὶ ἄγοντες δῶρα αὐτῷ τε καὶ
of (the) Odrysia, and bringing presents to-him and-also

τῇ γυναικί, ἔλεγεν, ὅτι Μήδοκος μὲν εἴη ἄνω
to — (his) wife, he-said, that Medocus indeed was up

δώδεκα ἡμερῶν ὁδὸν ἀπὸ θαλάττης,
(in the country) twelve days' journey from (the) sea,

δὲ Σεύθης, ἐπεὶ εἴληφε τὸ τοῦτο στράτευμα,
but Seuthes, since he-has-taken — this army (into his

ἔσοιτο ἄρχων ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ. Ὢν οὖν
service), would-be master on (the) sea (coast). Being therefore

γείτων, ἔσται ἱκανώτατος ποιεῖν ὑμᾶς καὶ εὖ
neighbours, he-will-be most-able to-treat you both well

καὶ κακῶς. Ἢν οὖν σωφρονῆτε, δώσετε τούτῳ
and ill. If therefore you-are-wise, give to-this

ὅ τι ἂν αἰτῆται, καὶ διακείσεται
(Seuthes to obtain) what 'you may 'ask-for, and it-will-be-disposed-of

ἄμεινον ὑμῖν, ἢ ἐὰν δῶτε Μηδόκῳ τῷ οἰκοῦντι
better for-you, than if you-give (it) to-Medocus — dwelling

πρόσω. Οὕτως μὲν ἔπειθε τούτους. Αὖθις δὲ
far-off. Thus indeed he-persuaded them. Afterwards indeed

προσελθὼν Τιμασίωνι τῷ Δαρδανεῖ, ἐπεὶ ἤκουσεν
going-to Timasion the Dardanian, since he-had-heard

εἶναι αὐτῷ καὶ ἐκπώματα καὶ
(that there) were to-him [that he had] both cups and

βαρβαρικάς ταπίδας, ἔλεγεν ὅτι νομίζοιτο
barbaric (or Persian) carpets, he-said that it-was-customary

ὁπότε Σεύθης καλέσαιτο δεῖπνον τοὺς κλη-
whenever Seuthes invited to-supper (for) —(those) having-

θέντας δωρεῖσθαι αὐτῷ. Δ' οὗτος
been-invited to-give (presents) to-him. And this (Seuthes

ἢν γένηται μέγας ἐνθάδε, ἔσται ἱκανὸς, καὶ
if he-becomes great here, will-be able, both

καταγαγεῖν σε οἴκαδε, καὶ ποιῆσαι πλούσιον
to-have-restored you to-home, and to-make (you) rich

ἐνθάδε. Τοιαῦτα προὐμνᾶτο, προς-
here. (In) such (a manner) he-kept-suing (for Seuthes), go-

ιὼν ἑκάστῳ. Δὲ καὶ προσελθὼν Ξενο-
ing-to each (of the guests). And also advancing to-Xeno-

φῶντι ἔλεγε· Σὺ εἶ καὶ μεγίστης πόλεως,
phon he-said: You are also (from a) very-great city,

καὶ τὸ σὸν ὄνομα ἐστι μέγιστον παρὰ Σεύθῃ,
and — your name is very-great with Seuthes,

καὶ ἐν τῇδε χώρᾳ ἴσως ἀξιώσεις καὶ λαμ-
and in this country you-'will perhaps 'claim even to-re-

βάνειν τεῖχη, ὥσπερ καὶ ἄλλοι τῶν ὑμετέρων
ceive walled-places, as even others of — your

ἔλαβον, καὶ χώραν· οὖν
(countrymen) have-received, and-likewise land; (it will) therefore (be)

ἄξιον σοι τιμῆσαι Σεύθην καὶ μεγαλοπρεπέστατα.
proper for-you to-honour Seuthes even most-magnificently

Δὲ παραινῶ σοι ὢν εὔνους· γὰρ εὖ οἶδα,
And I-advise you being (your) well-wisher; for 'I well 'know

ὅτι ὅσῳ μεῖζω ἂν δωρήσῃ τούτῳ
that how-much the-greater may (be the presents) you-give him

τοσούτῳ μείξω πείσῃ ὑπὸ τούτου
so-much the-greater you-may-persuade of this (person)

ἀγαθὰ. Ξενοφῶν ἀκούων ταῦτα
(to grant you) benefits. Xenophon hearing these (things),

ἠπόρει· γὰρ δὴ διαβεβήκει ἐκ Παρίου οὐ ἔχων,
var-perplexed; for indeed he-had-come-over from Parium not having

εἰ μη παῖδα καὶ ὅσον
(any thing), | if not, [except] (a) servant and as-much-as (enough

ἐφόδιον.
money) for (the) journey.

Ἐπεὶ δὲ εἰςῆλθον ἐπὶ τὸ δεῖπνον
When indeed they-went-in to the supper (the guests consist

τὲ τῶν Θρᾳκῶν, οἱ κράτιστο
ing of) indeed the Thracians, — (those namely being) the-best

τῶν παρόντων, καὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ
(and most considerable) of — (those) present, and the generals

καὶ οἱ λοχαγοὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων, καὶ εἴ τις πρεσβεία
and the captains of-the Greeks, and if any ambassador

παρῆν ἀπὸ πόλεως, τὸ δεῖπνον μὲν ἦν
was-present from (a) town, | the supper indeed was (for them)

καθημένοις κύκλῳ·
sitting in (a) circle; [they took their supper sitting in a circle;]

ἔπειτα δὲ τρίποδες εἰςηνέχθησαν πᾶσιν
afterwards indeed tables-with-three-feet were-brought-in for-all,

οὗτοι δ' ἦσαν μεστοὶ κρεῶν νενεμημέ-
these (tables) indeed were full (of pieces of) meat heaped-

των, καὶ μεγάλοι ζυμῖται ἄρτοι ἦσαν προς-
up, and large leavened (loaves of) bread were at-

πεπερονημένοι πρὸς τοῖς κρέασι. Δ' αἱ
tached to the (pieces of) meat. And the

τράπεζαι ἀεὶ μάλιστα ἐτίθεντο κατὰ τοὺς
tables were always in-preference placed near the

ξένους· γὰρ ἦν νόμος. Καὶ Σεύθης πρῶτος
guests; for (this) was (their) custom. And Seuthes first

ἐποίει τοῦτο· ἀνελόμενος τους ἄρτους παρα-
acted thus: taking-up the (loaves of) bread lying-

κειμένους ἑαυτῷ διέκλα κατὰ μικρόν, καὶ
near him he-broke (them) into small (pieces), and

διερρίπτειν, οἷς ἐδόκει αὐτῷ· καὶ τὰ κρέα ὡς-
distributed, to-whom it-pleased him; and the meat in-like

αὐτως καταλιπών ἑαυτῷ μόνον ὅσον γεύσασθαι.
manner, leaving for-himself only as-much-as to-taste

Καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι δὲ, καθ' οὓς αἱ τράπεζαι ἔκειντο,
And the others indeed, before whom the tables were-placed,

ἐποίουν κατὰ ταὐτὰ. Δέ τις Ἀρκὰς
acted according to-this-same (manner). But a-certain Arcadian,

Ἀρύστας ὄνομα, δεινός φαγεῖν, εἶα
Arystas by-name, | terrible to-eat, [a very great eater,] |permitted

χαίρειν μὲν τὸ διαῤῥίπτειν,
(himself to say) good-by [took no care of] indeed the distributing,

δὲ λαβὼν εἰς τὴν χεῖρα ἄρτον ὅσον
but having-taken in — (his) hand (a loaf of) bread (of) as-much-as

τριχοίνικον, καὶ κρέα, θέμενος ἐπὶ τὰ
three-chœnix, and-also meat, having-placed (them) on — (his)

γόνατα, ἐδείπνει. Δὲ περιέφερον κέρατα
knees, he-ate (his) supper. And they-carried-about horns

οἴνου, καὶ πάντες ἐδέχοντο. Δ' ὁ Ἀρύστας,
of-wine, and all received (some). But — Arystas,

ἐπεὶ ὁ οἰνοχόος ἦκεν παρ' αὐτὸν φέρων τὸ κέρας,
when the cup-bearer came to him bearing the horn,

εἶπεν, ἰδὼν τὸν Ξενοφῶντα οὐκέτι δειπνοῦντα,
he-said, seeing — Xenophon no-longer supping,

δός, ἔφη, ἐκείνῳ· γὰρ ἤδη σχολάζει, δὲ ἐγὼ
give (it), said-he, to-him; for now he-is-at-leisure, but I

οὐδέπω. Σεύθης ἀκούσας τὴν φωνὴν ἠρώτα τὸν
not-yet. Seuthes nearing the voice asked the

οἰνοχόον τί λέγοι. Δὲ ὁ οἰνοχόος εἶπεν·
cup-bearer what he-might-say. And the cup-bearer told (him);

γὰρ ἠπίστατο ἑλληνίζειν. Ἐνταῦθα μὲν δὴ
for he-knew (how) to-speak-Greek. Then indeed truly

ἐγένετο γέλως.
there-was laughter.

Ἐπειδὴ δὲ ὁ πότος προὐχώρει, ἀνὴρ, Θρᾷξ,
When indeed the drinking was-going-on, (a) man, (a) Thracian,

εἰσῆλθεν ἔχων λευκὸν ἵππον· καὶ λαβὼν κέρας
entered having (a) white horse; and taking (a) horn

μεστὸν εἶπε· Προπίνω σοι, ὦ Σεύθη, καὶ
full (of wine) said· I-drink to-you, O Seuthes, and

δωροῦμαι τὸν τοῦτον ἵππον, ἐφ' οὗ καὶ διώκων
present (you) — this-same horse, on which both following

ὃν ἂν θέλῃς, αἱρήσεις, καὶ ἀποχωρῶν
whom you may wish you-will-take (him), and retreating you-will

οὐ μὴ δείσῃς τὸν πολέμιον. Ἄλλος εἰσαγαγὼν
not — fear the enemy. Another leading-in (a)

παῖδα, οὕτως προπίνων ἐδωρήσατο, καὶ
boy, in-like-manner drinking-to (him) presented (the boy), and

ἄλλος ἱμάτια τῇ γυναικί. Καὶ Τιμασίων προ-
another vestments for — (his) wife. And Timasion drink-

πίνων ἐδωρήσατο τε ἀργυρᾶν φιάλην καὶ
ing-to (him) presented not-only (a) silver cup but-also

ταπίδα ἀξίαν δέκα μνῶν. Δὲ Γνήσιππος, τις
(a) carpet worth ten minæ. But Gnesippus, a-certain

Ἀθηναῖος, ἀναστὰς εἶπεν, ὅτι ἀρχαῖος νόμος
Athenian, rising-up said, that (the) ancient custom

εἴη κάλλιστος τοὺς μὲν ἔχοντας διδόναι τῷ
was most-beautiful for — (those) indeed having to-give to-the

βασιλεῖ ἕνεκα τιμῆς, δὲ τὸν
king | by-reason-of honour, [in order to honour him,] but (that) the

βασιλέα διδόναι τοῖς δὲ μὴ ἔχουσι, ἵνα καὶ
king should-give to — (those) indeed not having, therefore even

ἐγώ, ἔφη, σοι ἔχω δωρεῖσθαι
I, said-he, (beg of) you (that) I-may-have (something) to-present

καὶ τιμᾶν. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἠπορεῖτο
and to-honour (you). — Xenophon indeed was-perplexed (to know)

ὅ τι ποιήσοι· γὰρ καὶ ἐτύγχανεν καθήμενος ὡς
what he-might-do; for even he-happened being-seated as

τιμώμενος ἐν δίφρῳ πλησιαιτάτῳ Σεύθῃ.
(one) honoured in (the) seat the-nearest to-Seuthes.

Ὁ Ἡρακλείδης δὲ ἐκέλευεν τὸν οἰνοχόον ὀρέξαι
— Heraclides indeed requests the cup-bearer to-present

τὸ κέρας αὐτῷ. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν δὲ (γὰρ ἤδη
the cup to-him. — Xenophon however (for already

ἐτύγχανεν ὑποπεπωκώς) ἀνέστη, θαῤῥα-
he-happened being-somewhat-exhilarated-by-wine) stood-up, (and) boldly

λέως δεξάμενος τὸ κέρας, καὶ εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ δὲ,
taking the horn, he also said: I indeed,

ὦ Σεύθη, δίδωμι σοι ἐμαυτὸν καὶ τοὺς τούτους
O Seuthes, give to-you myself and — these

ἐμοὺς ἑταίρους, εἶναι πιστούς φίλους, καὶ οὐδένα
my companions, to-be (your) faithful friends, and none

ἄκοντα, ἀλλὰ πάντας μᾶλλον ἔτι ἐμοῦ βου-
being-reluctant, but all more than-even myself de-

λομένους εἶναι φίλους. Καὶ νῦν πάρεισι
siring to-be (your) friends. And now they-are-present

προσαιτοῦντες οὐδέν σε, ἀλλὰ καὶ προϊέμενοι
asking-for nothing more of-you, but even giving

καὶ ἐθέλοντες πονεῖν ὑπὲρ σοῦ
(themselves) up (to you) and desiring to-labour for you

καὶ προκινδυνεύειν· μεθ' ὧν, ἂν οἱ θεοὶ
and-also to-incur-danger (for you); with whom, if the gods

θέλωσι, ἀπολήψῃ πολλὴν χώραν τὴν μὲν
will (it), you-will-retake much territory — (that) indeed

οὖσαν πατρῴαν, δὲ κτήσῃ τὴν· δὲ
being paternal, but-also you-will-acquire — (other territory); also

κτήσῃ πολλοὺς ἵππους δὲ ἄνδρας, καὶ καλὰς
you-will-acquire many horses and men, and handsome

γυναῖκας, οὓς οὐ δεήσει λῃΐζεσθαι, ἀλλ
women, whom it-will not be-necessary to-take-by-force, but

αὐτοὶ παρέσονται φέροντες δῶρα πρὸς σε.
they-themselves will-be-present bringing gifts for you.

Ὁ Σεύθης ἀναστὰς συνεξέπιε
Seuthes standing-up drank-out-of (the same horn) with (him)

καὶ μετὰ τοῦτο συγκατεσκεδάσατο
and after this with (him) poured out (on himself)

τὸ κέρας. Μετὰ ταῦτα
(the contents of) the horn. After these (things) (persons)

εἰσῆλθον αὐλοῦντες τε κέρασι, οἷοις σημαίνουν-
entered playing not-only on-horns, such-as they-make-signals-

σιν, καὶ σάλπιγξιν ὠμοβοίναις, σαλπίζοντες τε
with, but-also on-trumpets made-of-raw-hides, blowing not-only

ῥυθμούς καὶ οἷον μαγάδι. Καὶ Σεύθης αὐτὸς
regular-tunes but-also as-if 'on (the) 'megadis. And Seuthes himself

ἀναστὰς τε ἀνέκραγε πολεμικόν, καὶ
standing-up not-only shouted (a) warlike (cry), but-also

ἐξήλατο μάλα ἐλαφρῶς, ὥσπερ φυλαττόμενος
leaped-away very nimbly, as-if guarding-against (a)

βέλος. Δὲ καὶ γελωτοποιοί εἰσήεσαν.
missile. And also buffoons entered.

Ὡς δ' ἥλιος ἦν ἐπὶ δυσμαῖς, οἱ Ἕλληνες
As indeed (the) sun was about setting, the Greeks

ἀνεστησαν, καὶ εἶπον, ὅτι ὥρα καθιστάναι
stood-up, and said, that (it was) time to-place (the)

νυκτοφύλακας, καὶ παραδιδόναι σύνθημα. Καὶ
night-sentinels, and to-give-out (the) watch-word. And

ἐκέλευον Σεύθην παραγγεῖλαι, ὅπως μηδεὶς τῶν
they-requested Seuthes to-announce, that no-one of-the

Θρᾳκῶν εἴσεισι εἰς τὰ Ἑλληνικὰ στρατόπεδα
Thracians should-enter into the Greek camp.

νυκτός· γὰρ τε οἱ πολέμιοι ὑμῖν Θρᾷκες, καὶ
by-night; for not-only the enemies to-you (are) Thracians, but-also

οἱ φίλοι ἡμῖν. Ὡς δ' ἐξήεσαν, ὁ Σεύθης
the friends to-us. As indeed they-went-out, — Seuthes

συνανέστη οὐδὲν ἔτι ἐοικώς μεθύοντι.
stood-up-with (them) not as-yet like (a man) being-intoxicated.

Δ' ἐξελθὼν, ἀποκαλέσας τοὺς στρατηγοὺς αὐτούς,
And going-out, having-called-back the generals (by) themselves,

εἶπεν· Ὦ ἄνδρες, οἱ πολέμιοι ἡμῶν οὐκ ἴσασί
he-said: O men, the enemies of-us 'do not 'know

πω τὴν ὑμετέραν συμμαχίαν· ἢν οὖν ἔλωμεν
as-yet — (of) our alliance; if therefore we-should-go

ἐπ' αὐτούς, πρὶν φυλάξασθαι, ὥστε
against them, before (that) they-were-'on (their) 'guard, so-as

μὴ ληφθῆναι, ἢ παρασκευάσασθαι, ὥστε
not to-be-taken, or prepared (for defence), thus

ἀμύνασθαι ἂν λάβοιμεν μάλιστα καὶ
to-arrange-ourselves (if) 'we may 'have-taken the-most both (of

ἀνθρώπους καὶ χρήματα. Οἱ στρατηγοὶ συνεπήνουν
men and things. The generals assented-to

ταῦτα, καί ἐκέλευον ἡγεῖσθαι. Δ' ὁ εἶπε·
these (things), and requested (him) to-lead-on. But — said-he:

Παρασκευασάμενοι ἀναμένετε· ἐγὼ δὲ ὁπόταν
Having-prepared-yourselves wait-for (me); I indeed when

καιρὸς ᾖ ἥξω πρὸς ὑμᾶς, καὶ ἀναλαβὼν
(the) proper-time may-be will-come to you, and taking

τοὺς πελταστὰς καὶ ὑμᾶς ἡγήσομαι σὺν
the targeteers and you I-will-lead (you) with (the assist-

τοῖς θεοῖς. Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν εἶπε·
ance of) the gods. And — Xenophon said· (We ought)

Σκέψαι τοίνυν, εἴπερ πορευσόμεθα νυκτός, εἰ
to-consider therefore, if-indeed we-are-to-proceed by-night, whether

ὁ Ἑλληνικὸς νόμος ἔχει κάλλιον·
the Grecian custom | has (itself) more-beautifully; [is the best;]

γὰρ μὲν ἐν ταῖς πορείαις μεθ' ἡμέραν, τοῦ
for indeed on the march during (the) day, (that part) of-the

στρατεύματος, ὁποῖον ἂν ἀεὶ συμφέρῃ πρὸς τὴν
army, whichever may always be-best-suited to the

χώραν, ἡγεῖται, εἴτε ὁπλιτικὸν, ἐάν τε πελ-
place, leads, it-may-be heavy-armed-men, —— (or) tar-

ταστικόν, ἐάν τε ἱππικόν· δὲ νύκτωρ νόμος
geteers, —— (or) cavalry; but by-night (the) custom

ἐστι τοῖς Ἕλλησιν τὸ βραδύτατον ἡγεῖσθαι.
is for-the Greeks (for) the slowest (troops) to-lead-the-way.

Γὰρ οὕτω τὰ στρατεύματα ἥκιστα διασπᾶται,
For thus the army will-be least dispersed,

καὶ ἥκιστα ἀποδιδράσκοντες λανθάνουσιν
and there-will-be the-least straggling unperceived

ἀλλήλους· δὲ οἱ διασπασθέντες πολλάκις καὶ
from-one-another; but — (those) having-been-dispersed often both

περιπίπτουσιν ἀλλήλοις, καὶ ἀγνοοῦντες ποιοῦσι
fall-foul-of one-another, and not-knowing (it) they-do

καὶ πάσχουσι κακῶς. Οὖν Σεύθης εἶπεν· Τε
and suffer ill. Therefore Seuthes said: 'You indeed

λέγετε ὀρθῶς, καὶ ἐγὼ πείσομαι τῷ νόμῳ τῷ
say what-is-right, and I will-conform to-the custom —

ὑμετέρῳ. Καὶ δώσω ὑμῖν μὲν ἡγεμόνας τῶι
(namely) to-yours. And I-will-give you indeed guides of-the

πρεσβυτάτων τοὺς ἐμπειροτάτους τῆς
oldest-men — (those namely) best-acquainted with-the

χώρας, δ' αὐτὸς ἐφέψομαι ἔχων τοὺς ἵππους
country, but I-myself will-follow having the cavalry

τελευταῖος· ἂν δέῃ γὰρ ταχὺ
last (in the rear); if required I-will-'be however speedily

παρέσομαι πρῶτος. Δ' εἶπον σύνθημα
'present first (in front). And they-said (the) watch-word

Ἀθηναίαν, κατὰ τὴν συγγένειαν. Εἰπόντες
(was) Minerva, on-account-of — (their) relationship. Having-said

ταῦτ' ἀνεπαύοντο.
these (things) they-went-to-sleep.

Ἡνίκα δ' ἦν ἀμφὶ μέσας νύκτας Σεύθης
When indeed it-was about mid night Seuthes

παρῆν ἔχων τοὺς ἱππέας τεθωρακισμένους, καὶ
was-present having the cavalry clad-in-corslets, and

τοὺς πελταστὰς σύν τοῖς ὅπλοις. Καὶ ἐπεὶ
the targeteers with — (their) arms. And when

παρέδωκε τοὺς ἡγεμόνας, οἱ ὁπλῖται μὲν
he-had-delivered the guides, the heavy-armed-men indeed

ἡγοῦντο, δ' οἱ πελτασταὶ εἵποντο, δ' οἱ ἱππεῖς
took-the-lead, and the targeteers followed, and the cavalry

ὠπισθοφυλάκουν. Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦν ἡμέρα, ὁ Σεύθης
brought-up-the-rear. When indeed it-was day, — Seuthes

παρήλαυνεν εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν, καὶ ἐπῄνεσε τὸν
rode-up to the front, and praised the

Ἑλληνικὸν νόμον πολλάκις, γὰρ ἔφη αὐτός
Greek custom much, for he-said he-himself

νύκτωρ, καὶ πορευόμενος σὺν ὀλίγους,
at-night, even proceeding with (but) few (men),

ἀποσπασθῆναι σὺν τοῖς ἵπποις ἀπὸ τῶν πεζῶν.
to-have-been-separated with the cavalry from the infantry

Δὲ νῦν ὥσπερ δεῖ, πάντες φαινόμεθα ἅμα
But now as it-ought-to-be 'we all 'appear at-the-same-time

τῇ ἡμέρᾳ ἀθρόοι. Ἀλλὰ ὑμεῖς μὲν
with-the (break of) day collected-in-a-body. But 'do you indeed

περιμένετε αὐτοῦ, καὶ ἀναπαύεσθε, ἐγὼ δὲ
'remain here, and rest-yourselves, I however

σκεψάμενός τι ἥξω. Εἰπὼν ταῦτ'
having-r connoitred somewhat will-return. Having said these (things)

ἤλαυνε δι' ὄρους λαβών τινα ὁδόν. Δ' ἐπεὶ
he-rode over (a) mountain taking a-certain road But when

ἀφίκετο εἰς πολλὴν χιόνα, ἐσκέψατο εἰ εἴη
he-had-come to much snow, he-examined if there-might-be

ἴχνη ἀνθρώπων ἢ ἡγούμενα πρόσω ἢ
foot-steps of-men (and) whether leading forward or (the)

ἐναντία. Δ' ἐπεὶ ἑώρα τὴν ὁδὸν ἀτριβῆ,
contrary (way.) But when he-perceived the road untrodden,

ταχὺ ἦκε πάλιν καὶ ἔλεγεν· Ἄνδρες, ἔσται
he speedily 'came back and said: Men, it-will-be

καλῶς, ἢν θεὸς θέλῃ· γὰρ λήσομεν ἐπιπεσόντες
well, if god (so) wishes, | for we-shall-concealing be-attacking

τοὺς ἀνθρώπους. Ἀλλ'
the men [for we shall fall upon the men unawares]. But

ἐγὼ μὲν ἡγήσομαι τοῖς ἵπποις, ὅπως, ἄν ἴδωμεν
I indeed will-lead with-the cavalry, so-that, if we-may-see

τινα μὴ διαφυγὼν σημήνῃ τοῖς πολεμίοις·
any-one he-'may not fleeing-away 'give-notice to-the enemy;

δ' ὑμεῖς ἕπεσθε· κἂν λειφθῆτε, ἕπεσθε
but 'do you 'follow; and-if you-are-left (behind), follow

τῷ στίβῳ τῶν ἵππων. Δὲ ὑπερβάντες τὰ
the tracks of-the horses. And having-crossed-over — (those)

ὄρη ἥξομεν εἰς πολλάς τε καὶ εὐδαίμονας
mountains we-shall-come to many and also rich

κώμας.
villages.

Δ' ἡνίκα ἦν μέσον ἡμέρας, τε ἤδη ἦν ἐπὶ
And when it-was mid day, and already he-was on

τοῖς ἄκροις, καὶ κατιδὼν τὰς κώμας, ἦκεν ἐλαύνων
the heights, and seeing the villages, he-came riding

πρὸς τοὺς ὁπλίτας καὶ ἔλεγεν· Ἤδη μὲν
to the heavy-armed-men and said: I-'will' now indeed

ἀφήσω τοὺς ἱππέας καταδεῖν εἰς τὸ πεδίον, δὲ
'send-off the cavalry to-run-down to the plain, and

τοὺς πελταστὰς ἐπὶ τὰς κώμας. Ἀλλ' ἕπεσθε
the targeteers to the villages. But follow

ὡς τάχιστα δύνησθε, ὅπως ἐάν τις ὑφιστῆται
as speedily (as) you-can, so-that if any-one withstand

ἀλέξησθε. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἀκούσας ταῦτα
(them) you-may-help (them). — Xenophon having-heard these

κατέβη ἀπὸ τοῦ ἵππου. Καὶ ὃς
(things) dismounted from — (his) horse. And — (Seuthes)

ἤρετο· Τί καταβαίνεις, ἐπεὶ δεῖ σπεύδειν;
inquired: Why do-you-dismount, when it-is-necessary to-hasten?

Οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι οὐ δέῃ ἐμοῦ μόνου·
I-know, said (Xenophon), that you-'do not 'want me alone,

δ' οἱ ὁπλῖται δραμοῦνται θᾶττον καὶ ἥδιον,
and the heavy-armed-men will-hasten-on more-quickly and agreeably,

ἐὰν ἐγὼ καὶ ἡγῶμαι πεζός. Μετὰ ταῦτα
if I even lead (them) on-foot. After these (things)

ᾤχετο, καὶ Τιμασίων μετ' αὐτοῦ ἔχων ὡς
(Seuthes) departed, and Timasion with him having about

τετταράκοντα ἱππέας τῶν Ἑλλήνων· Ξενοφῶν δὲ
forty horsemen of-the Greeks; Xenophon also

παρηγγυησε τοὺς εὐζώνους ἀπὸ τῶν λόχων εἰς
ordered the active (men) from the companies about

τριάκοντα ἔτη παριέναι. Καὶ αὐτὸς
thirty (years of) age to-proceed-forward. And he

ἐτρόχαζε ἔχων τούτους. Δὲ Κλεάνωρ ἡγεῖτο
ran-on having these (men). And Cleanor led

τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων. Ἐπεὶ θ' ἦσαν ἐν ταῖς
the other Greeks. When indeed they-were in the

κώμαις, Σεύθης, ἔχων ὅσον τριάκοντα ἱππέας,
villages, Seuthes, having about thirty horsemen

προσελάσας εἶπε· Τάδε δή, ὦ Ξενοφῶν, ἃ
having-ridden-up said: The (things) indeed, O Xenophon, which

σὺ ἔλεγες· οἱ ἄνθρωποι ἔχονται
you told (us) (are taking place): the men are-held

ἀλλὰ γὰρ οἱ μοι ἱππεῖς οἴχονται ἔρημοι
captives); but however — my cavalry are-gone-off destitute

διώκων ἄλλος ἄλλῃ·
(of a leader) pursuing (the enemy) | other in-another; [some one way,

καὶ δέδοικα μὴ οἱ πολέμιοι συστάντες
some another;] and I-have-feared lest the enemy assembling

που ἀθρόοι ἐργάσωνται τι κακόν· καὶ
somewhere collected-in-a-body may-do (us) some injury; and

δὲ δεῖ τινᾶς ἡμῶν καταμένειν ἐν ταῖς
also it-is-necessary (that) some of-us should-remain in the

κώμαις· γὰρ εἰσιν μεσταὶ ἀνθρώπων. Ἀλλ' ἐγὼ
villages, for they-are full of-people. But I

μέν, ἔφη ὁ Ξενοφῶν, σὺν οἷς ἔχω
indeed, said — Xenophon, with (those) whom I-have (with me)

καταλήψομαι τὰ ἄκρα· δὲ σὺ κέλευε Κλεάνορα
will-take-possession-of the heights; and 'do you 'order Cleanor

παρατεῖναι τὴν φάλαγγα διὰ τοῦ πεδίου παρὰ
to-stretch — (his) line through the plain by

τὰς κώμας. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἐποίησαν ταῦτα, συνη-
the villages. When indeed they-had-done these (things), there-

λίσθησαν μὲν ὡς χίλια ἀνδράποδα, δὲ δις-
were-collected-together indeed about a-thousand slaves, and two-

χίλιοι βόες, ἄλλα καὶ μύρια πρόβατα. Τότε μὲν
thousand oxen, but also ten-thousand sheep. Then indeed

δὴ ηὐλίσθησαν αὐτοῦ.
— they-'quartered there 'for-the-night.

## CHAPTER IV.

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ὁ Σεύθης παντελῶς κατα-
But on-the next-day — Seuthes having entirely burned-

καύσας τὰς κώμας, καὶ λιπὼν οὐδεμίαν οἰκίαν,
down the villages, and leaving not (a) house,

ὅπως ἐνδείη φόβον καὶ τοῖς ἄλλοις,
in-order-that he-might-strike fear into even the rest, (when

οἷα πείσονται ἂν μὴ πείθωνται,
they saw) what they-would-suffer if they-did not submit,

ἀπῄει πάλιν. Καὶ ἀπέπεμψε μὲν Ἡρακλείδην
ne-departed back. And he-sent indeed Heraclides

διατίθεσθαι μὲν τὴν λείαν εἰς Πέρινθον, ὅπως
to-sell indeed the booty at Perinthus, that

μισθὸς ἂν γένηται τοῖς στρατιώταις· δὲ αὐτὸς
pay might be-got for-the soldiers; but he

καὶ οἱ Ἕλληνες ἐστρατοπεδεύοντο ἀνὰ τὸ πεδίον
and the Greeks encamped on the plain

Θυνῶν, οἱ ἐκλιπόντες ἔφευγον εἰς
of (the) Thynians, — (who) deserting (their houses) fled to

τὰ ὄρη. Ἦν δὲ πολλὴ χιών, καὶ οὕτως
the mountains. There-was indeed much snow, and such

ψῦχος, ὥστε τὸ ὕδωρ ὃ ἐφέροντο ἐπὶ δεῖπνον
cold, that the water which they-brought-in for supper

ἐπήγνυτο, καὶ ὁ οἶνος, ὁ ἐν τοῖς ἀγγεί-
was-frozen, and-also the wine, — (that namely) in the ves-

οις, καὶ ῥῖνες καὶ ὦτα πολλῶν τῶν Ἑλλήνων
sels, likewise (the) noses and ears of-many of-the Greeks

ἀπεκαίουντο. Καὶ τότε ἐγένετο δῆλον
were-burnt-off [were frozen off]. And thus it-becomes evident

οὗ ἕνεκα οἱ Θρᾷκες φοροῦσι τὰς ἀλωπεκίδας
why the Thracians wear — (their) fox (skin caps)

ἐπὶ ταῖς κεφαλαῖς καὶ τοῖς ὠσί, καὶ
on — (their) heads and — (their) ears, and have

χιτωνας οὐ μόνον περὶ τοῖς στέρνοις, ἀλλὰ
coats (extending) not only about the breasts, but

καὶ περὶ τοῖς μηροῖς, καὶ ἐπὶ τῶν ἵππων
also about the thighs, and (why) on — horse (back)

ἔχουσιν ζειρὰς μέχρι τῶν ποδῶν, ἀλλ'
they-have wide-upper-garments (reaching) just-to the feet, but

ὐ χλαμύδας. Ὁ Σεύθης ἀφιεὶς δὲ τῶν
not (having cloaks. — Seuthes letting-go indeed (some) of-the

αἰχμαλώτων εἰς τὰ ὄρη ἔλεγεν, ὅτι εἰ μὴ
captives to the mountains he-said, that unless

καταβήσονται καὶ πείσονται, ὅτι κατακαύσει καὶ
they-should-come-down and obey, that he-would-burn-down both

τὰς κώμας τούτων, καὶ τὸν σῖτον, καὶ ἀπολοῦνται
the villages of-themselves, and the corn, and they-would-perish

τῷ λιμῷ. Ἐκ τούτου καὶ γυναῖκες καὶ παῖδες
of — hunger. On this both women and children

καὶ οἱ πρεσβύτεροι κατέβαινον. Δὲ οἱ νεώτεροι
and-also the old-men descended. But the younger

ηὐλίζοντο ἐν ταῖς κώμαις ὑπο τὸ ὄρος.
(persons) quartered in the villages under the mountain.

Καὶ ὁ Σεύθης καταμαθὼν ἐκέλευσε τὸν Ξενο-
And — Seuthes being-informed (of this) requested — Xeno-

φῶντα λαβόντα τοὺς νεωτάτους τῶν ὁπλιτῶν
phon taking the youngest of-the heavy-armed-men

συνεπισπέσθαι. Καὶ ἀναστάντες τῆς νυκτός
to-follow-with (him). And having-risen-up at — night

ἅμα τῇ ἡμέρᾳ παρῆσαν εἰς τὰς κώμας.
together with-the (break of) day they-were-present at the villages

Καὶ μέν οἱ πλεῖστοι ἐξέφυγον· (γὰρ τὸ ὄρος
And indeed the most (of them) fled-away; (for the mountain

ἦν πλησίον·) δὲ ὅσους Σεύθης ἔλαβε κατηκόντισεν
was near;) but as-many-as Seuthes took he-speared

ἀφειδῶς.
without-mercy.

Δ' ἦν τις Ἐπισθένης, Ὀλύνθιος, παιδε-
And there-was a-certain Episthines, (an) Olynthian, (a) lover

ραστής, ὃς ἰδὼν καλὸν παῖδα ἄρτι ἡβάσκοντα,
of-boys, who seeing (a) handsome youth just arrived-at-the-age-of

ἔχοντα πέλτην, μέλλοντα ἀποθνήσκειν,
puberty, having (a) shield, about-being put-to-death,

προσδραμὼν Ξενοφῶντα ἱκέτευσε βοηθῆσαι
having-run-to Xenophon he-supplicated (him) to-succor (the)

καλῷ παιδί. Καὶ ὃς προσελθὼν τῷ Σεύθῃ,
handsome boy. And who going-up to Seuthes,

δεῖται μὴ ἀποκτεῖναι τὸν παῖδα· καὶ διηγεῖτα
requests (him) not to-kill the boy; and relates

τὸν τρόπον τοῦ Ἐπισθένους, καὶ ὅτι ποτὲ
the character of — Episthenes, and that once

συνελέξατο λόχον σκοπῶν οὐδὲν
he-collected (a) company (of soldiers) looking-to nothing (else)

ἢ εἴ τινες εἶεν καλοί, καὶ μετὰ τούτων
(or if) (but that) such might-be handsome, and with these

ἦν ἀγαθός ἀνήρ. Δὲ ὁ Σεύθης ἤρετο Καὶ ἦ
he-was (a) brave man. But — Seuthes inquired: And —

ἂν θέλοις, ὦ Ἐπίσθενες ἀποθανεῖν ὑπερ
would you-be-willing, O Episthenes to-die for

τούτου; Δ' ὁ ἀνατείνας τὸν
this (youth)? But — (Episthenes) having-stretched-out — (his)

τράχηλον εἶπε Παῖε, ἔφη, εἰ ὁ παῖς κελεύει,
neck said: Strike, said-he, if the boy requires (it).

καὶ μέλλει εἰδέναι χάριν. Ὁ Σεύθης ἐπήρετο
and hereafter-will consider (it as a) favour. — Seuthes inquired-of

τὸν παῖδα, εἰ παίσειεν αὐτον ἀντ' ἐκείνου.
the youth, if he-should-strike him [Episthenes] in-place-of himself.

Ὁ παῖς οὐκ εἴα, ἀλλ' ἱκέτευε κατα-
The youth would not permit (this), but requested (him) to-

καίνειν μηδέτερον Ἐνταῦθα ὁ Ἐπισθένης, περι-
kill neither. Then — Episthenes, having-

λαβὼν τὸν παῖδα, εἶπε· Ὥρα σοι, ὦ Σεύθη,
embraced the youth, said: (It is) time for-you, O Seuthes,

διαμάχεσθαι μοι περὶ τοῦδε· γὰρ οὐ
to-fight with-me for this (youth); for I will not

μεθήσω τὸν παῖδα. Ὁ Σεύθης δὲ γελῶν, εἶα μέν
give-up the boy. — Seuthes then laughing, 'let indeed

ταῦτα. Ἔδοξε
these (things) 'alone (and the boy's life was spared). It-seemed (best)

δὲ αὐτῷ αὐλισθῆναι αὐτοῦ, ἵνα οἱ ἐπὶ
indeed to-him to-encamp there, in-order-that — (those) on

τοῦ ὄρους μὴ τρέφοιντο ἐκ τούτων τῶν κωμῶν.
the mountain 'might not 'be-nourished from these — villages.

Καὶ αὐτὸς μὲν ὑποκαταβὰς ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ
And he indeed having-gone-down-lower in the plain

ἐσκήνον. Δὲ ὁ Ξενοφῶν, ἔχων τοὺς ἐπιλέκτους,
encamped. But — Xenophon, having the select-body-of-men,

ἀνωτάτω ἐν τῇ κώμῃ ὑπὸ τὸ ὄρος, καὶ
(quartered) higher-up in the village under the mountain, and

οἱ ἄλλοι Ἕλληνες κατεσκήνησαν πλησίον ἐν
the other Greeks encamped near-by among

τοῖς καλουμένοις τοῖς ὀρεινοῖς Θρᾳξί.
— (those) called the mountain Thracians.

Ἐκ τούτου οὐ πολλαὶ ἡμέραι διετρίβοντο, καὶ οἱ
After this not many days had-passed, and the

Θρᾷκες ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους, καταβαίνοντες πρὸς τὸν
Thracians from the mountain, coming-down to —

Σεύθην, διεπράττοντο περὶ σπονδῶν καὶ ὁμήρων.
Seuthes, negotiated about (a) treaty and hostages.

Καὶ ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐλθὼν τῷ Σεύθῃ ἔλεγε, ὅτι
And — Xenophon going to Seuthes said, that

σκηνῷεν ἐν πονηροῖς τόποις, καὶ οἱ πολέμιοι
they-were-encamped on dangerous places, and (that) the enemy

εἶεν πλησίον· τ' ἔφη ἂν ἥδιων αὐλίζεσ-
were near; 'he also 'said 'it would 'be-more-agreeable to-en-

θαι ἔξω ἐν ἐχυροῖς χωρίοις μᾶλλον ἢ ἐν τοῖς
camp without in strong places rather than in —

στεγνοῖς, ὥστε ἀπολέσθαι. Δὲ ὁ
covered (places as houses), so-as to-perish. But — (Seuthes)

ἐκέλευε θαῤῥεῖν, καὶ ἔδειξεν ὁμήρους πα-
requested (him) to-be-confident, and showed (the) hostages | being

ρόντας αὐτῷ. Δὲ καὶ τινες τῶν
present with-him [in his possession]. And also some of — (those)

ἐκ τοῦ ὄρους καταβείνοντες ἐδέοντο τοῦ Ξενο-
from the mountain coming-down begged — Xeno-

φῶντος συμπαρᾶξαί σφισι τὰς σπονδάς.
phon to-assist them (to obtain) — (a) truce.

Ὁ δ' ὡμολόγει, καὶ ἐλέλευε θαῤ-
— (Xenophon) indeed consented, and requested (them) to-be-in-

ῥεῖν, καὶ ἠγγυᾶτο αὐτοὺς πείσεσθαι μηδὲν
good-spirits, and assured (them that) they should-suffer no

κακὸν πειθομένους Σεύθῃ. Δὲ οἱ ἄρα ἔλεγον ταῦτ'
evil being-obedient to-Seuthes. But — therefore they-said these

ἕνεκα κατασκοπῆς.
(things) for-the-purpose (of) spying-out (the condition of the Grecians).

Ταῦτα μὲν ἐγένετο τῆς ἡμέρας, δὲ εἰς
These (things) indeed happened during-the day, but on

τὴν ἐπιοῦσαν νύκτα οἱ Θυνοί ἐλθόντες ἐκ τοῦ
the following night the Thynians coming from the

ὄρους ἐπιτίθενται. Καὶ ὁ δεσπότης ἑκάστης
mountain attacked (them). And the master of-each

τῆς οἰκίας ἦν μὲν ἡγεμών· γὰρ ἦν χα-
— house was indeed (a) leader; for it-would-have-been dif-

λεπὸν ἄλλως ἀνευρίσκειν τὰς οἰκίας ὄντας
cult otherwise to-find-out the houses being (in the)

σκότους ἐν ταῖς κώμαις· γὰρ καὶ αἱ οἰκίαι
dark in the villages; for even the houses

περιεσταύρωντο κύκλῳ μεγάλοις σταυροῖς ἕνεκα
were-palisaded in (a) circle with-large palisades on-account-of

τῶν προβάτων. Δ' ἐπεὶ ἐγένοντο κατὰ θύρας
the cattle. And when they-got near (the) doors

ἑκάστου τοῦ οἰκήματος, οἱ μὲν εἰςηκόντιζον,
of-each — dwelling, — (some) indeed threw-spears-in,

οἱ δὲ ἔβαλλον τοῖς σκυτάλοις, ἃ
— (others) indeed threw with — (their) clubs, which

ἔφασαν ἔχειν ὡς ἀποκόψοντες τὰς λόγχας
they-were-said to-have as (for) knocking-off the sharp-iron-heads

τῶν δοράτων, δ' οἱ ἐνεπίμπρασαν,
of — spears, and — (others) set-fire-to (the buildings.

καὶ καλοῦντες Ξενοφῶντα ὀνομαστὶ ἐκέλευον
and calling-on Xenophon by-name bade (him)

ἐξιόντα ἀποδνήσκειν, ἢ ἔφασαν αὐτόν κατα-
coming-out to-die, or they-said (that) he would-

καυθήσεσθαι αὐτοῦ. Καὶ ἤδη τὲ πῦρ ἐφαίνετο
be-burnt-up there. And already not-only fire appeared

διὰ τοῦ ὀρόφου, καὶ οἱ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα
through the roofs, but-also — (those) about Xenophon

ἐντεθωρακισμένοι ἦσαν ἔνδον, ἔχοντες ἀσπίδας καὶ
having-their-corselets-on were within, having shields and

μαχαίρας καὶ κράνη, καὶ Σιλανὸς Μακέστιος ὤν
swords and helmets, and Silanus (a) Macestian being

ἤδη ὡς ὀκτωκαίδεκα ἐτῶν σημαίνει τῇ
already about eighteen (years) of-age gives-the-signal with-the

σάλπιγγι· καὶ ἐσπασμένοι τὰ ξίφη εὐθὺς
trumpet, and having-drawn — (their) swords they immediately

ἐκπηδῶσιν, καὶ οἱ ἐκ τῶν ἄλλων σκηνω-
sprang-out, and (also) — (those) from the other quar-

μάτων. Οἱ Θρᾷκες δὲ φεύγουσι, περιβαλλόμενοι
ters. The Thracians indeed flee, throwing-over

τὰς πέλτας ὄπισθεν, ὥσπερ δὴ
— (their) shields behind (them on their backs), as indeed

τρόπος ἦν αὐτοῖς, καὶ αὐτῶν ὑπεραλλομένων
(the) custom was to-them, and they jumping-over

τοὺς σταυροὺς τινες ἐλήφθησαν κρεμασθέντες,
the palisades some were-caught having-been-suspended,

τῶν πελτῶν ἐνεχομένων τοῖς σταυροῖς· καὶ οἱ
the shields holding-fast to-the stakes; and — (others)

δὲ ἀπέθανον διαμαρτόντες τῶν ἐξόδων· δὲ οἱ
also died missing the outlets, and the

Ἕλληνες ἐδίωκον ἔξω τῆς κώμης. Τινὲς τῶν
Greeks drove (them) out-of the village. Some of-the

Θυνῶν δὲ ὑποστραφέντες ἐν τῷ σκότει, ἠκόντιζον
Thynians however coming-back in the dark, threw

εἰς τὸ φῶς ἐκ τοῦ σκότους τους
(their) javelins into the light out-of the dark at — (those)

παρατρέχοντας παρ' οἰκίαν καιομένην· καὶ ἔτρωσαν
running-along by (a) house on-fire; and wounded

Ἱερώνυμόν τε καὶ Εὐοδέα, λοχαγόν, καὶ Θεο-
Hieronymus indeed — (the) Euodean, (a) captain, as-also Theo-

γένην Λοκρὸν λοχαγον· δὲ οὐδείς ἀπέθανε
genes (the) Locrian captain; but no-one died;

μέντοι καὶ ἐσφής καὶ σκεύη τινων κατεκαυθη.
however even (the) clothes and baggage of-some were-burnt.

Δὲ Σεύθης ἦκε βοηθήσων σὺν ἑπτὰ ἱππεῦσι
But Seuthes came about-helping (them) with seven horsemen,

τοῖς πρώτοις ἔχων τὸν σαλπιγκτὴν τὸν Θρᾳ-
the first (assembled) having the trumpeter the Thra-

κιον. Καὶ ἐπείπερ ἤσθετο, ὅσον-
cian (namely). And when he-perceived (the state of affairs), as-

περ χρόνον ἐβοήθει,
long (a) time as he-was-assisting (them by marching to their aid),

τοσοῦτον καὶ τὸ κέρας ἐφθέγγετο αὐτῷ· ὥστε
so-long even the horn sounded for him; so-that

καὶ τοῦτο συμπαρέσχε φόβον τοῖς πολεμίοις.
also this (noise) furnished fear to-the enemy.

Ἐπεὶ δ' ἦλθεν τε ἐδεξιοῦτο καὶ
When however he-came he not-only shook-hands (with them) but-also

ἔλεγεν, ὅτι οἴοιτο εὑρήσειν πολλοὺς τεθνεῶτας.
said, that he-thought to-find many dead.

Ἐκ τούτου ὁ Ξενοφῶν τε δεῖται τοὺς ὁμήρους
After this — Xenophon not-only asks-for the hostages

παραδοῦναι αὐτῷ, καὶ συστρατεύεσθαι, εἰ
to-be-given-up to-him, but-also to-march-with (him), if

βούλεται, ἐπὶ τὸ ὄρος· εἰ δὲ μή, ἐᾶσαι αὐτόν.
he-wished, to the mountain; if indeed not, to-allow him (to go)

Τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ οὖν ὁ Σεύθης παραδίδωσι τοὺς
On-the next-day therefore — Seuthes gave-up (to him) the

ὁμήρους, ἤδη πρεσβυτέρους ἄνδρας, τοὺς κρατίστους,
hostages, already old men, the best,

ὡς ἔφ·κσαι, τῶν ὀρεινῶν· καὶ αὐτὸς ἔρχεται
as they-said, of-the mountain (people); and he came

σὺν τῇ δυνάμει. Δὲ ἤδη ὁ Σεύθης εἶχε καὶ
wi·h —(his) forces. And already — Seuthes had even

τριπλασίαν δύναμιν·
three-times (as large a) force (as he had when the Greeks came),

γὰρ πολλοὶ τῶν Ὀδρυσῶν, ἀκούοντες ἃ ὁ Σεύθης
for many of-the Odrysians, hearing what — Seuthes

πράττοι, κατέβαινον συστρατευσόμενοι. Δὲ οἱ
might-be-doing, came-down taking-the-field-with (him). But the

Θυνοί ἐπεὶ εἶδον ἀπὸ τοῦ ὄρους μὲν πολλοὺς
Thynians when they-saw from the mountain indeed many

ὁπλίτας, δὲ πολλοὺς πελταστάς, δὲ πολλοὺς
heavy-armed-men, and many targeteers, and many

ἱππεῖς, καταβάντες ἱκέτευον σπείσασθαι·
horsemen, coming-down besought (him) to-make-a-treaty (of peace

καὶ ὡμολόγουν ποιήσειν πάντα,
with them); and promised to-do all (he might require),

καὶ ἐκέλευον λαμβάνειν τὰ πιστά.
and requested (him) to-take the pledges (of fidelity from them)

Δὲ ὁ Σεύθης, καλέσας τὸν Ξενοφῶντα, ἐπεδείκνυεν
But — Seuthes, having-called-on — Xenophon, showed

ἃ λέγοιεν, καὶ ἔφη οὐ σπει-
what they-may-have-said, and he-said (that he) 'would not 'treat-

σασθαι, εἰ Ξενοφῶν βούλοιτο τιμωρήσασθαι αὐτοὺς
with-them, if Xenophon might-wish to-punish them

τῆς ἐπιθέσεως. Ὁ δ' εἶπεν· Ἀλλ'
(for) — (their) attack. — But (Xenophon) said: But

ἔγωγε νομίζω ἔχειν καὶ νῦν ἱκανὴν δίκην,
I-at-least consider (that I) have even now sufficient revenge,

εἰ οὗτοι ἔσονται δοῦλοι ἀντ' ἐλευθέρων.
if these (people) will-be slaves (having) before (been) free.

Μέντοι ἔφη αὐτῷ συμβουλεύειν, τὸ λοιπὸν
Moreover said-he to-him (that I) counsel (you), in-future

λαμβάνειν ὁμήρους τοὺς δυνατωτάτους ποιεῖν
·-take (as) hostages — (those) the-most-able to-de

τι κακόν, δὲ ἐᾶν τοὺς γέροντας οἴκοι.
(you) any harm, but leave the old-men at-home.

Οὖν μὲν οἱ ταύτῃ πάντες δὴ
Therefore indeed the (inhabitants) in-this (country) all truly

προσωμολόγουν.
submitted (to him).

## CHAPTER V.

Δὲ ὑπερβάλλουσι τοὺς Θρᾷκας ὑπερ Βυζαντίου
AND they-cross-over to-the Thracians above Byzantium,

εἰς τὸ Δὲλτα καλούμενον· αὕτη δ' ἦν οὐκέτι
into the Delta so-called; this (country) indeed was not

ἀρχὴ Μαισάδου, ἀλλὰ Τήρους
(a part of the) dominion of-Mæsades, but (it belonged to) Teres

τοῦ Ὀδρύσου, τινός ἀρχαίου. Καὶ ἐνταῦθα
the (son) of-Odryses, some ancient (king). And here

ὁ Ἡρακλείδης παρῆν ἔχων τὴν τιμὴν τῆς λείας.
— Heraclides was-present having the price of-the spoils.

Καὶ Σεύθης ἐξαγαγῶν τρία ζεύγη ἡμιονικὰ (γὰρ
And Seuthes selecting three pair (of) mules (for

ἦν οὐ πλείω) δὲ τὰ ἄλλα βοϊκά, καλέσας
there-were no more) and the others oxen, having-called-for

Ξενοφῶντα, ἐκέλευε λαβεῖν, δὲ
Xenophon, he-requested (him) to-take (the mules for himself), but

διανεῖμαι τὰ ἄλλα τοῖς στρατηγοῖς
to-distribute the rest (namely the oxen) to-the generals

καὶ λοχαγοῖς. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν εἶπεν· Ἐμοὶ μὲν
and captains. But Xenophon said: For-myself indeed

τοίνυν ἀρκεῖ καὶ αὖθις λαβεῖν· δὲ
therefore it-is-sufficient even hereafter to-take (something); but

δωροῦ τοῖς στρατηγοῖς καὶ λοχαγοῖς,
make-a present (of them) to-the generals and captains,

οἱ σὺν ἐμοὶ ἠκολούθησαν. Καὶ Τιμασίων
– (those who) with me have-accompanied (you). And Timasion

ὁ Δαρδανεὺς λαμβάνει μὲν ἓν τῶν ζευγῶν, ἓν δὲ
the Dardanean took indeed one of-the pair, one also

Κλεάνωρ ὁ Ὀρχομένιος, δὲ ἓν Φρυνίκος ὁ Ἀχαιός·
Cleanor the Orchomenian, and one Phrynicus the Achæan;

δὲ τὰ ζεύγη βοϊκὰ κατεμερίσθη τοῖς λοχαγοῖς.
but the yokes (of) oxen were-distributed to-the captains.

Δὲ ἀποδίδωσι τὸν μισθὸν μόνον
He [Seuthes] indeed paid the wages only (for)

εἴκοσι ἡμερῶν, τοῦ μηνός ἤδη ἐξεληλυθότος·
twenty days, the month having already elapsed;

γὰρ ὁ Ἡρακλείδης ἔλεγεν ὅτι οὐ ἐμπολήσαι
for — Heraclides said that he-could not sell

πλεῖον. Οὖν ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἀχθεσθεὶς ἐπομό-
more. Therefore — Xenophon being-distressed (at this) having-impre-

σας εἶπε· Δοκεῖς μοι, ὦ Ἡρακλείδη, οὐ κήδεσθαι
cated said: It-seems to-me, O Heraclides, (that you do) not take-care

Σεύθου ὡς δεῖ· γὰρ εἰ ἐκήδου,
(of the affairs) of-Seuthes as they-ought-to-be, for if you-had-taken-care

ἥκες ἄν φέρων τὸν πλήρη μισθὸν, καὶ
you would have-come bringing the full pay, even

προσδανεισάμενος, εἰ ἐδύνω μὴ ἄλλως, καὶ ἀπο-
having-borrowed (it), if you-could not otherwise, and having-

δόμενος τὰ ἱμάτια σαυτοῦ.
sold the clothes of-yourself.

Ἐντεῦθεν ὁ Ἡρακλείδης τε ἠχθέσθη,
Then — Heraclides was not-only grievously-vexed,

καὶ ἔδεισε, μὴ ἐκβληθείη ἐκ τῆς φιλίας τῆς
but-also feared, lest he-might-be-deprived of the friendship of —

Σεύθου· καὶ ἀπὸ ταύτης τῆς ἡμέρας ὅ τι
Seuthes; and from that — day (in) whatever

ἐδύνατο διέβαλλε Ξενοφῶντα πρὸς Σεύθην. Οἱ
he-could he-calumniated Xenophon to Seuthes. The

στρατιῶται μὲν δὴ ἐνεκάλουν Ξενοφῶντι, ὅτι εἶχον·
soldiers indeed truly blamed Xenophon, that they-had

οὐ τὸν μισθόν· δὲ Σεύθης ἤχθετο αὐτῷ,
not — (their) pay, and Seuthes was-much-displeased with-him,

ὅτι ἐντόνως ἀπήτει τὸν μισθὸν τοῖς
(because) that he-had strenuously requested the pay for-the

στρατιώταις. Καὶ τέως μὲν ἀεὶ ἐμέμνη-
soldiers. And until-then indeed he-had continually mentioned,

το, ὡς ἐπειδὰν ἀπέλθῃ ἐπὶ θάλατταν παρα-
that when they-should-arrive at (the) sea he-would-

δώσει αὐτῷ Βισάνθην καὶ Γάνον καὶ Νέον τεῖχος·
give him Bisanthe and Ganus and Neontichus;

δὲ ἀπὸ τούτου τοῦ χρόνον ἐμέμνητο ἔτι οὐδενὸς
but from that — time he-mentioned afterwards none

τούτων. Γὰρ ὁ Ἡρακλείδης καὶ διεβεβλήκει
of-these (places). For — Heraclides also insinuated

τοῦτο, ὡς εἴη οὐκ ἀσφαλὲς παραδιδόναι τείχη
this, that it-was not safe to-give-over fortresses to (a

ἀνδρὶ ἔχοντι δύναμιν.
man having (an) army.

Ἐκ τούτου ὁ Ξενοφῶν μὲν ἐβουλεύετο
On this (account) — Xenophon indeed counselled-with-himself

τί χρὴ ποιεῖν περὶ τοῦ στρατεύεσθαι ἔτι
what it-was-necessary to-do | about the to-march-with-the-army yet

ἄνω. Δ' ὁ
(farther) up [about the expedition farther up the country]. But —

Ἡρακλείδης εἰσαγαγὼν τοὺς ἄλλους στρατηγοὺς
Heraclides was-bringing-forward the other generals

πρὸς Σεύθην, τε ἐκέλευεν αὐτούς λέγειν, ὅτι
to Seuthes, also he-requested them to-say, that

σφεῖς ἂν ἀνάγοιεν τὴν στρατιὰν οὐδὲν ἧττον
they could lead the army not less

ἢ Ξενοφῶν, τε ὑπισχνεῖτο αὐτοῖς τόν
(effectively) than Xenophon, and promised them (that) the

μισθὸν ἔκπλεων δυοῖν μηνοῖν παρέσεσθαι
pay (in) full (for) two months would-be-present (for them)

ὀλίγων ἡμερῶν, καὶ ἐκέλευε συστρατεύεσ-
in (a) few days, and he-requested (them) to-continue-in-the-ser-

Θαι. Καὶ ὁ Τιμασίων εἶπεν· Ἐγὼ μεν
vice (of Seuthes). And — Timasion said: I indeed

τοίνιν οὐδ', ἂν μέλλῃ εἶναι πέντε μηνῶν
therefore not, if there-were-about to-be five months'

μισθὸς, ἂν στρατευσαίμην ἄνευ Ξενοφῶντος. Καὶ
pay, would serve-in-the-army without Xenophon. And

ὁ Φρυνίσκος καὶ ὁ Κλεάνωρ συνωμολόγουν τῷ
— Phryniscus and — Cleanor agreed-with —

Τιμασίωνι.
Timasion.

Ἐντεῦϑεν ὁ Σεύθης ἐλοιδόρει τὸν Ἡρακλείδην,
Then — Seuthes reprehended — Heraclides,

ὅτι οὐ παρεκάλει καὶ Ξενοφῶντα. Δ' ἐκ
that he-had not called-in also Xenophon. And on

τούτου παρακαλοῦσιν αὐτὸν μόνον. Δ' ὁ
this they-call-for him alone. But — (Xenophon)

γνοὺς τὴν πανουργίαν τοῦ Ἡρακλείδου, ὅτι
knowing the knavery of — Heraclides, that

βούλοιτο διαβάλλειν πρὸς τοὺς
he-wished to-calumniate (and make him unpopular, with the

ἄλλους στρατηγούς, παρέρχεται λαβὼν τε
other generals, departed taking (with him) not-only

πάντας τοὺς στρατηγούς, καὶ τοὺς λοχαγούς.
all the generals, but-also the captains.

Καὶ ἐπεὶ πάντες ἐπείσϑησαν συνεστρα-
And when all had-been-persuaded (by Seuthes) they-

τεύοντο, καὶ ἔχοντες τὸν Πόντον
joined (him) in-an-expedition, and having the Euxine-Sea

ἐν δεξιᾷ ἀφικνοῦνται εἰς τὸν Σαλμυδησσόν,
on (their) right they-arrived at — Salmydessus,

διὰ τῶν Θρᾳκῶν καλουμένων Μελινο-
through the (country) of (the) Thracians called Melino-

φάγων· ἔνϑα πολλαι τῶν νεῶν πλεουσῶν εἰς τὸν
phagi; here many of-the vessels sailing into the

Πόντον ὀκέλλουσι καὶ ἐκπίπτουσι· γάρ ἐστι
Euxine-Sea strike and (are) cast-away; for there-is (a)

τέναγος πάμπολυ ἐπὶ τῆς θαλάττης.
shoal (there) (stretching) very-far (out) into the sea.

Καὶ οἱ Θρᾷκες, οἱ οἰκοῦντες κατὰ ταῦτα,
And the Thracians, — (those namely) dwelling along there,

ὁρισάμενοι στήλας, ἕκαστοι
having-set-up pillars [1]to-mark-the-boundaries, (so that) each

ληίζονται τὰ ἐκπίπτοντα καθ' αὑτοὺς
plunder the (things) cast (on shore) on these

δὲ ἔλεγον τέως πρὶν
(their own limits); and they-say (that) for-some-time before (that they)

ὁρίσασθαι, ἁρπάζοντας πολλοὺς ἀποθνή-
erected-boundaries, (that while) plundering many died

σκειν ὑπ' ἀλλήλων. [2]Ἐνταῦθα εὑρίσκονται
by (the hands) of-one-another. There are-found

μὲν πολλαὶ κλῖναι, δὲ πολλὰ κιβώτια, δὲ πολλαὶ
indeed many couches, also many chests, likewise many

γεγραμμέναι βίβλοι, καὶ πολλὰ τἄλλα, ὅσα
written books, and many other (things), such-as

ναύκληροι ἄγουσιν ἐν ξυλίνοις τεύχεσι. [3]Ἐντεῦθεν
seamen carry in wooden receptacles. Then

καταστρεψάμενοι ταῦτα, ἀπῆεσαν πάλιν.
having-subdued these (people), they-departed back

[4]Ἔνθα δὴ Σεύθης εἶχε στράτευμα ἤδη πλέον
Then truly Seuthes had (an) army already more

τοῦ [5]Ἑλληνικοῦ. Γὰρ τε πολὺ ἔτ
(numerous than) the Grecian. For not-only many yet

πλείους [6]Ὀδρυσῶν καταβεβήκεσαν, καὶ οἱ
numerous [6]of-(the) [6]Odrysæ had-come-down (to him), but-also —

ἀεὶ πειθόμενοι συνεστρατεί-
(those) successively obeying-and-submitting (to him) [7]joined

οντο. Δὲ κατηυλίσθησαν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ
(his) [7]army. And they-encamped on the plain

ὑπὲρ Σηλυβρίας, ἀπέχοντες ὅσον τριάκοντα στα-
above Selybria, being-distant about [8]thirty sta-

δίους τὴς θαλάττης. Καὶ οὐδεὶς μισθὸς μὲν
dia (from) the sea. And no pay indeed

πω ἐφαίνετο· τε οἱ στρατιῶται εἶχον τὸν Ξενο-
as-yet appeared, and the soldiers | had — Xeno

φῶντα παγχαλέπως,
phon much-aggrieved, [were very much displeased with Xenophon,]

τε ὁ Σεύθης οὐκέτι οἰκείως διέκειτο, ἀλλ
and — Seuthes no-longer 'was familiarly 'disposed (to him), but

'πότε ἔλθοι βουλόμενος συγγενέσθαι αὐτῷ,
whenever he-might-go desiring to-have-an-interview-with him,

πολλαὶ ἀσχολίαι ἤδη ἐφαίνοντο.
many occupations 'were now 'pretended.

## CHAPTER VI.

Ἐν τούτῳ τῷ χρόνῳ, ὄντων ἤδη σχεδὸν δύο
At this — time, being already nearly two

μηνῶν, Χαρμῖνός τε ὁ Λάκων καὶ Πολύνικος
months, Charminus indeed the Lacedæmonian and Polynicus

ἀφικοῦνται παρὰ Θίβρωνος, καὶ λέγουσιν, ὅτι
arrived from Thibron, and they-said, that

δοκεῖ Λακεδαιμονίοις στρατεύεσθαι ἐπὶ
it-seemed (good) 'to (the) 'Lacedæmonians to-take-the-field against

Τισσαφέρνην, καὶ Θίβρων ἐκπέπλευκεν ὡς πολε-
Tissaphernes, and Thibron had-set-sail as about-

μήσων, καὶ δεῖται ταύτης τῆς στρατιᾶς, καὶ
making-war, and (that) he-wanted this — army, and

λέγει, ὅτι δαρεικὸς τοῦ μηνὸς ἔσται μισθὸς
he-says that (a) daric the month would-be (the) pay

ἑκάστῳ, καὶ τοῖς λοχαγοῖς διμοιρία, δὲ τοῖς
to-each (soldier), and to-the captains twice-as-much, but to-the

στρατηγοῖς τετραμοιρία. Ἐπεὶ δ' οἱ Λακε-
generals four-times-as-much. When indeed — (these) Lace-

δαιμόνιοι ἦλθον, εὐθὺς ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, πυθόμενος
dæmonians came, immediately — Heraclides, hearing

ὅτι ἥκουσι ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα, λέγε. τῷ Σεύθῃ,
that they-came for the army, says to — Seuthes,

ὅτι γεγένηται κάλλιστον· γὰρ μὲν οἱ Λακεδαι-
that it-had-happened luckily; for indeed the Lacedæ

μόνιοι δέονται τοῦ στρατεύματος, δὲ σὺ οὐκέτε
monians wanted the army, but you no-longer

δέῃ· ἀποδιδοὺς τὸ στράτευμα χαριεῖ αὐτοῖς,
want (it); giving-up the army you-will-gratify them,

δὲ οὐκέτι ἀπαιτήσουσι τὸν μισθόν σε,
and they-[1]will no-more [1]demand — (their) pay of-you,

ἀλλ' ἀπαλλάξονται ἐκ τῆς χώρας. Ὁ Σεύθης
but will-depart from the country. — Seuthes

ἀκούσας ταῦτα κελεύει παράγειν·
hearing these (things) requests (him) to-[1]bring (them) [1]to (him);

καὶ ἐπεὶ εἶπον, ὅτι ἥκουσιν ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα,
and when they-said, that they-come for the army,

ἔλεγεν, ὅτι ἀποδίδωσι τὸ στράτευμα, τε βούλεται
he-said, that he-would-give-up the army, and desired

εἶναι φίλος τε καὶ σύμμαχος· τε καλεῖ αὐτοὺς
to-be (their) friend — and ally; and he-invited them

ἐπὶ ξενίᾳ, καὶ ἐξένιζε μεγαλοπρεπῶς.
on terms-of-hospitality, and he-entertained (them) magnificently.

Δὲ οὐκ ἐκάλει Ξενοφῶντα οὐδὲ οὐδένα τῶν
But he-[1]did not [1]invite Xenophon nor (*none*) (any) of-the

ἄλλων στρατηγῶν. Δὲ τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων ἐρω-
other generals. But the Lacedæmonians in-

τώντων, τίς ἀνὴρ Ξενοφῶν εἴη, ἀπεκρίνατο,
quired, what (kind of) man Xenophon might-be, he-replied,

ὅτι μὲν τὰ ἄλλα εἴη οὐ κακός, δὲ
that indeed in — other (respects) he-was not (a) bad (man), but

φιλοστρατιώτης· καὶ διὰ τοῦτο ἐστιν χεῖρον
(was a) friend-of-the-soldiers; and through this it-is worse

αὐτῷ. Καὶ οἳ εἶπον· Ἀλλ' ἦ ὁ ἀνὴρ δημα-
for-him. And — they-said: But — [1]does the man [1]make-

γωγεῖ τοὺς ἄνδρας; Καὶ ὁ Ἡρακλείδης
himself popular (with) the men? And — Heraclides

ἔφη, Οὖν μὲν πάνυ. Ἆρ' οὖν, ἔφασαν,
said, Therefore indeed altogether (so). — Therefore, said-they,

μὴ καὶ ἀναντιώσεται ἡμῖν περὶ τῆς ἀπαγω-
will-he not even oppose us about the leading-

γῆς; Ἀλλ' ἢν ὑμεῖς, ἔφη ὁ Ἡρακλείδης,
away (of the army)? But if you, said — Heraclides,

συλλέξαντες αὐτούς, ὑποσχῆσθε τὸν μισθόν,
assembling them, promise the pay,

προσσχόντες ὀλίγον ἐκείνῳ, ἀποδραμοῦνται
paying little attention to-him, they-will-return

σὺν ὑμῖν. Πῶς οὖν, ἔφασαν, ἂν συλλεγεῖεν
with you. How therefore, said-they, may (they) assemble

ἡμῖν; Αὔριον πρωΐ, ἔφη ὁ Ἡρακλείδης, ἄξομεν
for-us? To-morrow early, said — Heraclides, we-will-conduct

ὑμᾶς πρὸς αὐτούς· καὶ οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι ἐπειδὰν
you to them; and I-know, said-he, that when

ἴδωσιν ὑμᾶς, ἄσμενοι συνδραμοῦνται.
they-see you, they-will willingly flock-round (you).

Αὕτη ἡ ἡμέρα μὲν ἔληξε οὕτως.
This — day indeed closed thus.

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ Σεύθης τε καὶ Ἡρακλείδης
And on-the next-day Seuthes and also Heraclides

ἄγουσιν τοὺς Λάκωνας ἐπὶ τὸ στράτευμα, καὶ
conducted the Lacedæmonians to the army, and

ἡ στρατιὰ συλλέγεται. Δὲ τὼ Λάκωνε ἐλεγέτην,
the army assembled. And the-two Lacedæmonians said,

ὅτι δοκεῖ Λακεδαιμονίοις πολεμεῖν Τισσα-
that it-seemed (good) to (the) Lacedæmonians to-go-to-war with-Tissa-

φέρνει, τῷ ἀδικήσαντι ὑμᾶς· ἢν οὖν ἴητε σὺν
phernes, — (he) having-injured you; if therefore you-go with

ἡμῖν, τε τιμωρήσεσθε τὸν ἐχθρὸν, καὶ
us, you-will not-only revenge-yourselves-on the enemy, but-also

ἕκαστος ὑμῶν οἴσει δαρεικὸν τοῦ μηνός, δὲ
each of-you will-receive (a) daric the month, and (a)

λοχαγὸς τὸ διπλοῦν, δὲ στρατηγὸς τὸ τετρα-
captain the double, and (a) general the qua-

πλοῦν. Και οἱ στρατιῶται τε ἄσμενοι ἤκουσαν,
druple. And the soldiers not-only willingly listened,

καὶ τις τῶν Ἀρκάδων εὐθὺς ἀνίσταται
but-also some-one of-the Arcadians immediately rising-up

κατηγορήσων τῶν Ξενοφῶντος. Δὲ καὶ Σεύθης
denouncing - Xenophon. But also Seuthes

παρῆν, βουλόμενος εἰδέναι τί πραχθήσεται·
was-present, desiring to-know how the-affair-would-be-conducted;

καὶ εἱστήκει ἐν ἐπηκόῳ, ἔχων ἑρμηνέα·
and stood in (a place proper for) hearing, having (an) interpreter;

δὲ καὶ αὐτὸς ξυνίει τὰ πλεῖστα ἑλληνιστί.
and also he-himself understood — most (things) in-Greek.

Ἔνθα δὴ ὁ Ἀρκάς λέγει· Ἀλλ' ἡμεῖς μέν,
Then indeed the Arcadian speaks: But we indeed,

ὦ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, καὶ πάλαι ἂν ἦμεν παρ' ὑμῖν,
O Lacedæmonians, even long-ago would have-been with you,

εἰ Ξενοφῶν πείσας ἡμᾶς μὴ ἀπήγαγεν
if Xenophon having-persuaded us had not led (us)

δεῦρο, ἔνθα δὴ ἡμεῖς μὲν στρατευόμενοι τὸν
hither, where truly we indeed performing-military-duty (through) —

δεινὸν χειμῶνα πεπαύμεθα οὐδὲν καὶ νύκτα
most-severe cold-weather we-rested neither - night

καὶ ἡμέραν· δὲ ὁ ἔχει τοὺς ἡμετέρους
— (or) day; but — (he) has (the fruits of) — our

πόνους· καὶ Σεύθης μὲν πεπλούτικεν ἐκεινον ἰδίᾳ,
labour; and Seuthes indeed has-enriched him personally,

δὲ ἀποστερεῖ ἡμᾶς τὸν μισθόν. Ὥστε ὅ
but defrauded us (of) — (our) pay. So-that (I) who

γε λέγων πρῶτος ἐγὼ μὲν εἰ ἴδοιμι τοῦτον
am at-least speaking first I indeed if I-saw this

καταλευσθέντα, καὶ δόντα δίκην
[Xenophon] stoned-to-death, | and giving justice [and thus

ὧν περιεῖλκε ἡμᾶς,
be punished] | of-which he-has-dragged us about, [for having so

καὶ ἂν δοκῶ μοι ἔχειν τον
dragged us about,] and I would seem to-myself to-have — (my)

μισθὸν, καὶ οὐδὲν ἄχθεσθαι ἐπὶ τοῖς πεπονη
pay, and neither to-be-aggrieved at — (what I) had-under-

μένοις. Μετὰ τοῦτον ἄλλος ἀνέστη καὶ
gone. After this (one) another stood-up and

ὁμοίως ἄλλος. Ἐκ τούτου δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἔλεξεν
likewise another. After this indeed Xenophon spoke

ὧδε·
thus:

Ἀλλὰ μὲν ἄρα δεῖ ἄνθρωπον
But indeed therefore | it-is-necessary (that) (a) man

ὄντα προσδοκᾶν πάντα,
being to-expect all, [one must expect all kinds of fate,]

ὁπότε γε καὶ νῦν ἔχω αἰτίας ὑφ' ὑμῶν, ἐν
since at-least even now I-have accusations from you, in

ᾧ δοκῶ συνειδέναι γε ἐμαυτῷ
(the thing) which I-seem to-be-conscious at-least to-myself (of)

παρεσχημένος πλείστην προθυμίαν περὶ ὑμᾶς.
having-shown (the) most zeal for you.

Μὲν γε ἀπετραπόμεν ἤδη ὡρμημένος
I indeed at-least turned-back having already set-out

οἴκαδε, οὐ μὰ τὸν Δία οὕτοι πυνθανόμενος
for-home, no by — Jupiter not-indeed hearing (that)

ὑμᾶς πράττειν εὖ· ἀλλὰ μᾶλλον ἀκούων
you (were) doing well; but rather hearing (that)

εἶναι ἐν ἀπόροις, ὡς ὠφελήσων, εἴ τι
(you) were in difficulties, as being-about-helping (you) if in-any-thing

δυναίμεν. Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἦλθον, τουτουὶ Σεύθου
I-might-be-able. When indeed I-came, this-here Seuthes

πέμποντος πολλοὺς ἀγγέλους πρὸς ἐμὲ, καὶ
sending many messengers to me, and

ὑπισχνουμένου πολλὰ μοι, εἰ πείσαιμι ὑμᾶς
promising many (things) to-me, if I-would-persuade you

ἐλθεῖν πρὸς αὐτὸν, οὐκ μὲν ἐπεχείρησα ποιεῖν
to-go to him, I-did not indeed attempt to-do

τοῦτο, ὡς ὑμεῖς αὐτοὶ ἐπίστασθε· δὲ ἦγον
this, as you yourselves know; but I-led (you to

ὅθεν ὡρμῶμεν ἂν τάχιστα διαβῆναι
a place, whence I-thought (that you) might the-most-speedily cross-over

εἰς τὴν Ἀσίαν Γὰρ ἐνομιζον ταῦτα εἶναι
into — Asia For I-thought this to-be

βέλτιστα ὑμῖν, καὶ ἤδειν ὑμᾶς βουλομένους. Δ'
the-best for-you, and I-knew you desiring (it). But

ἐπεὶ Ἀρίσταρχος, ἐλθὼν σὺν τριήρεσιν, ἐκώλυε
when Aristarchus, coming with galleys, prohibited

ἡμᾶς διαπλεῖν, ἐκ τούτου, ὅπερ ἦν δήπου εἰκὸς,
us to-sail-across, on this, as was certainly proper,

συνέλεξα ὑμᾶς, ὅπως βουλευσαίμεθα ὅ τι
I-assembled you, in-order-that we-might-consult-together what

χρὴ ποιεῖν. Ὑμεῖς οὐκ οὖν, ἀκού-
it-might-be-necesssary to-do. (Did) you not therefore, hear-

οντες μὲν Ἀριστάρχου ἐπιτάττοντος ὑμῖν πορεύ-
ing indeed Aristarchus commanding you to-pro-

εσθαι εἰς Χερρόνησον, ἀκούοντες δὲ Σεύθου πεί-
ceed to (the) Chersonesus, hearing also Seuthes per-

θοντος ἑαυτῷ συστρατεύεσθαι, μεν πάντες
suading yourselves to-enter-into-his-service, (did you not) indeed all

ἐλέγετε ἰέναι σὺν Σεύθῃ, δὲ
say (that you would) go with Seuthes, and (did you not)

πάντες ἐψηφίσασθε ταῦτα; Τί οὖν ἐγὼ
all vote-for these (things)? How therefore did I

ἐνταῦθα ἠδίκησα, ἀγαγὼν ὑμᾶς ἔνθα ἐδόκει
then wrong (you), leading you there-where it-seemed

ὑμῖν πᾶσιν; Ἐπεὶ γε Σεύθης μὲν ἤρξατο
(good) for-you all (to go)? Since at-least Seuthes indeed began

ψεύδεσθαι περὶ τοῦ μισθοῦ, εἰ μὲν ἐπαινῶ
to-deceive about the pay, if indeed I-should-praise

αὐτόν, ἂν δικαίως καὶ αἰτιῷσθε καὶ μισοῖτε·
him, you would justly both accuse and detest (me)

εἰ δὲ ὢν πρόσθεν μάλιστα πάντων φίλος,
if however being formerly most of-all (his) friend,

νῦν πάντων εἰμι διαφορώτατός, πῶς
now of-all (men) I-am the-most-at-variance (with him), how

ἂν αἱρούμενος ὑμᾶς ἀντὶ Σεύθου, ἔτι δικαίως
can I, preferring you before Seuthes, as-yet justly

ἔχοιμι αἰτίαν ὑφ' ὑμῶν περὶ ὧν δια-
have censure from you about (those things in) which I-am-

φέρομαι πρὸς τοῦτον; Ἀλλ' ἂν εἴποιτε, ὅτι
at-variance with this [Seuthes]? But you may say, that

ἔξεσι ἔχοντα ὑμέτερα παρὰ Σεύθου
it-is (possible that) I, having your (money) from Seuthes

τεχνάζειν. Οὐκ οὖν τοῦτό γε δῆλον, ὅτι,
am-practising-artifice. Is not therefore this at-least evident, that,

εἴπερ Σεύθης ἐτέλει τι ἐμοί, οὐ δήπου
if Seuthes paid any-thing to-me, he-did not certainly

ἐτέλει οὕτως, ὥς τε στεροιτο ὧν
pay (it) for-the-purpose, that not-only he-might-be-deprived-of what

δοίη ἐμοί, ἄλλα καὶ ἀποτίσειεν ὑμῖν; Ἀλλ' οἶμαι,
he-gave me, but also to-repay you? But I-think,

εἰ ἐδίδου, ἂν ἐδίδου ἐπὶ τούτῳ,
if he-gave (me anything) he may have-given (it) for this (purpose),

ὅπως δοὺς μεῖον μὴ ἀποδοίη ὑμῖν
that having-given (a) less (sum) he-might not pay you

τὸ πλεῖον. Εἰ τοίνυν οἴεσθε ἔχειν
the greater (sum). If therefore you-think (the affair) to-have (itself)

οὕτως, ἔξεσιν ὑμῖν μάλα αὐτίκα ποιῆσαι ταύτην
thus, it-is-allowed you very speedily to-make this

τὴν πρᾶξιν ματαίαν ἀμφοτέροις ἡμῖν, ἐὰν πράτ-
transaction useless for-both (of) us, if you-

τητε αὐτὸν τὰ χρήματα. Γὰρ δῆλον, ὅτι
exact (from) him the money. For (it is) evident, that

Σεύθης, εἴ ἔχω τι παρ' αὐτοῦ, ἀπαιτήσει
Seuthes, if I-have (received) anything from him, will-demand

με, καὶ μέντοι ἀπαιτήσαι δικαίως, ἐὰν
(it) back (of) me, and moreover will-demand (it) justly, if

μὴ βεβαιῶ τὴν πρᾶξιν αὐτῷ ἐφ' ᾗ ἐδωρα-
I-do not confirm the transaction to-him for which I-received-

δόκουν. Ἀλλὰ δοκῶ μοι δεῖν πολλοῦ
gifts (from him). But I-seem to-myself to-want much (of

ἔχειν τὰ ὑμέτερα· γὰρ ὀμνύω ὑμῖν ἅπαντας
having — your (money); for I-swear to-you by-all

θεοὺς καὶ πάσας ἔχειν μηδέ
(the) gods and (by) all (the goddesses) (that I) have never-indeed

ἃ Σεύθης ὑπέσχετο ἐμοὶ ἰδίᾳ·
(received) what Seuthes promised me (as my own) proper (pay);

δὲ καὶ αὐτός πάρεστι, καὶ ἀκούων σύνοιδέ μοι, εἰ
and also he-himself is-present, and hearing knows with-me, if

ἐπιορκῶ. Ἵνα δὲ μᾶλλον θαυμάσητε,
I-perjure-myself. That indeed you-may-be yet-more surprised,

συνεπόμνυμι μηδέ εἰληφέναι ἃ οἱ
I-swear (that) I-have not-indeed received what the

ἄλλοι στρατηγοὶ ἔλαβον, μὴ τοίνυν μηδὲ ὅσα
other generals received, no moreover not-indeed as-much-as

ἔνιοι τῶν λοχαγῶν. Καὶ τί ἐποίουν ταῦτ';
some of-the captains. And why did-I-do this?

Ὦ ἄνδρες, ὅσῳ μᾶλλον συμφέροιμι
O men, (I thought that) how-much the-more I-endured-with

τούτῳ τότε τὴν πενίαν, τοσούτῳ μᾶλλον
this (man) while in — poverty, so-much the-more

ποιήσεσθαι αὐτὸν φίλον ὁπότε δυνασθείη. Δὲ
I-would-make him (a) friend whenever he-might-be-able. But

ἐγὼ ἅμα τε ὁρῶ αὐτὸν πράττοντα εὖ,
I at-the-present-time not-only see him doing well,

καὶ δὴ γιγνώσκω τὴν γνώμην αὐτοῦ. Τις
but-also truly know the disposition of-him. Some-one

δή ἂν εἴποι· οὐκ οὖν αἰσχύνῃ οὕτω
indeed may say: are-you not therefore ashamed (at) being thus

μωρῶς ἐξαπατώμενος; Ναὶ μὰ Δία μέντοι
foolishly deceived? Certainly, by Jupiter, I-would indeed

ᾐσχυνόμην, εἰ ἐξηπατήθην ὑπὸ γε ὄντος
have-been-ashamed, if I-had-been-deceived by (one) at-least being (an)

πολεμίου· δὲ ὄντι φίλῳ δοκεῖ μοι αἴσχιον
enemy; but being (a) friend it-seems to-me more-shameful

ἐξαπατᾶν ἢ ἐξαπατᾶσθαι. Ἐπεί, εἴ γε
to-deceive than to-be-deceived. Since if at-least the

φυλακή ἐστι πρὸς φίλους, οἶδα ὑμᾶς φυλαξαμένους
guard is-to-be against friends, I-know you guarding

πᾶσαν, ὡς μὴ παρασχεῖν τούτῳ δικαίαν
all, so-as not to-give to-this [Seuthes] (a) just

πρόφασιν μὴ ἀποδιδόναι ὑμῖν ἃ
pretext, (that he might) not pay us what

ὑπέσχετο· γὰρ οὔτε ἠδικήσαμεν τοῦτον
he-promised, for we-have neither injured this [Seuthes]

οὐδέν, οὔτε κατεβλακεύσαμεν τὰ
— (in any thing), nor neglected the (affairs)

τούτου, οὐδὲ μὲν κατεδειλιάσαμεν οὐδὲν
of-this (man), or indeed did-we-cowardly-shrink — (from any

ἐφ' ὅ τι οὗτος παρεκάλεσεν ἡμᾶς. Ἀλλά,
thing) to which he called us. But, you

ἂν φαίητε, ἔδει τότε λαβεῖν τὰ
may say, it-ought (to be, that I should) then have-taken —

ἐνέχυρα, ὡς εἰ ἐβούλετο μηδ' ἐδύνατο ἐξα-
pledges, so-that if he-wished he-could not-indeed be-able to

πατᾶν. Πρὸς ταῦτα δὲ ἀκούσατε, ἃ ἐγὼ
deceive. As-respects these (things) indeed hear, what I

ἂν οὐκ εἶπον ἐναντίον τούτο, εἰ
should at no time have-mentioned before this [Seuthes], if

μὴ ἐδοκεῖτε μοι εἶναι παντάπασιν
you-had not shown (yourselves) to-me to-be altogether

ἀγνώμονες, ἢ λίαν ἀχάριστοι εἰς ἐμέ. Γὰρ
destitute-of-intelligence, or very ungrateful towards me. | For

ἀναμνήσθητε ἐν οἷοις τισὶ πράγμασιν ἐτυγχάνετε
recollect in what any things you-happened

ὄντες ἐξ
being [for recollect in what kind of circumstances you were placed] out-of

ὧν ἐγὼ ἀνήγαγον ὑμᾶς πρὸς Σεύθην.
which I (extricated you and) led you up to Seuthes

Οὐκ μὲν Πέρινθον προσήτε εἰς πόλιν,
(Was it) not indeed (at) Perinthus you-went to (the) city,

δ' Ἀρίσταρχος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος ἀποκλείσας τὰς
but Aristarchus the Lacedæmonian having-shut the

πύλας οὐκ εἶα ὑμᾶς εἰσιέναι; Δ' ἐστρα-
gates he-'did not 'let you go-in? And did-'you (not) 'en-

τοπεδεύετε ἔξω ὑπαίθριοι; Ἦν δὲ μέσος
camp without in-the-open-air? Was-it (not) indeed (the) middle

χειμών; Ἐχρῆσθε ἀγορᾷ,
(of) winter? | Had-'you (not) 'to-make-use-of (a) market, [had you

ὁρῶντες μὲν σπάνια τὰ ὤνια,
not to buy your provisions,] seeing indeed (a) scarcity (of) — saleable

δ' ἔχοντες σπάνια ὅτων ὠνήσεσθε;
(things), and having (a) scarcity of-any (things that) you-may-buy

Δὲ ἦν ἀνάγκη μένειν ἐπὶ Θράκης·
(with)? And was-there (not a) necessity to-remain in Thrace;

(γὰρ τριήρεις ἐφορμοῦσαι ἐκώλυον διαπλεῖν·)
(for galleys having-been-anchored hindered (us) to-sail-over:)

εἰ δὲ τις μένοι εἶναι ἐν πολεμίᾳ,
if indeed any-one stayed (it was) to-be in (a) hostile (country),

ἔνθα μὲν ἦσαν πολλοὶ ἱππεῖς ἐναντίοι, δὲ
where indeed there-were many horsemen opposed (to you), as-likewise

πολλοὶ πελτασταί; Δὲ μὲν ἦν ὁπλιτικὸν
many targeteers? And indeed there-was (a) heavy-armed

ἡμῖν, ᾧ, ἰόντες μὲν ἀθρόοι ἐπὶ τὰς
(corps) for-us, with-which, going indeed 'in (a) 'body to the

κώμας, ἴσως ἂν ἐδυνάμεθα λαμβάνειν σῖτον
villages, perhaps 'we might 'be-able to-take food

οὐδέν τι ἄφθονον· δὲ διώκοντες ὅτῳ ἄν
but) not any abundance; and following whom 'we might

κατελαμβάνομεν ἢ ἀνδράποδα ἢ πρόβατα,
capture neither slaves or cattle, (for the

ἦν οὐχ ἡμῖν. Γὰρ ἐγὼ κατέλαβον οὔτε
proper troops) were not to-us. For I found neither

ἱππικὸν οὔτε πελταστικὸν συνεστηκὸς παρ' ὑμῖν.
cavalry nor targeteers constituted-in-a-body among you.

Εἰ οὖν, ὑμῶν ὄντων ἐν τοιαύτῃ ἀνάγκῃ, μηδὲ
If therefore, you being in this difficulty, not-indeed

προσαιτήσας ὁντινοῦν μισθόν,
having-asked-in-addition (for any thing) whatever (as) pay

προξέλαβον Σεύθην σύμμαχον ὑμῖν, ἔχοντα
I-had-acquired Seuthes (as an) ally for-you, he having

καὶ ἱππέας καὶ πελταστὰς, ὧν ὑμεῖς προξεδεῖσθε,
both cavalry and targeteers, which you were-in-want-of,

ἢ ἂν ἐδόκουν ὑμῖν βεβουλεῦσθαι κακῶς;
would I-have-seemed to-you to-have-consulted ill (for you)?

Ἰ'ἀρ δῆπου κοινωνήσαντες τούτων,
For certainly having-shared (in the advantages) of-these

καὶ εὑρίσκετε ἀφθονώτερον σῖτον
kinds of troops), 'you both 'found more-abundant provisions

ἐν ταῖς κώμαις, διὰ τοὺς Θρᾷκες τὸ ἀναγκά-
in the villages, on-account-of the Thracians — being-

ζεσθαι φεύγειν κατὰ μᾶλλον σπουδὴν, καὶ
forced to-flee with greater speed, and you-'had (a)

μᾶλλον μετέσχετε προβάτων καὶ ἀνδραπόδων. Καὶ
greater 'share of-cattle and of-slaves. And

ἑωρῶμεν οὐδένα πολέμιον οὐκέτι, ἐπειδὴ τὸ ἱππικὸν
we-saw no enemy no-more, after the cavalry

προσεγένετο ἡμῖν, δὲ τέως οἱ πολέμιοι θαῤῥαλέως
were-joined to-us, but at-this-time the enemy boldly

ἀφείποντο ἡμῖν καὶ ἱππικῷ καὶ πελταστικῷ,
pursued us both cavalry and targeteers,

κωλύοντες ἡμᾶς ἀποσκεδαννυμένους κατ' ὀλίγους
hindering us (from) being-dispersed in small

μηδαμῇ πορίζεσθαι ἀφθονώτερα τὰ ἐπι-
(parties) every-where to-procure more-abundant — pro

τήδεια.
visions.

Δὲ εἰ δὴ ὁ συμπαρέχων ὑμῖν ταύτην τὴν
But if truly (he) — (who) presenting you this —

ἀσφάλειαν μὴ προσετέλει πάνυ πολὺν
security 'did not 'pay (you) 'in-addition very great

μισθον τῆς ἀσφαλείας, τοῦτο δὴ τὸ σχέτλιον
wages for-the security, (is) this indeed the shocking

πάθημα; καὶ διὰ τοῦτο οἴεσθε
suffering (you complain of)? and on-account-of this do-you-think

χρῆναι οὐδαμῇ ἀνεῖναι ἐμὲ ζῶντα;
(that) it-is-necessary not to-send me away alive?

Δὲ νῦν δὴ πῶς ἀπέρχεσθε; Οὐ διαχειμά-
But now truly how do-you-depart? (Is it) not after-having-passed-the-

σαντες ἐν ἀφθόνοις τοῖς ἐπιτηδείοις, δ' ἔχοντες
winter in abundant — provisions, and having

περιττὸν τοῦτο εἴ τι ἐλάβετε παρὰ
moreover-in-addition that, if any, (which) you-received from

Σεύθου; Γὰρ ἐδαπανᾶτε τὰ τῶν πολεμίων.
Seuthes? For you-consumed the (things) of-the enemy.

Καὶ πράττοντες ταῦτα οὔτε
And performing these (things) [and faring thus] | you neither

ἐπείδετε ἄνδρας ὑμῶν ἀποθανόντας αὐτῶν,
beheld (the) men of-you having-died from-them, [you

οὔτε ἀπεβάλετε ζῶντας.
neither saw any of your men killed,] nor have-you-lost (any) living.

Εἰ δὲ τι καλὸν ἐπέπρακτο ὑμῖν ἐν τῇ Ἀσίᾳ
If indeed any-thing glorious has-been-performed by-you in — Asia

πρὸς τοὺς βαρβάρους, καὶ οὐκ ἐκεῖνο σῶν,
against the barbarians, and have-you not that safe,

καὶ πρὸς ἐκείνοις προσειλήφατε νῦν ἄλλην
and to these have-you (not) added now another

εὔκλειαν, καὶ κρατήσαντες τοὺς Θρᾷκας ἐν Εὐρώπῃ,
glory, and having-subdued the Thracians in Europe,

ἐφ' οὓς ἐστρατεύσασθε; Ἐγὼ μὲν ἂν δικαίως
against whom you-marched? I indeed may justly

φημὶ ὑμᾶς ὧν χαλεπαίνετε ἐμοί,
say (to) you (the things) for-which you-are-angry with-me,

τούτων εἰδέναι χάριν τοῖς θεοῖς ὡς
for-these (we ought) to-consider (as a) favour from-the gods as

ἀγαθῶν. Καὶ μὲν δὴ τοιαῦτα
for so many) good-things. And indeed truly such (is the state of)

τὰ ὑμέτερα. Ἄγετε δὲ πρὸς
— your (affairs). | Lead indeed [well then] for (the sake)

θεῶν, σκέψασθε καὶ τὰ ἐμὰ ὡς
of (the) gods, | consider also — my (affairs) as (how they)

ἔχε.. Γὰρ ἐγὼ ὅτε μὲν
have (themselves) [consider my condition]. For I when indeed

πρότερον ἀπῆα οἴκαδε, ἀπεπορευόμην μὲν
'I first 'went-away (for) home, I-went-away indeed

ἔχων πολὺν ἔπαινον πρὸς ὑμῶν, ἔχων δὲ δ' ὑμᾶς
having much praise from you, having also through you

καὶ εὔκλειαν ὑπὸ τῶν ἄλλων Ἑλλήνων.
even glory (and renown) with the other Greeks

Δὲ ἐπιστευόμην ὑπὸ Λακεδαιμονίων· γὰρ
And I-was-trusted by (the) Lacedæmonians, for 'they

ἂν οὐ ἔπεμπον με πάλιν πρὸς ὑμᾶς. Νῦν δὲ
would not 'have-sent me back to you. Now indeed

ἀπέρχομαι διαβεβλημένος ὑφ' ὑμῶν μὲν πρὸς
I-depart calumniated by you indeed to (the)

Λακεδαιμονίους, δὲ ἀπηχθημένος Σεύθῃ ὑπὲρ
Lacedæmonians, and having-offended Seuthes by (reason of)

ὑμῶν, ὃν ἤλπιζον ποιήσας εὖ
you, whom I-hoped | having-made (it) well [having served him effec-

μεθ' ὑμῶν, καὶ καταθήσεσθαι καλὴν
tively] with you, and to-have-procured (with him an) honourable

ἀποστροφὴν καὶ ἐμοὶ καὶ παισίν, εἰ γένοιντο.
retreat both for-myself and (my) children, if there-should-be

Δ' ὑμεῖς ὑπὲρ ὧν ἐγὼ τε ἀπήχθημαί
(any to me). But you for whom I not-only have-'incurred

πλεῖστα, καὶ ταῦτα πολὺ κρείττοσιν
the-most 'hatred, but-also this (from those) much better

ἐμαυτοῦ, τε οὐδὲ πω νῦν πέπαυμαι πραγμα-
(than) myself, and neither not-even now do-I-cease labouring-to-

τευόμενος ὅ τι ἀγαθὸν δύναμαι ὑμῖν, ἔχετε
effect whatever good I-can for-you, who-have

τοιαύτην γνώμην περὶ ἐμοῦ. Ἀλλ' μὲν ἔχετε
such (an) opinion respecting me. But indeed you have

με οὔτε λαβόντες φεύγοντα, οὔτε
me (in your power). neither having-taken (me) fleeing-away, nor

ἀποδιδράσκοντα· ἢν δὲ ποιήσητε ἃ λέγετε, ἴστε,
about-running-away; if indeed you-will-do what you-say, know

ὅτι ἔσεσθε κατακανόντες ἄνδρα ἀγρυπνήσαντα
that you-will-be killing (a) man having-watched

μὲν δὴ πολλὰ πρὸ ὑμῶν, δὲ πονήσαντα καὶ
indeed truly much for you, and having-laboured (much) and

κινδυνεύσαντα πολλὰ σὺν ὑμῖν, καὶ ἐν τῷ
encountered many dangers with you, both in —

μέρει καὶ παρὰ τὸ μέρος, δὲ θεῶν ὄντων
his) share and beyond — (his) share, and (the) gods being

ἵλεων πολλὰ τρόπαια δὴ βαρβάρων στη-
propitious many trophies truly over (the) barbarians have-

σάμενον σὺν ὑμῖν· διατεινάμενον πρὸς ὑμᾶς πὰν
been-erected with you; having-exerted-myself for you (in) all

ὅσον ἐδυνάμην, ὅπως δὲ γένοισθε πολέμιοι
as-much-as I-was-able, that indeed you-might-become inimical

γε μηδενὶ τῶν Ἑλλήνων. Γὰρ καὶ οὖν νῦν
at-least to-none of-the Greeks. For even therefore now

ἔξεστιν ὑμῖν ἀνεπιλήπτως πορεύεσθαι, ὅπῃ ἂν
it-is-allowed you blamelessly to-proceed, where you may

ἔλησθε, καὶ κατὰ γῆν καὶ κατὰ θάλατταν.
have-desired, both by land and by sea.

Δὲ ὑμεῖς, ὅτε πολλὴ εὐπορία φαίνεται ὑμῖν, καὶ
And you, when great abundance shows-itself to-you, and

πλεῖτε ἔνθα δὴ πάλαι ἐπιθυμεῖτε, τε
about-to-sail where indeed heretofore you-have-desired-to-be, and

δέονται ὑμῶν οἱ
those desire you — (those, namely, who are considered as) being

μέγιστον δυνάμενοι, δὲ μισθὸς φαίνεται,
the-most able (and powerful), | and pay appears

δὲ Λακεδαιμόνιοι, οἱ
[and pay is offered to you,] and Lacedæmonians, — (those, namely,

νομιζόμενοι κράτιστοι ἡγεμόνες ἥκουσι,
who) being-considered the-best leaders come (for you).

νῦν δὴ δοκεῖ ὑμῖν εἶναι καιρὸς κατα-
does it now indeed seem to-you to-be (a) proper (time) to

κανεῖν ἐμὲ ὡς τάχιστα; Οὐ
kill me as speedily (as possible)? (You had) no (such

μὴν γε ὅτε ἦμεν ἐν τοῖς ἀπόροις,
intentions) certainly at-least when we-were in — difficulties

ὦ μνημονικώτατοι πάντων· ἀλλὰ καὶ ἐκαλεῖτε
O (men) having-memories of-all; but even you-called

ἐμὲ πατέρα, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖσθε ἀεὶ μεμνῆσθαι ὡς
me father, and you-promised always to-remember (me) as (a)

εὐεργέτου. Μέντοι οὗτοί, οἱ νῦν ἥκοντες
benefactor. However those, — (those namely) now come

ἐφ' ὑμᾶς, εἰσιν οὐ οὐδὲ ἀγνώμονες· ὥστε, ὡς
for you, are not either (so) ignorant, so-that, as

ἐγὼ οἶμαι, οὐδὲ δοκεῖτε βελτίονες τούτοις,
I think, you-will neither seem better to-these

ὄντες τοιοῦτοι περὶ ἐμέ. Εἰπὼν ταῦτ'
(persons), being such as-respects me. Having-said these

ἐπαύσατο.
(things) he-ceased.

Δὲ Χαρμῖνος ὁ Λακεδαιμόνιος ἀναστὰς εἶπεν·
And Charminus the Lacedæmonian standing-up said:

Ἀλλ' οὐ τὼ σιώ, μέντοι δοκεῖτε ἐμοί, ὦ ἄνδρες,
Certainly by-the twin-gods, however you-seem to-me, O men,

χαλεπαίνειν τῷ τούτῳ ἀνδρὶ οὐ δικαίως· γὰρ
to-be-displeased with — this man not justly; for

καὶ αὐτὸς ἔχω μαρτυρῆσαι αὐτῷ. Γὰρ Σεύθης
even I-myself have to-bear-witness to-him. For Seuthes

ἐρωτῶντος ἐμοῦ καὶ Πολυνίκου περὶ Ξενοφῶντος,
inquiring of-me and Polynicus about Xenophon,

τίς ἀνὴρ εἴη, εἶχε μὲν οὐδὲν
what-kind (of a) man he-might-be, (he said) he-had indeed nothing

ἄλλο μέμψασθαι, δὲ ἔφη αὐτὸν εἶναι
else to-accuse (him) of, but he-said (that) he was

φιλοστρατιώτην· διὸ εἶναι χεῖρον αὐτῷ
a) friend-of-the-soldiers; wherefore (that it) was worse for-him

τε πρὸς ἡμῶν τῶν Λακεδαιμονίων, καὶ πρὸς
not-only with us the Lacedæmonians, but-also with

αὐτοῦ. Ἐπὶ τούτῳ Εὐρύλοχος Λυσιάτης
himself. After this-one Eurylochus (the) Lusian (an)

Ἀρκὰς ἀναστὰς εἶπε· Καὶ δοκεῖ γέ μοι, Λακεδαι-
Arcadian rising-up said: It even seems at-least to-me, Lacedæ

μόνιοι ἄνδρες, ὑμᾶς στρατηγῆσαι πρῶτον
monian men, (that) you should-be (our) generals first

τοῦτο ἀναπρᾶξαι παρὰ Σεύθου ἡμῖν τὸν μισθὸν
in-this to-have-exacted from Seuthes for-us — (our) pay

ἢ ἐκόντος, ἢ ἄκοντος, καὶ μὴ πρότερον
either willingly, or unwillingly, and not before (this was done)

ἀπαγαγεῖν ἡμᾶς. Πολυκράτης δὲ Ἀθηναῖοι
to-have-led us away. Polycrates indeed (the) Athenian

ἀναστὰς εἶπεν ὑπὲρ Ξενοφῶντος· Γὲ μὴν ὁρῶ,
rising-up spoke for Xenophon: I at-least certainly see,

ἔφη, ὦ ἄνδρες, καὶ Ἡρακλείδην παρόντα ἐνταῦθα,
said-he, O men, even Heraclides being-present here,

ὃς παραλαβὼν τὰ χρήματα, ἃ ἡμεῖς ἐπονήσαμεν,
who having-received the things, which we laboured

ἀποδόμενος ταῦτα, ἀπέδωκε τὰ γιγνό-
(to obtain), having-sold these (things) gave the pro-

μενα οὔτε Σεύθῃ οὔτε ἡμῖν, ἀλλ' αὐτὸς κλέψας,
ceeds neither to-Seuthes nor to-us, but he having stolen

πέπαται. Ἢν οὖν σωφρονῶμεν
(them), keeps-possession (of them). If therefore we-are-wise

ἐξόμεθα αὐτοῦ. Γὰρ, ἔφη, οὗτος δὴ
we-will-lay-hold of-him. For, said-he, this (person) indeed

ἐστιν οὔ γε Θρᾴξ, ἀλλ' ὢν Ἕλλην
is not at-least (a) Thracian, but being (a) Greek treats

Ἕλληνας ἀδικεῖ.
(the) Greeks unjustly.

Ὁ Ἡρακλείδης ἀκούσας ταῦτα μᾶλλον
— Heraclides hearing these (things), was more

ἐξεπλάγη· καὶ προσελθὼν τῷ Σεύθῃ λέγει·
alarmed (than before); and proceeding to — Seuthes he-says:

Ἢν σωφρονῶμεν ἄπιμεν ἐντεῦθεν ἐκ τῆς
If we-are-wise we (will) depart hence from the

ἐπικρατείας τούτων. Καὶ ἀναβάντες ἐπὶ τοὺς
power of-these (men). And mounting on — (their)

ἵππους ᾤχοντο ἀπελαύνοντες εἰς τὸ στρατόπεδον
horses they-departed riding-off to the camp

ἑαυτῶν. Καὶ ἐντεῦθεν Σεύθης πέμπει Ἀβροζέλμην
of-themselves. And thence Seuthes sends Abrozelmes

τὸν ἑρμηνέα ἑαυτοῦ πρὸς Ξενοφῶντα, καὶ κελεύει
the interpreter of-himself to Xenophon, and requests

αὐτὸν καταμεῖναι παρ' ἑαυτῷ, ἔχοντα χιλίους
him to-remain with himself, having (a) thousand

ὁπλίτας, καὶ ὑπισχνεῖται ἀποδώσειν αὐτῷ τε
heavy-armed-men, and promised to-give to-him also

τὰ χωρία τὰ ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ, καὶ
the places — (those namely) on (the) sea (coast), and

τἆλλα ἃ ὑπέσχετο. Καὶ ποιησάμενος
the-other (things), which he-promised. And having-made (the

ἐν ἀπορρήτῳ λέγει, ὅτι ἀκήκοε Πο-
(communication) in secret he-says, that he-had-heard from-Po-

λυνίκου, ὡς, εἰ ἔσται ὑποχείριος Λακεδαι-
lynicus, that, if he-should-be in-the-hands of (the) Lacedæ-

μονίοις, σαφῶς ἀποδανοῖτο ὑπὸ Θίβρωνος. Δὲ
monians, evidently he-would-be-put-to-death by Thibron. And

καὶ πολλοὶ ἄλλοι ἐπέστελλον ταῦτα τῷ Ξενο-
also many others communicated these (things) to — Xeno-

φῶντι, ὡς εἴη διαβεβλημένος, καὶ δέοι φυλάττεσθαι.
phon, that he-was calumniated, and ought to-be-on-his-guard.

Δὲ ὁ ἀκούων ταῦτα, λαβὼν δύο ἱερεῖα,
But — (he) hearing these (things), having-taken two victims,

ἔθυε τῷ Διὶ τῷ βασιλεῖ, πότερα εἴη λῷον
sacrificed to — Jupiter the king, whether it-would-be more-desirable

καὶ ἄμεινον μένειν παρὰ Σεύθῃ ἐφ' οἷς
and better to-remain with Seuthes on (the terms) which

Σεύθης λέγει, ἢ ἀπιέναι σὺν τῷ στρατεύματι.
Seuthes mentions, or to-remain with the army.

Δ' ἀναιρεῖ αὐτῷ ἀπιέναι.
And (Jupiter) signifies to-him to-depart.

## CHAPTER VII.

Σεύθης μὲν ἀπεστρατοπεδεύσατο ἐντεῦθεν
Seuthes indeed removed (his) camp thence

πρόσωτέρω· οἱ δὲ Ἕλληνες ἐσκήνησαν εἰς κώμας,
farther-off; and the Greeks quartered in villages,

ὅθεν ἔμελλον, ἐπισιτισάμενοι πλεῖ-
whence they-intended, having-supplied-themselves-with-provisions plenti-

στα, ἥξειν ἐπὶ θάλατταν. Αἱ αὗται κώμαι δὲ
fully, to-go to (the) sea. — These villages indeed

ἦσαν δεδομέναι Μηδοσάδῃ ὑπὸ Σεύθου. Οὖν ὁ
had been-given to-Medosades by Seuthes. Therefore —

Μηδοσάδης ὁρῶν τὰ ἑαυτοῦ ἐν ταῖς
Medosades seeing the (things) of-him [his property] in the

κώμαις δαπανώμενα ὑπὸ τῶν Ἑλλήνων, χαλε-
villages consumed by the Greeks, he-was grievous-

πῶς ἔφερε· καὶ λαβὼν Ὀδρύσην ἄνδρα δυνα-
ly excited; and taking (an) Odrysian man, (the) most-

τώτατον τῶν καταβεβηκότων ἄνωθεν,
powerful of — (those) having-come-down from-above, [from the

καὶ ἱππέας ὅσον τριάκοντα, ἔρχεται
upper country,] and horsemen as-many-as thirty, he-went

καὶ προκαλεῖται Ξενοφῶντα ἐκ τοῦ Ἑλληνικοῦ
and called-out Xenophon from the Grecian

στρατεύματος. Καὶ ὃς λαβών τινας τῶν λοχαγῶν
camp. And who taking some of-the captains

καὶ ἄλλους τῶν ἐπιτηδείων προσέρχεται.
and others of-the proper (men) went-to-meet (him).

Ἔνθα δὴ Μηδοσάδης λέγει· Ἀδικεῖτε, ὦ Ξενοφῶν
Then indeed Medosades said: You-act-unjustly, O Xenophon,

πορθοῦντες τὰς ἡμετέρας κώμας. Οὖν προλέγομεν
laying-waste — our villages. Therefore we warn

ὑμῖν, ἐγώ τε ὑπὲρ Σεύθου, καὶ ὅδε ὁ ἀνήρ,
you, I not-only for Seuthes, but also this — man,

ἥκων παρὰ Μηδόκου τοῦ βασιλέως ἄνω,
coming from Medocus the king | above, [of the upper

ἀπιέναι τῆς χώρας· δὲ εἰ μή,
country,] to-leave — (these) places, but if (you do) not,

οὐκ ἐπιτρέψομεν ὑμῖν, ἀλλ' ἐὰν ποιῆτε
we-shall not permit you (to do so), but if you-do

κακῶς τὴν ἡμετέραν χώραν, ἀλεξόμεθα
harm — our territory, we-shall-defend (ourselves against

ὡς πολεμίους.
you) as enemies.

Ὁ Ξενοφῶν δὲ ἀκούσας ταῦτα εἶπεν·
— Xenophon indeed hearing these (things) said:

Ἀλλὰ μὲν σοὶ λέγοντι τοιαῦτα καὶ ἀποκρί-
But indeed to-you saying such (things) even to-an-

νασθαι χαλεπόν· δ' ἕνεκα τοῦδε τοῦ νεανίσκου
swer (is) painful; but on-account-of this — young-man

λέξω, ἵν' εἰδῇ τε οἷοί ὑμεῖς
I-shall-reply, that he-may-know, not-only what-sort (of people) you

ἐστε, καὶ οἷοι ἡμεῖς. Γὰρ ἡμεῖς μέν, ἔφη,
are, but-also what-sort we (are). For we indeed, said-he,

πρὶν γενέσθαι φίλοι ὑμῖν, ἐπορευόμεθα διὰ
before (that we) became friends to-you, marched through

ταύτης τῆς χώρας, ὅποι ἐβουλόμεθα, πορθοῦντες
this — country, wherever we-wished, laying-waste

ἣν μὲν ἐβέλοιμεν, δὲ καίοντες ἣν ἐβέλοιμεν. Καὶ
what indeed we-wished, and burning what we-wished. And

σὺ ὁπότε ἔλθοις ἡμᾶς πρεσβεύων, ηὐλίζου τότε
you when you-came to-us acting-as-an-ambassador, encamped then

παρ' ἡμῖν, φοβούμενος οὐδένα τῶν πολεμίων· δὲ
by us, fearing none of-the enemy; but

ὑμεῖς οὐκ ἦτε εἰς τήνδε τὴν χώραν, ἤ, εἰ
you did not come into this — country. or, if

ποτε ἔλθοιτε ηὐλίζεσθε τοῖς ἵπποις
at-any-time you-may-have-came you-encamped with — (your) horses

ἐγκεχαλινωμένοις ὡς ἐν χώρᾳ κρειττόνων.
ready-bridled as in (a) country (of people) better

Δὲ ἐπεὶ ἐγένεσθὲ φίλοι
(or more powerful than yourselves). But when you-became friends

ἡμῖν, καὶ δι' ἡμᾶς σὺν θεοῖς ἔχετε
to-us, and through us with (the assistance of the) gods you-have

τήνδε τὴν χώραν, νῦν δὴ ἐξελαύνετε
(possession of) this — country, now truly 'you (would) 'expel

ἡμᾶς ἐκ τῆςδε τῆς χώρας, ἣν ἐχόντων παρελάβετε
us from this — country, which having you-received

παρ' ἡμῶν κατὰ κράτος· γὰρ ὡς αὐτὸς
from us as (the more) powerful; for as you-yourselves

οἶσθα, οἱ πολέμιοι ἦσαν οὐχ ἱκανοὶ ἐξελαύνειν
know, the enemy were not able to-'drive

ἡμᾶς. Καὶ ἀξιοῖς ἀποπέμψασθαι ἡμᾶς
us 'out. And you-think-proper to-'send us 'away

ὅπως οὐ δοὺς δῶρα καὶ ποιήσας εὖ,
so-as not (only not) having-given presents and having-done well

ἀνθ' ὧν ἔπαθες εὖ, ἀλλ'
(to us), in-place-of (that) which you-received benefits (from us), but

ἀποκορευομένους, ἐπιτρέπεις ἡμᾶς οὐδ' ἐναυλισθῆναι,
about-departing, you-would-permit us neither to-sojourn,

ὅσον δύνασαι. Καὶ λέγων ταῦτα
(in) as-much-as (that you were) able. And saying these

οὔτε αἰσχύνῃ θεοὺς, οὔτε τόνδε τὸν
(things), 'you neither reverence (the) gods, nor this —

ἄνδρα, ὃς νῦν μὲν ὁρᾷ σε πλουτοῦντα, δὲ πρὶν
man, who now indeed sees you being-rich, but before

γενέσθαι φίλον ἡμῖν ἔχοντα
(that you) became (a) friend to-us (he sees you) (*having*)

τὸν βίον ἀπὸ λῃστείας, ὡς αὐτὸς
(supporting) — (your) life by plunder, as you-yourselves

ἔφησθα. Ἀτὰρ τί καὶ λέγεις ταῦτα πρὸς
have-said. But why even do-you-say these (things) to

ἐμὲ; ἔφη· γὰρ ἔγωγ' ἔτι ἄρχω, ἀλλὰ
me? continued-he; for I-at-least no-longer command, but (the)

Λακεδαιμόνιοι, οἷς ὑμεῖς, ὦ θαυμαστότατοι,
Lacedæmonians, to-whom you, O most-wonderful (men)

παρεδώκατε τὸ στράτευμα ἀπαγαγεῖν, οὐδὲν
'gave the army 'up to-have-'led (it) 'away, not

παρακαλέσαντες, ὅπως, ὥσπερ ἀπηχθάνομην αὐτοῖς,
having-called-on-me, so-that, as I-was-hated by-them,

ὅτε ἦγον πρὸς ὑμᾶς, οὕτω καὶ νῦν χαρισαίμην
as I-led (the army) to you, so even now I-might-gratify

ἀποδιδούς.
(them) having-restored (it).

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ὁ Ὀδρύσης ἤκουσεν ταῦτα, εἶπεν·
When indeed the Odrysian heard these (things), he-said:

Ἐγὼ μέν, ὦ Μηδόσαδες, ἀκούων ταῦτα
I indeed, O Medosades, hearing these (things), (feel)

καταδύομαι κατὰ τῆς γῆς ὑπὸ αἰσχύνης. Καὶ
myself-sinking beneath the earth from shame. And

εἰ μὲν ἠπιστάμην πρόσθεν, ἂν οὐδ' συνηκο-
if indeed I-had-known (this) before, 'I would not 'have-accom-

λούθησά σοι· καὶ νῦν ἄπειμι. Γὰρ Μήδοκός ὁ
panied you; and now I-depart. For Medocus the

βασιλεὺς ἂν οὐδ' ἐπαινοίη με, εἰ ἐξελαύνοιμι τοὺς
king would not approve me, if I-had-expelled — (his)

εὐεργέτας. Εἰπων ταῦτ', ἀναβὰς ἐπὶ τὸν
benefactors. Having-said these (things), mounting on — (his)

ἵππον ἀπήλαυνε, καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ οἱ ἄλλοι ἱππεῖς,
horse he-rode-off, and with him the other horsemen,

πλὴν τεττάρων ἢ πέντε. Δὲ ὁ Μηδοσάδης, (γὰρ
except four or five. But — Medosades, (for

ἡ χώρα πορθουμένη ἐλύπει αὐτὸν,) ἐκέλευε τὸν
the country being-laid-waste distressed him,) requested —

Ξενοφῶντα καλέσαι τὼ Λακεδαιμονίω. Καὶ ὃς
Xenophon to-call-on the-two Lacedæmonians. And who

λαβὼν τοὺς ἐπιτηδειοτάτους,
taking — (those) most-suitable (for the purpose with him),

προσῆλθε τῷ Χαρμίνῳ καὶ Πολυνίκῳ, καὶ ἔλεξεν,
he-went-to — Charminus and Polynicus, and said,

ὅτι Μηδοσάδης καλεῖ αὐτούς, προερῶν ἅπερ
that Medosades calls-on them, warning (them) as

αὐτῷ ἀπιέναι ἐκ τῆς χώρας. Ἂν οὖν
(he had done) himself to-depart from the country ¹I should therefore

οἶμαι, ἔφη, ὅτι ὑμᾶς ἀπολαβεῖν τὸν
¹think, said (Xenophon), that you (would) obtain the

μισθὸν ὀφειλόμενον τῇ στρατιᾷ, εἰ εἴποιτε ὅτι
pay due to-the army, if you-were-to-say that

ἡ στρατιὰ δεδέηται ὑμῶν συναναπρᾶξαι τὸν
the army has-entreated of-you together-to-exact — (your)

μισθὸν Σεύθου ἢ παρ' ἑκόντος ἢ παρ' ἄκοντος,
pay of-Seuthes either — willing or — unwilling,

καὶ ὅτι φασὶ τυχόντες τούτων ἂν προθύ-
and that they-say having-obtained these (things) ¹they would cheer-

μως συνέπεσθαι ὑμῖν, καὶ ὅτι δοκοῦσι ὑμῖν λέγειν
fully ¹follow you, and that they-appear to-you to-say

δίκαια, καὶ ὅτι ὑπέσχεσθε αὐτοῖς
(the things that are) just, and that you-had-promised them

τότε ἀπιέναι, ὅταν οἱ στρατιῶται ἔχωσι τὰ
then to-depart, when the soldiers might-have — (their)

δίκαια. Οἱ Λάκωνες ἀκούσαντες ταῦτα,
just (demands). The Lacedæmonians hearing these (things),

ἔφασαν ἐρεῖν, καὶ ἄλλα
said (that they would) say (so), and (such) other (things)

ὁποῖα ἂν δύνωνται κράτιστα·
as-that ¹they might ¹be-able (to urge) to-the-best (advantage),

καὶ εὐθὺς ἐπορεύοντο ἔχοντες πάντας τοὺς
and immediately they-proceeded having all the

ἐπικαιρίους. Ἐλθὼν δὲ Χαρμῖνος ἔλεξε· Εἰ μέν,
proper-persons. Having-come indeed Charminus said: If indeed,

ὦ Μηδόσαδης, σύ ἔχεις τι, λέγειν πρὸς ἡμᾶς
O Medosades, you have any-thing, to-say to us

δὲ εἰ μή, ἡμεῖς ἔχομεν πρὸς σέ.
(say it); but if not, we have (something to say) to you.

Ὁ Μηδοσάδης δὲ μάλα ὑφειμένως ἔφη· Ἀλλ' ἐγὼ
— Medosades indeed very submissively said: But I

μὲν λέγω, καὶ Σεύθης τὰ αὐτά, ὅτι ἀξιοῦμεν
¹ndeed say, and Seuthes (says) the same, that we-consider

τους γεγενημένους φίλους ἡμῖν
(it right, that) — (those) having-become friends to-us, (ought)

μὴ πάσχειν κακῶς ὑφ' ὑμῶν· γὰρ ὅ τι ἂν
not to-suffer evil by you; for whatever you may

ποιῆτε κακῶς τούτους, ποιεῖτε ἤδη ἡμᾶς·
do ill (to) them, you-do already (the same to) us;

γὰρ εἰσιν ἡμέτεροι. Ἡμεῖς τοίνυν, ἔφασαν οἱ
for they-are ours. We therefore, said the

Λάκωνες, ἂν ἀπίοιμεν, ὁπότε οἱ καταπράξαντες
Lacedæmonians, may depart, when — (those) having-performed

ταῦτα ὑμῖν ἔχοιεν τὸν μισθόν· εἰ δὲ μή,
these (great things) for-you may-have — (their) pay; if indeed not,

ἐρχόμεθα μὲν καὶ νῦν βοηθήσοντες
we-come indeed even now helping (and taking part with)

τούτοις, καὶ τιμωρησόμενοι ἄνδρας οἳ ἠδίκη-
these, and about-taking-vengeance-on (the) men who wronged

σαν τούτους παρὰ τοὺς ὅρκους. Δὲ ἦν
these (soldiers) against — (their) oaths. And if

δὴ καὶ ὑμεῖς ἦτε τοιοῦτοι, ἐνθένδε
indeed also you may-have-been (of) such (number), (*from-here*)

ἀρξόμεθα λαμβάνειν τὰ δίκαια. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν
(of you) we-will-begin to-take — justice. — Xenophon

δὲ εἶπεν· Δ' ἐθέλοιτε, ὦ Μηδόσαδες, ἄν
(then) indeed said: And would-you-be-willing, O Medosades, —

ἐπιτρέψαι τούτοις, (ἐπειδὴ ἔφατε
to-leave (it) to-these (people), (since they-say (that they)

εἶναι φίλους ὑμῖν,) ἐν ὧν τῇ χώρᾳ ἐσμέν,
are friends to-you,) in whose — country we-are, (that they)

ἂν ψηφίσωνται ὁπότερα, εἴθ' προσῆκεν ὑμᾶς ἀπιέναι
might decide-by-vote either, whether it-were fit for-you to-depart

ἐκ τῆς χώρας, εἴτε ἡμᾶς; Δὲ ὁ ἔφη
from the country, or us? But — (Medosades) said (I do)

οὐ μὲν ταῦτα· δὲ μάλιστα μὲν ἐκέλευε αὐτὼ
not indeed (want) this; but most-of-all indeed he-requested these-two

τὼ Λάκωνε ἐλθεῖν παρὰ Σεύθην περὶ τοῦ μισθοῦ,
— Lacedæmonians to-go to Seuthes about the pay,

καὶ οἴεσθαι ἂν πεῖσαι Σεύθην· δ'
and (that he) thought (that they) might persuade Seuthes; but

εἰ μή, πέμπειν Ξενοφῶντα σὺν αὐτῷ, καὶ ὑπι-
if not, to-send Xenophon with himself, and he-

σχνεῖτο συμπράξειν. Ἐδεῖτο δὲ μὴ καίειν
promised to-co-operate. He-requested (them) moreover not to-burn

τὰς κώμας.
the villages.

Ἐντεῦθεν πέμπουσι Ξενοφῶντα, καὶ σὺν αὐτῷ
Thereupon they-send Xenophon, and with him

οἳ ἐδόκουν εἶναι ἐπιτηδειότατοι. Ὁ
(those) who seemed to-be the-most-proper (persons). — (He)

δὲ ἐλθὼν λέγει πρὸς Σεύθην· Πάρειμι,
indeed having-come speaks (thus) to Seuthes; I-am-here,

ὦ Σεύθη, οὐδὲν ἀπαιτήσων, ἀλλὰ
O Seuthes, not about-demanding (any thing of you), but

διδάξων, ἢν δύνωμαι, ὡς οὐ
teaching (and convincing you), if I-am-able, that you-'are not

δικαίως ἠχθέσθης μοι, ὅτι προθύμως ἀπῄτουν
justly displeased with-me, because I earnestly entreated

σε ὑπὲρ τῶν στρατιωτῶν, ἃ ὑπέσχου
you about (the pay) of-the soldiers, which you-promised

αὐτοῖς· γὰρ ἔγωγε ἐνόμιζον οὐκ εἶναι ἧττον
them; for I-at-least thought (it would) not be less

συμφέρον σοὶ ἀποδοῦναι, ἢ ἀπολαβεῖν
advantageous to-you to-pay, than (that it would be) to-receive

ἐκείνοις. Γὰρ οἶδα μὲν πρῶτον μετὰ τοὺς
(it) by-them. For I-know indeed (that) first after the

θεούς, τούτους καταστήσαντα σε εἰς τὰ
gods, these (soldiers) having-placed you in — (a)

φανερόν, ἐπεὶ γε ἐποίησαν σε βασιλέα
conspicuous (position), then at-least they-made you king

πολλῆς χώρας καὶ πολλῶν ἀνθρώπων· ὥστε οὐχ
of-many places and of-many men; so-that (it is) not

οἷόν τε λανθάνειν σοι, οὔτε ἢν
possible | to-conceal yourself, [to escape notice,] whether if

ποιήσῃς τι καλὸν, οὔτε ἦν τί αἰσχρὸν.
you-do any-thing good, or if any-thing shameful. 'To (a,

Ἀνδρὶ δὲ ὄντι τοιούτῳ ἐδόκει μὲν εἶναι
'man indeed being such (in situation) it-seems indeed to-be

μοι μέγα μὴ δοκεῖν ἀποπέμψασ-
to-me (to be a thing of) great (importance) not to-seem to-have-sent-

θαι ἀχαρίστως ἄνδρας εὐεργέτας, μέγα
away ungratefully men (his) benefactors, (a) great (thing)

δὲ εὖ ἀκούειν ὑπὸ ἑξακισχιλίων ἀνθρώπων·
indeed to-be-well-spoken-of by six-thousand men

δὲ τὸ μέγιστον καταστῆναι
and the greatest to-be-firmly-established (in the confidence that)

σαυτὸν μηδαμῶς ἄπιστον ὅ τι λέγοις.
you (are) in-no-wise unworthy-of-belief (in) what you-may-say

Γὰρ ὁρῶ τοὺς λόγους μὲν ἀπίστων πλανω-
For I-see the words indeed of-those-unworthy-of-belief wander-

μένους ματαίους καὶ ἀδυνάτους καὶ ἀτίμους· δ'
ing-about in-vain and powerless and dishonoured; but

οἱ λόγοι τούτων, οἳ ἂν ὦσιν φανεροὶ ἀσκοῦντες
the words of-those, who may be openly cultivating

ἀλήθειαν, ἢν δέονωνται τι, δύνανται οὐδὲν μεῖον
truth, if they-want any-thing, are-able not less

ἀνύσασθαι, ἢ ἡ βία ἄλλων· ἢν τε βού-
to-effect (it), than the force of-other (men); if also they-

λωνται σωφρονίζειν τινας, γιγνώσκω τὰς
wish to-bring any-one to-reason, I-know the

ἀπειλὰς τούτων οὐχ ἧττον σωφρονιζούσας,
threats of-these (men are) not less correcting,

ἢ τὰς ἤδη κολάσεις ἄλλων· ἢν τέ οἳ
than the already (given) punishments of-others; if also —

τοιοῦτοι ἄνδρες ὑπισχνῶνται τῷ τι δια-
such men promise —(any one) anything they-

πράττονται οὐδὲν μεῖον, ἢ ἄλλοι διδόντες παρα-
accomplish no less, than others giving at-the-

χρῆμα. Δὲ καὶ ἀναμνήσθητι σύ, τί προτελέσας
instant. And also recollect yourself, what you-advanced

ἡμῖν ἔλαβες ἡμᾶς συμμάχους. Οἶσθ' ὅτι
to-us having-taken us (as) allies. You-know that (it was)

οὐδέν· ἀλλὰ πιστευθεῖς ἀληθεύσειν, ἃ ἔλαβες,
nothing; | but having-been-trusted to-speak-the-truth, what you-say,

ἐπῆρας
[but trusting that you spoke the truth in what you said,] you-induced

τοσούτους ἀνθρώπους τε συστρατεύεσθαί τε καὶ
such-a-number (of) men not-only to-fight-with (you), but-also

συγκατεργάσασθαι σοι ἀρχὴν οὐ μόνον ἀξίαν
to-conquer-with you (a) government not only worth

τριάκοντα ταλάντων, ὅσα οὗτοι οἴονται
thirty talents. which (sum) they think (that they)

δεῖν νῦν ἀπολαβεῖν, ἀλλὰ πολλαπλασίων.
ought now to-receive (from you), but many-times-more.

Οὐκ οὖν πρῶτον μὲν τοῦτο τὸ πιστεύεσθαι σε,
(Is) not therefore first indeed this | the to-confide in-you,

τὸ καὶ κατεργασάμενον
[the confidence placed in you,] — (that) even (which) secured

σοι τὴν βασιλείαν πιπράσκεται ὑπὸ σου τούτων
for-you the kingdom sold by you (for) this

τῶν χρημάτων. Ἴθι δὴ ἀναμνήσθητι, πῶς μέγα
— money. Well-then truly recollect, how great

τότε ἡγοῦ καταπράξασθαι ἃ
'you then 'considered (it) to-accomplish (those things) which

νῦν ἔχεις καταστρεψάμενος. Ἐγὼ μὲν οἶδ' εὖ,
now you-have having-conquered. I indeed know well

ὅτι εὔξω ἂν τὰ νῦν πεπραγμένα
that 'you would 'have-prayed (for) the (things) now accomplished

μᾶλλον καταπραχθῆναι σοι, ἢ πολλαπλάσια
rather to-be-effected for-you, than (for) many-times

τούτων τῶν χρημάτων γενέσθαι. Τοίνυν
that (sum) of — money (might) be. Therefore

ἐμοὶ δοκεῖ εἶναι μεῖζον βλάβος καὶ αἴσχιον μὴ
to-me it-seems to-be (a) greater detriment and disgrace not

νῦν κατασχεῖν τὸ ταῦτα, ἢ τότε μὴ
now to-have-retained — these (things), than then not

λαβεῖν, ὅσῳπερ χαλεπώτερον ἐκ πλουσίου
to-have-acquired (them), as (it is) more-grievous from (the) rich

γενέσθαι πένητα, ἢ μὴ πλουτῆσαι ἤ
to-become poor, | than not to-have-been-rich if (from the)

ἀρχήν, καὶ ὅσῳ
beginning, [than not to have been rich at all,] and in as-much-as (it is)

λυπηρότερον φανῆναι ἰδιώτην ἐκ
more-distressing to-appear (a) private (person) from (having been a)

βασιλέως, ἢ μὴ βασιλεῦσαι ἤ ἀρχήν.
king, than not to-have-reigned | if (from the) beginning [at all].

Οὐκ οὖν μὲν ἐπίστασαι ὅτι οἱ γενόμενοι
Do-'you not therefore indeed 'know that — (those) 'having

νῦν ὑπήκοοι σοι ἐπείσθησαν οὐ τῇ
now 'become subject to-you 'have not 'submitted | (for) —

τῇ φιλίᾳ ἄρχεσθαι ὑπὸ σοῦ, ἀλλ'
your love [through love of you] to-be-governed by you, but

ἀνάγκῃ, καὶ ὅτι ἂν ἐπιχειροῖεν πάλιν
through-necessity, and that 'they would 'endeavour again

γίγνεσθαι ἐλεύθεροι, εἰ μή τις φόβος
to-become free, if (there were) not some fear (that)

κατέχοι; Ποτέρως οὖν οἴει αὐτούς
might-restrain (them)? Whether therefore do-you-think (that) they

ἂν τε μᾶλλον φοβεῖσθαι, καὶ σωφρονεῖν
would also 'be more 'restrained-by-fear, and 'conduct (them-

τὰ πρὸς σέ,
selves more) 'discreetly (and obediently) in-the (affairs) concerning you,

εἰ ὁρῷεν τοὺς στρατιώτας οὕτω διακειμένους σοι,
if they-should-see the soldiers so disposed to-you,

ὡς νῦν τε μένοντας, εἰ σὺ ἂν κελεύεις, τ' ἂν
as now also remaining, if you would request (it), and —

ἐλθόντας αὖθις ταχύ, εἰ δέοι, τε ἄλλους
having-come back speedily, if it-is-required, also (that) others

ἀκούοντας πολλὰ ἀγαθὰ τούτων
hearing much good (concerning you) of-those (soldiers

περὶ σοῦ, ἂν παραγενέσθαι
who have been in service) with you, would join (you;

ταχυ ὁπότε βούλοιο· ἢ εἰ κατα-
immediately when you-might-wish (it); or if they-should-form-a-a un-

δοξάσειαν ἄλλους ἃ μητ' ἐλθεῖν σοι,
favourable-opinion (of you, that) others would not go to-you,

δι' ἀπιστίαν ἐκ τῶν νῦν γεγενη-
through distrust (arising) from the (things that) now have-hap

μένων, τε τούτους εἶναι εὐνουστέρους αὐτοῖς
pened, also (that) these (Greeks) are better-affected to-them

ἢ σοί; Ἀλλὰ μὴν
(namely, your unconquered subjects,) than to-yourself? But certainly

ὑπεῖξάν σοι οὐδέ γε λειφθέντε
(that these people) submitted to-you not at-least (as) deficient

πλήθει ἡμῶν, ἀλλ' ἀπορίᾳ προστατῶν.
in-number (to) us, but (as being) in-want of-leaders.

Οὐκ οὖν καὶ τοῦτο κίνδυνος, μὴ λάβωσι
(Is there) not therefore even this (as a) danger, lest they take

προστάτας τινας αὐτῶν τούτων, οἳ νομίζουσιν
(as) leaders some of-those same, who consider

ἀδικεῖσθαι ὑπὸ σοῦ, ἢ καὶ τοὺς Λακε-
(themselves) wronged by you, or even the Lace-

δαιμονίους κρείττονας τούτων,
dæmonians better (and more powerful than) those,

ἐὰν μὲν οἱ στρατιῶται ὑπισχνῶνται συστρατεύεσθαι
if indeed the soldiers promise to-serve-in-the-army

αὐτοῖς προθυμότερον ἂν νῦν ἀναπράξωσι τὰ
with-them more-spiritedly (if) they would now exact the

παρὰ σοῦ, δὲ οἱ Λακεδαιμόνιοι συναινέσωσιν
(money) from you, and the Lacedæmonians should-agree-with

αὐτοῖς ταῦτα διὰ τὸ δεῖσθαι τῆς
them (about) these (things) through | the to-want [want] of the

στρατιᾶς; Ὅτι γε μὴν οἱ Θρᾷκες γενόμενοι
army? That at-least certainly the Thracians | having-become

ὑπό σοι ἂν πολὺ προθυμότερον ἴοιεν
under you [subjugated by you] would much more-promptly go

ἐπὶ σε ἢ σύν σοι, οὐκ ἄδηλον· γὰρ μὲν σοῖ
against you than with you, (is) not doubtful; for indeed you

κρατοῦντος δουλεία ὑπάχει αὐτοῖς, δὲ σοῦ κρατον-
conquering slavery is for-them, but you being-con-

μένου, ἐλευθερία. Δὲ καὶ εἰ ἤδη δεῖ προνο-
quered, liberty. And also if it-is now necessary to-pro

εῖσθαι τι τῆς χώρας, ὡς οὔσης σῆς, ποτέρως
vide something for-the country, as being yours, whether

ἂν οἴει αὐτὴν εἶναι μᾶλλον ἀπαθῆ κακῶν,
you may think it to-be more free-from evil,

εἰ αὐτοὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἀπολαβόντες ἃ
if they the soldiers having-received (from you) what

ἐγκαλοῦσιν καταλιπόντες εἰρήνην οἴχοιντο, ἢ εἰ
they-claim leaving peace should-depart, or if

οὗτοί τε μένοιεν ὡς ἐν πολεμίᾳ,
these (soldiers should) also remain as in (a) hostile (country),

σύ τε πειρῷο ἔχων ἄλλους πλείονας
you also should-endeavour having other (soldiers) more-numerous (than)

τούτων ἀντιστρατοπεδεύεσθαι, δεομένους τῶν
these to-encamp-over-against (them), wanting —

ἐπιτηδείων; Δὲ ποτέρως πλεῖον ἀργύριον ἂν
provisions? And whether more money might

ἀναλωθείη, εἰ τοῦτο τὸ ὀφειλόμενον ἀποδοθείη,
be-spent, if that — (which) is-due should-be-paid,

ἢ εἴ τε ταῦτα ὀφείλοιντο, τε δέοι
than if also this (money were left) due, and it-were-necessary

σε μισθοῦσθαι ἄλλους κρείττονας τούτων;
(that) you should-hire other (troops) better (than) these?

Ἀλλὰ γὰρ Ἡρακλείδη, ὡς ἐδήλου πρὸς ἐμὲ, τοῦτο
But — Heraclides, as he-declared to me, this

τὸ ἀργύριον δοκεῖ εἶναι πάμπολυ. Ἦ μὴν ἐστι
— money seems to-be very-great. — Certainly it-is

γε πολύ ἔλαττον νῦν σοι καὶ
at-least (a) much smaller (or easier affair) now for-you both

λαβεῖν τοῦτο καὶ ἀποδοῦναι τοῦτο, ἢ, πρὶν
to take this and pay this, than, before (that)

ἡμᾶς ἐλθεῖν πρὸς σε, δέκατον μέρος
we came to you, (to take or pay the) tenth part

τούτου. Γὰρ ἐστιν οὐ ἀριθμός ὁ ὁρί-
of-it. For it-is not (the) number (or amount) — (that) de-

ζων τὸ πολὺ καὶ τὸ ὀλίγον, ἀλλ' ἡ δύναμις
termines the much and the little, but the power

τε τοῦ ἀποδιδόντος καὶ τοῦ λαμβάνοντος.
not-only of — paying but-also of — taking (and

Δὲ νῦν ἡ πρόσοδος σοὶ κατ' ἐνιαυτὸν
receiving). But now the income to-you for (the) year

ἔσται πλείων, ἢ ἔμπροσθεν τὰ πάντα ἃ ἐκέκ-
will-be more, than before — all which you-had-pos-

τησο. Ἐγὼ μέν, ὦ Σεύθη, προενοούμην ταῦτα
sessed. I indeed, O Seuthes, have-considered these (things)

ὡς ὄντος φίλου σου, ὅπως τε σύ δοκοίης ἄξιος
as being (a) friend of-you, so-that also you may-appear worthy

ὧν ἀγαθῶν οἱ θεοί ἔδωκαν σοι, ἐγὼ
of-the good-things — (that the) gods have-given you, | (and) I

τε μὴ διαφθαρείην ἐν τῇ στρατιᾷ.
also (that) I-might not [1]be-ruined in the army

Γὰρ ἴσθι εὖ,
[and that I might not lose all credit in the army]. For know well,

ὅτι ἐγὼ νῦν οὔτ' βουλόμενος ἂν δυνηθείην ποιῆσαι
that I now neither wishing could I-be-able to-do

κακῶς σὺν ταύτῃ τῇ στρατιᾷ, οὔτ' εἰ ἂν πάλιν
narm with this — army, nor if [1]I might again

βουλοίμην βοηθῆσαι, ἂν γενοίμην ἱκανός.
[1]desire to-assist (you), might I-be able.

Γὰρ οὕτω ἡ στρατιὰ διάκειτα πρὸς ἐμέ. Καίτοι
For thus the army (is) disposed to me. | And-certain'y

ποιοῦμαι αὐτὸν σε μάρτυρα σὺν θεοῖς εἰδόσιν,
I-make you yourself to-give-witness with (the) gods knowing,

ὅτι
[and I call on you and the gods, knowing the truth, to witness,] that [1]I

οὔτε ἔχω παρὰ σοῦ οὐδέν ἐπὶ τοῖς στρατιώταις,
— [1]have from you nothing for the soldiers,

οὔτε πώποτε ἠτησα εἰς τὸ ἴδιον
nor have-[1]I ever [1]asked (of you) for — (my) private (use)

τὰ ἐκείνων, οὔτε ἀπήτησα ἃ
the (things belonging to) them, nor have-I-asked-for (that) which

ὑπέσχου μοι. Ὄμνυμι σοι δὲ ἀποδιδόντος
you-promised me. I-swear to-you indeed (that) offering

ἂν μηδὲ δέξασθαι, εἰ μὴ καὶ οἱ στρα-
(pay to me) I would not have-received (it), unless also the sol-

τιῶται ἔμελλον συναπολαμβάνειν τὰ ἑαυ-
diers were-about to-receive-together-with (me) the (pay) of-them-

τῶν. Γὰρ ἦν αἰσχρὸν διαπεπρᾶχθαι μὲν
selves. For it-would-have-been disgraceful to-have-accomplished indeed

τὰ ἐμά, δὲ ἐμὲ περιδεῖν τὰ
my-own (affairs), | but (for) me to-have-neglected the (affairs)

ἐκείνων ἔχοντα κακῶς,
of-them having (themselves) ill, [but for me to neglect their

ἄλλως τε καὶ τιμώ-
affairs when in an unsatisfactory condition,] otherwise also even hon-

μενον ὑπ' ἐκείνων. Καίτοι Ἡρακλείδῃ γε
oured by them. Though-indeed to-Heraclides at-least

πάντα δοκεῖ εἶναι λῆρος, πρὸς ἔχειν τὸ
all seems to-be (a) trifle, — (compared) to-having —

ἀργύριον ἐκ παντὸς τρόπου. Ἐγὼ δέ, Σεύθη,
money by all means. I indeed, O Seuthes,

νομίζω οὐδὲν κτῆμα εἶναι κάλλιον οὐδὲ λαμ-
think (that) no possession to-be more-beautiful or more-

πρότερον ἀνδρί, ἄλλως τε καὶ
illustrious in (a) man, | otherwise also even [especially] in (a)

ἄρχοντι, ἀρετῆς καὶ δικαιοσύνης καὶ γενναιό-
ruler, (than) virtue and justice and gene-

τητος. Γὰρ ὁ ἔχων ταῦτα πλουτεῖ μὲν
rosity. For — (he) having these (things) is-rich indeed

ὄντων πολλῶν φίλων, δὲ καὶ πλουτεῖ
(being) (having) many friends, and also rich (in)

ἄλλων βουλομένω γενέσθαι, καὶ μὲν
others wishing to-become (his friends), and indeed (when)

πράττων εὖ ἔχει τοὺς συνησθησομένους,
doing well he-has — (those) rejoicing-with (him),

ἐὰν δὲ σφαλῇ τι, σπανίζει
if indeed he-falls (in) any-thing, [in reverse of fortune,] he-wants

οὐ τῶν βοηθησόντων. Ἀλλὰ γὰρ
not — (those) helping (him). But (enough) for

εἰ μήτε κατέμαθες ἐκ τῶν ἐμῶν ἔργων,
if you-have neither learned from — my actions,

ὅτι ἦν φίλος σοι ἐκ τῆς ψυχῆς, μήτε
that I-was (a) friend to-you from — mind, [at heart,] nor

δύνασαι γνῶναι τοῦτο ἐκ τῶν ἐμῶν
(that you) have-been-able to-have-known this from — my

λόγων, ἀλλὰ κατανόησον πάντως τοὺς λόγους τῶν
words, but-yet consider by-all-means the words of-the

στρατιωτῶν· γὰρ παρῆσθα, καὶ ἤκουες, ἃ
soldiers; for you-were-present, and you-heard, what

ἔλεγον οἱ βουλόμενοι ψέγειν ἐμέ. Γὰρ κατη-
they-said, — (those) wishing to-asperse me. For they-

γόρουν μου μὲν πρὸς Λακεδαιμονίους, ὡς ποιοίμην
accused me indeed to (the) Lacedæmonians, that I-made

πλείονος περὶ σε ἢ Λακεδαιμονίους· δ'
more — (of) you than (of the) Lacedæmonians; and

αὐτοὶ ἐνεκάλουν ἐμοὶ, ὡς μᾶλλον μέλοι μοι,
they charged me, that it-was more (a) care to-me,

ὅπως τὰ σὰ ἔχοι καλῶς
that — your (affairs) might-have (themselves) well [that your

ἢ ὅπως τὰ ἑαυτῶν· ἔφασαν
affairs might prosper] or than the (affairs) of-them; they-said

δὲ με καὶ ἔχειν δῶρα παρὰ σοῦ. Καίτοι
indeed (that) I even had presents from you And-yet

πότερον οἴει αὐτοὺς ἐνιδόντας μοι τινα
whether do-you-think (that) they having-seen in-me some

κακόνοιαν πρὸς σέ, αἰτιᾶσθαί με ἔχειν τὰ ταῦτα
ill-will toward you, accused me of-having — these

δῶρα παρὰ σοῦ, ἢ κατανοήσαντες πολλὴν
presents from you, or perceiving (in me) much

προθυμίαν περὶ σε; Ἐγὼ μὲν οἶμαι ἀνθρώπους
zeal for you? I indeed think (that) men

νομίζειν, εὔνοιαν δεῖν ἀποκεῖσθαι τούτω
consider (that) gratitude ought to-be-laid-up for-those (persons,

παρ' οὗ τις δωρά ἂν λαμβάνῃ. Δὲ σὺ πρὶν μὲν
from whom any gift may be-received. But you before indeed

ἐμὲ ὑπηρετῆσαι σοι τι, ἐδέξω ἡδέως καὶ
I had-[1]done you any [1]service, gave favourably —

ὄμμασι καὶ φωνῇ καὶ ξενίοις, καὶ οὐκ
looks and words and gifts-of-hospitality, | and [1]had not

ἐνεπίμπλασο ὑπισχνούμενος
[1]filled-up [and did not satisfy yourself] promising

ὅσα ἔσοιτο· ἐπεὶ δὲ κατέπραξας
how-great would-be (my rewards); when indeed you-had-accomplished

ἃ ἐβούλου, καὶ γεγένησαι μέγιστος ὅσον
what you-wished, and (that you) have-become as-great as

ἐγὼ ἐδυνάμην, τολμᾷς περιο-
I was-able (to assist you to become), can-you-bear to-see-with-

ρᾶν νῦν με ὄντα οὕτω ἄτιμον ἐν τοῖς στρα-
indifference now me being thus dishonoured among the sol-

τιώταις; Ἀλλὰ μήν, πιστεύω ὅτι καὶ τὸν χρόνον
diers? But certainly, I-trust that even — time

διδάξειν σε δόξει σοι ἀποδοῦναι, καὶ σε
will-teach you (that) it-will-seem (best) to-you to-pay-the-debt, and you

αὐτόν γε οὐχὶ ἀνέξεσθαι ὁρωντά τοὺς
yourself at-least [1]will not [1]bear seeing — (those)

προεμένους εὐεργεσίαν σοὶ ἐγκαλοῦντας
freely-bestowing benefits on-you accusing (and reproaching)

σοι. Οὖν δέομαι σοῦ, ὅταν ἀποδιδῷς, προθυμεῖσθαι
you. Therefore I-entreat you, when you-pay, you-will-study

ποιῆσαι ἐμὲ τοιοῦτον παρὰ τοῖς στρατιώταις οἷονπερ
to-make me the-same with the soldiers as-altogether

καὶ παρέλαβες.
even (when) you-received (me into your service).

Ὁ Σεύθης ἀκούσας ταῦτα κατηράσατο
— Seuthes hearing these (things) uttered-imprecations-against

τῷ αἰτίῳ τοῦ μὴ πάλαι ἀποδεδόσθαι τὸν μισθόν·
the author of — not long-since paying the wage

(καὶ πάντες ὑπώπτευσαν τοῦτον εἶναι Ἡρα-
(and all suspected this (one) to-be Hera-

κλείδην·) γὰρ ἐγώ, ἔφη, οὔτε διενοήθην
clides;) for I, said-he, [Seuthes,] never intended

πώποτε ἀποστερῆσαι, τε ἀποδώσω.
at-any-time to-deprive (the men of their pay), and I-will-pay (it).

Ὁ Ξενοφῶν ἐντεῦθεν πάλιν εἶπεν· Ἐπεὶ τοίνυν
— Xenophon then again said: Since therefore

διανοῇ ἀποδιδόναι, νῦν ἐγώ δέομαι σου ἀποδιδόναι
you-are-resolved to-pay, now I entreat you to-pay

δι' ἐμοῦ, καὶ μὴ περιιδεῖν με διὰ σὲ
(them) through me, and not to-neglect me through you

ἔχοντα ἀνομοίως νῦν τε ἓν τῇ στρατιᾷ
having (myself) differently now also in the army

καὶ ὅτε ἀφικόμεθα πρὸς σέ. Ὁ δ'
— (than) when we-came to you. — (Seuthes) indeed

εἶπεν· Ἀλλ' οὔτ' ἔσῃ ἀτιμότερος τοῖς
said: But you-will not be more-dishonoured among-the

στρατιώταις δι' ἐμέ, ἄν τε μένῃς παρ' ἐμοί,
soldiers through me, should also you-remain with me,

ἔχων μόνους χιλίους ὁπλίτας, ἐγώ τε
having only a-thousand heavy-armed-men, I will also

ἀποδώσω σοὶ τὰ χωρία, καὶ τἄλλα ἃ
give you — (strong) places, and the-other (things) which

ὑπεσχόμεν. Δὲ ὁ πάλιν εἶπε·
I-promised (you). But — (Xenophon) again said: (That)

Ταῦτα μὲν ἔχειν οὕτως οὐχ
these (things) indeed (should) have (themselves) so (is) not

οἷόν τε· δὲ ἀπόπεμπε ἡμᾶς. Καὶ μήν, ἔφη
possible; but send us away. And certainly, said

Σεύθης γε οἶδα ὂν καὶ ἀσφαλέστερον σοι
Seuthes I at-least know (it is) being even safer for-you

μένειν ἐμοὶ ἢ ἀπιέναι. Ὁ δὲ πάλιν
to-remain with-me than to-depart. — (Xenophon) indeed again

εἶπεν· Ἀλλὰ μὲν ἐπαινῶ τὴν σὴν πρόνοιαν.
said: But indeed I-praise — your forethought

Ἐμοὶ δὲ μένειν οὐχ οἷόν τε. Δ' ὅποι ἐγὼ
For-me indeed to-remain (is) not possible. But wherever I

ἂν ὦ ἐντιμότερος, νόμιζε καὶ τοῦτο ἔσεσθαι
may be more-honoured, know (that) even this will-be (a)

ἀγαθὸν σοί. Ἐντεῦθεν Σεύθης λέγει·
good (thing) for-you. Then Seuthes says:

Ἀργύριον μὲν ἔχω οὐκ, ἀλλ' ἤ τι μικρόν,
Money indeed I-have not, but really-only some little,

καὶ τοῦτο δίδωμι σοι, τάλαντον· δὲ
and this I-will-give you, (namely a) talent; (I have) however

ἑξακοσίους βοῦς, καὶ πρόβατα εἰς τετρακισχίλια,
six-hundred oxen, and sheep about four-thousand,

καὶ ἀνδράποδα εἰς ἑκατόν καὶ εἴκοσι.
and slaves to (the number of a) hundred and twenty.

Λαβὼν ταῦτα, καὶ τοὺς ὁμήρους τῶν ἀδικη-
Having-taken these, and the hostages of — (those) acting-

σάντων σε, προσλαβών, ἄπιθι. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν
unjustly to-you, (and) having-received (them) depart. — Xenophon

γελάσας εἶπεν· Ἢν οὖν ταῦτα μὴ
having-laughed said: If therefore these (things) do not

ἐξικνῆται εἰς τὸν μισθόν, τίνος φήσω
amount to (a sufficiency) for-the pay, (for) whom shall-I-say

ἔχειν τάλαντον; Οὐκ ἄρ', ἐπειδὴ καὶ
(that I) have (the) talent? (Is it) not therefore, since even

ἐπικίνδυνόν ἐστι μοί, ἄμεινον ἀπιόντά γε φυλάτ-
danger is to-me, better going-away at-least to-guard-

τεσθαι πέτρους; Δὲ ἤκουες τὰς ἀπειλάς.
myself (against) stones? You indeed heard the threats

Τότε δὴ μὲν ἔμεινε αὐτου.
Then truly indeed he-remained there (that day).

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ τε ἀπέδωκε αὐτοις ἃ ὑπέ-
But on-the next-day he also gave to-them what he-had-

σχετο, καὶ συνέπεμψε τοὺς ἐλάσοντας
promised, and he-sent-with (them) — (those) driving

ταῦτα. Οἱ στρατιῶται δὲ τέως μὲν
these (cattle). The soldiers however in-the-mean-time indeed

ἔλεγον, ὡς Ξενοφῶν οἴχοιτο ὡς Σεύθην οἰκήσων
said, that Xenophon was-gone to Seuthes, dwelling

καὶ ἀπολῃψόμενος ἃ ὑπέσχετο αὐτῷ·
(with him) and having-received what he-promised him;

δε ἐπεὶ εἶδον αὐτὸν ἥκοντα τε ἥσθησαν
but when they-saw him coming they-were not-only delighted

καὶ προσέδεον. Δὲ Ξενοφῶν ἐπεὶ εἶδε Χαρ-
out-also ran-to (him). But Xenophon when he-saw Char-

μῖνόν τε καὶ Πολύνικον· Ταῦτα, ἔφη, καὶ
minus as also Polynicus: These (things), said-he, have even

δι' ὑμᾶς σέσωσται τῇ στρατιᾷ, καὶ ἐγὼ παρα-
through you been-saved for-the army, and I de-

δίδωμι αὐτὰ ὑμῖν· ὑμεῖς δὲ διαθέμενοι διά-
liver them to-you; you indeed having-disposed-of (them) dis-

δοτε τῇ στρατιᾷ. Οἱ οὖν μέν,
tribute (the proceeds) to-the soldiers. — (Those) therefore indeed,

παραλαβόντες καὶ καταστήσαντες λαφυρο-
having-received (the things) and having-appointed booty-

πώλας, ἐπώλουν, καὶ εἶχον πολλὴν αἰτίαν.
sellers, sold (the things), and they-had much blame.

Δὲ Ξενοφῶν οὐ προσῄει, ἀλλὰ ἦν φανερὸς
But Xenophon did not go-near (them), but was openly

παρασκευοζόμενος οἴκαδε· γὰρ πω ψῆφος
preparing for-home; for as-yet (a) vote (or sentence)

οὐ ἐπῆκτο αὐτῷ Ἀθήνησι περὶ φυγῆς.
was not proposed against-him at-Athens respecting banishment.

Δὲ οἱ ἐπιτήδειοι ἐν τῷ στρατοπέδῳ προσελθόντες
But — (his) friends in the camp going-to

αὐτῷ ἐδέοντο μὴ ἀπελθεῖν, πρὶν ἀπα-
him requested (that he would) not depart, before he-might

γάγοι τὶ στράτευμα, καὶ παραδοίη Θίβρωνι.
lead-off the army, and deliver (it) to-Thibron

## CHAPTER VI.I

Ἐντεῦθεν διέπλευσαν εἰς Λάμψακον· καὶ
THENCE they-sailed-across to Lampsacus; and

Εὐκλείδης μάντις, Φλιάσιος, ὁ υἱὸς Κλεαγόρου,
Euclides (the) augur, (a) Phliasian, the son of-Cleagorus,

τοῦ γεγραφότος τὰ ἐνύπνια ἐν Λυκείῳ, ἀπαντᾷ
the (one) having-written the dreams in (the) Lyceum, came-to-meet

τῷ Ξενοφῶντι. Οὗτος συνήδετο τῷ Ξενοφῶντι,
— Xenophon. This (person) congratulated — Xenophon,

ὅτι ἐσέσωστο, καὶ ἠρώτα αὐτὸν πόσον χρυσίον
that he-had-been-saved, and inquired-of him how-much gold

ἔχει. Ὁ δ' ἐπομόσας αὐτῷ εἶπεν,
he-has. — (Xenophon) indeed having-taken-an-oath to-him said,

ἦ μὴν ἔσεσθαι μηδὲ ἱκανὸν ἐφόδιον
(that) there-was certainly to-be not sufficient travelling-expenses

ἀπιόντι οἴκαδε, εἰ μὴ ἀπόδοιτο τὸν ἵππον καὶ
departing for-home, unless he-sold — (his) horse and

ἃ εἶχεν ἀμφ' αὐτόν. Δ' ὁ οὐκ ἐπι-
what he-had about him. But — (Euclides) 'did not 'be-

στευεν αὐτῷ. Δ' ἐπεὶ Λαμψακηνοὶ ἔπεμψαν
lieve him. But when (the) Lampsaceans had-sent

ξένια τῷ Ξενοφῶντι, καὶ ἔθυε τῷ Ἀπόλ-
gifts-of-hospitality to — Xenophon, and he-sacrificed to — Apollo,

λωνι, παρεστήσατο τὸν Εὐκλείδην· ὁ Εὐκλείδης
he-placed-beside (him) — Euclides; — Euclides

δὲ ἰδὼν τὰ ἱερεῖα εἶπεν, ὅτι πείθοιτο αὐτῷ
indeed seeing the victims said, that he-believed him

μὴ εἶναι χρήματα. Ἀλλ' οἶδα, ἔφη, ὅτι
not to-be [not to have] riches. But I-know, said-he, that

κἂν ποτὲ μέλλῃ ἔσεσθαι τι
even-if (money) at-any-time should-be-about to-be (yours) some

ἐμπόδιον φαίνεται, ἐὰν μηδὲν ἄλλο, σὺ σαυτῷ
impediment shows-itself, if no other, you yourself

Ὁ Ξενοφῶν συνωμολόγει ταῦτα. Ὁ
— Xenophon assents to-these (things). — (Euclides,

δὲ εἶπε· Γὰρ ὁ Ζεὺς ὁ Μειλίχιος ἐστι
indeed said. — (However) — Jupiter — Meilichius is (a)

ἐμπόδιον· καὶ ἐπήρετο, εἰ ποτὲ ἤδη θύσειν,
hindrance: and inquired, if ever now (that he) sacrificed,

ὥςπερ οἴκοι, ἔφη, ἐγὼ εἰώθειν θύεσθαι καὶ
the-same-as at-home, said-he, I was-accustomed to-sacrifice and

ὁλοκαυτεῖν ὑμῖν. Δ' ὁ ἔφη, ἐξ ὅτου
offer-holocausts for-you. But — (Xenophon) said, from whatever

ἀπεδήμησε οὐ τεθυκέναι τῷ τούτῳ
(time) he-left-home (that he) had not sacrificed to — this

θεῷ. Οὖν συνεβούλευσεν αὐτῷ θύεσθαι καθὰ
god. Therefore he-advised him to-sacrifice as

εἰώθει, καὶ, ἔφη, συνοίσειν
he-had-been-accustomed, and, said-he, (I think that) it-will-contribute

ἐπὶ τὸ βέλτιον. Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ὁ Ξενοφῶν προ-
for the better. And on-the next-day — Xenophon pro-

ελθὼν εἰς Ὀφρύνιον ἐθύετο, καὶ ὁλοκαύτει χοίρους
ceeding to Ophrynium sacrificed, and burned-up hogs

τῷ νόμῳ πατρίῳ, καὶ ἐκαλλιέρει.
in-the manner (of his) country, and he-found-the-entrails-favourable.

Καὶ ταύτῃ τῇ ἡμέρᾳ Βίτων ἀφικεῖτα καὶ
And on-that — (same) day Biton arrived also

ἅμα Εὐκλείδης δώσοντες χρήματα τῷ στρατεύ-
together-with Euclides | having-given money to-the army;

ματι· καὶ ξενοῦνταί τῳ
[with pay for the army;] and they-were-hospitably-entertained by —

Ξενοφῶντι, καὶ λυσάμενοι ἵππον, ὃν ἀπέδοτο ἐν
Xenophon, and having-redeemed (the) horse, which he-sold in

Λαμψάκῳ πεντήκοντα δαρεικῶν, ὑποπτεύοντες
Lampsacus for-fifty darics, suspecting (that)

αὐτὸν πεπρακέναι δι' ἔνδειαν, ὅτι
he had-sold (it) through want, (because) that

ἤκουον αὐτὸν ἥδεσθαι τῷ ἵππῳ, ἀπέ-
they-had-heard (that) he was-fond-of the horse, they

δοσαν καὶ ἤθελον οὐκ ἀπολαβεῖν τὴν
restored (it to him) and they-would not receive the

τιμήν.
price (from him).

Ἐντεῦθεν ἐπορεύοντο διὰ τῆς Τρῳάδος, καὶ
Thence they-proceeded through — Troas, and

ὑπερβάντες τὴν Ἴδην ἀφικοῦνται πρῶτον εἰς Ἀν-
crossing-over — Ida they-arrived first at An-

τανδρον· εἶτα πορευόμενοι παρὰ θάλατταν
tandrium; afterwards proceeding along (the) sea (they arrived)

εἰς πεδίον Θήβης τῆς Λυδίας. Ἐντεῦθεν
on (the) plain of-Thebe — (in) Lydia. Thence

ὁδεύσαντες δι' Ἀτραμυττίου καὶ Κερτωνοῦ παρ'
journeying through Atramyttium and Certonium by

Ἀταρνέα ἐλθόντες εἰς πεδίον Καΐκου κατα-
Atarneus having-come to (the) plain of-Caicus they-

λαμβάνουσι Πέργαμον τῆς Μυσίας.
reached Pergamus — (in) Mysia.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ Ξενοφῶν ξενοῦται παρ'
Here indeed Xenophon was-entertained-hospitably by

Ἑλλάδι, γυναικὶ τῇ Γογγύλου τοῦ Ἐρετριέως,
Hellas, (the) wife of — Gongylus the Eretrian,

καὶ μητρὶ Γοργίωνης καὶ Γογγύλου. Αὕτη
and (the) mother of-Gorgion and Gongylus. This (Hellas)

δὲ φράζει αὐτῷ, ὅτι ἔστιν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ Πέρσης
indeed mentions to-him, that there-was in the plain (a) Persian

ἀνὴρ Ἀσιδάτης· τοῦτον ἔφη αὐτόν,
man (called) Asidates; this (person) she-said (that) he, [Xenophon,]

εἰ ἔλθοι τῆς νυκτὸς σὺν τριακοσίοις ἀνδράσι,
if he-would-go at — night with three-hundred men,

ἂν λαβεῖν καὶ αὐτὸν, καὶ γυναῖκα, καὶ παῖδας,
might capture — him, and (his) wife, and children,

καὶ τὰ χρήματα· εἶναι δὲ πολλά.
and — (his) property; (and that this) was indeed much.

Ἔπεμψε δὲ τε τὸν ἀνεψιὸν αὐτῆς καὶ Δαφνα-
She-sends indeed also the cousin of-herself and Daphna-

γόραι, ὃν ἐποιεῖτο πλείστου, καθηγησομένους
goras, whom she-'made much 'of, acting-as-guides (in)

ταῦτα. Ὁ Ξενοφῶν οὖν ἔχων τούτους
these (things). — Xenophon therefore having these (men)

παρ ἑαυτῷ ἐθύετο. Καὶ Βασίας ὁ Ἠλεῖος,
with himself sacrificed. And Basias the Elian, (an)

μάντις παρών, εἶπεν, ὅτι τὰ ἱερὰ εἴη κάλλιστα
augur being-present, said, that the victims were most-favourable

αὐτῷ, καὶ ὁ ἀνὴρ εἴη ἁλώσιμος. Λειπνήσας οὖν
to-him, and the man might-be easily-captured. Having-supped therefore

ἐπορεύετο τε λαβὼν τοὺς λοχαγοὺς τοὺς
he-proceeded-forth also taking the captains — (those namely

μάλιστα φίλους, καὶ γεγενημένους πιστοὺς διὰ
his) greatest friends, and having-been faithful through

παντός, ὅπως ποιήσαι εὖ αὐτούς. Δὲ καὶ
all, in-order-that he-might-do good to-them And also

ἄλλοι συνεξέρχονται αὐτῷ βιασάμενοι
others joined him having-forced-themselves (on him)

εἰς ἑξακοσίους· δὲ οἱ λοχαγοὶ ἀπήλαυνον,
to (the number of) six-hundred, but the captains 'drove

ἵνα μὴ μεταδοῖεν τὸ μέρος
(them) 'back, that they-'might not 'share (in) the part

χρημάτων ὡς δὴ ἑτοίμων.
of-things as really ready (to be taken).

Ἐπεὶ δὲ ἀφίκοντο περὶ μέσας νύκτας, τὰ
When however they-arrived (there) about mid night, the

ἀνδράποδα μὲν ὄντα πέριξ τῆς τύρσιος καὶ τὰ
slaves indeed being about the castle and the

πλεῖστα χρήματα ἀπέδρα αὐτούς, παραμε-
most (of the) things escaped them, having-

λοῦντας, ὡς λάβοιεν Ἀσιδάτην αὐτὸν καὶ
neglected (them), that they-might-take Asidates himself and

τὰ ἐκείνου. Δὲ ἐπεὶ πυργομαχοῦντες
the (property) of-him. But when assaulting they-'were

οὐκ ἐδύναντο λαβεῖν τὴν τύρσιν, (γὰρ ἦν ὑψηλή,
not 'able to-take the castle, (for it-was high.

καὶ μεγάλη, καὶ ἔχουσα προμαχεῶνας καὶ πολλοὺς
and large, and having battlements and many
καὶ μαχίμους ἄνδρας,) ἐπεχείρησαν διορύττειν
and brave men,) they-endeavoured to-dig-through (the
τὸν πύργον. Ὁ τοῖχος δὲ ἦν ἐπ' ὀκτὼ
walls of) the castle. The wall indeed was of eight
γηΐνων πλίνθων τὸ εὖρος. Ἅμα δὲ
earthen bricks (in) the breadth. At-the-same-time however
τῇ ἡμέρᾳ διωρώρυκτο· καὶ ὡς τὸ πρῶτον
with-the (break of) day it-was-dug-through; and as the first
διεφάνη τις ἔνδοθεν βουπόρῳ ὀβελίσκῳ
(opening) appeared some-one from-within 'with (an) 'ox-piercing spit
ἐπάταξε τοῦ ἐγγυτάτω διαμπερὲς τὸν μηρὸν· δὲ
struck the nearest entirely-through the thigh; | and
τὸ λοιπὸν ἐκτοξεύοντες ἐποίουν
(for) the rest [and afterwards] shooting-arrows they-made (it)
μηδὲ ἔτι εἶναι ἀσφαλὲς παριέναι. Δὲ αὐτῶν
no longer to-be safe to-approach. But they
κεκραγότων καὶ πυρσευόντων, Ἰταμβέλεσις μὲν
shouting and giving-signals-by-torches, Itambelesis indeed
ἔχων τὴν δύναμιν ἑαυτοῦ ἐκ Κομανίας δὲ ὁπλῖται
having the force of-himself from Comania and heavy-armed
Ἀσσύριοι καὶ Ὑρκάνιοι ἱππεῖς, ὡς ὀγδοήκοντα,
(men) Assyrians and Hyrcanian cavalry, about eighty,
καὶ οὗτοι μισθοφόροι βασιλέως, καὶ ἄλλοι
and these mercenaries 'of (the) 'king, and other
πελτασταὶ εἰς ὀκτακοσίους, ἐκβοηθοῦσιν
targeteers to (the number of) eight-hundred, came-'to (their)
δ' ἄλλοι ἐκ Παρθενίου, δ' ἄλλοι
assistance; and (also) others (came) from Parthenium, and others
ἐξ Ἀπολλωνίας καὶ ἐκ τῶν πλησίον χωρίων,
from Apollonia and from the near places,
καὶ ἱππεῖς.
likewise cavalry.

Ἐνταῦθα δὴ ἦν ὥρα σκοπεῖν, πῶς ἡ ἄφοδος
Now truly it-was time to-consider, how the retreat

ἔσται· καὶ λαβόντες, ὅσοι ἦσαν βόες καὶ
would-be; and taking, as-many-as there-were oxen and
πρόβατα, ἤλαυνον, καὶ ποιησάμενοι
sheep, they-drove (them) off, and having-placed (the)
ἀνδράποδα ἐντὸς πλαισίου· οὐ οὕτω προσέχοντες
slaves within (the) square; not so-much as-applying
τὸν νοῦν τοῖς χρήμασιν, ἀλλὰ ἡ ἄφοδος
the mind to — (these) things, but (that) the retreat
μὴ εἴη φυγή, εἰ καταλιπόντες τὰ χρήματα
might not be (like a) flight, if leaving-behind the things
ἀπίοιεν, καὶ τε οἱ πολέμιοι εἶεν θρασύτεροί,
they-should-depart, and also the enemy might-become more-bold,
καὶ οἱ στρατιῶται ἀθυμότεροι· δὲ νῦν ἀπήεσαν ὡς
and the soldiers discouraged; but now they-retreated as
μαχούμενοι περὶ τῶν χρημάτων. Δὲ ἐπεὶ
fighting about the things (captured). But when
Γογγύλος ἑώρα τοὺς Ἕλληνας ὀλίγους μέν,
Gorgylus saw the Greeks (to be) few indeed,
δὲ τοὺς ἐπικειμένους πολλούς, καὶ αὐτὸς
but — (those) pressing-on (them) many, — he
ἐξέρχεται βίᾳ τῆς μητρός, ἔχων τὴν δύναμιν
sallied-forth despite — (his) mother, having the force
ἑαυτοῦ, βουλόμενος συμ-
of-himself, [having his own force with him,] wishing to-par-
μετασχεῖν τοῦ ἔργου· δὲ καὶ Προκλῆς συνεβοήθει
ticipate (in) the action; but also Procles came-to
ἐξ Ἀλισάρνης καὶ Τευθρανίας,
(their) assistance from Halisarne and (likewise) Teuthranias,
ὁ ἀπὸ Δαμαράτου. Οἱ δὲ περὶ
(he) who (was descended) from Damaratus. The (men) indeed with
Ξενοφῶντα ἐπεὶ ἤδη πάνυ ἐπιέζοντο ὑπὸ τῶν
Xenophon when already much oppressed by the
τοξευμάτων καὶ σφενδονῶν, πορευόμενοι
arrows and slings, (while) marching-forward in (a)
κύκλῳ, ὅπως ἔχοιεν τὰ ὅπλα πρὸ
circle, so-that they-might-have — (their) shields (as a defence) against

τῶν τοξευμάτων, μόλις διαβαίνουσι τὸν ποταμόν
the arrows, 'they with-difficulty 'crossed-over the river

Κάϊκον, ἐγγὺς οἱ ἡμίσεις τετρωμένοι. Καί
Caicus, near the half (of them) being-wounded. And

ἐνταῦθα Ἀγασίας Στυμφάλιος λοχαγὸς τιτρω-
here Agasias (the) Stymphalian, (a) captain, was-

σκεται, μαχόμενος τὸν πάντα χρόνον πρὸς τοὺς
wounded, fighting the whole time against the

πολεμίους. Καὶ διασώζονται, ἔχοντες ὡς διακόσια
enemy. And they-were-saved, having about two-hundred

ἀνδράποδα καὶ πρόβατα ὅσον θύματα.
slaves and cattle as-much-as (was required for the) sacrifices.

Δὲ τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ ὁ Ξενοφῶν θυσάμενος, ἐξάγει
But the next-day — Xenophon having-sacrificed, lead-out

τὸ πᾶν στράτευμα νύκτωρ, ὅπως ὅτι ἔλθοι
the whole army at-night, in-order that he-might-go (a)

μακροτάτην τῆς Λυδίας εἰς τὸ
very-long (way) through — Lydia for the (purpose, that the

μὴ φοβεῖσθαι διὰ τὸ εἶναι ἐγγύς,
Persian) 'might not 'be-alarmed | through the to-be near, [by

ἀλλ' ἀφυλακτεῖν. Δὲ ὁ Ἀσι-
his proximity,] but be-'off (his) 'guard. But — Asi-

δάτης ἀκούσας, ὅτι Ξενοφῶν εἴη τεθυμένος πάλιν
dates hearing, that Xenophon has-been-sacrificing again

ἐπ' αὐτὸν, καὶ ἥξοι
(about marching) against him, and (that) he-would-come (back)

παντὶ τῷ στρατεύματι, ἐξαυλίζεται εἰς
with-all the army, 'he [the Persian] 'went-out to

κώμας ἐχούσας ὑπὸ τὸ πόλισμα Παρθένιον.
villages having (themselves) under the town (of) Parthenium.

Ἐνταῦθα οἱ περὶ Ξενοφῶντα συντυγχάνουσιν
Here — (those) with Xenophon come-upon

αὐτῷ, καὶ λαμβάνουσιν αὐτὸν, καὶ γυναῖκα, καὶ
him, and captured him, and (his) wife, and

παῖδας, καὶ τοὺς ἵππους, καὶ πάντα τὰ
(his) children, and — (his) horses, | and all the

τὰ ὄντα· καὶ οὕτω τὰ πρότερα
— being (his); [and all his property;] and thus the first
ἱερὰ ἀπέβη. Ἔπειτα πάλιν ἀφικνοῦνται
sacrifices happened (truly). Afterwards they again arrived
εἰς Πέργαμον. Ἐνταῦθα ὁ Ξενοφῶν οὐκ
at Pergamus. Here — Xenophon could not
ᾐπάσατο τὸν θεὸν· γὰρ καὶ οἱ Λάκωνες, καὶ
complain (of) the god; for also the Lacedæmonians, and
οἱ λοχαγοὶ καὶ οἱ ἄλλοι στρατηγοί, καὶ οἱ στρα-
the captains and the other generals, and the sol-
τιῶται, συνέπραττον ὥστε λαμβάνειν ἐξαίρετα
diers, agreed that he-should-take select-portions
καὶ ἵππους, καὶ ζεύγη, καὶ τἆλλα· ὥστε
— (namely) horses, and yokes-of-oxen, and other-things; so-that
εἶναι ἤδη ἱκανὸν καὶ ποιεῖν εὖ ἄλλον.
he-was now able even to-do good to-another.

Ἐν τούτου Θίβρων παραγενόμενος παρέλαβε τὸ
After this Thibron having-arrived he-received the
στράτευμα καὶ συμμίξας τῷ ἄλλῳ Ἑλληνικῷ,
army and having-mixed (it) with-the other Grecian
ἐπολέμει πρὸς Τισσαφέρνην καὶ Φαρνάβαζον
(force), he-made-war against Tissaphernes and Pharnabazus.

Οἵδε ἄρχοντες δὲ τῆς χώρας βασιλέως,
Those governors indeed of-the territories of (the) king,
ὅσην ἐπήλθομεν· Λυδίας Ἀρτίμας·
as-much-as we-passed-through (were these): of-Lydia, Artimas;
Φρυγίας Ἀρτακάμας· Λυκαονίας καὶ Καππαδοκίας
of-Phrygia, Artacamas; of-Lycaonia and Cappadocia,
Μιθριδάτης· Κιλικίας Συέννεσις· Φοινίκης καὶ
Mithridates; of-Cilicia, Suennesis; of-Phœnicia and
Ἀραβίας Δέρνης· Συρίας καὶ Ἀσσυρίας Βέλεσυς·
Arabia, Dernes; of-Syria and Assyria Belesys;
Βαβυλῶνος Ῥωπάρας· Μηδίας Ἀρβάκας· Φασια-
of-Babylon, Rhoparas; of-Media, Arbacas; of-the-Pha-
νῶν καὶ Ἑσπεριτῶν Τρίβαζος· (δὲ Καρδοῦχοι,
sians and the-Hesperitæ, Tribazus; (for (the) Cardouchi,

δὲ καὶ Χάλυβες καὶ Χαλδαῖοι καὶ Μάκρωνες
and also (the) Chalybes and (the) Chaldæans and (the) Macrones

καὶ Κόλχοι καὶ Μοσσύνοικοι καὶ Τιβαρηνοὶ
and (the) Colchians and (the) Mossynœci and (the) Tibareni

αὐτόνομοι·) Παφλαγονίας Κορύλας·
(were) independent-nations;) of-Paphlagonia, Corylas; (of (the)

Βιθυνῶν Φαρνάβαζος· τῶν Θρᾳκῶν ἐν Εὐρώπῃ
(Bithynians Pharnabazus; of — (those) Thracians in Europe,

Σεύθης. Ἀριθμὸς δὲ τῆς συμπάσης ὁδοῦ τῆς
Seuthes. (The) enumeration indeed of-the entire route of-the

ἀναβάσεως καὶ καταβάσεως διακόσιοι δεκα-
ascent and descent (is) two-hundred (and) fif-

πέντε σταθμοί, χίλιοι ἑκατὸν πεντήκοντα
teen days'-march, one-thousand one-hundred (and) five

πέντε παρασάγγαι, τρισμύρια τετρακισχίλια
five parasangs, thirty-thousand (and) four-thousand

ἑξακόσια πεντήκοντα στάδια. Πλῆθος
(and) six-hundred (and) fifty stadia. (The) amount-of

χρόνου τῆς ἀναβάσεως καὶ καταβάσεως
time (spent in) the ascent and descent (being)

ἐνιαυτὸς καὶ τρεῖς μῆνες.
a-year and three months.

THE END

PROPERTY OF UNIVERSITY
OF WASHINGTON LIBRARIES
GRADUATE READING ROOM
NON-CIRCULATING

3620